God Powerpoint

Last Updated 05/2026

Website Link

✝ Christianity Guide

www.GodPowerpoint.com

Evidence for God

Science

The Origin of the Universe
:: Fine-Tuned Universe
:: Fine-Tuned Earth

The Origin of Life
:: Origin of Life
:: Population Genetics (Adam & Eve)

Historicity

Historical Events
:: Sodom & Gomorrah
:: Historicity of Jesus Christ
:: Historicity of King David

Genesis & The Flood

The Genesis Story
:: Genesis - Day Age Creationism

The Flood
:: The Flood - The Regional Flood

Prophecy

Creation Prophecy
:: Genesis (Prophecy of Science)

Messiah Prophecy
:: The Messiah (Overview)
:: The Messiah (Daniel)

General Prophecy
:: World Events (Daniel)
:: Modern Science

Christianity

Intro to Christianity

:: The Bible in 60 Minutes

:: Why I'm a Protestant
:: Christianity Basics?
:: Faith?
:: Bible "Life Lessons"
:: What is the Unforgiveable Sin?
:: Traditions vs Scripture
:: Are Bible Texts Corrupted/Reliable?
:: The Divine Council
:: Gifts of the Holy Spirit

The Trinity

Terminology
:: Trinity / Son of God / Son of Man

The Trinity
:: Jesus is God (His Words)
:: God Appears as a Man
:: New Testament - Trinity

Answers To

Judaism

:: The Messiah
:: God Appears as a Man

Islam

:: Islam - Key Claims
:: Islam – Prophecy Evidence?
:: Islam - Historical Evidence?
:: Islam - Bible is Trusted?
:: Islam – Teachings of Islam?
:: Bible - The Prophet predicted in Bible?

Information

:: Contact Me / About Me
:: Bible Version Used
:: Rights to Use









DISCLAIMER

Always view this PowerPoint on the Official Website

www.godpowerpoint.com

so that you are viewing the **newest updated version** of the file,

which may include new content, and fixes for errors in information.

- All information presented is my best opinion. It may be right, it may be wrong.
- It is entirely possible my conclusions are false. Feel free to Fact Check.
- It is entirely possible there are minor errors. Feel free to Fact Check.

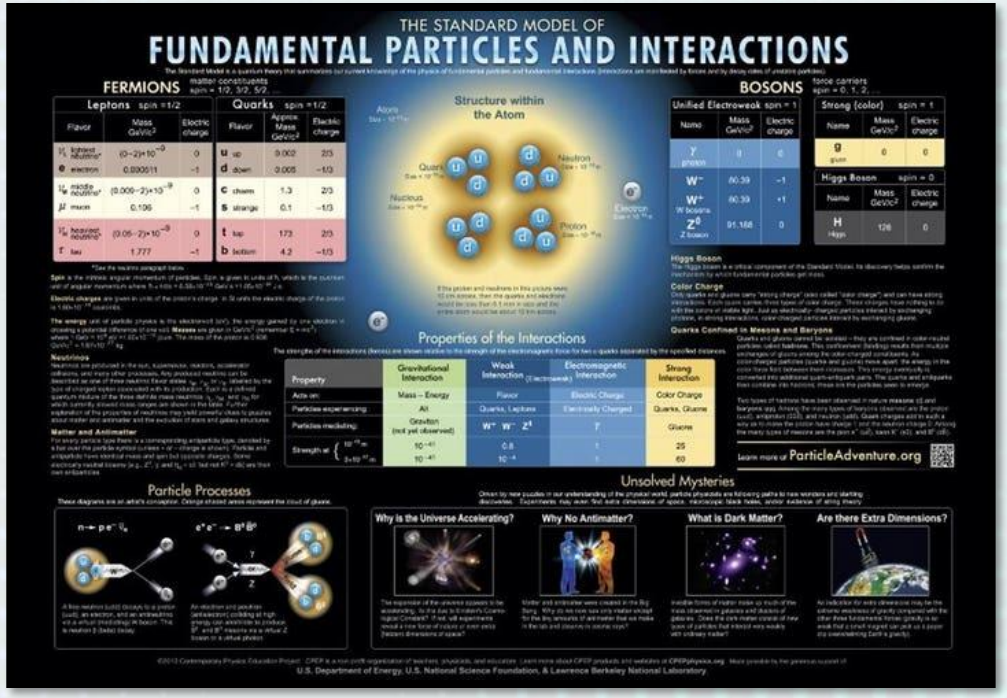
Fine-Tuned Universe

Does the Universe have Purposeful Design?



Fine Tuning – What exactly is the Claim of "Fine Tuning"?

- Key Points:
  - The Universe would not stably exist – Essentially, at all – if not for the Tuning of the Universe, where numerical values are tuned to a precise small range of values – to create stability in the universe.
  - Design of Universal Stability
  - Design of Galaxies & Stars & Planets
  - Design of Chemistry & Atoms
- Values of Constants & Initial Conditions
  - Cosmological Constant (Λ) - $2.036 \times 10^{-35}\ s^{-2}$
  - Fine Structure Constant (α) – $\frac{1}{137.036}$
  - Speed of Light (c) – 299,792,458 m/s
  - Planck constant (h) – $6.62607015 \times 10^{-34}$
  - Gravitation Constant (G) – 6.67×10^{-11}
  - Electromagnetic force constant – $9 \times 10^{9}\ N\ m^2 / C^2$
  - Initial Proton-to-Electron Mass Ratio – 1,836.15267343
  - …
- Types of Fine Tuning
  - #1 Laws of Nature
  - #2 Constants of Physics
  - #3 Initial Conditions of the Universe







Objection: Is the Universe really "Fine Tuned"?

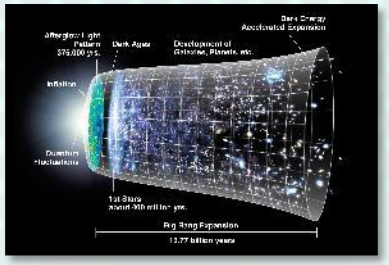
- How do we know these specific Constants – for stability of the Universe/Atoms/Chemistry – must be what they are – for Life to Exist?
- Fine-Tuned … "for what" exactly?
- Life is Hostile in 99.9% of the Universe – how is that Fine Tuning?
- How do we know that Life can't automatically Adapt to whatever Universe it is given? By Random Chance and enough Time – any possibility can arise? The Universe is "Fine-Tuned for"… what exactly?
- Just because Science can't explain why Fine-Tuning exists, doesn't mean God did it. Fine-Tuning is an Argument-from-Ignorance (God of the Gaps) - we don't know why the constants have those values, therefore God did it.
- Anthropic Principle disproves Fine Tuning.

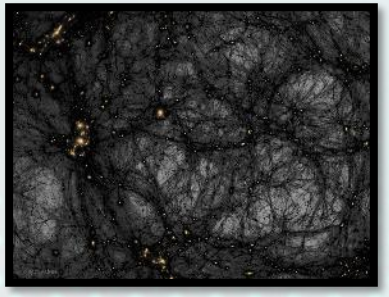


https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/more-anthropic-reasons-for-the-extreme-fine-tuning-of-dark-energy

Cosmological Constant (Λ) (Expansion Rate of the Universe)

- Krauss determined that the fine-tuning level is more extreme than 1 in 10^{120}!
- He has been joined by several other theoretical physicists who conclude that the required fine-tuning of dark energy is "the most difficult problem in physics.
- In fact, Barnes et al. showed that galaxies and stars will form in the universe even for values of Λ as high as 50 times greater than the observed value. This factor of 50 caused some astronomers to question the anthropic nature of Λ, the implication that Λ was personally fine-tuned (designed) to an extreme degree to make possible the existence of human beings in the universe.
- Now, two papers have been published that establish that Λ must be fine-tuned to a very extreme degree after all. In the most recent issue of the journal Astrobiology, a team of six Japanese astrophysicists led by Tomonori Totani provides calculations that show that Λ must be as small as what we observe to prevent advanced life from being wiped out by lethal radiation from nearby supernovae (see figure 2).[4] Totani's team demonstrated that as the value of Λ increases from the observed value to 50 times the observed value, the density of stars in the universe proportionately increases. With an increase in the density of stars comes an increase in the number of nearby supernova eruptions in the vicinity of a planet that could potentially support advanced life.
- ...Therefore, Totani's group concludes that for global human civilization to be possible the value of Λ cannot be significantly larger than the observed value.
- If we were located in one of the much more common spheroidal or elliptical galaxies, or if we were closer to our galaxy's bulge or one of our galaxy's globular clusters or spiral arms, we would be exposed to a much higher frequency of lethal supernova events.
- Consequently, for our existence to be possible the value of Λ cannot be any smaller than what astronomers observe.
- The bottom line is that dark energy really does present scientists with the most extreme fine-tuning problem known in physics. If the value of Λ were the slightest bit greater, nearby supernovae would have ruled out our existence. If the value of Λ were the slightest bit lesser, nearby gamma-ray burst events would have ruled out our existence.
- Hugh Ross



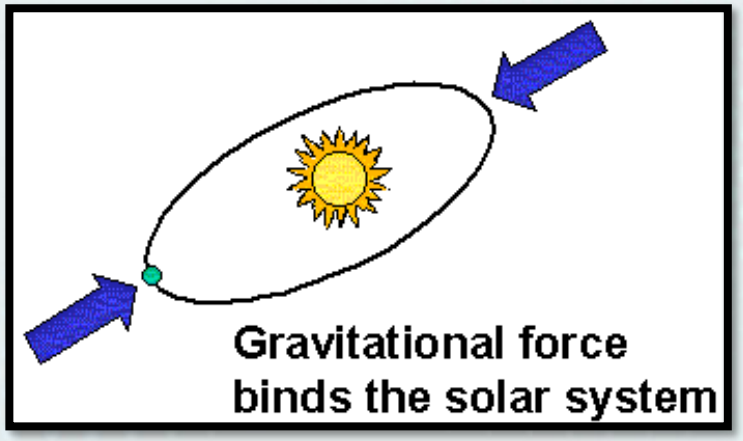


https://youtu.be/m0uxnBCZDz8?si=fGnXM3xGaESYD_8d

https://evidencetobelieve.com/fine-tuning-of-the-universe/

Gravitational Constant (Stars/Planets wouldn't form)

- If the [Gravitational Constant] was too small, gravity would be too weak, and planets wouldn't form … bigger objects.
- If it was too big, the Stars would burn up too fast…
- Source

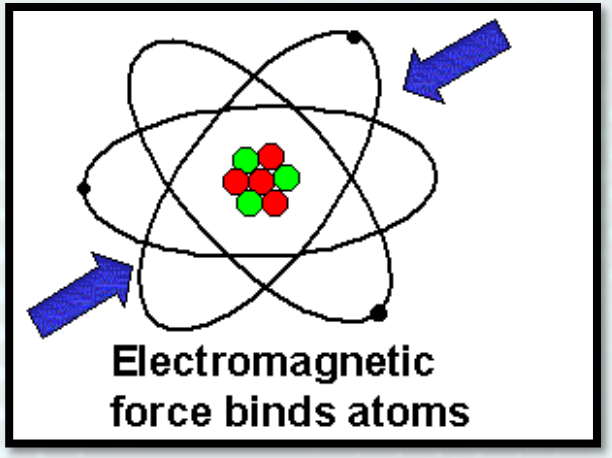


- If the force of gravity were any stronger, then stars would be so hot that they would burn up too quickly and too erratically for life to form. In addition, a planet that is capable of sustaining life (such as earth) must be supported by a start that is stable, and long burning.
- If the gravitational force weaker than it is, stars would never become hot enough to ignite nuclear fusion.
- Source

https://youtu.be/m0uxnBCZDz8

https://evidencetobelieve.com/fine-tuning-of-the-universe/

Electromagnetic Force (Chemical Bonds wouldn't form stably)



- The Electromagnetic Force is responsible for the Distance that Electrons orbit.
- It determines the size of the Atom.
- It could change the strength of Chemical Bonds.
- A Higher Constant would lead to Cooler Stars… that would not Last Long.
- Source

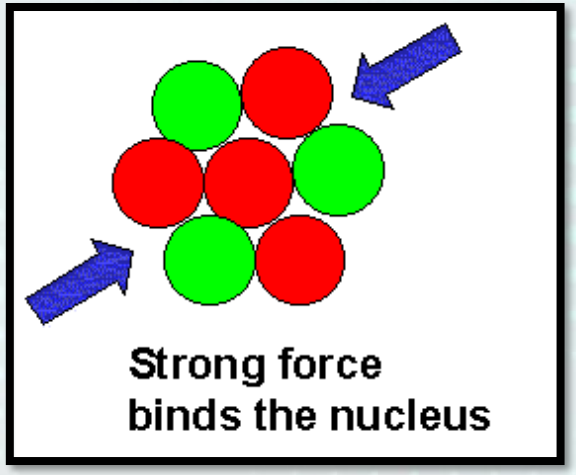
- According to Dr. Hugh Ross, if the electromagnetic force were significantly larger than it is, atoms would "hang on" to electrons so that no sharing would be possible But if the force was significantly weaker, then atoms would not hang on to electrons at all …
- … and again, the sharing of electrons among atoms, which makes molecules possible, would not take place.
- In addition, the size and stability of electron orbits about the nucleus of atoms depends on the ratio of electron mass to the proton mass. This ratio must be delicately balanced in order for the chemical bondings essential for life to take place.
- Source

https://youtu.be/m0uxnBCZDz8

https://evidencetobelieve.com/fine-tuning-of-the-universe/

Strong Nuclear Force (Atoms wouldn't form stably)

- This is the constant related to the Strength of the Strong Force.
- It keeps Neutrons & Protons grouped together, in the Nuclei of Atoms.
- If it were lower, you wouldn't have Stable Heavy Atoms.
- If the Strong Nuclear Force, were only 1% weaker, Atoms crucial for Life – such as Oxygen, Carbon, and Nitrogen – may not form in sufficient quantities inside of Stars.
- If the Strong Force were 2% stronger, No Atoms might form…
- Source



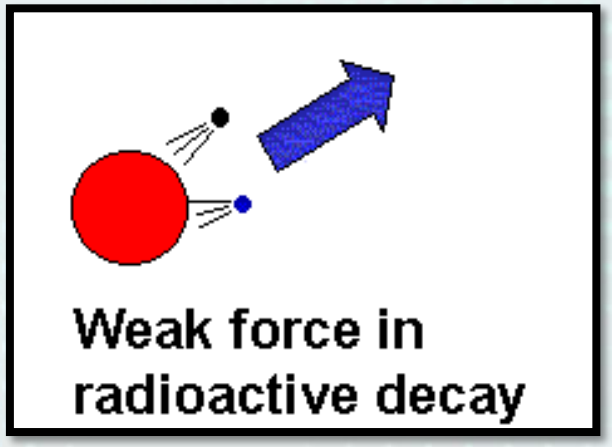
- The strong nuclear force is the force which governs he degree to which protons and neutrons "stick together" in atomic nuclei.
- If this force was weaker that it is, protons and neutrons would not stick together. In that case only one element would exist in the universe – hydrogen (the hydrogen atom has only one proton and no neutrons in its nuclei).
- If this force were too strong, however, protons and neutrons would have such an affinity for each other that not one would remain alone. In such a universe, there would be no hydrogen – only heavy elements. And life chemistry is impossible without hydrogen.
- How delicate is the balance for the strong nuclear force?
- If it were just 2% weaker, or .3% stronger than it actually is, life would be impossible – and not just our form of life. We are talking about any form of life, at any time, anywhere in the universe.
- Source

https://youtu.be/m0uxnBCZDz8

https://evidencetobelieve.com/fine-tuning-of-the-universe/

Weak Nuclear Force (Only "Light/Heavy" elements would exist)

- If the value of the Weak Force constant was bigger, then Hydrogen would've turned into Helium…
- Stars would either not Exist… or be much more Rare.
- Source

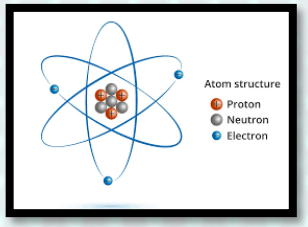


- There is also the weak nuclear force – the force that, among other things, governs the rate of radioactive decay.
- If this force were much stronger than it is, all matter in the universe would quickly be converted into "heavy" elements.
- On the other hand, if it were much weaker, then all matter in the universe would remain in the form of just the lightest elements.
- Source

https://evolutionnews.org/i/fine-tuning-parameters/

Examples of Fine Tuning

- #1 - Gravitational force constant (large scale attractive force, holds people on planets, and holds planets, stars, and galaxies together) — too weak, and planets and stars cannot form; too strong, and stars burn up too quickly.
- #2 - Electromagnetic force constant (small scale attractive and repulsive force, holds atoms electrons and atomic nuclei together) — If it were much stronger or weaker, we wouldn't have stable chemical bonds.
- #3 - Strong nuclear force constant (small-scale attractive force, holds nuclei of atoms together, which otherwise repulse each other because of the electromagnetic force) — if it were weaker, the universe would have far fewer stable chemical elements, eliminating several that are essential to life.
- #4 - Weak nuclear force constant (governs radioactive decay) — if it were much stronger or weaker, life-essential stars could not form.
- #5 - Cosmological constant (which controls the expansion speed of the universe) refers to the balance of the attractive force of gravity with a hypothesized repulsive force of space observable only at very large size scales. It must be very close to zero, that is, these two forces must be nearly perfectly balanced. To get the right balance, the cosmological constant must be fine-tuned to something like 1 part in 10^{120}. If it were just slightly more positive, the universe would fly apart; slightly negative, and the universe would collapse.
- Source

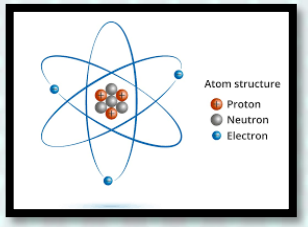




https://evolutionnews.org/i/fine-tuning-parameters/

Examples of Fine Tuning

- … If we increased the strength of gravity by just 1 part in 10^{34} of the range of force strengths (the equivalent of moving less than one inch on the universe-long ruler), the universe couldn't have life sustaining planets.
- #6 - Initial conditions are independent of the physical constants. One way of summarizing the initial conditions is to speak of the extremely low entropy (that is, a highly ordered) initial state of the universe. This refers to the initial distribution of mass energy. In The Road to Reality, physicist
- Roger Penrose estimates that the odds of the initial low entropy state of our universe occurring by chance alone are on the order of 1 in $10^{10(123)}$
- #7 - Ratio of masses for protons and electrons — If it were slightly different, building blocks for life such as DNA could not be formed.
- #8 - Velocity of light — If it were larger, stars would be too luminous. If it were smaller, stars would not be luminous enough.
- #9 - Mass excess of neutron over proton — if it were greater, there would be too few heavy elements for life. If it were smaller, stars would quickly collapse as neutron stars or black holes.
- Source





https://youtu.be/vKmZRuJpjU0?si=UK0d9_Yn1UeCO4r-&t=2938

Fine Tuning of the Universe (Indicators of Proof for God?)

- I'm not going to argue that we are ever going to have a Scientific Proof for God's Existence… What we can look at are pointers.
- Beginning with the fact that there is Something rather than Nothing… Science isn't going to help you answer why that is.
- How did that come about – is there a Creative Force – and that Creative Force itself cannot be apart of Nature … you've basically done an Infinite Regress… And that put you in the direction of something outside of Nature.
- There are these Naturals Laws that are simple & mathematical… Why should Nature follow those kinds of Laws?
- When you look at these Laws – they have these Constants – they just have the Values they do – you can't derive them, a dozen of them – if they were off by a tiny bit, the whole thing wouldn't work anymore… then your forced to say someone tuned the dials, or we're 1 of an infinite number of universes … but we'll never be able to experimentally discover that.
- Which one of those requires more Faith? A Creator or a Multiverse…
- Francis Collins

https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/quantum-gravity-constraints-affirm-cosmic-creator

Big Bang – There was a Cosmic Spacetime Beginning

- One hundred percent of the empirical evidence sustains a cosmic beginning in all the detail that the Bible declared thousands of years ago.
- Have astronomers eliminated all possible speculations about a no-beginning universe? No. To do so would require that they possess exhaustively complete knowledge about every feature of the universe.
- What they can do is progressively squeeze atheistic speculations about the universe into a smaller and smaller corner of possible speculation.
- Thanks to the quantum gravity tests accomplished by twenty-first century astronomers, the remaining corner of atheistic speculation is now mind-bendingly tiny.
- By contrast, these tests provide progressively stronger scientific evidence for a cosmic beginning consistent with the biblical texts.
- Hugh Ross

https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/exploring-fine-tuning-at-every-cosmic-level

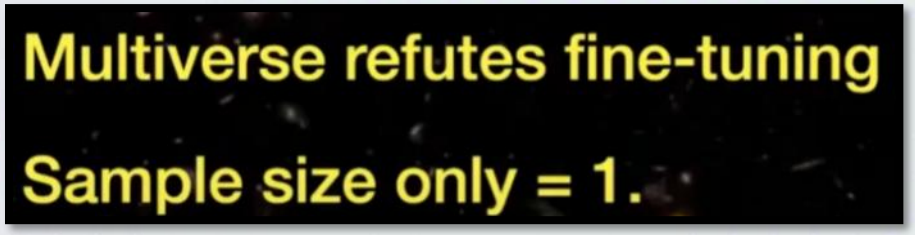
Skeptical of the Fine-Tuning of the Universe? Ok – then look at the Earth, Solar System, Galaxies:

- Many astronomers and physicists point out that for human observers the sample size of universes is one and always will be one.
- Who is to say that our universe is exceptional?
- While the sample size limitation is true for universes, such is not the case for supergalaxy clusters, galaxy clusters, galaxies, stars, planets, moons, and comet belts. In each case, the sample size is in the millions or much greater.
- The fine-tuning argument for the existence and operation of the God of the Bible becomes far more compelling if one can demonstrate we live in an extraordinarily exceptional region of the cosmic web and that our supergalaxy cluster, galaxy cluster, galaxy group, galaxy, galactic arm, galactic bubble, galactic fluff, planetary system, comet-asteroid belt system, moon, and planet all possess unique, fine-tuned characteristics that make it possible for humans to exist and thrive.
- ...It becomes unreasonable for any rational person to deny that a personal, intelligent, intentional, purposeful Fine-Tuner exists.
- Hugh Ross

https://youtu.be/3U3Czw1KU5I?si=gUNZATIk9qzzqEm5&t=284

Fine Tuning is a Scientific Fact (Do Multiverses disprove God?)

- The evidence for the God of the Bible – based on Fine Tuning – has become so overwhelming, and pervasive.
- … [That] Atheists have no where else to go, but to claim that there is an Infinite Number of Universes (Multiverse).
- Hugh Ross



https://youtu.be/SQ3EU58AzFs?si=EoSfluZ9x2z4KBTA&t=1838

Fine Tuning is a Scientific Fact (But does "Deism" prove the Bible's God?)

- The Physical Constants … most physicists agree – that if you change any of those constants by a small amount … the Universe doesn't come into existence.
- They have to be like that for Galaxies, Stars, and Chemistry to form…
- The pre-requisites for Life to evolve needs that as well.
- … Don't think that since you've convinced someone by the Fine-Tuning argument to be a Deist – that therefore he's got to believe in Jesus.
- Richard Dawkins



Objection – Puddle Analogy

- Puddle Analogy - “Imagine a puddle waking up one morning and thinking, 'This is an interesting world I find myself in — an interesting hole I find myself in — fits me rather neatly, doesn't it? In fact it fits me staggeringly well, must have been made to have me in it!’”
- Naturalism asks - How do we know that “Life” can’t just automatically “Adapt” to whatever Universe it is given?

- The Puddle Analogy is a **false analogy**.
- The Puddle:
  - A puddle will automatically exist & adapt to any shape that the ground gives it - It will exist no matter what conditions are present.
- The Universe:
  - Our universe only exists, at all, if many constants & laws are purposefully designed – and fit into a small range of constants.
  - For our Universe to exist at all – factors such as Expansion and Gravity must be fine tuned in a small range.
  - For our Universe to support fundamentals, like Atoms forming, or stable Chemical Bonds – they must be fine tuned in a specific range.

- What is the minimal “Requirement Stack for Life”?
  - #1 – Universal (Expansion & Stability of the Universe)
  - #2 – Stars (Ability for Stable Formation – and more)
  - #3 – Planets (Ability for Stable Formation – and more)
  - #4 – Atomic (Ability for Stable Formation – and more)
  - #5 – Chemistry (Ability for Stable Formation between Atoms)



Objections to Fine-Tuned Universe

- Fine Tuning is a “God of the Gaps” argument – it is an “Argument from Ignorance”. Just because Science doesn’t know why the Universe is fine tuned, doesn’t mean God did it.
  - God of the Gaps (ignorance of a natural explanation) is a phenomena describing Nature that is eventually solved by a Scientific Explanation. Fine-Tuning is an argument about why Nature was “created” or just simply “exists” the way it is – potentially a “super-natural” problem – this is not applicable to God of the Gaps – Fine Tuning is about the fundamental Origin of “Nature” itself.



Objections to Fine-Tuned Universe

- We don't know "WHY" the Universe is Fine Tuned – that doesn't mean God did it.
  - That's the point of asking the question – the "WHY" is an educated guess.
- Could a Multiverse, not God – automatically create the Universe?
  - The Multiverse itself would possibly need a "Universe Generating Mechanism" that itself is an example of "Fine-Tuning".
- Anthropic Principle disproves Fine Tuning.
  - The Objective Reality of Fine-Tuning is not disproven - whether it is Observed or Unobserved.
  - The sample size of known Universes is 1.
  - The only known Universe that Exists – shows signs of Fine-Tuning and stability.



Objections to Fine-Tuned Universe

- How do we know these specific Constants – for stability of the Universe/Atoms/Chemistry – must be what they are – for Life to Exist?
  - They are Stable and functional, or they aren't – Universe, Stars, Planets, Atoms, Chemistry. No other "Life" is conceptually possible.
- How do we know that Life can't automatically Adapt to whatever Universe it is given? By Random Chance and enough Time – any possibility can arise? The Universe is "Fine-Tuned for"… what exactly?
  - If not for Atomic & Chemistry Design – what Life is conceptually possible?
    - Would life arise in a universe which collapses in on itself at its origin?



Objection – "Life is Hostile in 99.9% of the Universe. That's not very Fine-Tuned!"

- Life is Hostile in 99.9% of the Universe – how is that Fine Tuning?
  - Fine Tuning doesn't ask why Earth alone is "safe for life" – Fine Tuning asks why the Entire Universe exists in a stable state (atoms, chemistry, expansion, etc) – all precursors to having any conceivable life, or matter, to exist at all.
  - And, the design argument only requires Planet Earth to be habitable.

https://youtu.be/hVCVt-dvVOc?si=_2_y-SvXWYB9Xa_X&t=1587

Did the Universe come from "Nothing"?

- On reasons.org you'll see a 16 page review I wrote on Laurence Krauss' book.
- In his book, he wrote about "9 kinds of nothing" in Book – but each of his "nothings" is actually "something".
- Christianity has this concept that the Universe came out of nothing – "ex nilio".
- Laurence Krauss' "nothings" are actually material – Quantum Spacetime fluctuations are not immaterial – we know they can produce virtual particles … Where did the Spacetime Quantum Fluctuations come from?
- [He didn't actually show the Universe came from nothing?] – Exactly.
- Hugh Ross

Does the “Multiverse” explain Fine-Tuning?



https://biologos.org/common-questions/what-do-fine-tuning-and-the-multiverse-say-about-god

Multiverse – Yet another step of Fine-Tuning?



- Our universe has several properties that are set to precise values, and slight changes to those values would prevent life as we know it.
- Scientists also have found that, even if the multiverse models are right, the multiverse would not eliminate fine-tuning.
- For example, in order to produce such an enormous inflationary rate of expansion, inflation theories require certain parameters to take on particularly precise values.
- While inflation explains some properties in our universe that previously appeared fine-tuned, the fine-tuning is not eliminated—it is pushed a step back into the origin of the multiverse itself.
- From the perspective of biblical faith, science merely investigates the physical world that God created and sustains.
- The physicists who are investigating the multiverse include Christians who ponder the multiverse as God's creation… And yet, as physicist Gerald Cleaver writes, if multiverse theories are shown to be correct, it would be "the next step in understanding the beauty, splendor, complexity, and vastness of God's creation."

https://youtu.be/hVCVt-dvVOc?si=jIMSaiR6RmWgj38P&t=2872

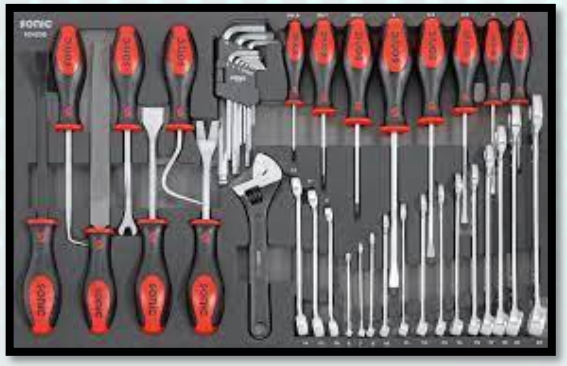
Multiverses are Fine Tuned

- All Multiverse theorems are subject to the “Space-Time theorems”, so you don’t avoid the Causality issue.
- Dr. Hugh Ross

https://youtu.be/WR51OrawqIg

Multiverse – Yet another step of Fine-Tuning?

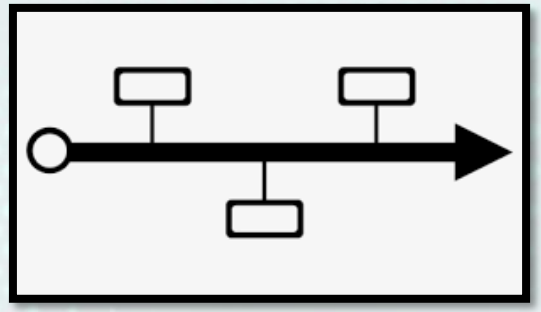
- The Multiverse acknowledges that the Conditions Necessary for Life in this Universe are incredibly Improbable.
- But it posits the Existence of Multiple Billion of other Universes.
- The new mechanisms that have been proposed as possible ways of generating new universes themselves, they require fine-tuning.
- In order to explain the Fine-Tuning, you have to have Prior Universe-generating mechanisms, that themselves require Fine-Tuning.
- Stephen Meyer



Who created God?

Who created God?

- All objects in Nature (within Time & Space) are Created & Destroyed – they must have a Cause.
- Any entity not in Space & Time – is neither created nor destroyed.
- A God outside of Time – is able to create a Spacetime Continuum.
- A God outside of Time – is neither Created nor Destroyed. God simply exists – or is “Eternal”.



Fine-Tuned Earth



https://evolutionnews.org/i/fine-tuning-parameters/

Fine-Tuned Earth

- In The Privileged Planet, Guillermo Gonzalez and Jay Richards identify 12 broad, widely recognized fine-tuning factors required to build a single, habitable planet. All 12 factors can be found together in the Earth. There are probably many more such factors. In fact, most of these factors could be split out to make sub-factors, since each of them contributes in multiple ways to a planet's habitability.
- #1 - Steady plate tectonics with right kind of geological interior (which allows the carbon cycle and generates a protective magnetic field). If the Earth's crust were significantly thicker, plate tectonic recycling could not take place.
- #2 - Right amount of water in crust (which provides the universal solvent for life).
- #3 - Large moon with right planetary rotation period (which stabilizes a planet's tilt and contributes to tides). In the case of the Earth, the gravitational pull of its moon stabilizes the angle of its axis at a nearly constant 23.5 degrees. This ensures relatively temperate seasonal changes, and the only climate in the solar system mild enough to sustain complex living organisms.
- #4 - Proper concentration of sulfur (which is necessary for important biological processes).
- #5 - Right planetary mass (which allows a planet to retain the right type and right thickness of atmosphere). If the Earth were smaller, its magnetic field would be weaker, allowing the solar wind to strip away our atmosphere, slowly transforming our planet into a dead, barren world much like Mars.
- #6 - Near inner edge of circumstellar habitable zone (which allows a planet to maintain the right amount of liquid water on the surface). If the Earth were just 5% closer to the Sun, it would be subject to the same fate as Venus, a runaway greenhouse effect, with temperatures rising to nearly 900 degrees Fahrenheit. Conversely, if the Earth were about 20% farther from the Sun, it would experience runaway glaciations of the kind that has left Mars sterile.
- #7 - Low-eccentricity orbit outside spin-orbit and giant planet resonances (which allows a planet to maintain a safe orbit over a long period of time).
- #8 - A few, large Jupiter-mass planetary neighbors in large circular orbits (which protects the habitable zone from too many comet bombardments). If the Earth were not protected by the gravitational pulls of Jupiter and Saturn, it would be far more susceptible to collisions with devastating comets that would cause mass extinctions. As it is, the larger planets in our solar system provide significant protection to the Earth from the most dangerous comets.
- #9 - Outside spiral arm of galaxy (which allows a planet to stay safely away from supernovae).
- #10 - Near co-rotation circle of galaxy, in circular orbit around galactic center (which enables a planet to avoid traversing dangerous parts of the galaxy).
- #11 - Within the galactic habitable zone (which allows a planet to have access to heavy elements while being safely away from the dangerous galactic center).
- #12 - During the cosmic habitable age (when heavy elements and active stars exist without too high a concentration of dangerous radiation events)

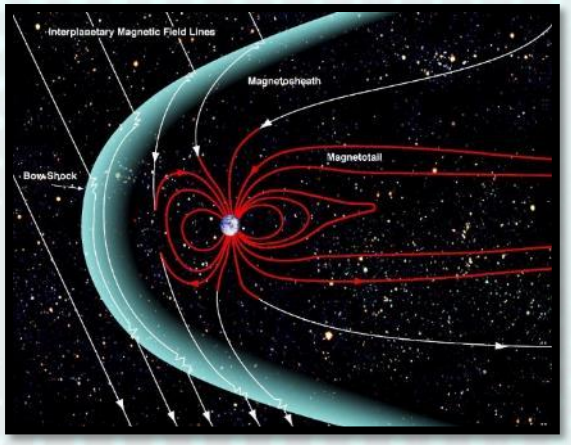




https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/earths-magnetosphere-appears-designed-for-habitability

Earth – Magnetosphere Fine-Tuning

- Without Earth's longstanding, magnificent magnetosphere, we wouldn't be here nor would any life. The Sun would have sputtered away the entirety of the planet's atmosphere and surface water and made Earth permanently lifeless.
- A magnetosphere is a region of space that surrounds an astronomical body in which magnetic field lines generated by the body's magnetic field guide charged particles. It takes an active interior dynamo in the astronomical body to produce the magnetic field.
- A rare feature of Earth is that all four of these sources of liquid core convection currents currently operate.
- For a planet to be habitable it is not enough that it simultaneously resides in all eleven of the known circumstellar planetary habitable zones.
- It must also possess an Earth-like electromagnetic shield of sufficient size, strength, and longevity to protect its surface life from the particles, radiation, and flares of its host star and from cosmic radiation.
- Numerous features of the planet must be exquisitely fine-tuned for such a magnetosphere to possibly envelop the planet.
- Dr. Hugh Ross



https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

154 examples of a Fine-Tuned Earth

PUBLICATION • 38 MINS

Fine-Tuning For Life On Earth (Updated June 2004)



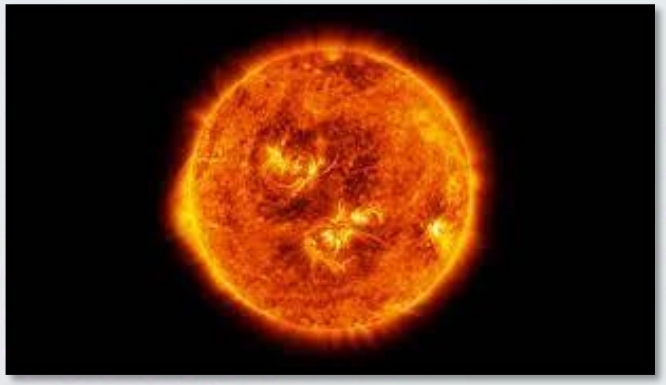
by Fazale Rana

June 7, 2004

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Stars

- Star Age
- Star Mass
- Star Metallicity

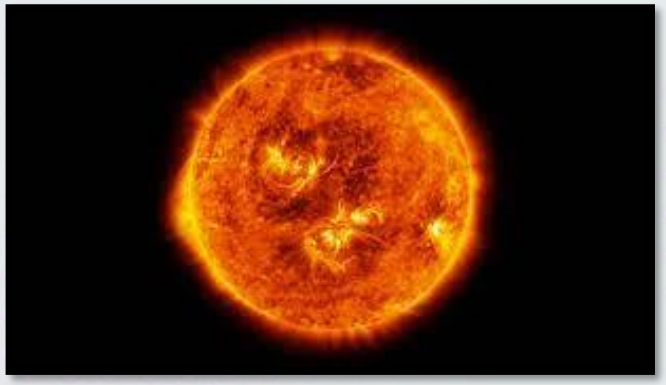


20. parent star age
    - if older: luminosity of star would change too quickly
    - if younger: luminosity of star would change too quickly
21. parent star mass
    - if greater: luminosity of star would change too quickly; star would burn too rapidly
    - if less: range of planet distances for life would be too narrow; tidal forces would disrupt the life planet's rotational period; uv radiation would be inadequate for plants to make sugars and oxygen
22. parent star metallicity
    - if too small: insufficient heavy elements for life chemistry would exist
    - if too large: radioactivity would be too intense for life; life would be poisoned by heavy element concentrations
23. parent star color
    - if redder: photosynthetic response would be insufficient
    - if bluer: photosynthetic response would be insufficient

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Stars

- Solar Wind
- Surface Gravity
- Distance from Star
- Inclination of Orbit



27. solar wind
    - if too weak: too many cosmic ray protons reach planet's troposphere causing too much cloud formation
    - if too strong: too few cosmic ray protons reach planet's troposphere causing too little cloud formation

28. parent star luminosity relative to speciation
    - if increases too soon: runaway green house effect would develop
    - if increases too late: runaway glaciation would develop

29. surface gravity (escape velocity)
    - if stronger: planet's atmosphere would retain too much ammonia and methane
    - if weaker: planet's atmosphere would lose too much water

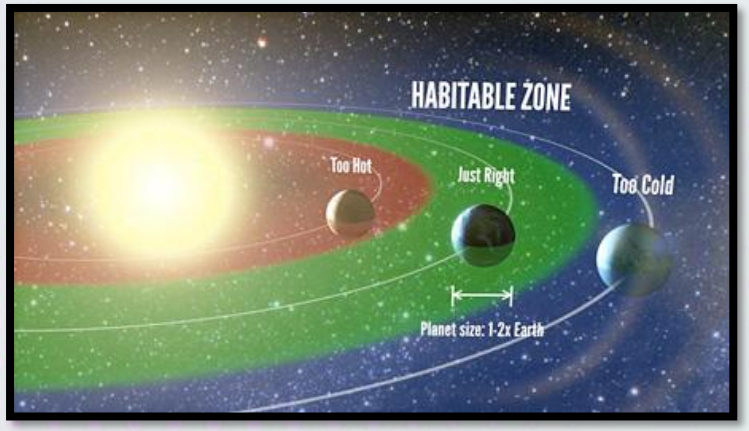
30. distance from parent star
    - if farther: planet would be too cool for a stable water cycle
    - if closer: planet would be too warm for a stable water cycle

31. inclination of orbit
    - if too great: temperature differences on the planet would be too extreme

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Earth

- Axis Tilt
- Rotation Period
- Planet Age



33. axial tilt
    - if greater: surface temperature differences would be too great
    - if less: surface temperature differences would be too great

34. rate of change of axial tilt
    - if greater: climatic changes would be too extreme; surface temperature differences would become too extreme

35. rotation period
    - if longer: diurnal temperature differences would be too great
    - if shorter: atmospheric wind velocities would be too great

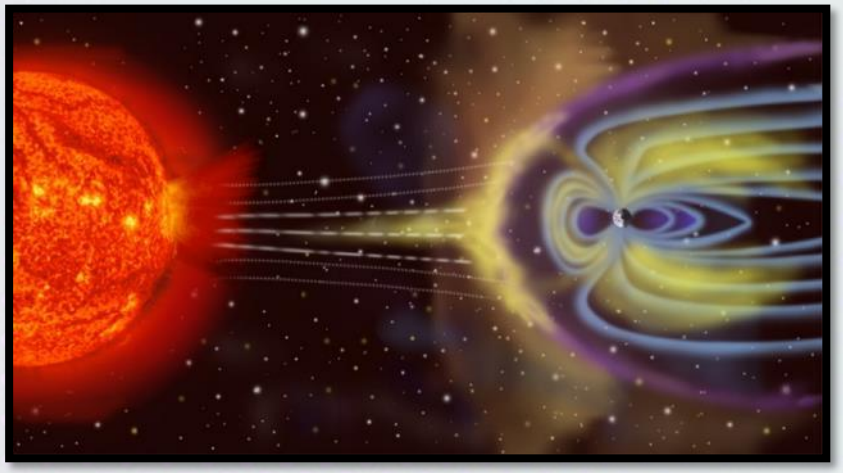
36. rate of change in rotation period
    - if longer:surface temperature range necessary for life would not be sustained
    - if shorter:surface temperature range necessary for life would not be sustained

37. planet age
    - if too young: planet would rotate too rapidly
    - if too old: planet would rotate too slowly

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Earth

- Magnetic Field



38. magnetic field
    - if stronger: electromagnetic storms would be too severe; too few cosmic ray protons would reach planet's troposphere which would inhibit adequate cloud formation
    - if weaker: ozone shield would be inadequately protected from hard stellar and solar radiation

39. thickness of crust
    - if thicker: too much oxygen would be transferred from the atmosphere to the crust
    - if thinner: volcanic and tectonic activity would be too great

40. albedo (ratio of reflected light to total amount falling on surface)
    - if greater: runaway glaciation would develop
    - if less: runaway greenhouse effect would develop

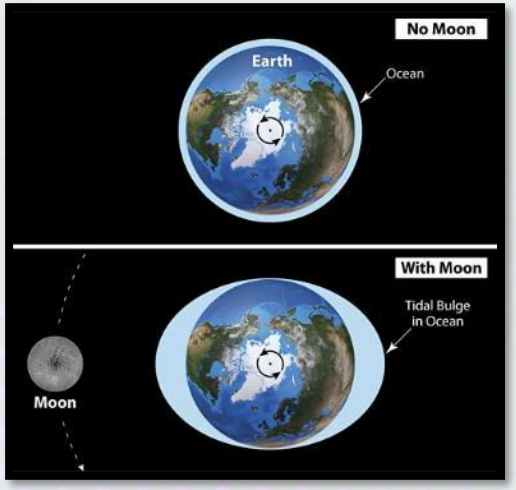
41. asteroidal and cometary collision rate
    - if greater: too many species would become extinct
    - if less: crust would be too depleted of materials essential for life

42. mass of body colliding with primordial Earth
    - if smaller: Earth's atmosphere would be too thick; moon would be too small

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Earth

- Water Vapor
- Ozone Level
- Oxygen Quantity
- Nitrogen Quantity



47. water vapor level in atmosphere
    - if greater: runaway greenhouse effect would develop
    - if less: rainfall would be too meager for advanced life on the land

48. atmospheric electric discharge rate
    - if greater: too much fire destruction would occur
    - if less: too little nitrogen would be fixed in the atmosphere

49. ozone level in atmosphere
    - if greater: surface temperatures would be too low
    - if less: surface temperatures would be too high; there would be too much uv radiation at the surface

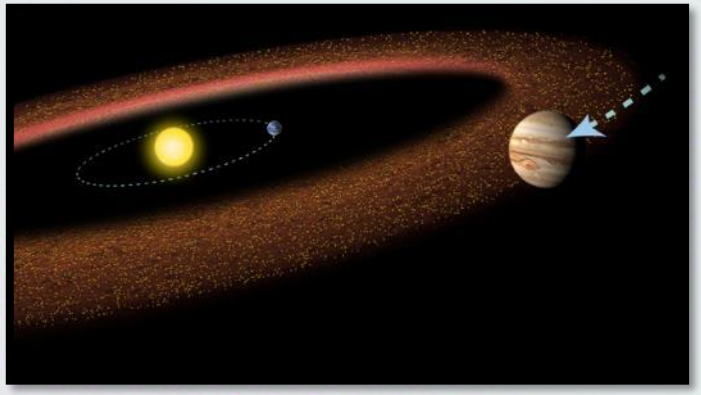
50. oxygen quantity in atmosphere
    - if greater: plants and hydrocarbons would burn up too easily
    - if less: advanced animals would have too little to breathe

51. nitrogen quantity in atmosphere
    - if greater: too much buffering of oxygen for advanced animal respiration; too much nitrogen fixation for support of diverse plant species
    - if less: too little buffering of oxygen for advanced animal respiration; too little nitrogen fixation for support of diverse plant species

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/articles/fine-tuning-for-life-on-earth-updated-june-2004

Fine-Tuned Earth – Planets

- Jupiter Distance
- Jupiter Mass
- Neptune Mass



65. Jupiter distance
    - if greater: too many asteroid and comet collisions would occur on Earth
    - if less: Earth's orbit would become unstable
66. Jupiter mass
    - if greater: Earth's orbit would become unstable
    - if less: too many asteroid and comet collisions would occur on Earth
67. drift in major planet distances
    - if greater: Earth's orbit would become unstable
    - if less: too many asteroid and comet collisions would occur on Earth
68. major planet eccentricities
    - if greater: orbit of life supportable planet would be pulled out of life support zone
69. major planet orbital instabilities
    - if greater: orbit of life supportable planet would be pulled out of life support zone
70. mass of Neptune
    - if too small: not enough Kuiper Belt Objects (asteroids beyond Neptune) would be scattered out of the solar system

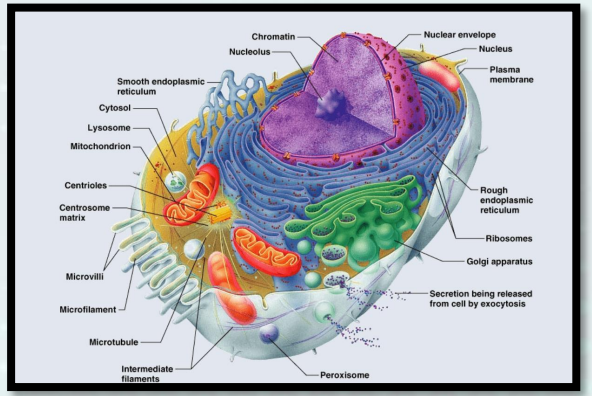
Origin of Life
The Simplest Cells

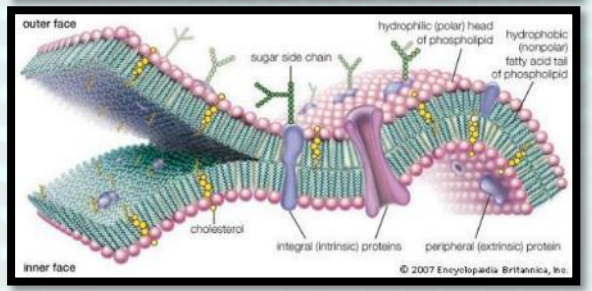
Does the Origin of Life require a Divine Origin?

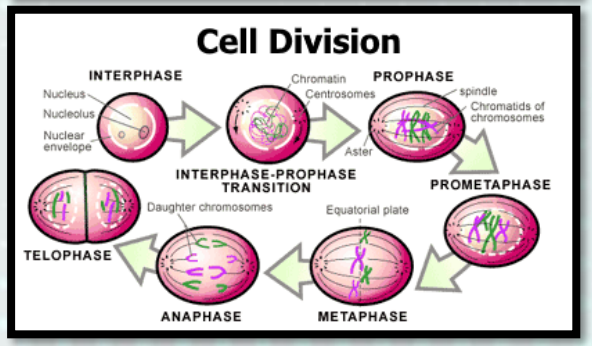


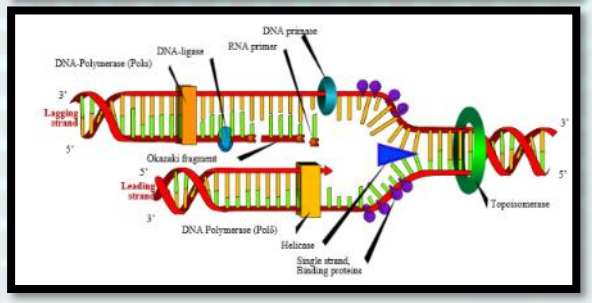
Why is the Origin of the Simplest Cells so important?

- What is the Origin of Life? – It's the origin of the Simplest Cells.
- The "Simplest Cell" has a massive amount of **"Interdependent Function"** – all these systems & components must be co-existing, and work correctly, for the minimal cell to survive at all.
  - On a larger scale, imagine a Human Body missing any component systems such as:
    - No Skeletal, Nervous System, Cardiovascular System, Sensory Systems, etc.
- Evolution (by Cell Replication) cannot create anything before even the "Simplest Cell" exists.
  - Basic Cell Evolution requires numerous systems – **Just a few Examples:**
    - Cell Division
    - DNA & DNA replication
    - Cell Membrane function & stability
    - Machinery for Energy Production & Delivery,
    - Information Repository,
    - Selective Gateways w/ Active Transport,
    - Sensors coupled with Signal transduction pathways and signal processing,
    - Mechanisms to Implement Instructions,
    - Manufacturing,
    - Auto-Assembly Processes,
    - Automated Repair Machinery,
    - Error Correction Systems,
    - Waste Disposal and Recycling,
    - Control Systems for Global Coordination.
- All of these Minimal Functions (of the simplest cell), potentially, may require creation in 1 instantaneous step.
- Hypothetical "simpler life" (Protocells), that make the Origin of Life process easy to explain, have never been observed. This is a "Future Science of the Gaps" argument.







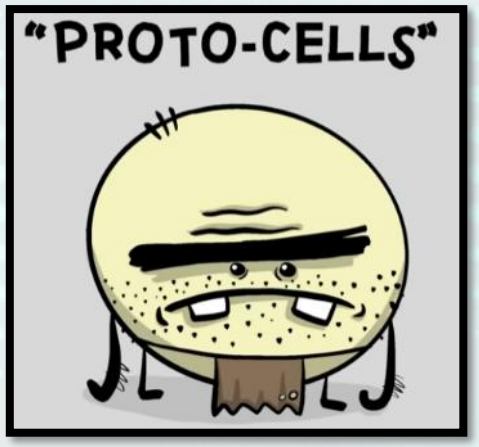


https://youtu.be/BHRcPTS1VHc?si=Hp-GzeHXQm7RajdN&t=406

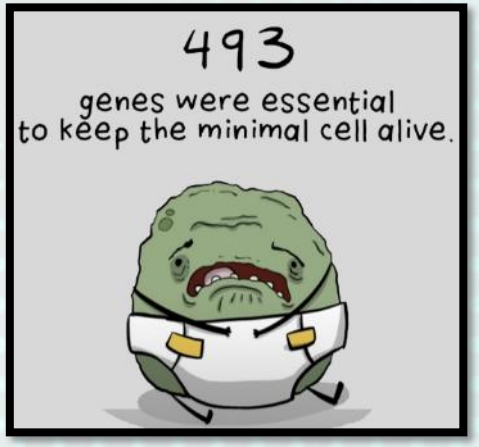


Objection: Couldn't Life have started with Simpler Cells?

- But Wait! When Life started – maybe there were "Protocells", a simpler version of Modern Life? That explains how it evolved in the beginning!



- Could Life have [started out] simpler?
- Scientists tried to gauge what the simplest possible lifeform could've been – by taking a very simple cell, and removing as many things as possible, without killing it.
- These papers, took a very simple bacterial cell, which had about 985 genes, and cut it down to 474 genes.
- But, the [cell] was barely hanging on, so they added a few genes back in…
- …They found that 493 genes were Essential to keep the "Minimal Cell" alive.
- This work suggests that there is a Practical Boundary for "How simple Life can possibly be", not just today, but for any Point in Time…
- … Most of these life-supporting nutrients [that the crippled cell needed to artificially survive] couldn't have existed on a Prebiotic Earth…
- … There is no evidence that any of these [Protocells] ever existed.
- Source



https://youtu.be/fDayvhch_W4?si=UPT6hvQAWRQAX9NX&t=1169

Origin of Life – Simplest Modern Cells & DNA

- You have to have 580,000 bases to have the genome that could run a minimal cell today.
- You need 206 protein coding genes – these will prescribe Enzymes to do building.
- Biologists keep thinking – "All you need is a little RNA, and everything will work."
- Dr. James Tour

Microbiol Mol Biol Rev. 2014 Sep; 78(3): 487–509. PMCID: PMC4187685
doi: 10.1128/MMBR.00050-13 PMID: 25184563

Systems Biology Perspectives on Minimal and Simpler Cells

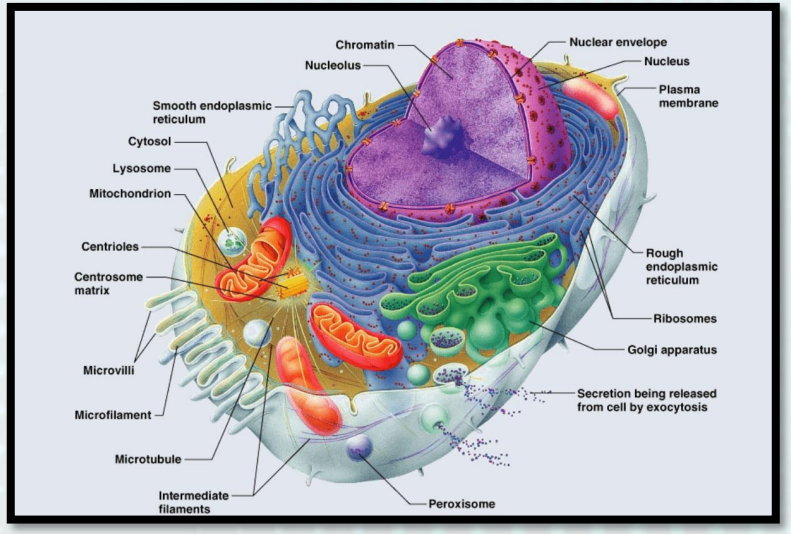
Joana C. Xavier,[a,b] Kiran Raosaheb Patil,[b] and Isabel Rocha[a,*]

- *"The smallest natural genome capable of autonomous growth or laboratory cultivation in pure culture and also in a defined medium (24) is the one of M. genitalium, with **580 kb** (13).* [580,000 bases or 580,000 nucleotides needed.]"
- *"The first theoretical minimal gene set was proposed by Mushegian and Koonin consisting of **256 genes**. Later, one integrative study utilized a larger data set including results from both experimental and computational approaches for the minimal genome and predicted a set of **206 genes** for a theoretical minimal gene set."*

Gene definition (Oxford Online): *"a distinct sequence of nucleotides forming part of a chromosome, the order of which determines the order of monomers in a polypeptide or nucleic acid molecule which a cell (or virus) may synthesize."*

Simplest Minimum Cells

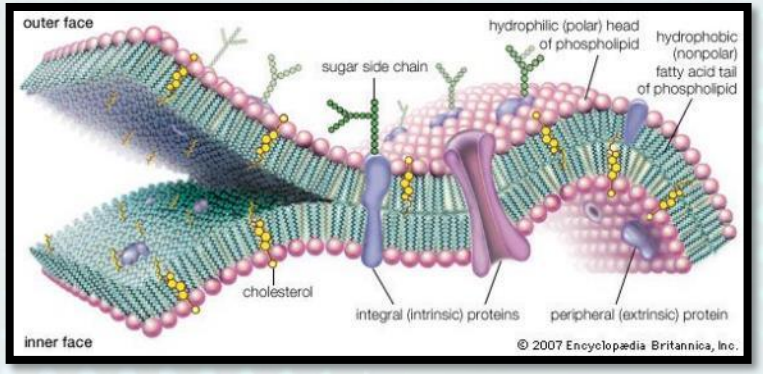
- How simple can a Cell get, before it can no longer function?
- Anything that even remotely resembles a cell:
  - Machinery for Energy Production & Delivery,
  - Information Repository,
  - Selective Gateways w/ Active Transport,
  - Sensors coupled with Signal transduction pathways and signal processing,
  - Mechanisms to Implement Instructions,
  - Manufacturing,
  - Auto-Assembly Processes,
  - Automated Repair Machinery,
  - Error Correction Systems,
  - Waste Disposal and Recycling,
  - Control Systems for Global Coordination.”
- If any of these mechanisms aren’t there, a Cell would break apart and turn into simple chemicals.
- Dr. Brian Miller

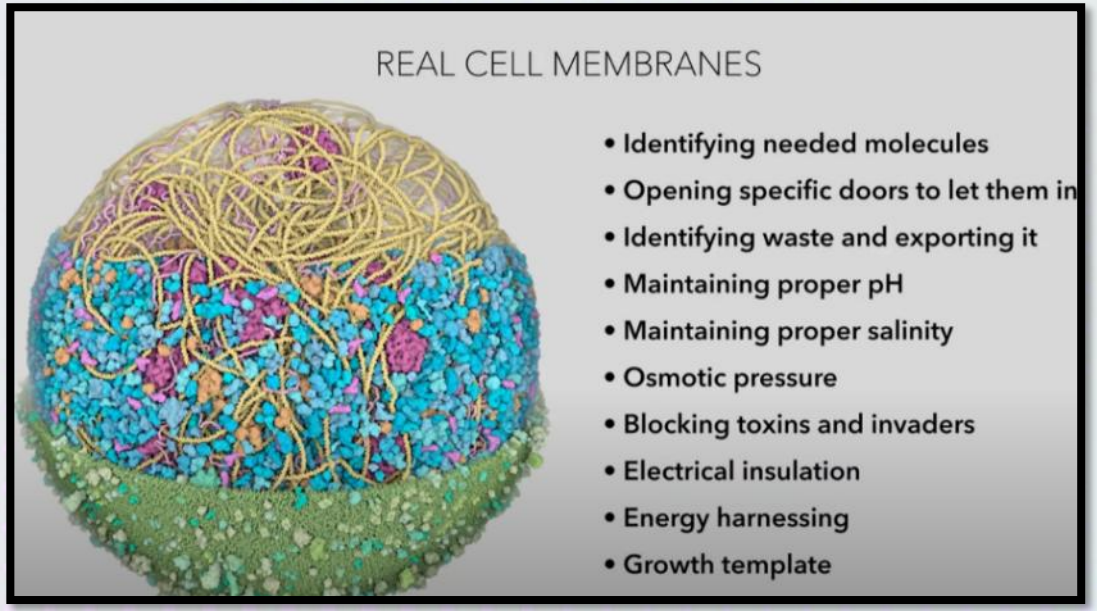


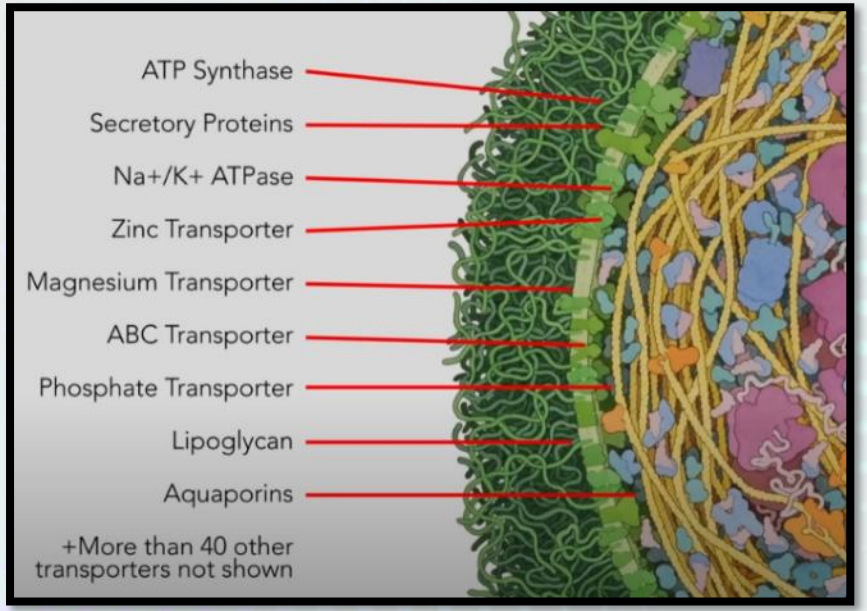
https://youtu.be/BHRcPTS1VHc

Cell Membranes: Complex Machines for Cellular Regulation

- "The simplest known cell is called Mycoplasma genitalium. It has 1000's of specialized doors – composed of over 100 different proteins – that operate in the Cell Membrane.
- Fun Fact: at any time, a Cell is generating the same Voltage per Meter, across its Membrane, as a Bolt of Lightning [30 million volts / meter].
- The simplest cell has extraordinarily complex Membrane – a Selectively Permeable boundary – that allows & forces exactly the right things in & out."
- Source



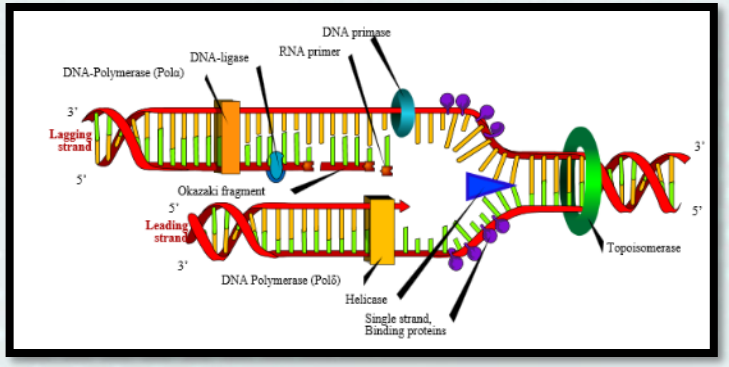


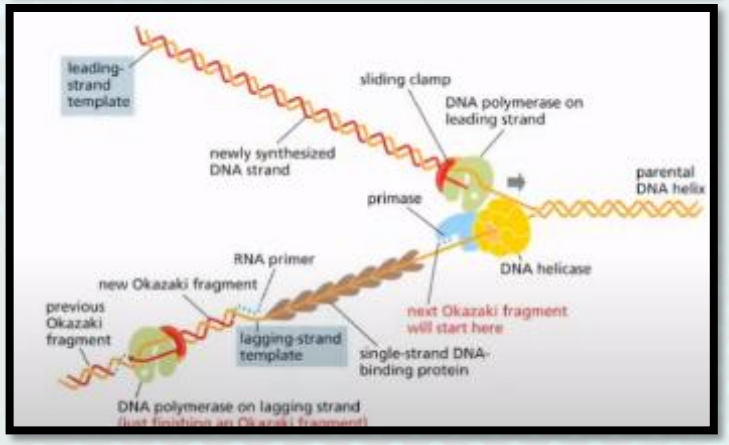


https://www.yourgenome.org/facts/what-is-dna-replication/

DNA Replication:
Minimum Steps Required to Replicate DNA

- #1 - The first step in DNA replication is to 'unzip' the double helix structure of the DNA molecule.
- #2 - This is carried out by an enzyme called helicase which breaks the hydrogen bonds holding the complementary bases of DNA together (A with T, C with G).
- #3 - The separation of the two single strands of DNA creates a 'Y' shape called a replication 'fork'. The two separated strands will act as templates for making the new strands of DNA.
- #4 - One of the strands is oriented in the 3' to 5' direction (towards the replication fork), this is the leading strand. The other strand is oriented in the 5' to 3' direction (away from the replication fork), this is the lagging strand. As a result of their different orientations, the two strands are replicated differently:
- Leading Strand:
- #5 - A short piece of RNA called a primer (produced by an enzyme called primase) comes along and binds to the end of the leading strand. The primer acts as the starting point for DNA synthesis.
- #6 - DNA polymerase binds to the leading strand and then 'walks' along it, adding new complementary nucleotide bases (A, C, G and T) to the strand of DNA in the 5' to 3' direction.
- #7 - This sort of replication is called continuous.
- Lagging Strand:
- #5 - Numerous RNA primers are made by the primase enzyme and bind at various points along the lagging strand.
- #6 - Chunks of DNA, called Okazaki fragments, are then added to the lagging strand also in the 5' to 3' direction.
- #7 - This type of replication is called discontinuous as the Okazaki fragments will need to be joined up later.
- #8 - Once all of the bases are matched up (A with T, C with G), an enzyme called exonuclease strips away the primer(s). The gaps where the primer(s) were are then filled by yet more complementary nucleotides.
- #9 - The new strand is proofread to make sure there are no mistakes in the new DNA sequence.
- #10 - Finally, an enzyme called DNA ligase seals up the sequence of DNA into two continuous double strands.
- #11 - The result of DNA replication is two DNA molecules consisting of one new and one old chain of nucleotides. This is why DNA replication is described as semi-conservative, half of the chain is part of the original DNA molecule, half is brand new.
- #12 - Following replication the new DNA automatically winds up into a double helix.
- Source

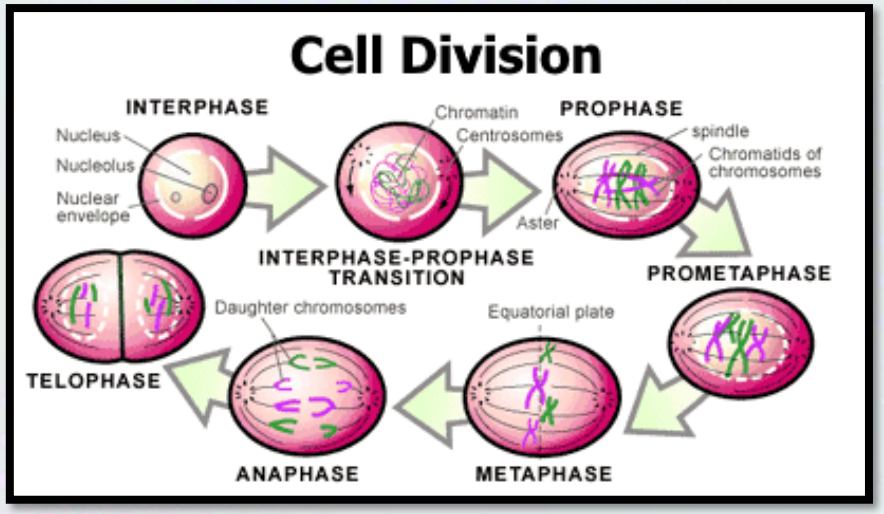


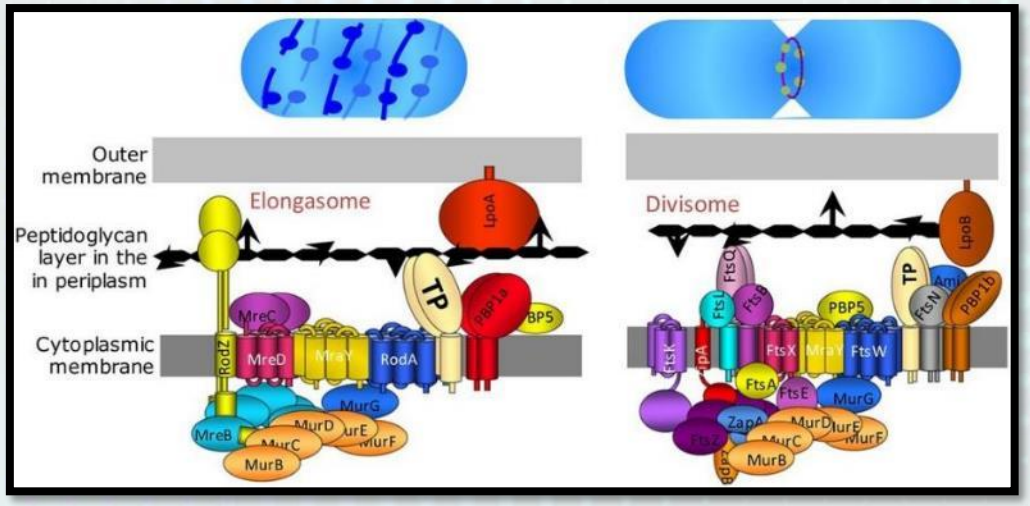


https://medlineplus.gov/genetics/understanding/howgeneswork/cellsdivide/#:~:text=Most%20of%20the%20time%20when,a%20fundamental%20process%20for%20life.

Cell Division (Mitosis): Minimum Steps Required to Cell Replicate

- Most of the time when people refer to “cell division,” they mean mitosis, the process of making new body cells. Meiosis is the type of cell division that creates egg and sperm cells.
- Because this process is so critical, the steps of mitosis are carefully controlled by certain genes. When mitosis is not regulated correctly, health problems such as cancer can result.
- Source

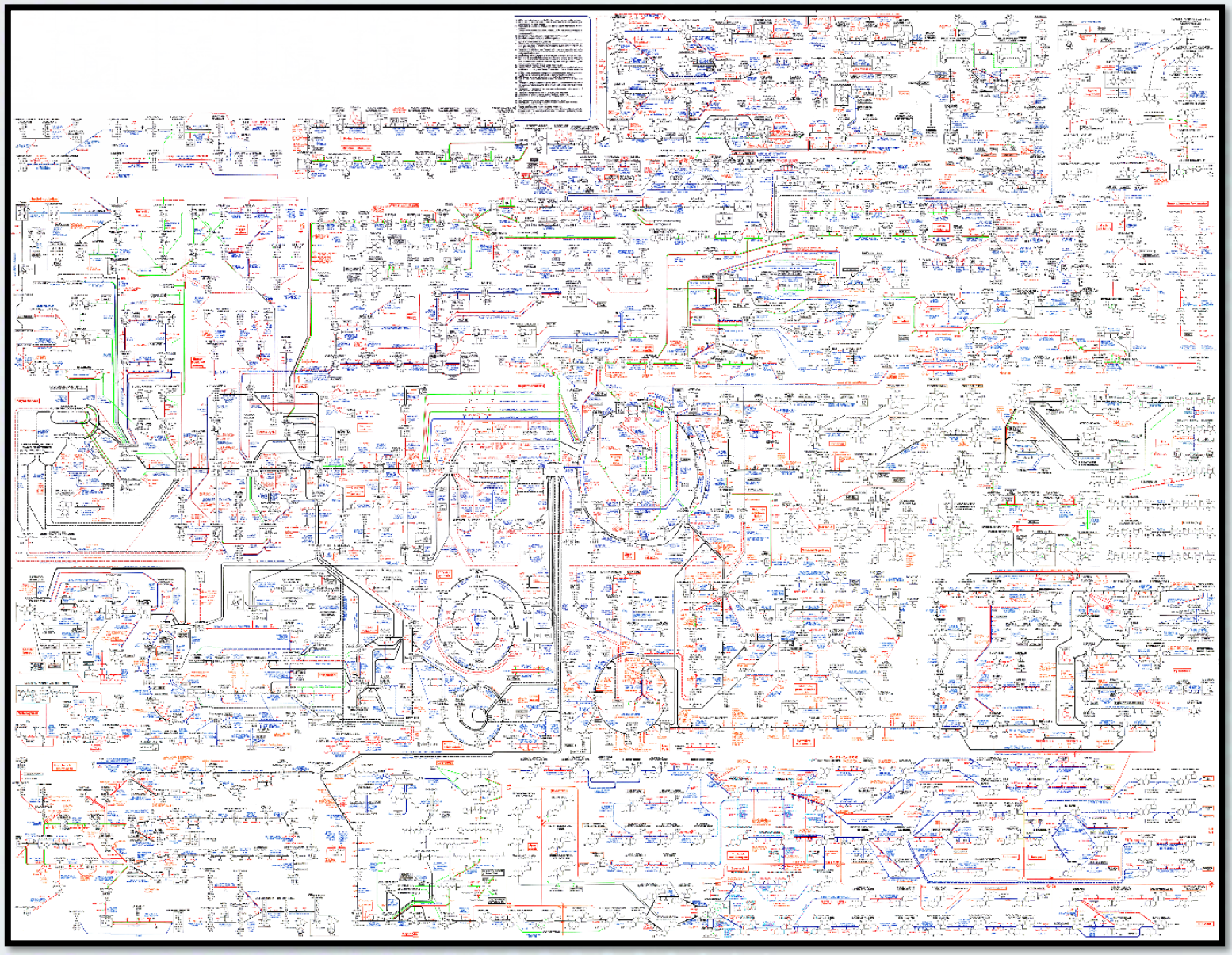




https://evolutionnews.org/2018/05/undeniable-intuitions-and-unbelievable-coincidences/

Simplest Cell Metabolism

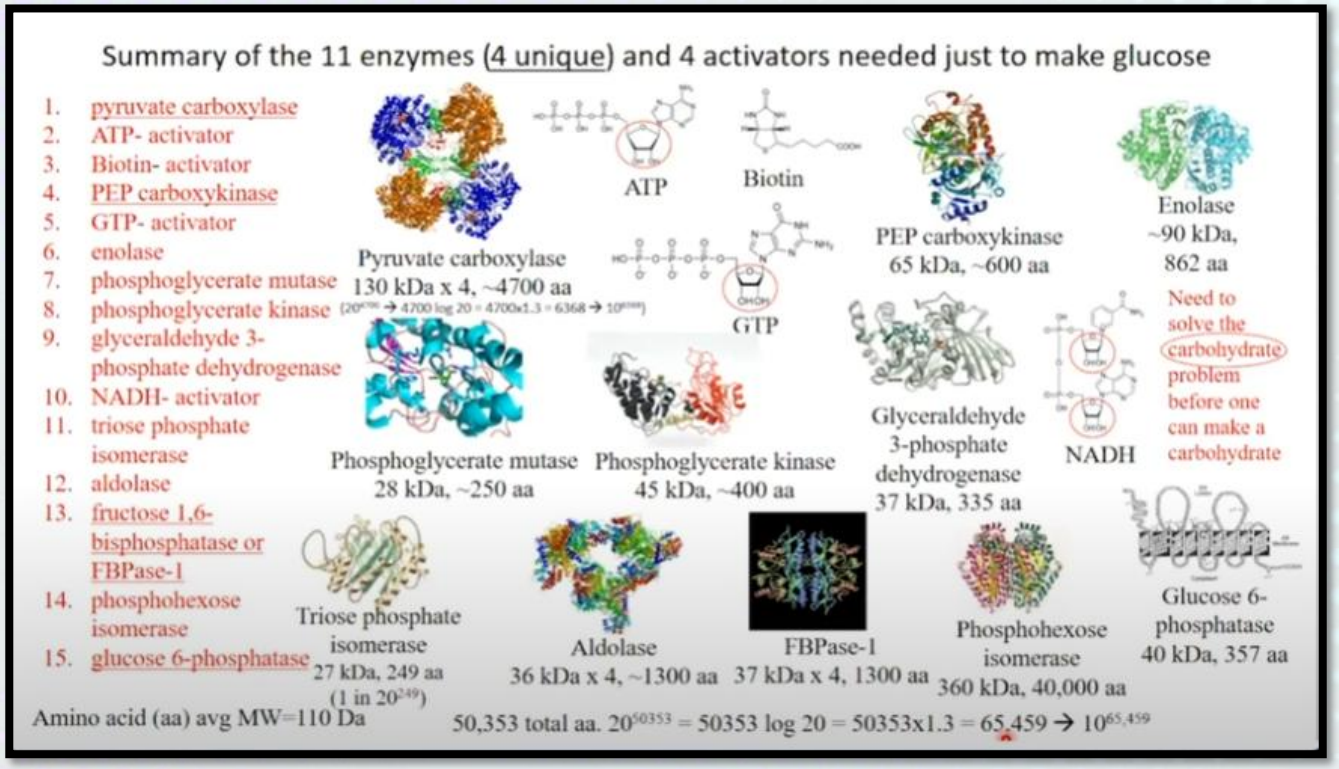
- The simplest known free-living organisms have over a thousand protein-coding genes, each with distinct functional roles. More complex forms of life have at least tenfold more. These genes aren't performing random, disjointed functions. Quite the opposite. Many of them encode the functionally coherent sets of enzymes needed to carry out the chemistry of cellular metabolism.
- Testing these large collections of sequences for encoded functions has been done over and over again, and never has this produced anything that can do the work of a single Metabolic Enzyme.
- Dr. Douglas Axe

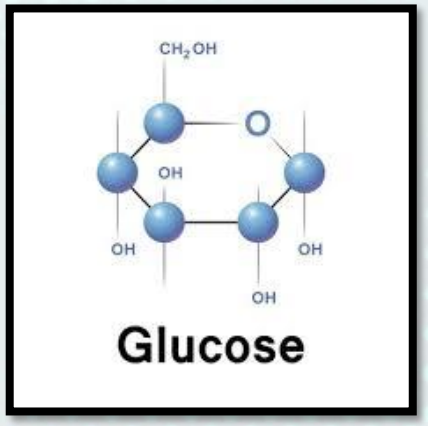


https://youtu.be/MmykRoelTzU?si=FONZ02rZ9PLEZKYU&t=878

Enzymes & Glucose Production

- You might say: “This Enzyme might form randomly”…
- Well, this Enzyme [Pyruvate Carboxylase] to form randomly would be 10^6368 possibilities.
- Some people think that Enzymes can form randomly, without using any of the Active Enzymes, and those would Fold and make other Enzymes… It’s really wishful thinking…
- Dr. James Tour



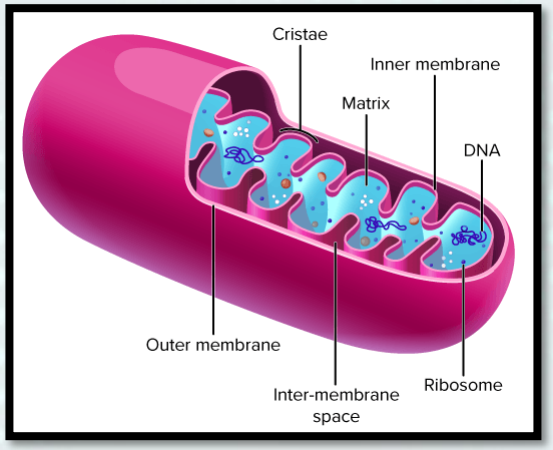


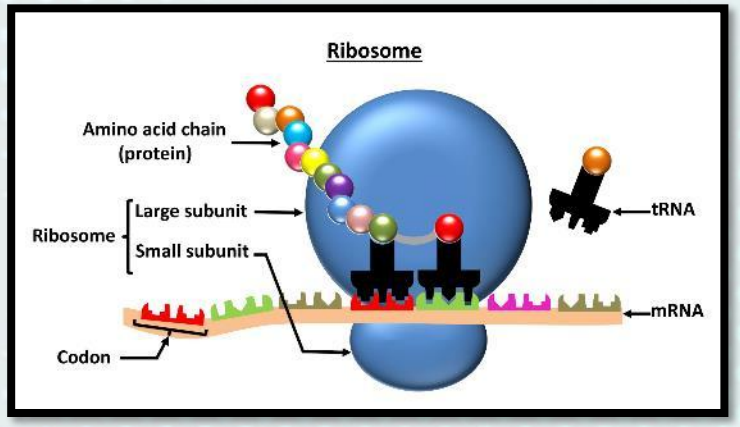
https://evolutionnews.org/i/molecular-machines/

https://evolutionnews.org/2014/07/imagine_how_it3/

Ribosomes: Protein Synthesis Machines

- The ribosome is an “RNA machine” that “involves more than 300 proteins and RNAs” to form a complex where messenger RNA is translated into protein, thereby playing a crucial role in protein synthesis in the cell.
- It requires a “minimum for the ribosome about 53 proteins and 3 polynucleotides,” leading some evolutionist biologists to fear that it may be irreducibly complex.
- #1 The ribosomal RNAs are encoded by genes, using the same genetic code that evolution needs to explain (It’s important to remember that chance alone is all these astrobiologists have to work with. No natural selection was possible until a cell existed with a genetic code already in place, capable of accurate replication.)
- #2 Both ribosomal subunits for the simplest bacterium contain dozens of protein parts integrated with the RNA parts. But the proteins had to be translated by the very ribosome the evolutionists are trying to explain
- Source #1 and Source #2
- DNA to Proteins (Ribosomes) https://youtu.be/gG7uCskUOrA

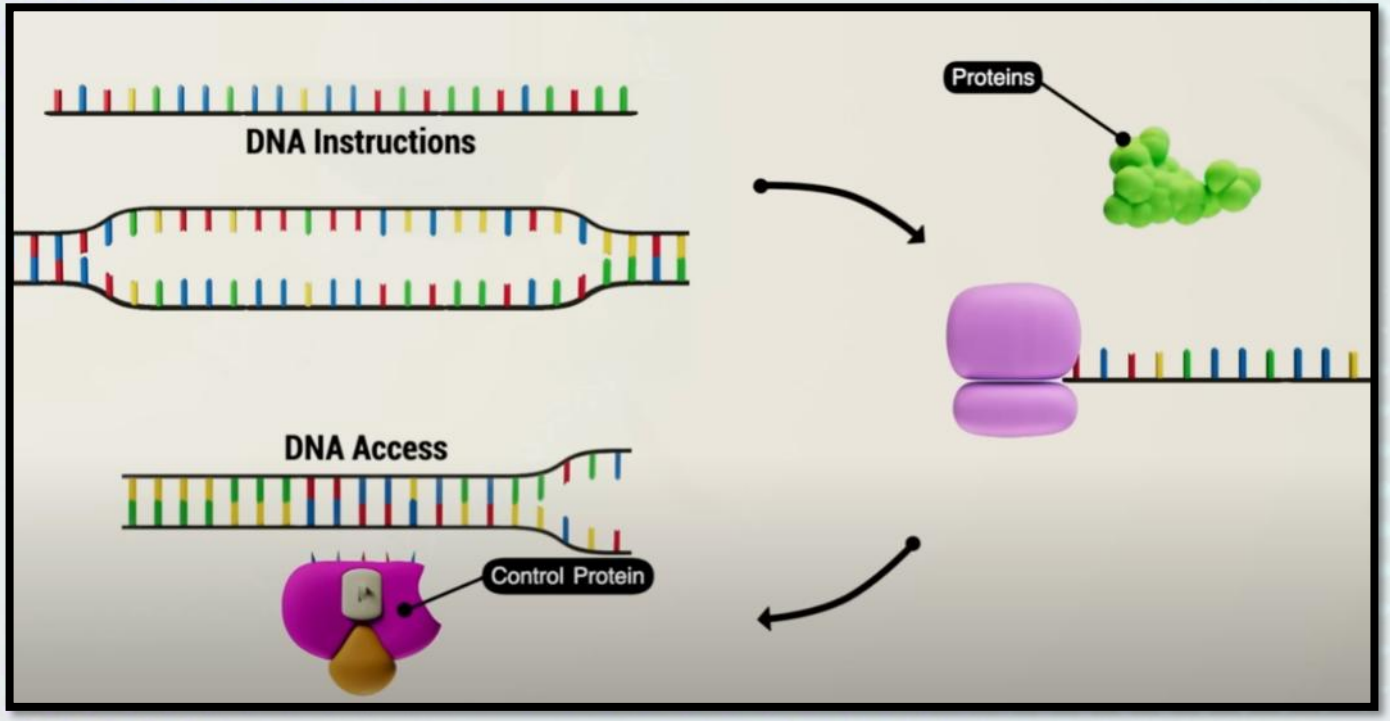




https://youtu.be/pWZpaAIlZgQ?si=_sJf3cx7odK-GN0Y&t=971

DNA & Proteins: Both Required for Simple Life

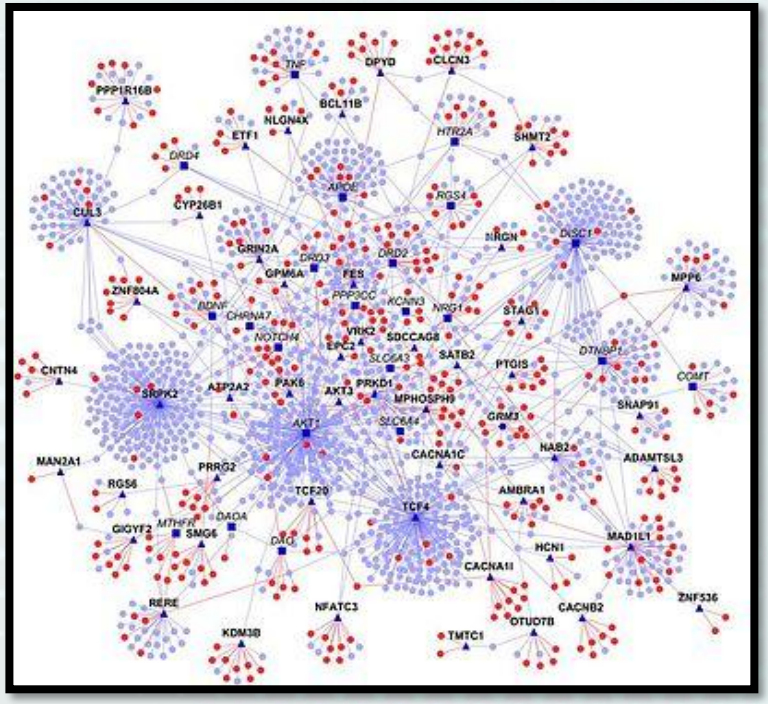
- Without the instructions from DNA, it's impossible to make Proteins…
- At the same time, DNA instructions can't be accessed – without Proteins.
- [It's a situation of] Chicken & Egg speculation…
- Dr. Michael Behe



https://youtu.be/r4sP1E1Jd_Y

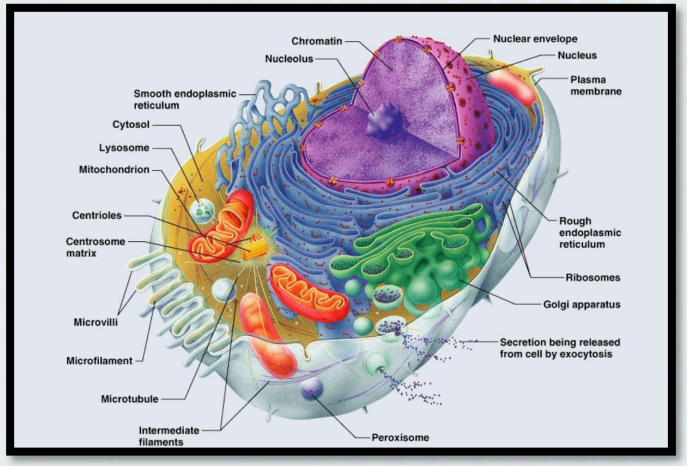
Origin of Life – Probabilities will solve it?

- If one wants to use a Probability Argument … or suggesting there are Multiverses – the numbers are still difficult.
- Just the Protein Interaction in a single Yeast Cell are 10^(79 billion) combinations. [10^79,000,000,000]
- The number of elemental particles in the Universe is 10^90
- In addition to just those 3,000 proteins in that Single Yeast Cell, you still need all the DNA, all the RNA, all the Carbohydrates, remember the Carbohydrates have all their own Definition Ordered by the way their Hooked up. Just D-Mannose you can put more Information in the Carbohydrates on a cells surface than you store in DNA and RNA combined.
- [2011 Paper] Consequently, it is implausible that a completely ‘‘denatured’’ cell could be reversibly renatured spontaneously, like a protein. Instead, new cells are generated by the division of pre-existing cells, an unbroken chain of renewal tracking back through contingent conditions and evolving responses to the origin of life on the prebiotic earth. We surmise that this non-deterministic temporal continuum could not be reconstructed de novo under present conditions.
- Dr. James Tour



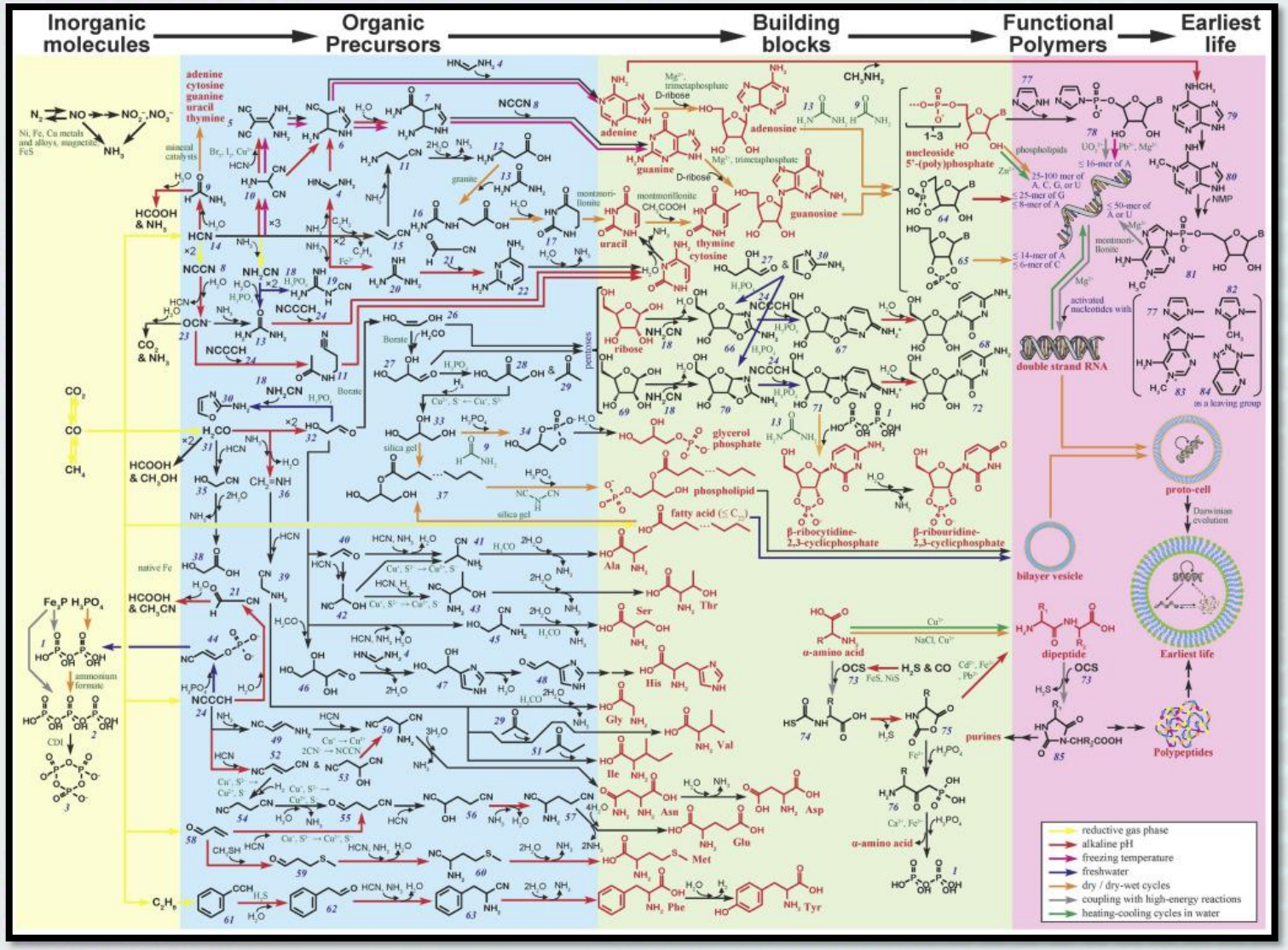
Videos of the Cells Functions

- Cell Membranes https://youtu.be/BHRcPTS1VHc?t=354
- Inner Life of the Cell https://youtu.be/QplXd76lAYQ
- Electron Transport Chain https://youtu.be/LQmTKxI4Wn4
- ATP Synthase https://youtu.be/kXpzp4RDGJI
- DNA & RNA https://youtu.be/7Hk9jct2ozY
- DNA to Protein https://youtu.be/gG7uCskUOrA



https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1674987117301305?via%3Dihub

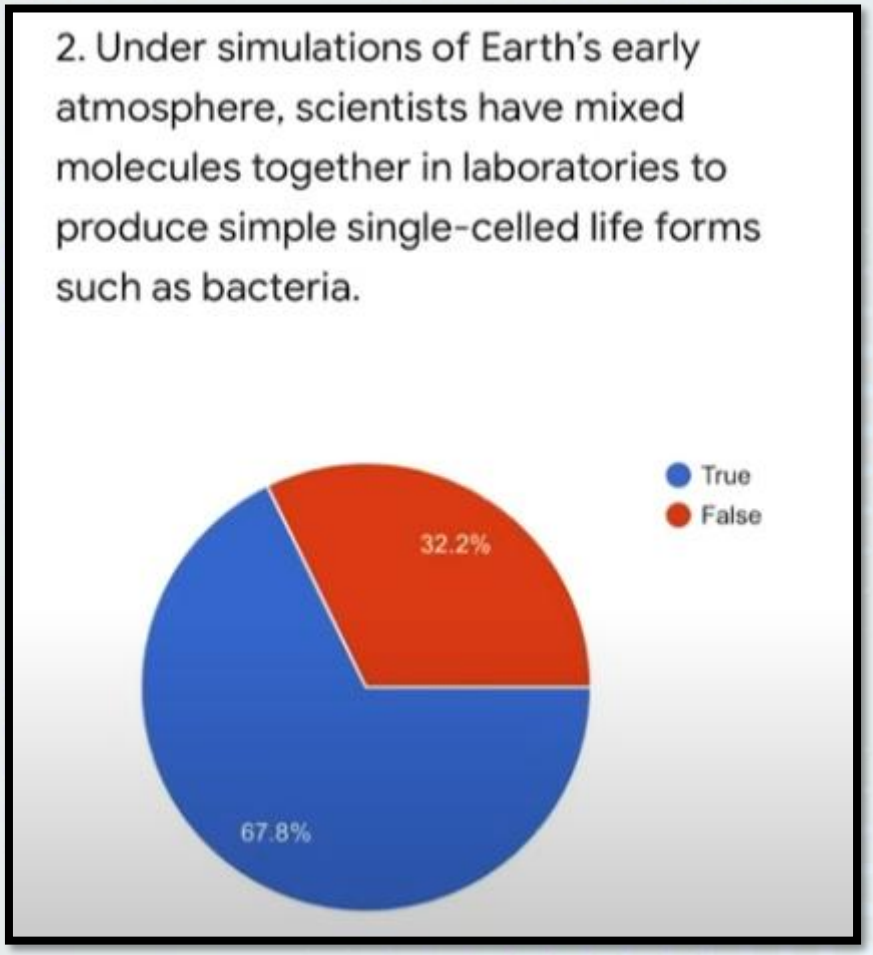
Origin of Life – Required Chemistry



Has Life been made Scientifically in a Lab?

https://youtu.be/9r96ewpbVgs?si=rMADLWgnFbjs5TTg&t=769

According to the Mainstream Dialogue, Science has already made Life



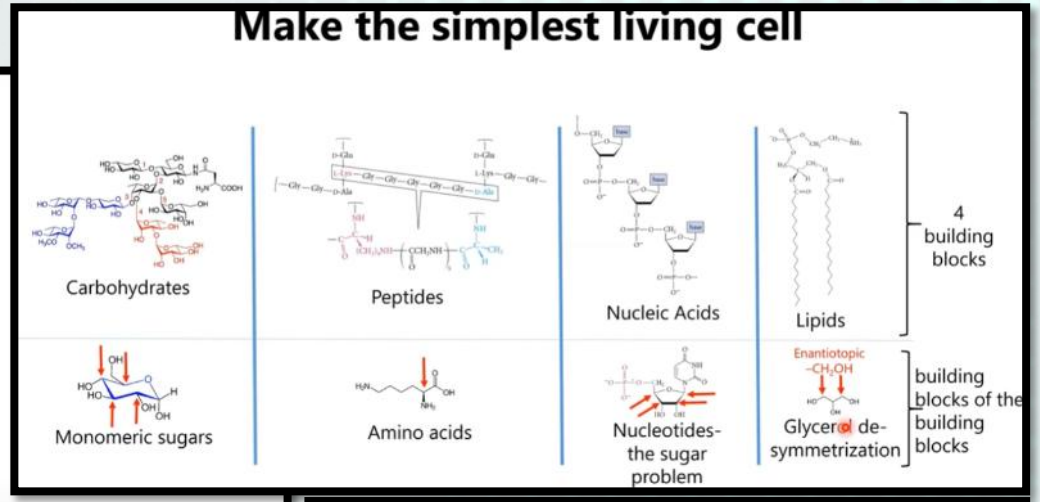
https://youtu.be/roeP70FZYpU?t=2894

Origin of Life – Simplest Modern Cells & Protocells

- They say Cells were much Simpler in the beginning [Protocell].
- It still has to have all of this, or else it's not a Cell!
- Dr. James Tour

"This minimal gene set included genes for

- *"DNA replication, repair, restriction, and modification;*
- *"a basic transcription machinery;*
- *"aminoacyl-tRNA synthesis;*
- *"tRNA maturation and modification;*
- *"ribosomal proteins;*
- *"ribosome function, maturation, and modification;*
- *"translation factors;*
- *"RNA degradation;*
- *"protein processing, folding, and secretion;*
- *"cellular division; transport;*
- *"and energetic and intermediary metabolism (glycolysis, proton motive force generation, pentose phosphate pathway, lipid metabolism, and biosynthesis of nucleotides and cofactors).*
- *"Those authors did not include rRNA or tRNA genes, and they recognized that the basic substrate transport machinery could not be clearly defined, even though this minimal cell would rely greatly on the import of several substrates, including all 20 amino acids (for which it had no biosynthetic ability)."*



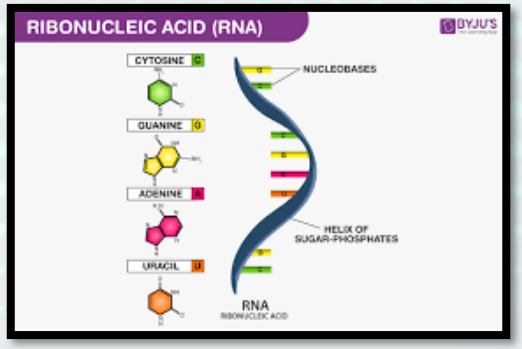
Characteristics of Life

- Responsiveness to the environment;
- growth and change;
- ability to reproduce;
- have a metabolism and breathe;
- maintain homeostasis;
- being made of **cells**; and passing traits onto offspring.

https://youtu.be/roeP70FZYpU?t=2894

Origin of Life – Simplest Modern Cells & RNA World

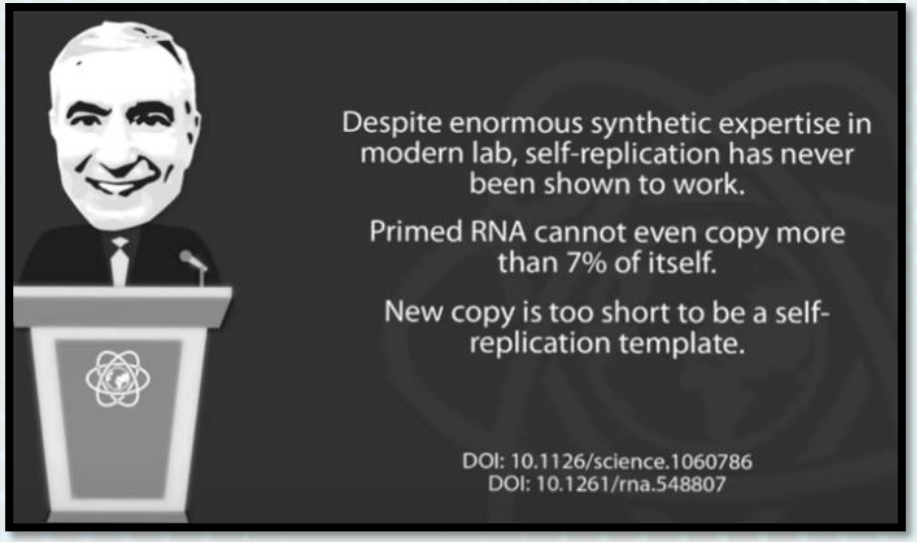
- [They] call upon this RNA-world mumbo-jumbo…
- … which supposes you can take 1-strand of RNA and make these things happen.
- There are 206 protein coding genes minimum – and you have to all those Amino Acids to support them.
- What if you took that strand of RNA in a Petri Dish – how long is that gonna last?
- Even after a day, you're gonna have decomposition [RNA]. It's supposed to be stored at -112 Fahrenheit.
- Then tell me about the RNA Hypothesis, somehow this is Life.
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/71GTCHkId6M?si=gGk45bXvpQlLGGZH&t=893

Origin of Life – Simplest Modern Cells & RNA Replication

- They say RNA can Replicate itself.
- RNA does not Replicate itself.
- The biggest example known is only 7% of an RNA, that was Primed & Designed to replicate itself, was able to replicate only 7% of itself.
- The entire RNA Hypothesis that all you need is a [Strand of RNA] and it goes from there… That's a bunch of nonsense!
- You can't just have RNA. Why? Because RNA is unstable. It decomposes at -80 degrees, its Half-Life is even short. Certainly at Room Temperature it's [Half-Life] is going to be Short.
- If you just tried to get the Nucleotide to polymerize, you get the 3',5' linkage along with the 2',5' linkage – and the 2',5' linkage shuts the whole thing down.
- Dr. James Tour



RNA self-replication

In general, RNA replication needs RNA polymerase or RNA replicase, as in viral RNA polymerase. However, in the "RNA world" explorations, researchers have made specially designed and primed RNA that can replicate itself without the exogenous enzymes. Gerald Joyce is one of the leaders in this field. But these self-replicating RNA enzymes are limited, far from a general application, and they have not duplicated a significant portion of themselves where further daughters could ensue. For example, a short RNA of 189-bases could replicate an 11-mer from *primed* template strands (6% of the strand was copied). It had an error rate of 1.1% per nucleotide which is a high error rate. The largest it was able to replicate as a 14-mer which is also too short for self-replication (7% copied). The record is 20-bases long, but again too short for further replication.

Obviously, all the component nucleotides were isolated from natural sources.

DOI: 10.1126/science.1060786; DOI: 10.1261/rna.548807

https://youtu.be/roeP70FZYpU?t=2894

Origin of Life – Simplest Modern Cells & Meteorites

- Traces of biologically relevant molecules have been found in Meteorites…
- That does not Solve any problem in Origin of Life – it just transfers the problem. We're talking about Origin of First Life.
- You have to generate these molecules. How was that done?
- Dr. James Tour

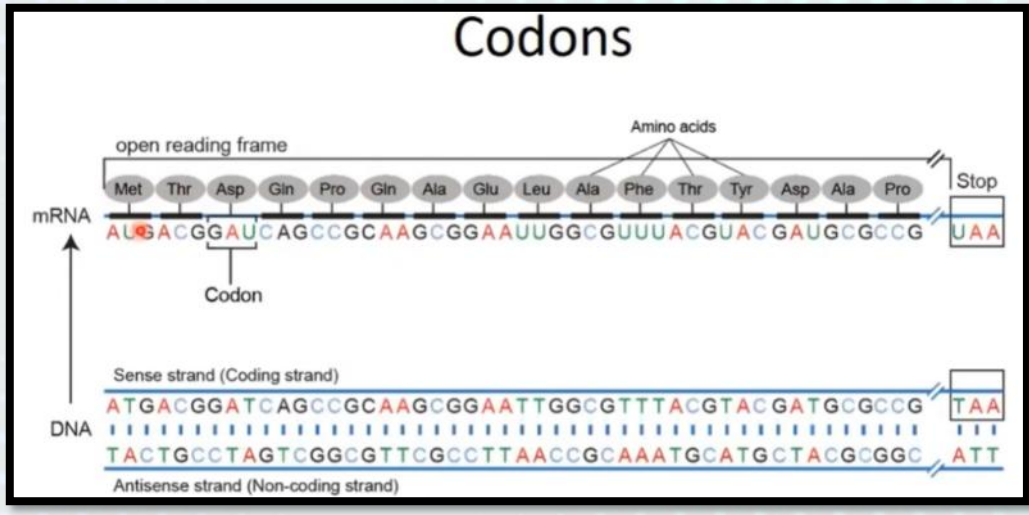
Meteorite delivery of the building blocks of the building blocks?

- Traces of biologically relevant molecules have been found in meteorites and isotopic studies have confirmed that some of those are not of Earth origin. Generally, those molecules are racemic, or have low enantiomeric excesses (no homochirality) or too low in concentration to be assessed for their degree of enantiomeric excess. Hence, either (a) they were synthesized in a racemic manner and therefore not life-relevant as we know life or (b) they had significant enantiomeric excesses and then racemized at some time after the formation. For example, see DOI: 10.1016/j.epsl.2008.03.026 and https://doi.org/10.1016/j.gsf.2017.07.007.
- There are claimed exceptions to the racemic compounds. For example, up to 60% enantiomeric excess has been claimed in D-*allo*isoleucine, a diastereomer of the protein-forming amino acid L-isoleucine (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1204865109). Contests to those claims of 60% enantiomeric excess have ensued (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1213261109) with further rebuttal (https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1213714109).
- If life originated on another planet and was transported to Earth by a meteorite or with intent, that does nothing not solve the problem of life's origin. It just transfers the problem to another location.

https://youtu.be/CYiguQYCSio?si=gHOkPSNZ08gMaG-c&t=1852

Origin of Life – DNA, Proteins, Codons, and Information

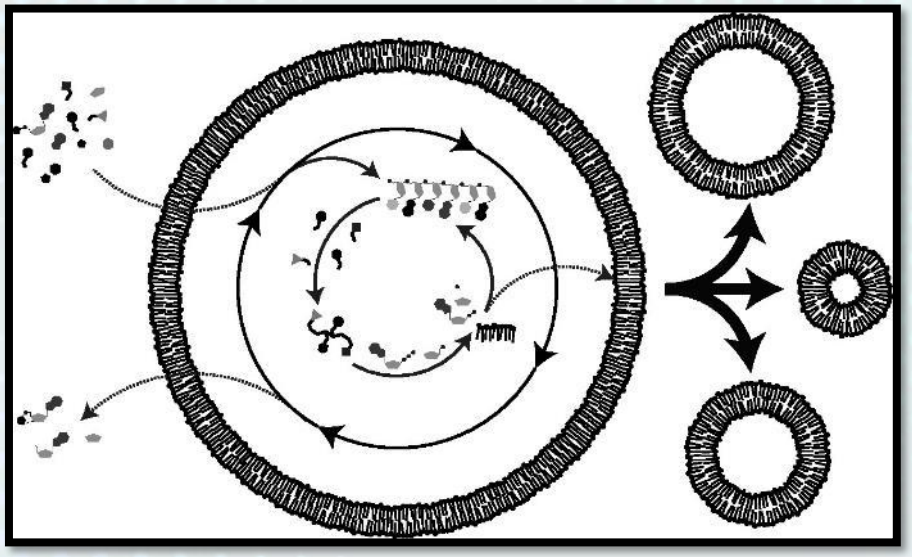
- Selection does not exist on a Prebiotic Earth.
- [Prebiotic Earth] There is nothing to do the Selection, and there is no Target to motivate a choice.
- You can't just put oligonucleotides together in any sequence – and have a viable DNA that can code something. You have to have the right Codons.
- You have DNA that has a certain sequence. It will translate into RNA – that has a particular sequence. These sequences – these 3 unit sequences – are called Codons, which translate into the Synthesis, which then builds the Proteins.
- If you just randomly hook them together, you don't have the Codons to make these.
- DNA carries code for how Amino Acids should be ordered.
- Transferring that Code to RNA – which then builds the proteins.
- Nucleotides randomly hooked together to make DNA – there's no Information there.
- You need Codons in order for them to translate the information to RNA Synthesis – and then Protein synthesis.
- How do the Nucleotides know to hook up – in a prescribed order – to form the Codons – for the particular Peptides?
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/yUaYxxF58Rw?si=P_hSqb14MzXQEcso&t=1601

Origin of Life – Protocell Membranes

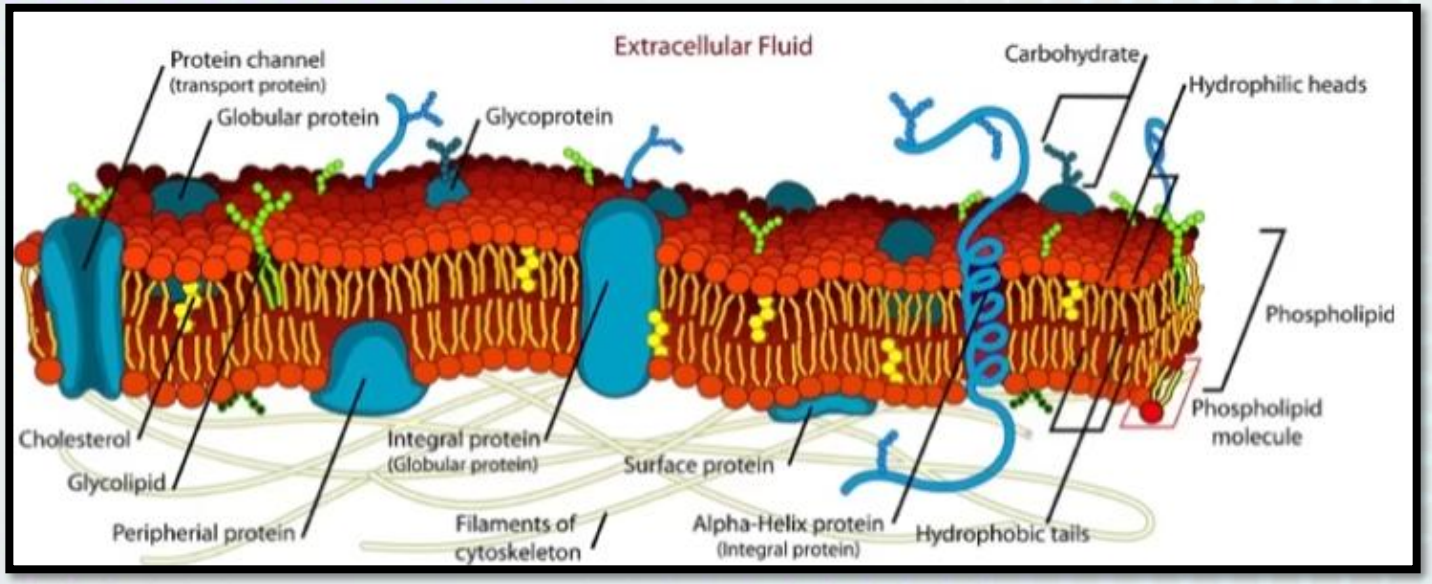
- There is a Marangoni effect – if you take Oil, and you let the Droplets form larger-and-larger, they will eventually Break … to form Smaller Bubbles.
- He says these form these Vesicles, and they divide much like a Cell Divides in Life.
- No – it doesn't have Symmetrical Division, there is no DNA division, no cleaveage in the middle to have a Duplicate Copy of the Vesicle… it's just a Marangoni Effect.
- This has nothing to do with Life – Cells have a very orchestrated pattern for Cell Division.
- [Cells] have to Divide in the Middle, by high specificity… to make sure you get an Even Division.
- [Protocells] have nothing to do with Life.
- All its showing is a simple Marangoni effect.
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/zU7Lww-sBPg?t=1790

Origin of Life – Protocell Cell Membrane

- Researchers have identified 40,000 different Lipids in the Cell Membrane.
- Every Protocell Experiment – they use 1 type of Lipid.
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/IaJo5jWs_6k?t=4361

Origin of Life – Protocell Metabolism

- Dr. James Tour

Metabolism has never been demonstrated in a protocell.

Metabolism

Metabolism [is] the sum of the chemical reactions that take place within each cell of a living organism and that provide energy for vital processes and for synthesizing new organic material.

Living organisms are unique in that they can extract energy from their environments and use it to carry out activities such as movement, growth and development, and reproduction. But how do living organisms—or, their cells—extract energy from their environments, and how do cells use this energy to synthesize and assemble the components from which the cells are made? The answers to these questions lie in the enzyme-mediated chemical reactions that take place in living matter (metabolism). Hundreds of coordinated, multistep reactions, fueled by energy obtained from nutrients and/or solar energy, ultimately convert readily available materials into the molecules required for growth and maintenance.

https://youtu.be/71GTCHkId6M?t=914

Origin of Life – Water

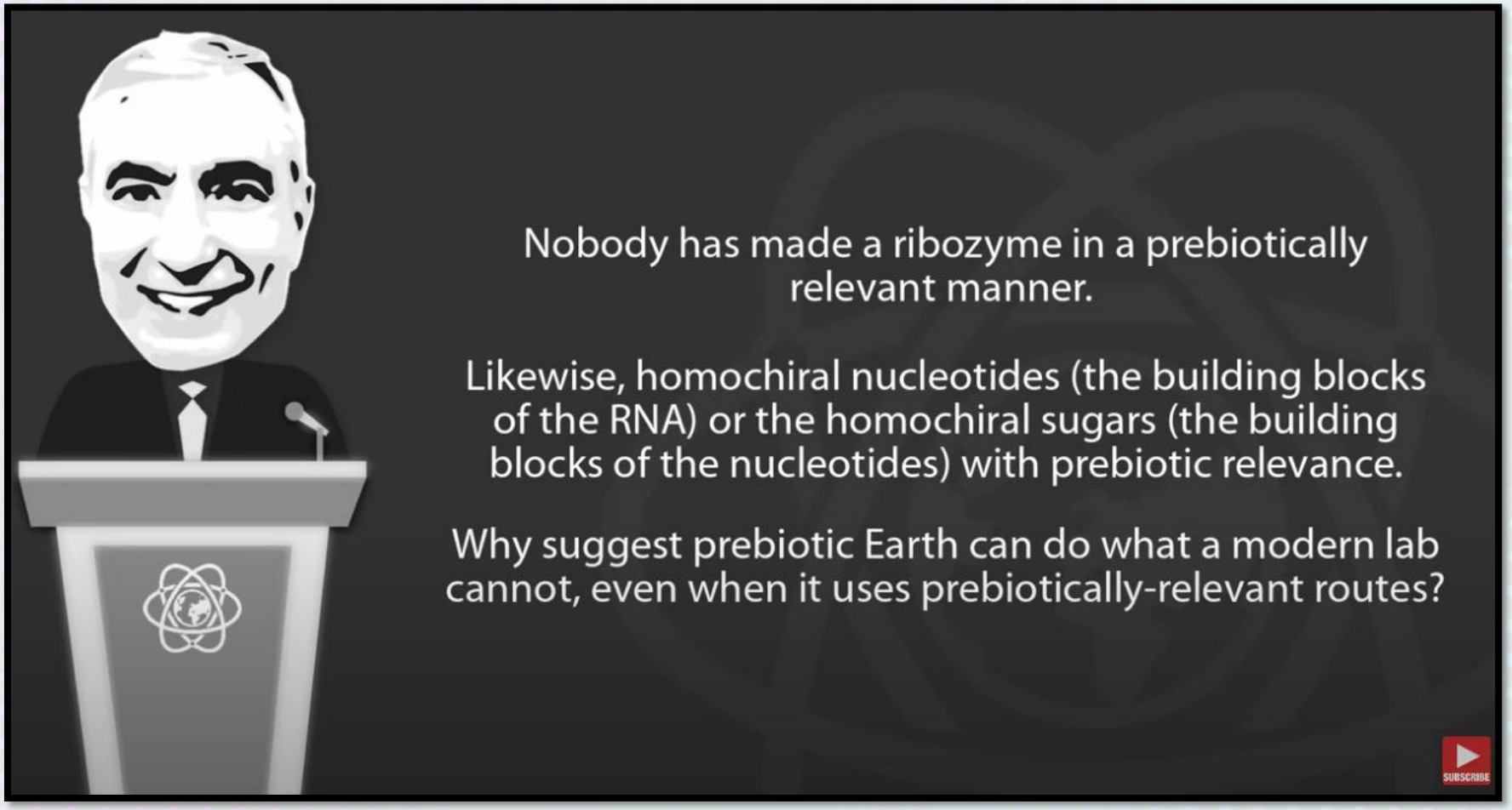
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/IaJo5jWs_6k?si=YS3blxjVlSnsaLrz&t=3139

Origin of Life – Ribozymes causing RNA Replication

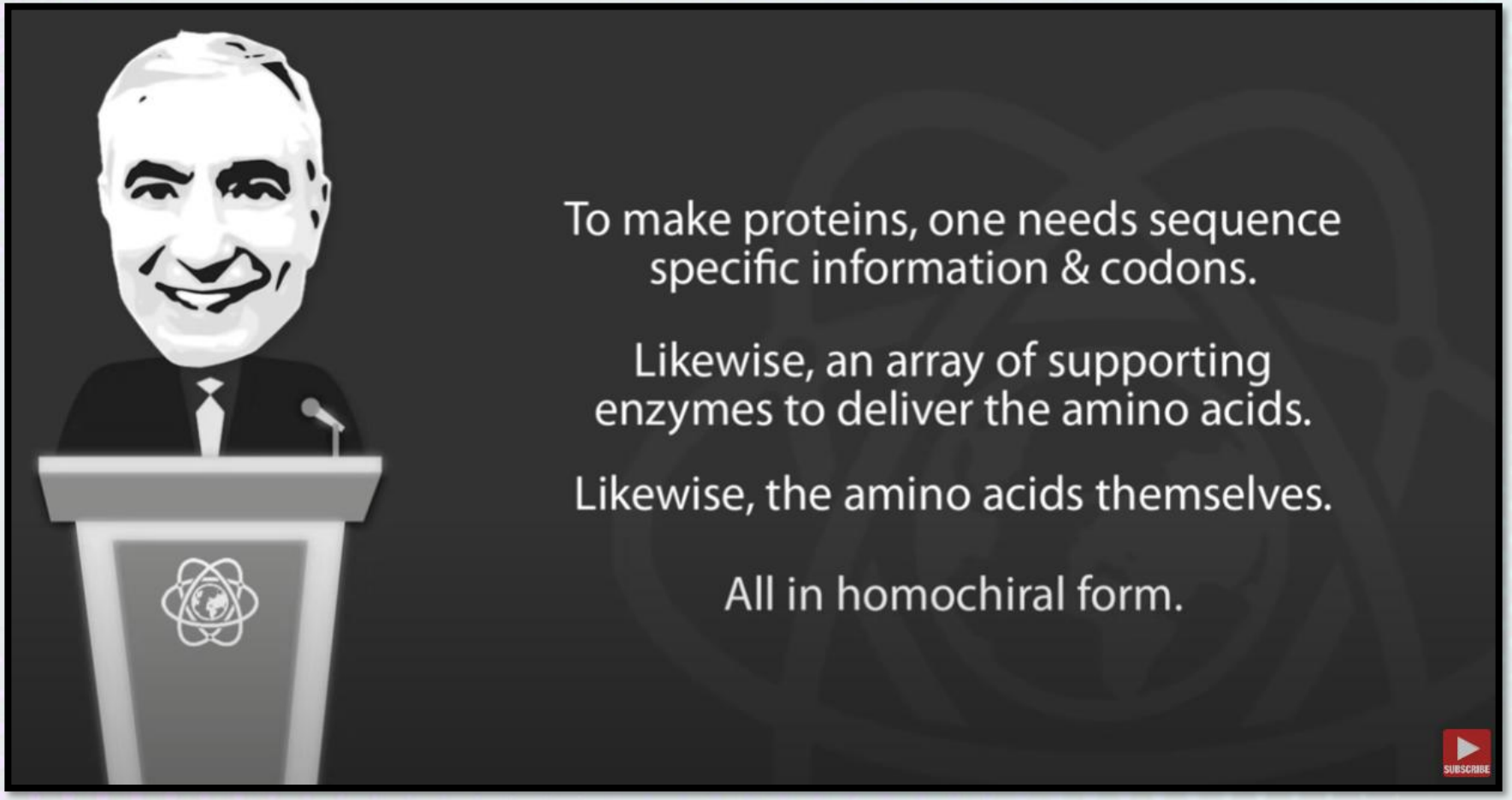
- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/IaJo5jWs_6k?si=YS3blxjVlSnsaLrz&t=3139

Origin of Life – Making Proteins requirements

- Dr. James Tour



https://youtu.be/zU7Lww-sBPg?t=1790

Origin of Life – Experiments

- All Origin of Life experiments can be summed up as:
- Dr. James Tour

Almost every chemical synthesis experiment in Origin of Life (OoL) research can be summed up by a protocol analogous to this:

- Purchase some chemicals, generally in high purity, from a chemical company.
- Mix those chemicals together in water in high concentrations or in a specific order under some set of carefully devised conditions in a modern laboratory.
- Obtain a mixture of compounds that have a resemblance to one or more of the basic four classes of chemicals needed for life: carbohydrates, nucleic acids, amino acids or lipids.
- Publish a paper making bold assertions about OoL from these functionless crude mixtures of sterochemically scrambled intermediates, much like Miller did in 1952.
- Engage with the ever-gullible press to dial-up the knob of unjustified extrapolation.
- Watch the mesmerized layperson exclaim, "You see, scientist understand how life formed!"
- Encourage a generation of science textbook writers to make colorful deceptive cartoons of raw chemicals assembling into cells, which then emerge as slithering creatures from a prehistoric pond.

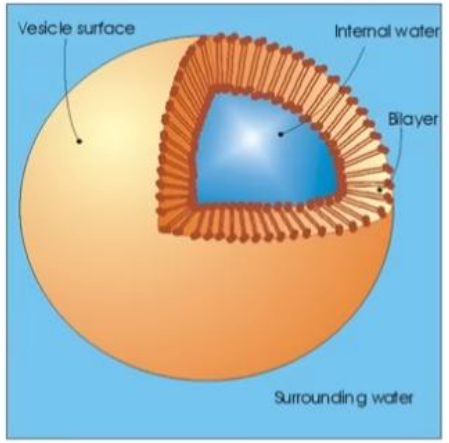
https://youtu.be/zU7Lww-sBPg?t=1790

Origin of Life – Experiments

- All Origin of Life experiments can be summed up as:
- Dr. James Tour

The assembly problem

"A protocell is a self-organized, endogenously ordered, spherical collection of lipids proposed as a stepping-stone to the origin of life ."



Most so-called protocell assembly experiment in OoL research can be summed up by a protocol analogous to this:

- Purchase a homochiral diacyl lipid from a chemical company or synthesize stereochemically scrambled lipids from smaller molecules. Add those lipids to water and observe a small amount of it to for the simple and expected thermodynamically driven assembly of those lipids into synthetic bilayer vesicles upon agitation. Sometimes the researchers will add other molecules that get engulfed by the vesicle as it forms.
- Publish a paper claiming that that synthetic vesicle is a protocell and suggestive of early forms of cellular life.
- Engage with the media to ramp up the hype.

https://youtu.be/zU7Lww-sBPg?t=1621

Origin of Life – Protocell

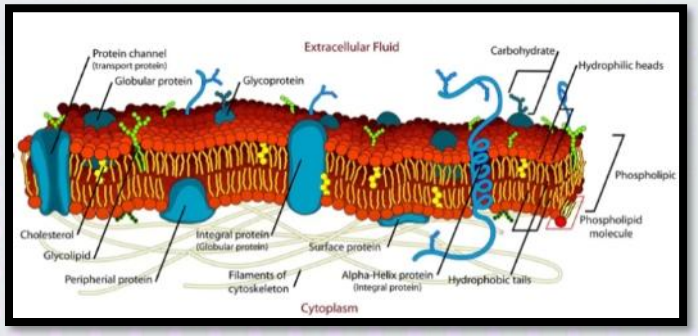
- https://youtu.be/zU7Lww-sBPg?t=1621
- Dr. James Tour

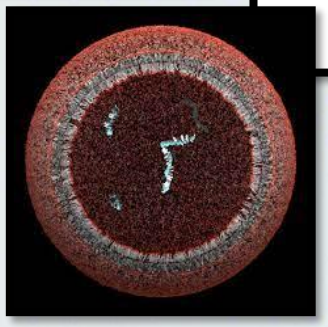
Conclusions From This Segment Of The Video – 26:45 – 37:30

- Amino acid strings don't hook themselves together – no one knows how this is done
- Nucleotides (genes) – nobody knows how they hook themselves together without enzymes that we have today. There were no enzymes on early earth
- Protocell research: Misleading the press and laypeople with pure chemicals doing well-known chemical processes and then calling the results protocells
  - "All garbage"

More Conclusions From This Video Segment

- There are 40,000 different lipids in a cell membrane (!)
  - Experiments use one – inside and out
- Outside lipids different than inside ones
  - No one knows how this was done
- Internal components (nucleus, mitochondria, etc) have different lipids
  - Different bilayer membranes than in the cell wall or elsewhere
  - No one knows how this was done
- Pore complex – regulate certain things in and out
  - Very complex; cell explodes if ion concentration is too high
  - No experiments include this
- Carbohydrate appendages – vast number – cell is covered with them
  - How cells recognize each other
  - One simple carbohydrate has over 1 trillion ways it can be assembled
  - Much more information stored in carbohydrates than in DNA
    - No clue how to assemble it
- Interactomes – physical interactions among molecules in a cell
  - $10^{79,000,000,000}$ possible combinations of protein to protein interactions in a single yeast cell
  - No one has any idea
- Prototurkey analogy for protocell research
  - Buy sliced meat, turkey broth
  - Heat, add feathers
  - "Given enough time" a proto turkey will pop out

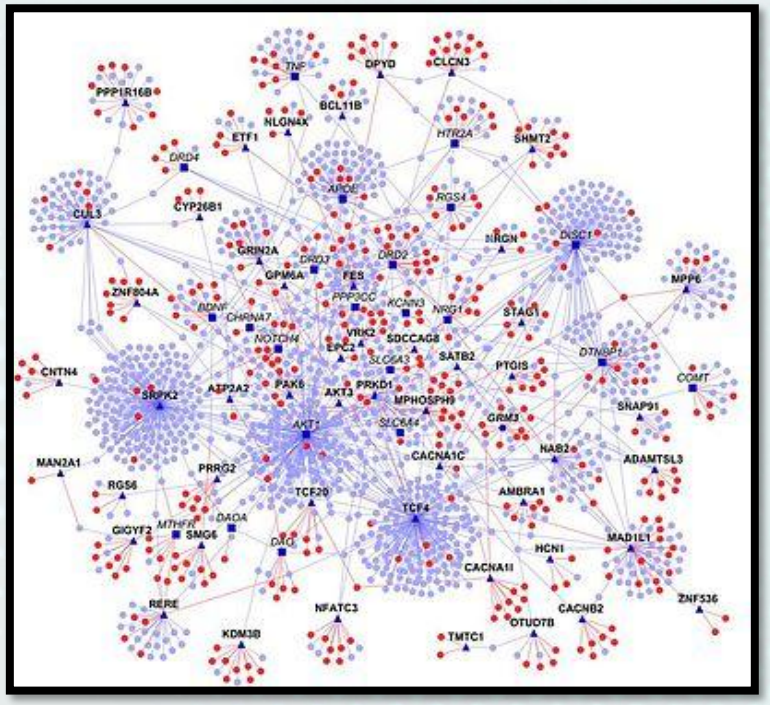




https://youtu.be/r4sP1E1Jd_Y

Origin of Life – Probabilities Arguments

- If one wants to use a Probability Argument … or suggesting there are Multiverses – the numbers are still difficult.
- Just the Protein Interaction in a single Yeast Cell are 10^(79 billion) combinations. [10^79,000,000,000]
- The number of elemental particles in the Universe is 10^90
- In addition to just those 3,000 proteins in that Single Yeast Cell, you still need all the DNA, all the RNA, all the Carbohydrates, remember the Carbohydrates have all their own Definition Ordered by the way their Hooked up. Just D-Mannose you can put more Information in the Carbohydrates on a cells surface than you store in DNA and RNA combined.
- [2011 Paper] Consequently, it is implausible that a completely ‘‘denatured’’ cell could be reversibly renatured spontaneously, like a protein. Instead, new cells are generated by the division of pre-existing cells, an unbroken chain of renewal tracking back through contingent conditions and evolving responses to the origin of life on the prebiotic earth. We surmise that this non-deterministic temporal continuum could not be reconstructed de novo under present conditions.
- Dr. James Tour



Videos on Origin of Life

- Dr. Tour (Paper Review) Summary of Origin of Life
- https://youtu.be/71GTCHkId6M
- Dr. Tour (Paper Review) Cell Construction & Assembly Problem https://youtu.be/IaJo5jWs_6k
- Dr. Tour Analysis of Origin of Life #1
- https://youtu.be/Qte8NX4R8MY
- Dr. Tour Analysis of Origin of Life #2
- https://youtu.be/yUaYxxF58Rw
- Origin of Life – Intro (by Discovery)
- https://youtu.be/E501YvJgNdA?si=ZpfZH7d_H4mZ5sIF
- Origin of Life – RNA Self Replication (by Discovery)
- https://youtu.be/zK3jQtzIHLI?si=_UxK-toFECheF1HS

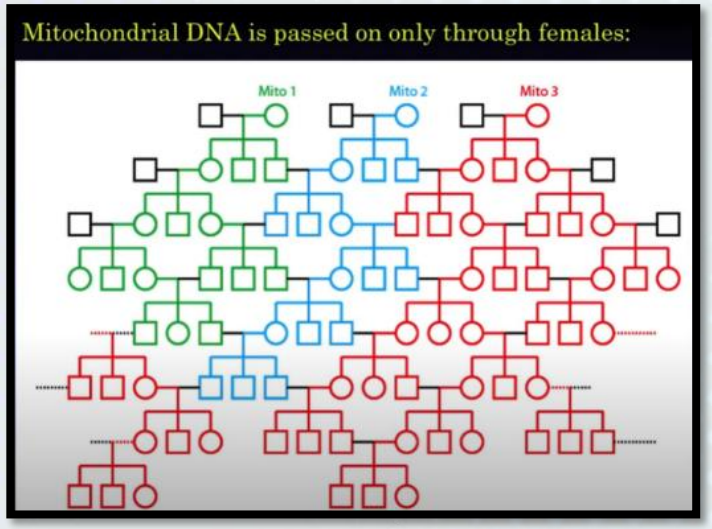
Population Genetics (Adam & Eve)

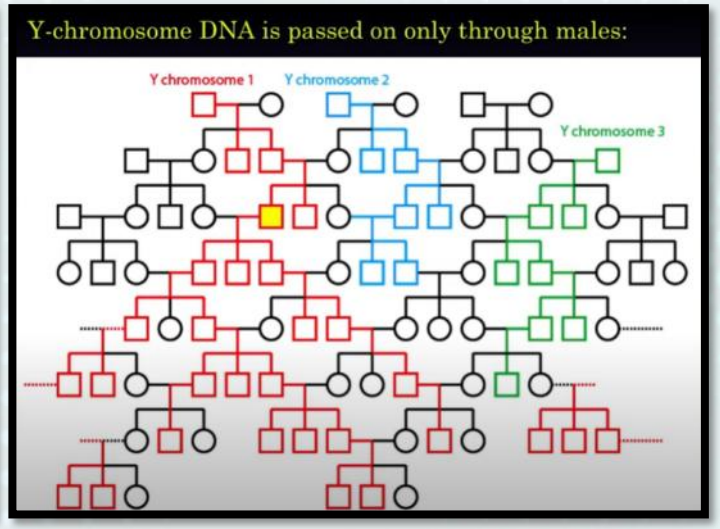


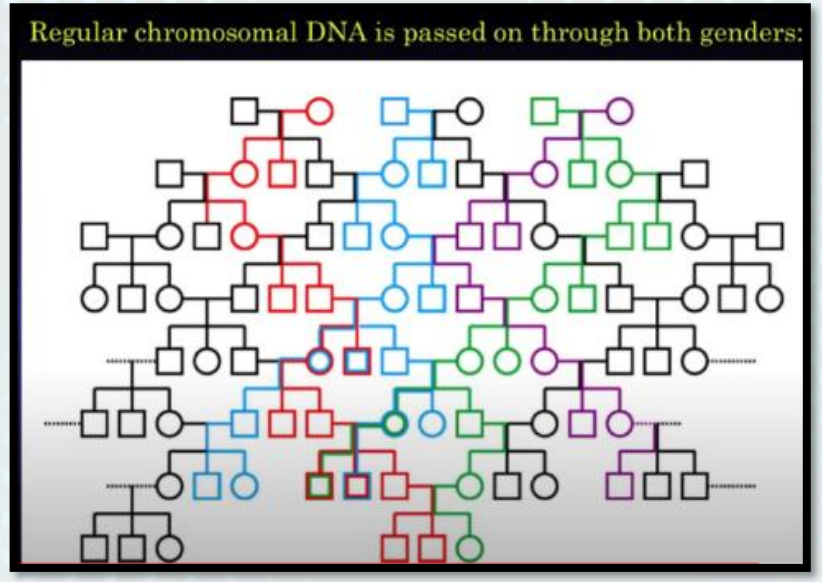
https://youtu.be/t0fnNuQfzq0?si=ke-zYDBLAZrSYcWt&t=1058

Adam, Eve, and Population Genetics

- We all get our Y Chromosome from 1 man – as a Population…
- We all get our Mitochondrial DNA from 1 woman – as a Population…
- And, we all get our Chromosomal DNA variation from a Group of about 10,000.
- These things are Both True – and it has to do with the different Inheritance Patterns.
- Dr. Dennis Venema







https://youtu.be/XJD1MwGlK4w?si=PNxB7Cm4PcFOf-5

Adam & Eve Genealogy?

- One of the questions in Genesis is “What about outside the Garden?” – A lot of people have wondered about People outside the Garden… My suggestion is that maybe their were People outside – maybe he’s Miraculously intervening at different points … then at a certain point God creates specially Adam & Eve – and they become Ancestors of everyone really quickly.
- An objection people will say: “I thought Mitochondrial Eve and Y Chromosome Adam were 100,000 years ago”… And you’re right – they were a long time ago.
- This is a distinction between Genetic & Genealogical Ancestry.
- … [High up on your Genealogy] Those are Ancestors that are your Genealogical Ancestors – but they didn’t give you any DNA – exactly Zero DNA…
- Just in 10 generations – about 60% of your Ancestors … they don’t give you any DNA.
- Go back a few 1,000 years ago, 99.9% of your Ancestors gave you no DNA.
- The ones that did give you DNA – are like the lottery winners.
- That means that Science of Genetics tells us about the Past – particularly about Population…
- But very quickly, it becomes very difficult to tell us anything about Individual Couples or People.
- Adam and Eve would just be [outside the view] of Genetics… They might’ve even been [Instantaneously] Created.
- Could they be Ancestors of Everyone?.. Our Best estimates indicate they would be Ancestors of everyone… I don’t mean we get DNA from them – they would be Genetic Ghosts – but our Genealogical Ancestors.
- What could be going on instead … God creates this Population outside the Garden by an Evolutionary Process – then he also creates Covenantal Humanity through Adam and Eve…
- Dr. Josh Swamidass



Historical Events
Sodom & Gomorrah



https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=RFFZD8rwwIES9WNy&t=2370

https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-021-97778-3

Sodom & Gomorrah

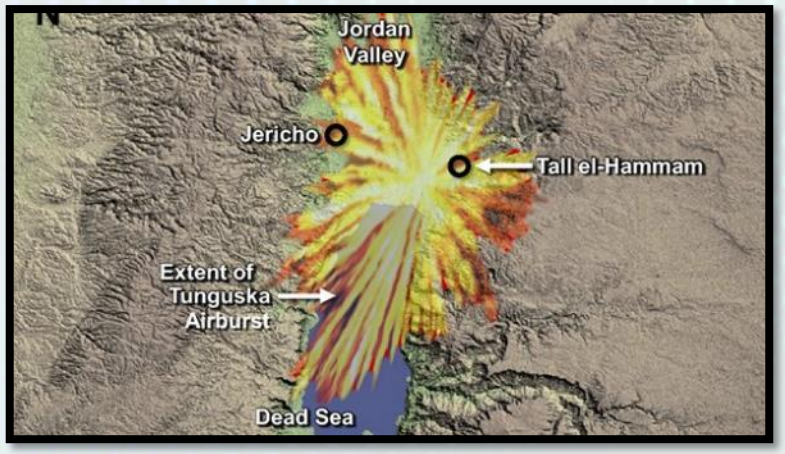
- The “Cities of the Plain” are not mythical… They actually do exist.
- They were Destroyed exactly as the Bible described – Fire & Burning stone, sometimes translated Sulfur or Brimstone – but actually the meaning is just “Burning Stone”.
- What is Burning and Stone, and fire from out of the Heavens sound like? It sounds like an Asteroid… exploding… Impacting at a very high temperature on the surface.
- This is exactly what happened at Tal el-Hammam, and the towns around it.
- It’s in the right place, and right time frame, and its destroyed as the Bible describes it.
- Steve Collins

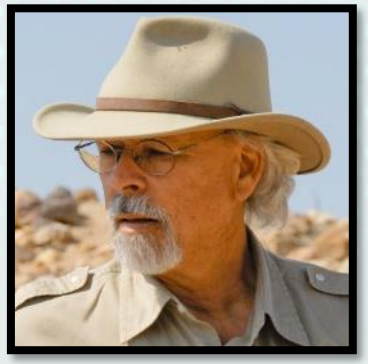


Article | Open Access | Published: 20 September 2021

A Tunguska sized airburst destroyed Tall el-Hammam a Middle Bronze Age city in the Jordan Valley near the Dead Sea

Ted E. Bunch, Malcolm A. LeCompte, A. Victor Adedeji, James H. Wittke, T. David Burleigh, Robert E. Hermes, Charles Mooney, Dale Batchelor, Wendy S. Wolbach, Joel Kathan, Gunther Kletetschka, Mark C. L. Patterson, Edward C. Swindel, Timothy Witwer, George A. Howard, Siddhartha Mitra, Christopher R. Moore, Kurt Langworthy, James P. Kennett, Allen West & Phillip J. Silvia





https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-021-97778-3

Sodom & Gomorrah – Scientific Evidence

- "An unusual 3600-year-old charcoal-rich destruction layer at Tall el-Hammam marks the sudden abandonment of a Middle-Bronze-Age urban center in the Jordan Valley close to the north end of the Dead Sea. Across the 30-km-wide lower Jordan Valley, 15 other cities and > 100 smaller villages were simultaneously abandoned at the end of the Middle Bronze Age to remain largely uninhabited for ~ 300–600 years.
- The site excavators speculated that the cause of the destruction may have been a cosmic airburst/impact, but they could not eliminate other potential mechanisms, including those related to warfare, volcanism, and tectonism.
- Any plausible solution needed to be consistent with collectively explaining the extensive lines of evidence that suggested anomalously high-velocity winds, high temperatures, and high pressures associated with this destruction.
- We investigated 14 major lines of evidence to investigate this unusual event
- We considered and dismissed 8 of 10 potential processes (Table 3), including volcanism, warfare, and tectonism, that can account for at least some but not all of the evidence. We conclude that the only plausible formation mechanism that can account for the entire range of evidence in Table 3 is a crater-forming impact or a cosmic airburst
- An important observation is that although local sediment can melt at ~ 1300 °C, that is a minimum temperature but not a maximum one, a conclusion that is supported by the presence of embedded minerals that melted at temperatures of up to ~ 2500 °C."
- Bunch et al (2021)



Article | Open Access | Published: 20 September 2021

A Tunguska sized airburst destroyed Tall el-Hammam a Middle Bronze Age city in the Jordan Valley near the Dead Sea

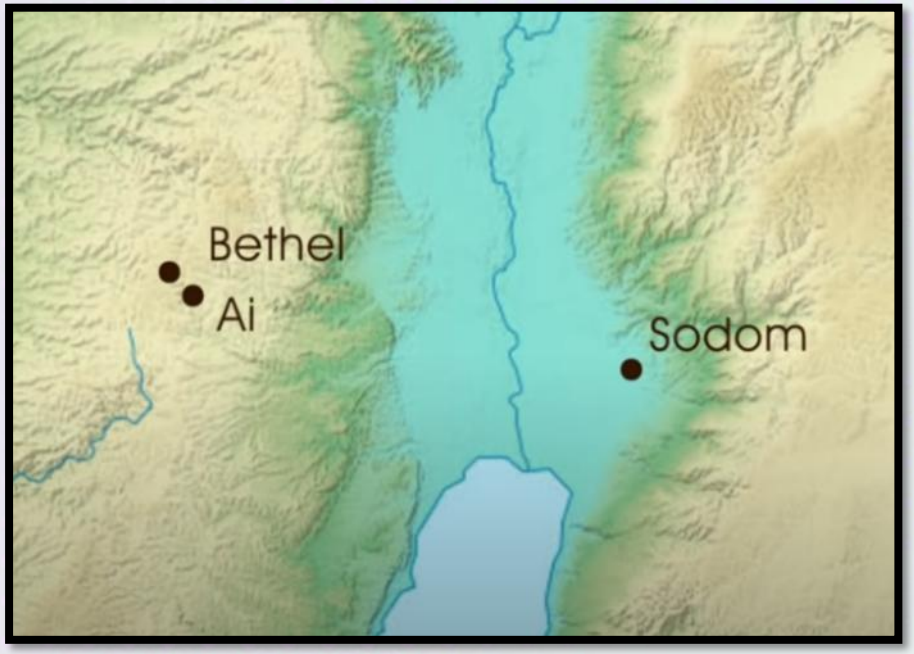
Ted E. Bunch, Malcolm A. LeCompte, A. Victor Adedeji, James H. Wittke, T. David Burleigh, Robert E. Hermes, Charles Mooney, Dale Batchelor, Wendy S. Wolbach, Joel Kathan, Gunther Kletetschka, Mark C. L. Patterson, Edward C. Swindel, Timothy Witwer, George A. Howard, Siddhartha Mitra, Christopher R. Moore, Kurt Langworthy, James P. Kennett, Allen West & Phillip J. Silvia

https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- Genesis 13
- Northern plains of the Dead Sea



(Genesis 13)

8 Then Abram said to Lot, “Let there be no strife between you and me, and between your herdsmen and my herdsmen, for we are kinsmen. 9 Is not the whole land before you? Separate yourself from me. If you take the left hand, then I will go to the right, or if you take the right hand, then I will go to the left.”

10 And Lot lifted up his eyes and saw that the Jordan Valley was well watered everywhere like the garden of the LORD, like the land of Egypt, in the direction of Zoar. (This was before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.)

11 So Lot chose for himself all the Jordan Valley, and Lot journeyed east. Thus they separated from each other. 12 Abram settled in the land of Canaan, while Lot settled among the cities of the valley and moved his tent as far as Sodom. 13 Now the men of Sodom were wicked, great sinners against the LORD.

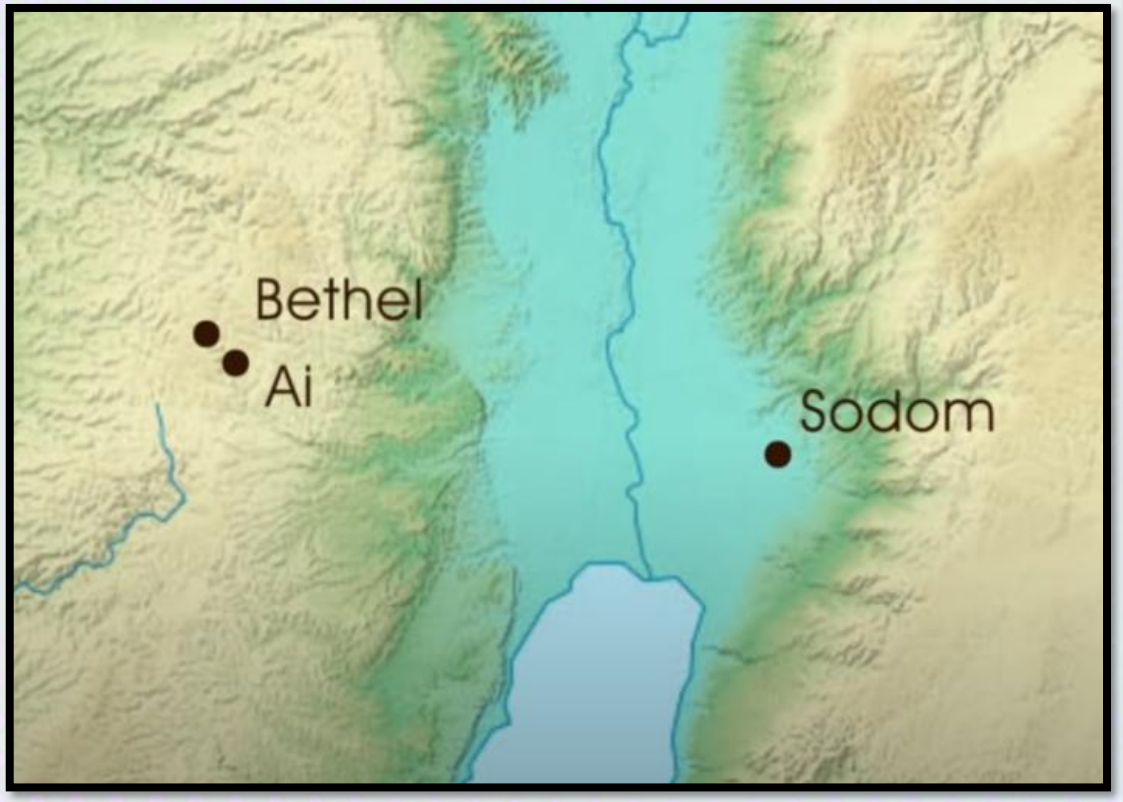
https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- Genesis 13
- Northern plains of the Dead Sea





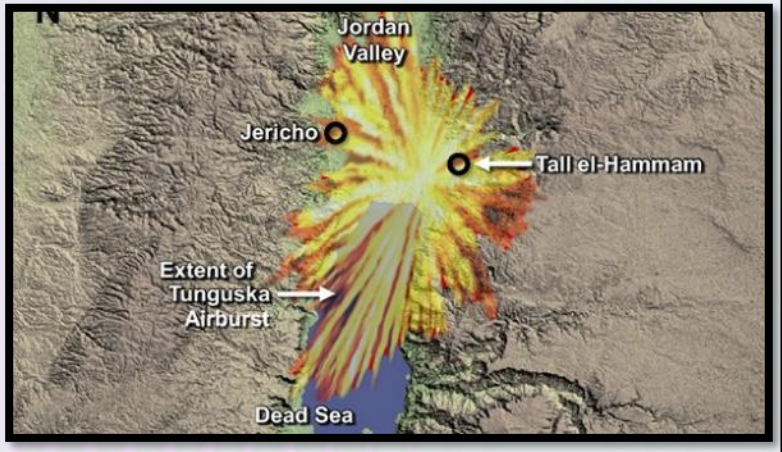


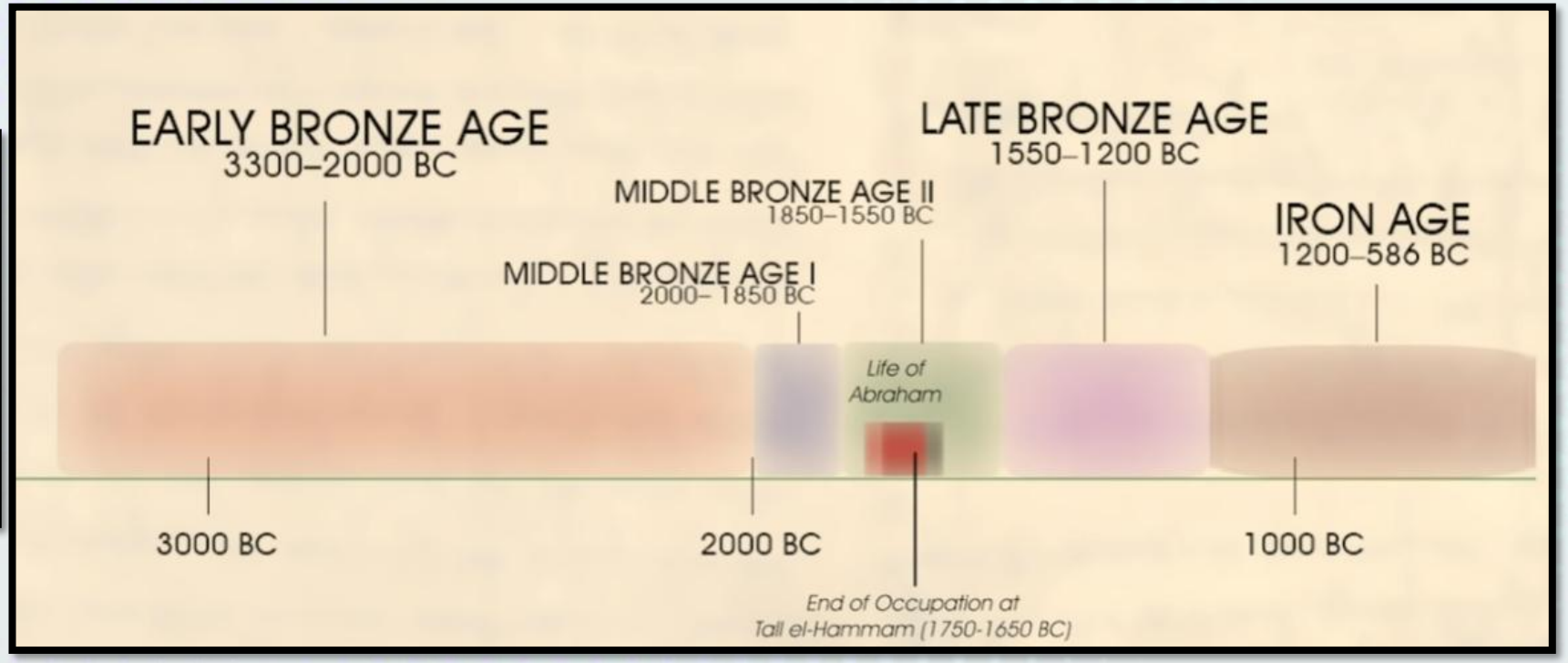
https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- “New evidence came to light…
- The mass of Destruction, and sudden end of occupation of the site, happened in the middle of the bronze age, correlating with the time period of Abraham.
- Collins notes that the Date of the Destruction has been confirmed repeatedly from Carbon Dating.”



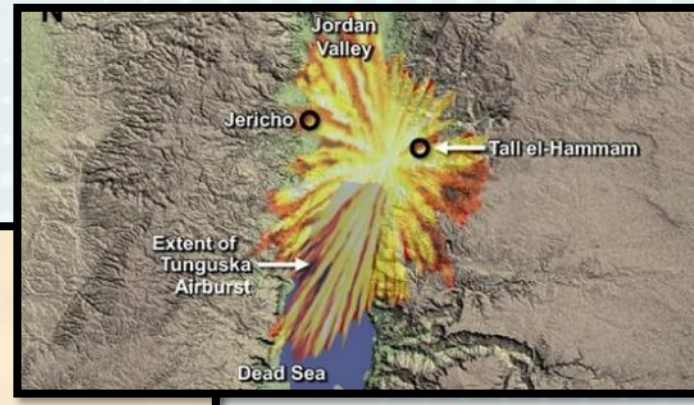


https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- "[All evidence shows] there was a massive Fiery catastrophic event that suddenly ended the occupation."
- Signs of 2,200 degrees C…



Tall el-Hammam Excavation Site:

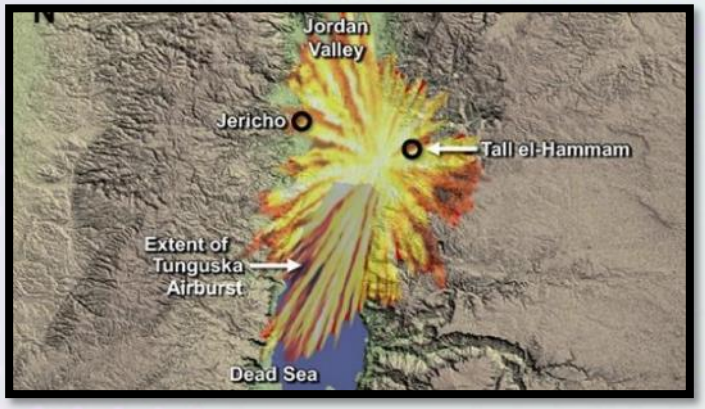
- Despite centuries of erosion, vast amounts of ash were found in the destruction layer
- Pottery sherds that melted into glass (exposed to an extremely high temperature)
- Specific melted zircon crystals that have melting temperatures of 2,200 °C
- Mud-brick superstructures blown off their foundations
- Scorched foundation stones

https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- "The most likely explanation would be a Meteor Blast, similar to what happened in Russia 100 years ago."
- Signs of desert glass created at 6,000 C…



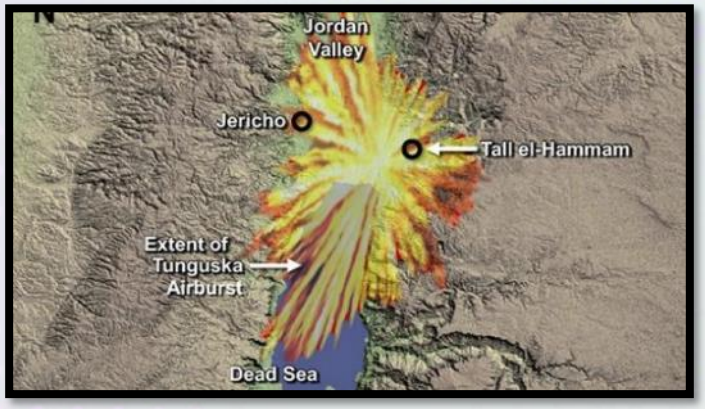
"We have pieces of pottery melted into glass, some bubbled like lava, found across the site. We have burned foundation stones, and bricks turned red or ceramic-like from extremely hot temperatures. Most of the MB2 mud-brick superstructures are seemingly blown off their foundations. It is a scene of utmost devastation and disintegration. We have even documented pieces of desert glass (impact glass) strewn across the eastern Kikkar, created at temperatures exceeding 6,000 degrees Celsius."

https://youtu.be/r-teJabFF90?si=vTrYr1GBEgCdgAqG

https://youtu.be/GkATIhRxxaE?si=eN99yV7UggLzMhy7

Sodom & Gomorrah

- "The area would've also been unhabitable for centuries… which fits with the Archaeological record, as the area was virtually abandoned until the Iron Age."
- Signs of Airburst area-wide impact…



"The physical evidence gathered from Tall el-Hammam and her neighboring sites for the MBA terminal Event exhibit signs of a highly destructive concussive and thermal Event with exceedingly high temperatures and very short exposure durations. From the matching occupation profiles across the Middle Ghor, it is also clear that this was a regional Event and not an isolated, single-site demise."

Source: *Silvia, Phillip & Bunch, Ted & Collins, Steven & Lecompte, Malcolm & West, Allen. (2018). The 3.7kaBP Middle Ghor Event: Catastrophic Termination of a Bronze Age Civilization.*

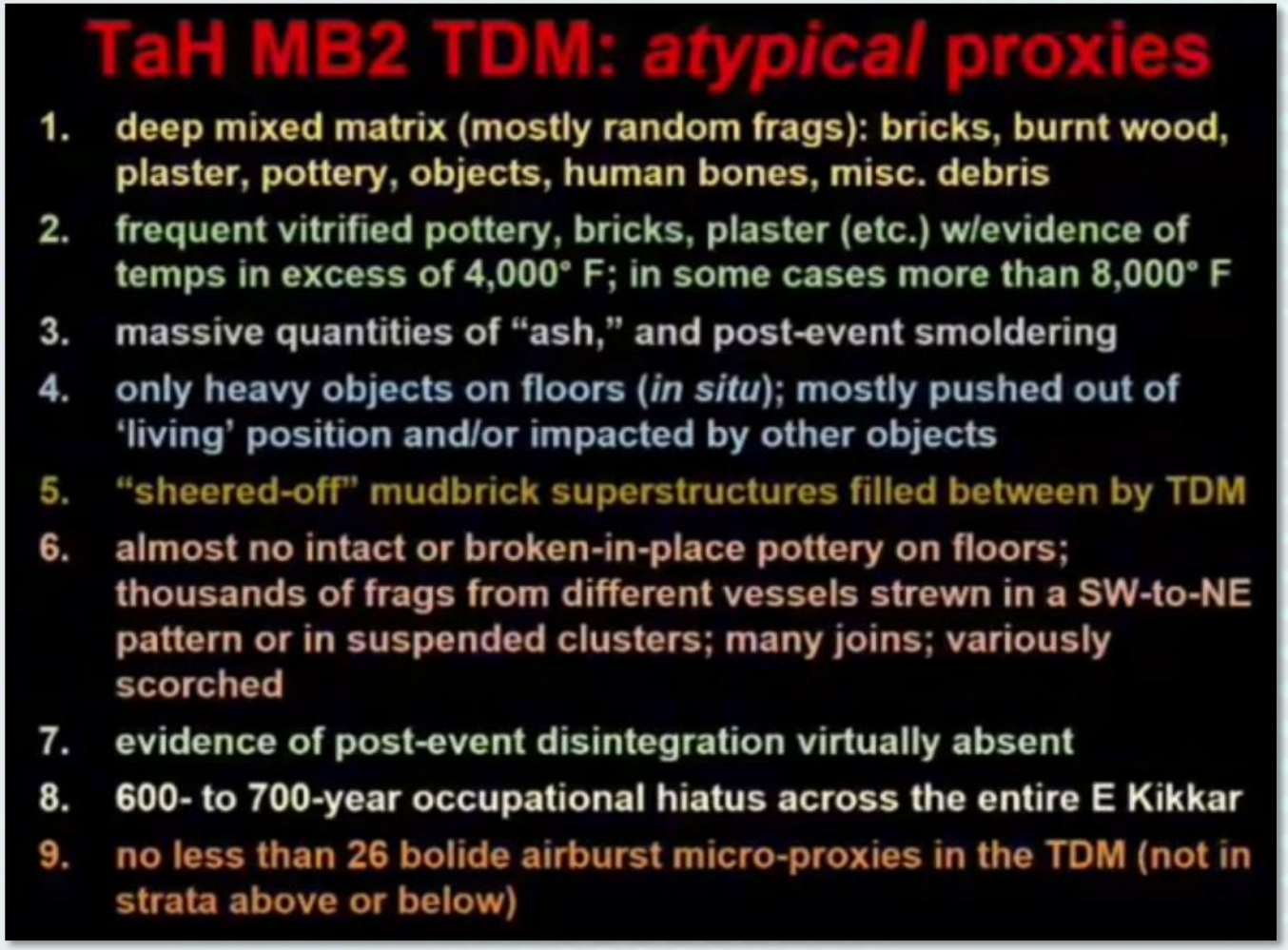
"These airburst and impact events all leave a common trail of evidence which has been interpreted as signature markers, and many of these markers are being found at Tall el-Hammam."

Source: *Silvia, Phillip & Collins, Steven. (2015). The Civilization-Ending 3.7KYrBP Event: Archaeological Data, Sample Analyses, and Biblical Implications.*

https://youtu.be/Phs6hJI0zZk?si=TDa_lZBAtRotU1gl&t=2844

Sodom & Gomorrah

- Steve Collins



Historicity Of Jesus Christ





Objections to Jesus Existing

- Objection #1 – Did Jesus even exist?
- Objection #2 - Did Jesus actually die on a cross?
- Objection #3 – Were Prophecies about the Messiah actually written before Jesus?
- Objection #5 – How many Prophecies of the Messiah can there be?



https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historical_Jesus#Consensual_knowledge_about_Jesus

Historical Facts about Jesus

- Scholarly Consensus as Definitely True
  - Jesus Existed.
  - Jesus was a Galilean Jew.
  - Jesus was Baptized by John the Baptist.
  - Jesus was Crucified by Pontius Pilate.
- Likely True
  - The Gospels accurately record the perspective of the Disciples.
    - Textual Criticism confirms this
  - The Gospels record the actual words of Jesus.
    - Textual Criticism confirms this
- You don't have to automatically assume the claims of the Gospels – such as Jesus being able to do miracles & resurrect – are true. But you must respect the strength of the Historicity, in general.





https://youtu.be/ay_Db4RwZ_M?si=XXAaMINXciS4rZfv&t=3067

Historicity of the Existence & Life of Jesus

- "[In Bart Ehrman's book] he gives 11 independent sources for the Crucifixion of Jesus."
- "Paul Meyer, professor of ancient history… says many things in the Ancient World depend on 1 Witness – and 2 Witnesses makes an event unimpeachable."
- Dr. Gary Habermas



Historicity Of King David



https://www.biblicalarchaeology.org/daily/biblical-artifacts/the-tel-dan-inscription-the-first-historical-evidence-of-the-king-david-bible-story/

King David – Historical Person

- “Few modern Biblical archaeology discoveries have caused as much excitement as the Tel Dan inscription—writing on a ninth-century B.C. stone slab (or stela) that furnished the first historical evidence of King David from the Bible.
- The Tel Dan inscription, or “House of David” inscription, was discovered in 1993 at the site of Tel Dan in northern Israel in an excavation directed by Israeli archaeologist Avraham Biran.
- The broken and fragmentary inscription commemorates the victory of an Aramean king over his two southern neighbors: the “king of Israel” and the “king of the House of David.” In the carefully incised text written in neat Aramaic characters, the Aramean king boasts that he, under the divine guidance of the god Hadad, vanquished several thousand Israelite and Judahite horsemen and charioteers before personally dispatching both of his royal opponents.
- The stela’s fragmented inscription, first read and translated by the renowned epigrapher Joseph Naveh, proved that King David from the Bible was a genuine historical figure and not simply the fantastic literary creation of later Biblical writers and editors. Perhaps more important, the stela, set up by one of ancient Israel’s fiercest enemies more than a century after David’s death, still recognized David as the founder of the kingdom of Judah.”



The Creation of the Earth
Genesis

Day-Age Creationism / Prophecy of Modern Science





Objections to Genesis: Doesn't Science disprove The Bible?

- The "Young Earth Creationist" model of Genesis
  - Isn't the Earth 6,000 years old?
  - Doesn't the Bible say there were "7 Days" of "24 Hours"?
  - The Sun was "created" on Day #4… after the Earth was created on Day #1?
  - The Plants (Day #3) are created before the Animals (Day #5)?
  - The Birds (Day #5) appear before the Land Animals (Day #6)?
- Doesn't "Old Earth creationism" say that there was "Death before Adam" sinned?



Genesis – The Creation Story of Earth

- Chapters in this Section
- #1 – The “Young Earth Creationism” interpretation
  - Does the Bible Text say The Earth is 6,000 years old?
  - Are the “7 Days” really “24 Hour” Days?
- #2 - The “Day-Age Creationism” interpretation
  - Why would the “Days” be Long Periods of Time?
  - Are the Creation Events on each “Day” Scientifically Accurate?



Does the text say The Earth is 6,000 years old?
Are the “7 Days” really 24 Hour Days?

https://biologos.org/common-questions/how-long-are-the-days-of-genesis-1

https://www.thegospelcoalition.org/blogs/justin-taylor/biblical-reasons-to-doubt-the-creation-days-were-24-hour-periods

https://www.evidenceunseen.com/articles/science-and-scripture/old-earth-creation-day-age-analogical-days-and-intermittent-days/

Genesis – Why 7 Days?
=> The Analogous Work-Week

- The "7 Days" are a Representation of the "7 Day Work-Week"
  - Rest Period between Weeks - "6 Days of Work and 1 Sabbath"
  - Rest Period between Days - "Evening & Morning" (Notice it starts with Evening – it begins at Night)



- If the "God did it Instantaneously" view was correct – in the most literal version, he would've created everything in just "1 Day" of creation. The fact it's split up into a "7-Day Workweek" tells us something else may be going on.
- Why does God need to split up Creation into 7 Days? Why not just 1 single "day" of creation?
- Why does God need to Rest on Day #7?



- "The Analogical Day View is another literary approach. As "analogical" implies, the author is using the regular work week as an analogy to the creation week and is not intending to teach that God actually created everything in a six day period." [1]
- "Does he want us to think of the Hebrew workday? Yes, in an analogical and anthropomorphic sense. Just as the "seventh day" makes us think of an ordinary calendar day (even though it isn't technically a 24-hour period), so the other "six days" are meant to be read in the same way… The seven days of the human week are copies of the seven days of the divine week... The reason given for man's rest upon the seventh solar day is that God rested upon the seventh creative day… God is portrayed as a workman going through his workweek, working during the day and resting for the night. Then on his Sabbath, he enjoys a full and refreshing rest. Our days are like God's workdays, but not identical to them… How long were God's workdays? The Bible doesn't say. But I see no reason to insist that they were only 24 hours long." [2]

Genesis – Why 7 Days?
=> The Analogous Work-Week

- One of the Key arguments in defense of "24-Hour Days" is the use of the "7 Day Week" being used for 24 hour days, and 7 day weeks, in other contexts.
- The Workweek Analogy is used in contexts that are not simply "7 Days" – but rather any Period of "7 units" – therefore the assumption that Creation Week must've been 7 Days with 24 hour-days is not guaranteed.
- As shown – the first purpose of the "7 Day Creation" is for use of the Workweek Analogy.

- #1 - Analogy for Days (Exodus 20:11)
- #2 - Yet – here is an Analogy for Years (Leviticus 25:4)

(Exodus 20) [11] For in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy.

(Leviticus 25) [4] but in the seventh year there shall be a Sabbath of solemn rest for the land, a Sabbath to the LORD. You shall not sow your field or prune your vineyard.





https://www.evidenceunseen.com/articles/science-and-scripture/young-earth-creationism-a-biblical-evaluation/

Genesis – But a "Day" is 24 Hours?
=> "Day" can simultaneously indicate a Long Period of Time

- While it's true the text does use language like "Day" – it is entirely reasonable to assume that the Author's intention was to portray the "Workweek Analogy" – and now Modern Science can illuminate the scientific length of these periods.
- In the "Day-Age Creationism" model – it can be shown that these Periods of Time are scientifically accurate – while the Analogy View is still the primary focus for the reader.
- The Hebrew word for "Day" (yom) has 4 possible meanings. Often it simply means 24-Hours.
  - It can refer to a long period of time that even includes the changing of seasons (Prov. 25:13) or the 40 year wandering in the desert (Josh. 24:7).
  - It can refer to an indefinite period of time. For instance, Isaiah writes, "The LORD has a day [yôm] of vengeance, year of recompense for the cause of Zion" (Isa. 34:8). Elsewhere, the prophets refer to the "day" of the Lord (Isa. 2:11-12, 17; 4:2; 11:10-11; Lam. 1:20; 2:21; Zech. 14:7; Zeph. 2:3)
- The Sun is apparently not "created" until Day #4, in a literal 7-day creation model.
  - A "Day" cannot be defined as a "24 Hour Solar Day", by definition, without the Sun. The "24 Hour Period" only exists in relation to the Rising & Setting of the Sun.
- "Evening and Morning" – does this force us to believe it means 24 hours?
  - Day #7 had no "evening and morning" – unlike the first six days. Therefore, Day #7 is not confirmed to have ended.
  - Day #7 is the present – God is in it after he ceased creating the universe (Hebrews 4, Psalm 95, John 5).
  - It starts with "Evening", then Morning… this is a hint it is referring to the Period of Rest – in the context of the Workweek Analogy – a period of rest for each Day.

Genesis – Wasn't the Earth made on Day #1? => In the Beginning…

- Day #1's only explicitly stated action was "Let there be Light".
- The creation of the Heavens & the Earth is only directly stated as "In the Beginning".
- The "6,000 year old Earth" view is not even directly stated to be true.

(Genesis 1)

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. [2] The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.

[3] And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. [4] And God saw that the light was good. And God separated the light from the darkness. [5] God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And there was evening and there was morning, the first day.

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/questions-from-social-media/what-are-the-scientific-dates-for-the-starts-and-ends-of-the-six-creation-days

https://youtu.be/FiAsjtHRsbQ?si=ZfCiPEZXsqIR5p1Y

Genesis – The 7 Days
=> Both "24 Hours" and "Long Periods" are True

- Key Point #1:
  - The Text **intentionally** makes you to think of a 7 Day Work Week, with each Day **that are 24 hours each**.
  - The "7 Day Workweek", with a "Rest Day" on the 7th day, is the desired standard the Text wants you to follow – that is the intended focus for the Ancient Reader.
- Key Point #2:
  - Modern Science now shows that the "7 Creation Days" are **scientifically accurate events, in order of sequence** – but they are **long periods of time** in Earth's Geological History.

- **True:** the Workweek Analogy is composed of 7 Days, with 24 hours each.
  - For the benefit of the Ancient Reader
- **Also True:** the Events in the Genesis Days of Creation were long periods of time in Earth's Geological timeline.
  - For the benefit of the Modern Reader, providing Verification using Prophecy of Creation Science

Is Genesis a “Prophecy of Science”?

The Creation Story in Genesis => Prophecy of Modern Science

- Wouldn't it make sense that these passages were written in a way that would have been [understandable] to the [ancient] audience? … Yet at the same time, convey historical and Scientific Concepts and ideas in ways that are true and that anticipate future scientific discoveries?
- **The Universe has a beginning. Time has a beginning.**
  - Genesis 1:1 and Hebrews 11:3
- **The laws of nature are constant.**
  - Jeremiah 33:19-26
- **(Day #1 / Day #3) Earth began as a Water World - with continents appearing much later.**
  - Genesis 1:2 describes Earth in its primordial state. As part of this description, Earth is depicted as a water world. The Genesis 1 text doesn't describe the appearance of land until the third creation day. Planetary scientists now recognize that Earth's entire surface was covered with oceans in its early history and that continents appeared about 1 billion years after Earth formed.
- **(Day #1) The early conditions of Earth were Desolate.**
  - Genesis 1:2 also teaches that the earth was formless and empty.
- **(Day #5) Animal life in the oceans appeared after Continents formed.**
  - In the Genesis 1 creation account, animal life in the oceans wasn't created until the fifth day, after the creation of land. Paleontologists have discovered that animal life didn't appear in the earth's oceans until around 540 million years ago, after continents had formed.
- **The earth has been designed to harbor life.**
  - According to Isaiah 45:18, the Creator intended Earth to be filled with life. Astronomers have learned that hundreds of features of Earth, the Moon, Sun, solar system, and the Milky Way Galaxy must be just-right for Earth to be a life support planet. The likelihood of all these just-right features coinciding is so remote that it appears as if Earth is rare, perhaps unique, in its capacity to support life—an idea called the Rare Earth Hypothesis.
- Fazale Rana

The Day-Age Creationism Model

https://reasons.org/explore/publications/questions-from-social-media/what-are-the-scientific-dates-for-the-starts-and-ends-of-the-six-creation-days

https://youtu.be/FiAsjtHRsbQ?si=ZfCiPEZXsqIR5p1Y

Genesis – The 7 Days
=> Timeline of the Long Periods

- Day #0 – Water Earth & Dark Atmosphere (4 billion years ago)
- Day #1 – "Let there be Light": Allow Light in the Dark Atmosphere (4 to 3.8 billion years ago)
- Day #2 – Divide the Waters: The Firmament, and the Water Cycle begins (3.8 to 3.0 billion years ago)
- Day #3 – Land Appears and Plants Appear (2.5 billion to 800 million years ago)
- Day #4 – The Sun becomes completely Visible in the Atmosphere (600 million years ago)
- Day #5 – All Animals begin to appear (600 to 50 million years ago)
- Day #6 – Modern Animals appear & Modern Man appears (5 million years to Now)

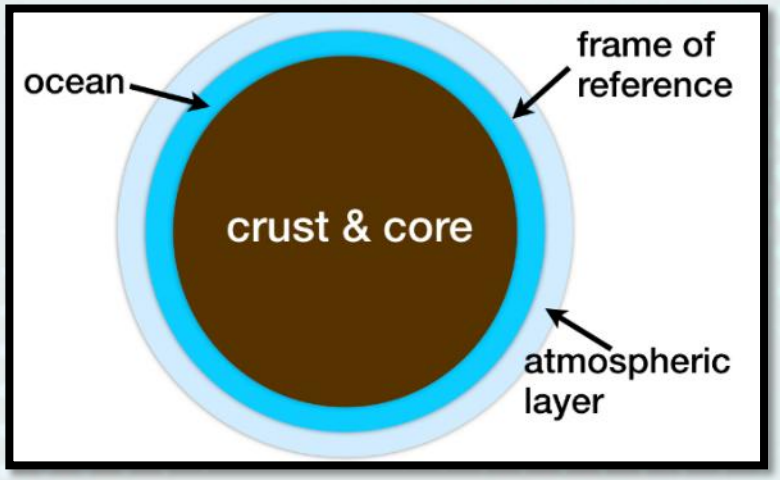
Timeline – Day Age Creationism model

- **Narrator's Point of View (POV):**
  - The Surface of the Earth
    - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters" - Genesis 1:2



Key Point:
The Narrator POV is an "Ancient Observer" on Planet Earth

- **Narrator's Point of View (POV):**
  - The Surface of the Earth
    - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters" - Genesis 1:2
- **Key Point: The Narrator is an Ancient Observer**
  - The Narrator is an "ancient observer" – he will describe events from his perspective on Planet Earth, in a way a normal on-looker would.
  - **#1 - The Narrator will give a "Functional Description" of what is happening.**
    - "… God set [the Sun] in the expanse of the heavens"
      - This is a Functional Description that an Ancient Observer would give. It is not a Scientific definition.
  - **#2 - The Narrator will NOT describe Events in a "Modern Scientific Manner":**
    - "Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night... And God made the two great lights [the sun & moon]... to rule over the day and over the night..." (Day #4)
      - The Narrator is NOT going to say: "The Sun, which is a giant ball of gas 93 million miles away, wasn't created on Day #4, just simply appeared in the more Transparent Atmosphere, after Oxygen Composition changed the transparency."
      - The Narrator is NOT going to say: "Actually, the Moon isn't really a Light source – it just reflects the light of the Sun, which is a giant star at the center of our solar system."
      - "[the Sun] rules over the Day" – is this phrase trying to be a Scientific Definition?.... No, its just a functional description.





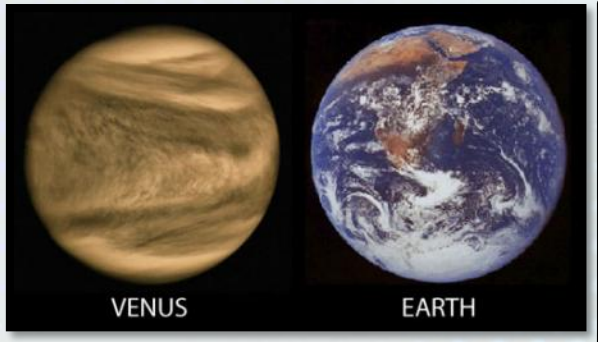
Day #0 POV:



Day #0 – Water Earth & Dark Atmosphere (4 billion years ago)

- **Narrator POV – The Surface of Earth**
  - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters"
- **Day #0**
  - Earth started with Thick Clouds & Darkness.
    - Job 38:9
  - At the start of Day #1 – there is Darkness upon the Water Earth.
    - Genesis 1:2
  - "The Atmosphere" already existed in Day #0.
    - The Atmosphere was NOT created on Day #2 as "the firmament". The Firmament is the Biosphere.

- (4.2 to 3.8 billion years ago) – Earth's Early Oceans
- (4.5 to 4 billion years ago) – Earth's Dark Atmosphere





(Job 38) Then the LORD answered Job out of the whirlwind and said:

2 "Who is this that darkens counsel by words without knowledge?
3 Dress for action like a man;
I will question you, and you make it known to me.

4 "Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth?
Tell me, if you have understanding.
5 Who determined its measurements—surely you know!
Or who stretched the line upon it?
6 On what were its bases sunk,
or who laid its cornerstone,
7 when the morning stars sang together
and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

8 "Or who shut in the sea with doors
when it burst out from the womb,
9 when I made clouds its garment
and thick darkness its swaddling band,

https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/earths-primordial-magma-ocean-affirms-genesis-1-creation-events

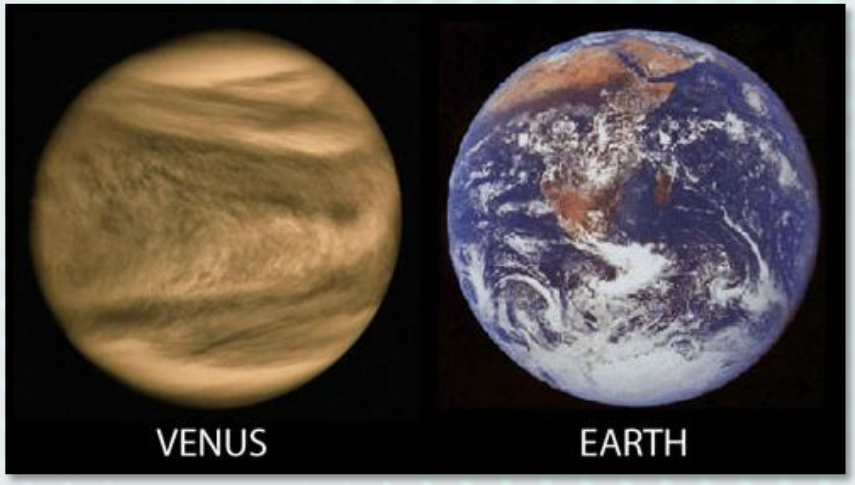
https://www.smithsonianmag.com/air-space-magazine/early-earth-was-no-inviting-blue-planetit-was-more-venus-180976534/#:~:text=Early%20Earth%20Was%20No%20Inviting,major%20recycling%20process%E2%80%94plate%20tectonics.

Day #0 POV:

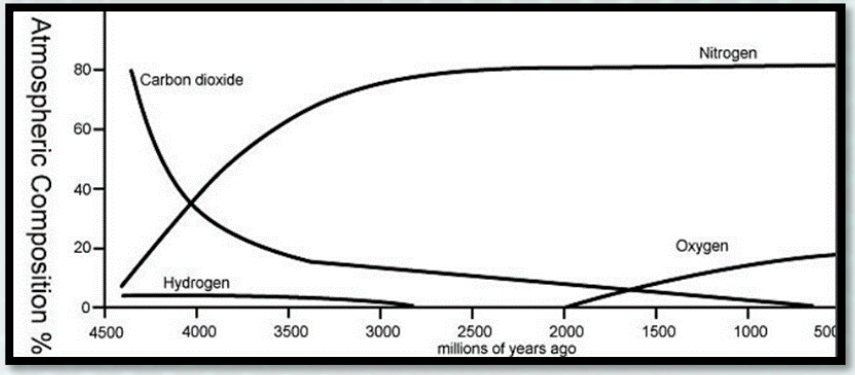


Water Earth & Dark Atmosphere? Dense Carbon Dioxide Atmosphere

- Sossi's team provided more evidence that before the collision between Theia and Earth, Earth's atmosphere was about 200 times thicker than it is today and made up of 97% carbon dioxide and no oxygen. Such an atmosphere would block out all light in the visible part of the electromagnetic spectrum. These conditions seem consistent with Genesis 1:2, which refers to Earth's initial conditions: "Darkness was over the surface of the deep [Earth's surface water]." A parallel text, Job 38:9, declares, "I [God] made the clouds its [Earth's seas] garment and wrapped it in thick darkness."
- Dr. Hugh Ross [1]



- Experiments conducted by a scientific team led by Paolo Sossi from ETH Zurich in Switzerland indicate that the atmosphere of Earth shortly after its origin was like the atmosphere of Venus today. That is, it consisted mostly of carbon dioxide and nitrogen, and was about 100 times denser than it is now… The prolonged presence of water on our planet would have dissolved all that carbon dioxide in sea water, and eventually buried it under the surface thanks to Earth's major recycling process—plate tectonics. That scrubbed most of the carbon dioxide from our atmosphere... Today Earth's atmosphere is dominated by nitrogen and oxygen, and much thinner than it used to be.
- Smithsonian [2]



https://mobile.arc.nasa.gov/public/iexplore/missions/pages/yss/november.html

https://youtu.be/8gxIMnERqi8?si=iq_SYkZ1vhU12qQZ&t=1440

Day #1 – "Let there be Light": Allow Light in the Dark Atmosphere (4 to 3.8 billion years ago)





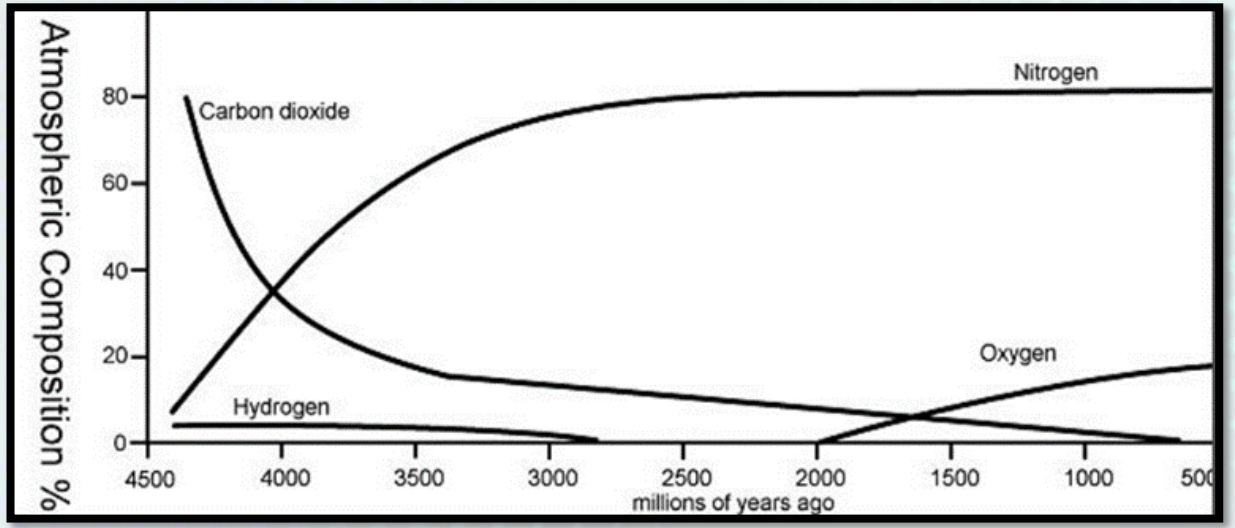
- **Narrator POV – The Surface of Earth**
  - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters"
- **Day #0**
  - "Water Earth" begins with a Dark Atmosphere, that blocks all light. Earth had a Thick Atmosphere.
- **Day #1**
  - Light becomes "Somewhat Visible" through the Atmosphere.
    - The Complete Visibility of the Sun will happen on Day #4.
  - The 24 hour Day/Night Cycle is now visible on Earth (but the atmosphere is still "somewhat opaque").
  - "Let there be Light" does NOT mean "Light was Created" – in this context it simply means Light was now appearing in the Atmosphere, visible from the "Surface of the Earth".
- (4.5 to 3.5 billion years ago) – Carbon Dioxide % rapidly lowers in the Atmosphere – potentially changing the Atmospheric Transparency.



(Genesis 1)

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. [2] The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.

[3] And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. [4] And God saw that the light was good. And God separated the light from the darkness. [5] God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And there was evening and there was morning, the first day.



Day #2 – Divide the Waters: "The Firmament" is the Biosphere / Water Cycle begins (3.8 to 3.0 billion years ago)

Narrator POV:



- **Narrator POV – The Surface of Earth**
  - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters"
- **Day #2**
  - God "separated the waters from the waters" – this is the Biosphere, where animals live.
    - "Waters Above" = Clouds
    - "Waters Below" = Oceans
  - This may be indicating that "the Water Cycle" has now started – with Water "below" and "above" – right after Earth's atmosphere let in Light, on Day #1.
  - Day #0 showed that "The Atmosphere" existed previously… "The Firmament" (or "The Expanse") is just a description of the Biosphere – and is simply the space between the Oceans & the Clouds – where animals live.
  - "Heavens" = the Biosphere & Sky above, where the Narrator is speaking from the POV of.

(Genesis 1)

6 And God said, "Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters." 7 And God made the expanse and separated the waters that were under the expanse from the waters that were above the expanse. And it was so. 8 And God called the expanse Heaven. And there was evening and there was morning, the second day.



https://science.psu.edu/news/first-land-plants-and-fungi-changed-earths-climate-paving-way-explosive-evolution-land-animals

https://youtu.be/8gxIMnERqi8?si=NEMCiUX4X2bJ4EGu&t=1810

Narrator POV:



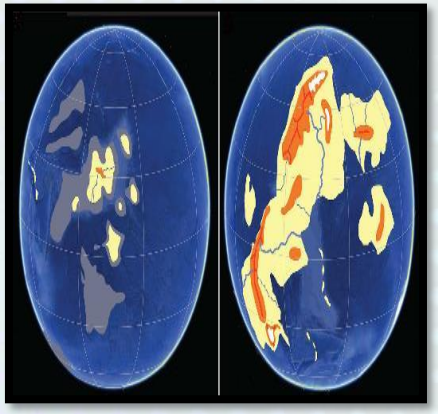
Day #3 – Land Appears and Plants Appear (2.5 billion to 800 million years ago)

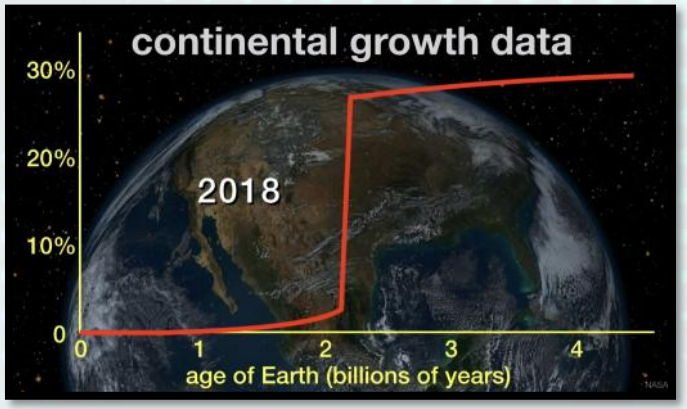
- **Day #3**
  - Land begin to appear
  - Plants begin to appear
    - Generic Vegetation ("let the earth sprout vegetation…") - and then also "plants yielding seed" / "trees bearing fruit".
    - Generic Vegetation (1.2 billion years) appears first in Day #3, while Fruit Trees (125 million years) appear much later than Day #3... This might suggest that the creation of "Plant Vegetation" as a Class of Life originated on Day #3 - meanwhile, later plants with specific examples like the "Fruit Plants/Trees" appear later, and likely overlap with Days #4 and #5.
- (3.5 billion years) – Land begins to appear slightly
- (2.5 billion years) – Major Continents rapidly appear 2.5 billion years ago
- (1.2 billion years) – EARLIEST KNOWN Land Fungi [1]
- (700 million years) – EARLIEST KNOWN Generic Land Vegetation [1]
- (375 million years) – EARLIEST KNOWN Tree Fossil [1]
- (125 million years) – EARLIEST KNOWN Fruit Trees
- Plants generally do not "fossilize easily" because of their soft bodies - unlike Animals, which have Bones. [1]
  - It is likely Plants appear even earlier than earliest known dates.

(Genesis 1)

9 And God said, "Let the waters under the heavens be gathered together into one place, and let the dry land appear." And it was so. 10 God called the dry land Earth, and the waters that were gathered together he called Seas. And God saw that it was good.

11 And God said, "Let the earth sprout vegetation, plants yielding seed, and fruit trees bearing fruit in which is their seed, each according to its kind, on the earth." And it was so. 12 The earth brought forth vegetation, plants yielding seed according to their own kinds, and trees bearing fruit in which is their seed, each according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. 13 And there was evening and there was morning, the third day.

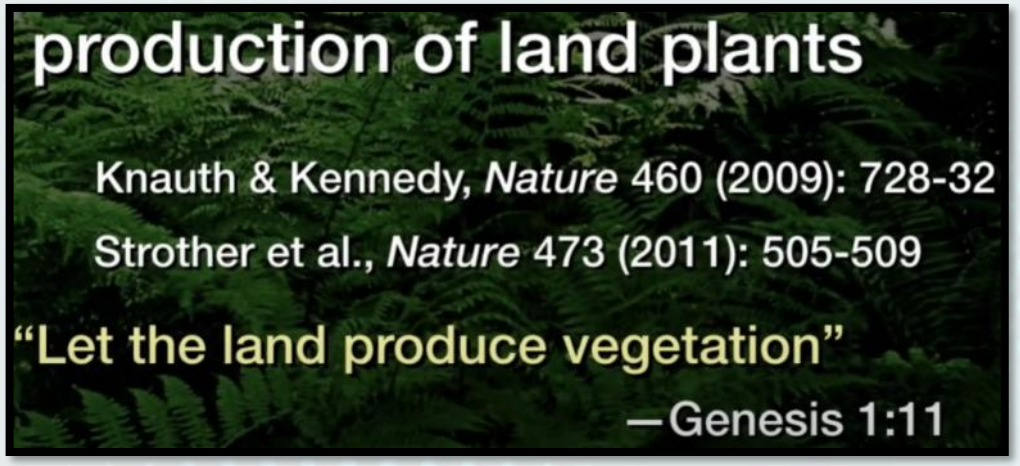




https://www.youtube.com/live/aFMLEhaJx9Y?si=RwHvaQ_T_kseDzX4&t=1109

Plants appear before Animals? (Earliest Plants begin to appear 1.2 billion years ago)

- Animals have Bones & Skeletons – those are easily preserved over hundreds of million years – and the first animals show up 575 million years ago.
- Plants have body tissues – that simply aren't going to be preserved in the fossil record for that period of time.
- One Paper in Nature 2009 says – We don't have Fossils, but we have the Isotope Evidence that tells us Vegetation was just as abundant on the continents – for 200 million years – before the first appearance of Animals in the Oceans.
- In 2011, a paper was published that [basically] said we've found the Fossils [of plants]… The biggest fossil they found was a Millimeter across… realistically that's all you'd ever anticipate would be preserved – and one of them dated back to 1.2 billion years – making the point that Vegetation was abundant on the continents for 600 million years before the first appearance of animals in the ocean.
- Dr. Hugh Ross



Lacking backbones and hard shells, **plants leave relatively little behind in the fossil record**, so researchers suspect even the oldest plant fossils don't represent the first flora. Feb 19, 2018

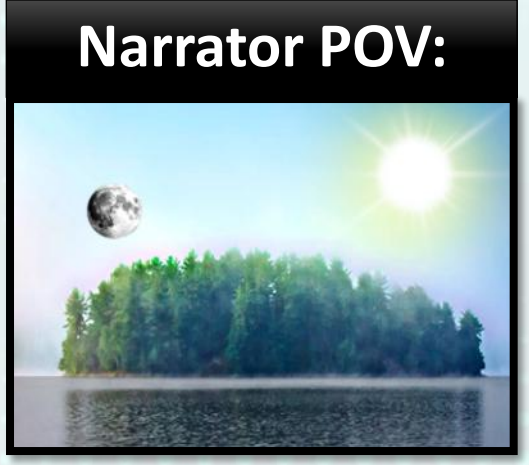
Science
https://www.science.org › content › article › land-plants-...

Land plants arose earlier than thought—and may have had a ...

https://youtu.be/8gxIMnERqi8?si=LGuYfes49h88nxdI&t=1961

https://www.nature.com/articles/nature13068

Day #4 – "Let there be Lights in the Expanse": The Sun becomes completely Visible in the Atmosphere (600 million years ago)

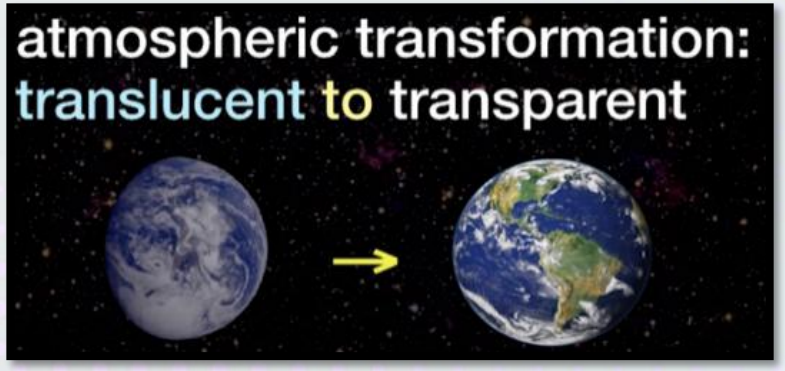


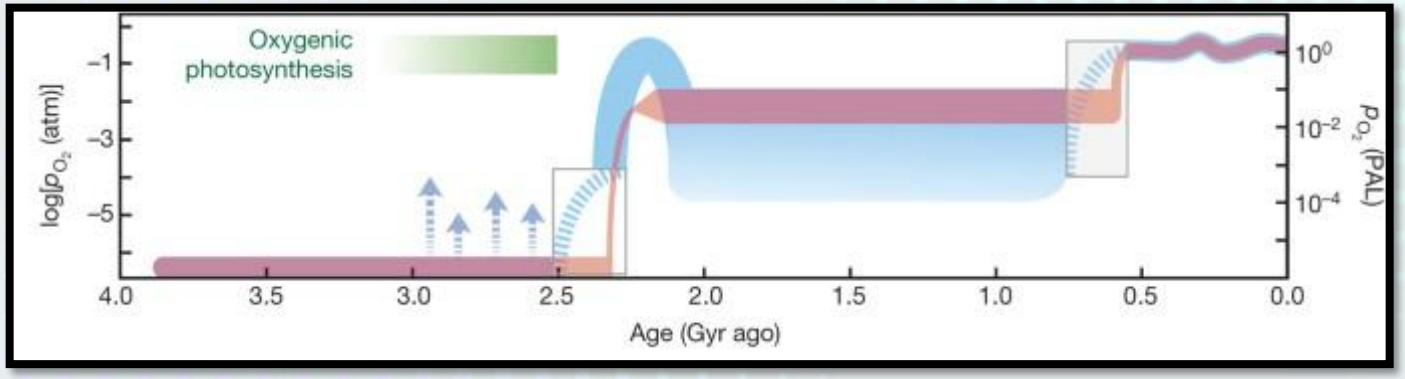
- **Narrator POV – The Surface of Earth**
  - "The Spirit of God moved upon the Face of the Waters"
- **Day #4**
  - Absolute Distinct Visibility of the "Lights in the Sky" finally appear in the Atmosphere (the Sun & Moon).
    - The visible Day/Night cycle existed back in Day #1 – now the Lights appear distinctly – "let there be lights in the firmament… let them be for signs, and for seasons".
  - Was the Sun "created" on Day #4?
    - #1 - "Let there be lights [the Sun] in the Expanse"
    - #2 - "And God made the two great lights [in the Expanse]"
    - The Sun was now visible in the Atmosphere, to the Ancient Narrator POV.
    - "God made [the Sun]" is a correct "Functional Description" that the Ancient Narrator would give, it is not a "Scientific Description".
  - (600 million years ago) – Rapid Oxygen Spike #2

(Genesis 1)

14 And God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the heavens to separate the day from the night. And let them be for signs and for seasons, and for days and years, 15 and let them be lights in the expanse of the heavens to give light upon the earth." And it was so.

16 And God made the two great lights—the greater light to rule the day and the lesser light to rule the night—and the stars. 17 And God set them in the expanse of the heavens to give light on the earth, 18 to rule over the day and over the night, and to separate the light from the darkness. And God saw that it was good. 19 And there was evening and there was morning, the fourth day.





https://youtu.be/SwNypNs0lW4?si=i1DKCcSFs4BzLNpC&t=1855

Atmosphere Haziness 600 mya? The Sun finally appears with more Oxygen

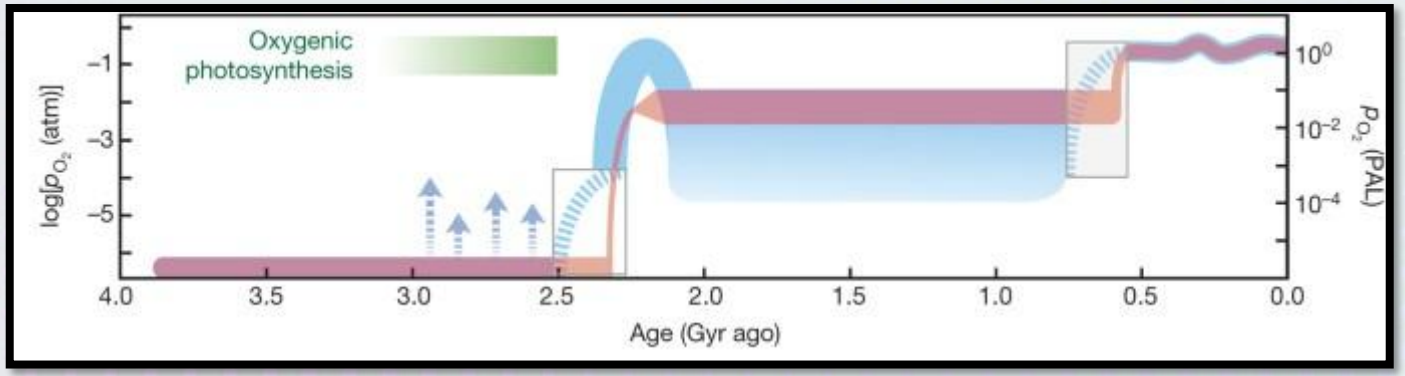
- Here we see … the Haziness that is roughly equivalent to what we would have if we had less than 1% Oxygen in the Atmosphere.
- This is the visibility as you gradually increase the Oxygen content … You see the Haze gradually dissipates.
- If you look to the Upper Right – you see an object that appears in the Sky – the Moon.
- In the first few pictures – there is no way you can see the Moon, the Sun, or the Stars.
- Dr. Hugh Ross







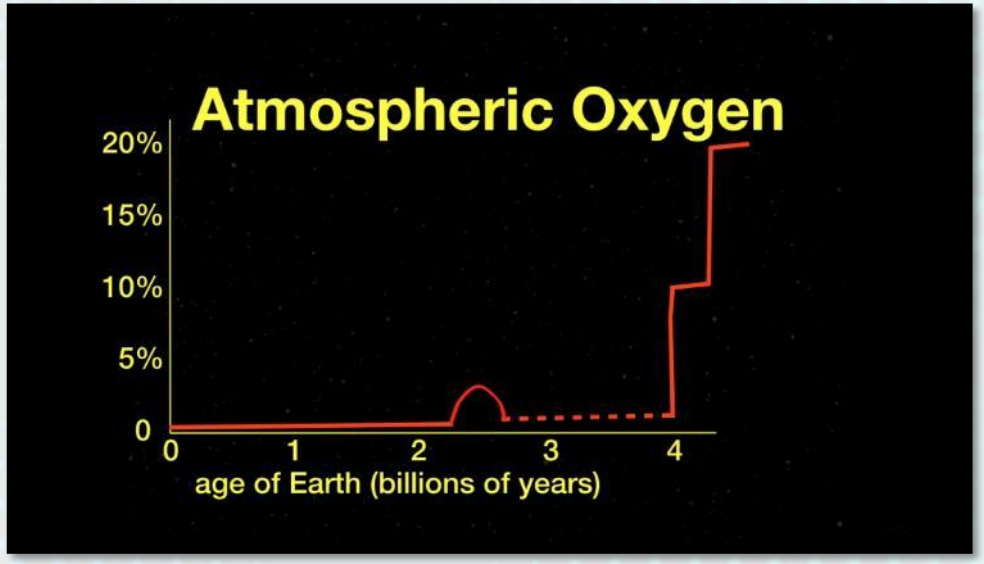
- (600 million years ago) – Rapid Oxygen Spike #2



https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/hazy-early-earth-more-affirmation-of-creation-day-4

Atmosphere Haziness 600 mya? The Sun finally appears with more Oxygen

- (Day #0 / Day #1) The history of Earth's atmosphere is one of gradually declining amounts of methane and carbon dioxide. Since methane and carbon dioxide are powerful greenhouse gases, this gradual decline is crucial for compensating for the ongoing brightening of the Sun.
- The quantity of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, and perhaps that of methane also, correlates with the degree of cloud cover. More carbon dioxide and more methane mean more clouds. Thus, much greater quantities of these greenhouse gases in early Earth's atmosphere alone likely made the sky completely translucent from the viewpoint of an observer on Earth's surface.
- (Day #4) As [the oxygen graph] reveals, the oxygen content in Earth's atmosphere did not get high enough to prevent a pervasive haze until 580 million years ago, just before the first appearance of animals.
- The new research study affirms the creation chronology in Genesis 1: Earth's atmosphere transitioned from translucent to frequently transparent on creation day 4, just before God created Earth's first animals on creation day 5.
- Hugh Ross





https://nautil.us/the-greatest-animal-war-235067/

Narrator POV:



Day #5 – All Animals begin to appear (600 to 50 million years ago)

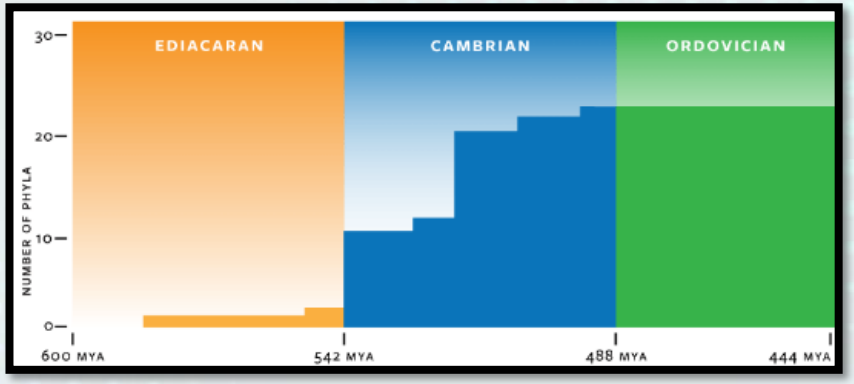
- **Day #5**
  - Flying Animals
  - Sea & Land Animals
    - "Sea Creatures" (tăn·nîn) generically means "any large reptile"
    - This may be suggesting that early Amphibians & Reptiles could live in both the Water & the Land ("Every Living creature that moves… with which the waters swarm")
- (600 million years ago) – Start of Appearance of First Animals
- (500 million years) – First Fish
- (350 million years) – First Amphibians
- (300 million years) – First Reptiles
- (150 million years) – First Birds
- "Birds" (ôp̄)
  - Can mean generically All Flying Things (like insects & birds)
- "Sea Creatures" (tăn·nîn)
  - Can mean generically "any large reptile" (Large Reptiles, Sea Monsters, Serpents)

(Genesis 1)

20 And God said, "Let the waters swarm with swarms of living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the expanse of the heavens."

21 So God created the great sea creatures and every living creature that moves, with which the waters swarm, according to their kinds, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. 22 And God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters in the seas, and let birds multiply on the earth."

23 And there was evening and there was morning, the fifth day.



Day #6 – Modern Animals appear & Modern Man appears (5 million years to Now)

- **Day #6**
  - Modern Land Mammals – such as Cattle, Beasts, “creeping things”, and Man.
- (3 million years ago) – Homo Sapiens
- (2 million years ago) - Beasts (Carnivores – like Wolves)
- (100,000 years ago) - Livestock (Herbivores – Farm Animals)

Narrator POV:



(Genesis 1) 24 And God said, “Let the earth bring forth living creatures according to their kinds—livestock and creeping things and beasts of the earth according to their kinds.” And it was so. 25 And God made the beasts of the earth according to their kinds and the livestock according to their kinds, and everything that creeps on the ground according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.

26 Then God said, “Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth.”

27 So God created man in his own image,
in the image of God he created him;
male and female he created them.

28 And God blessed them. And God said to them, “Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth and subdue it, and have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over every living thing that moves on the earth.” 29 And God said, “Behold, I have given you every plant yielding seed that is on the face of all the earth, and every tree with seed in its fruit. You shall have them for food. 30 And to every beast of the earth and to every bird of the heavens and to everything that creeps on the earth, everything that has the breath of life, I have given every green plant for food.” And it was so. 31 And God saw everything that he had made, and behold, it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning, the sixth day.

Day #7 – God is Finished Creating (Now)

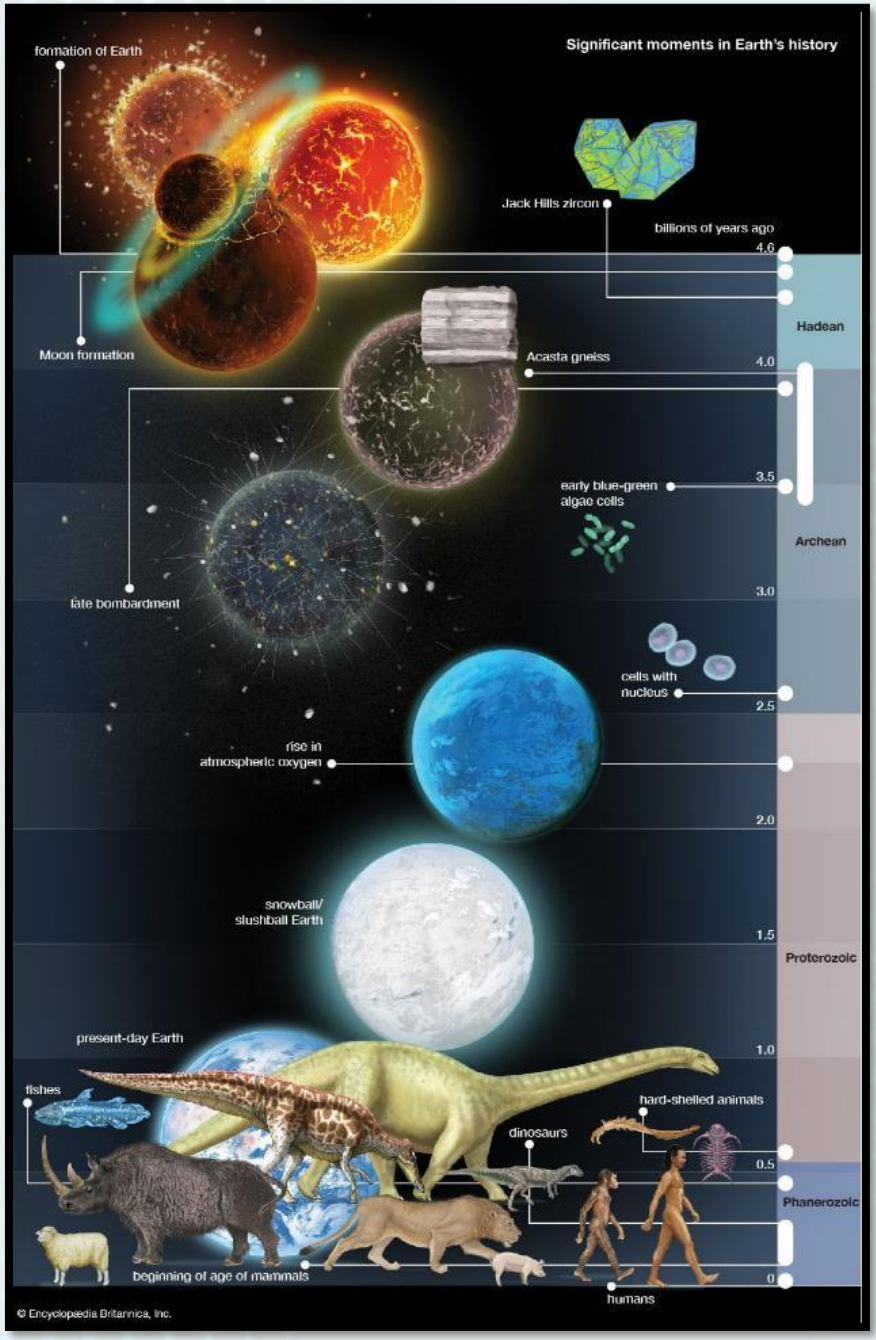
- **Day #7**
  - Day #7 does not have an “evening and morning”.
    - We are still in Day #7.

(Genesis 2) Thus the heavens and the earth were finished, and all the host of them. 2 And on the seventh day God finished his work that he had done, and he rested on the seventh day from all his work that he had done. 3 So God blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on it God rested from all his work that he had done in creation.

https://www.britannica.com/science/Hadean-Eon

Earth's Geological Timeline

- (4.6 billion years ago) – Earth appears
- (4.5 to 3.5 billion years ago) – Carbon Dioxide % rapidly lowers in the Atmosphere – potentially changing the Atmospheric Transparency.
- (4.2 to 3.8 billion years ago) – Earth's Early Oceans
- (4.5 to 4 billion years ago) – Earth's Dark Atmosphere
- (3.5 billion years) – Land begins to appear slightly
- (2.5 billion years) – Major Continents rapidly appear 2.5 billion years ago
- (2.5 billion years) – Rapid Oxygen Spike #1
- (600 million years ago) – Rapid Oxygen Spike #2
- (600 million years ago) – Start of explosion of First Animals



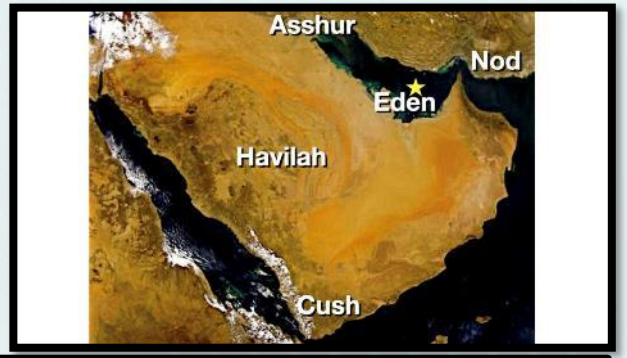
Common Objections to Day Age Creationism

- Day #3
  - **Common Objection – because "fruit trees" appear 125 mya, unlike Generic Vegetation appearing 1.0 bya**
- Day #4
  - **Common Objection – because text says "god made [the sun]", meaning God literally made the Sun on day #4**
- Day #5
  - **Common Objection – because "land animals" aren't directly claimed to have been created on Day #5 – meaning land animals came after birds on Day #5, whereas Day #6 directly mentions Land Animals**

Genesis 2 – A contradictory creation story of Genesis 1?



Genesis 2 – Contradictory story of Genesis 1? => Only the Local POV of the Creation of Garden of Eden, and the Creation of Adam & Eve



- Man was "created" (Day #6) before the Planets were created (Day #4)?
- The POV of the Narrator in Genesis 2's story of the "Creation of Adam" is in the Garden of Eden.
- The narrator is saying that in Eden – which was in the Persian Gulf – there was "no small plant of the field … the Lord God had not caused it to rain on the land, and there was no man to work the ground".
  - The Land of Eden did not yet have plants.
- God finally creates Adam
  - "… the Lord God formed the man from the dust of the ground"
- Was this the 1st Time God was "creating mankind"?
  - Does this contradict Genesis 1 – which says that Man was created on Day #6, after the Earth had Plant-life on Day #3?
- This is just the account of Adam & Eve specifically, happening on Day #7.
  - Perhaps Adam was "selected" from an existing population of Humans – similar to how Abraham was "selected" from the Gentiles. It is not necessarily saying Man was "created" here on Day #7 in Eden.
  - Genesis 2 tells you Adam was created – not HOW he was created.
- The Land of Eden was without Plants – not the entire Earth.
  - The Narrator is speaking from the POV of the Garden of Eden.

(Genesis 2) 5 When no bush of the field was yet in the land and no small plant of the field had yet sprung up—for the LORD God had not caused it to rain on the land, and there was no man to work the ground, 6 and a mist was going up from the land and was watering the whole face of the ground— 7 then the LORD God formed the man of dust from the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living creature. 8 And the LORD God planted a garden in Eden, in the east, and there he put the man whom he had formed. 9 And out of the ground the LORD God made to spring up every tree that is pleasant to the sight and good for food. The tree of life was in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

10 A river flowed out of Eden to water the garden, and there it divided and became four rivers. 11 The name of the first is the Pishon. It is the one that flowed around the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. 12 And the gold of that land is good; bdellium and onyx stone are there. 13 The name of the second river is the Gihon. It is the one that flowed around the whole land of Cush. 14 And the name of the third river is the Tigris, which flows east of Assyria. And the fourth river is the Euphrates.

15 The LORD God took the man and put him in the garden of Eden to work it and keep it. 16 And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, "You may surely eat of every tree of the garden, 17 but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die."

Wait – Isn't there supposed to be no "Death" before Adam?



"Death" before Adam? => Death was Spiritual in the Garden of Eden

- #1 - Humans started out as Mortals - If they can gain the ability to live forever, they must've started out as mortal.
  - ("take also of the tree of life, and eat, and live for ever" Genesis 3:22)
- #2 - If Adam had not eaten from the tree – he would've died a Mortal Death at Old Age
  - (Therefore, "Dying at an Old Age" is redundant as a Punishment).
- #3 - Eating from "the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil" will make you die
- #4 – Adam causes himself to "die" (by eating from the Tree) - Adam, an already Mortal man, "dies" … then lived another 900 years – the same event a "normal mortal death" would bring upon him…
  - Therefore, "Death" can only be seen as Spiritual – death by sin.
- #5 – The "Tree of [Eternal] Life" was then protected – if Adam had eaten from it he would've Lived Forever.
- Therefore, Adam would've simply "lived forever" but in a State of "Death by Sin".
  - In Christianity - Sin is simply Disobeying God's Direct Orders (a spiritual predicament). Jesus saves Spiritually from Sin – not physically.

(Genesis 2) 9 And out of the ground the LORD God made to spring up every tree that is pleasant to the sight and good for food. The tree of life was in the midst of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

(Genesis 3) 15 The LORD God took the man and put him in the garden of Eden to work it and keep it. 16 And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, "You may surely eat of every tree of the garden, 17 but of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you shall not eat, for in the day that you eat of it you shall surely die."

(Genesis 3) 22 Then the LORD God said, "Behold, the man has become like one of us in knowing good and evil. Now, lest he reach out his hand and take also of the tree of life and eat, and live forever—" 23 therefore the LORD God sent him out from the garden of Eden to work the ground from which he was taken. 24 He drove out the man, and at the east of the garden of Eden he placed the cherubim and a flaming sword that turned every way to guard the way to the tree of life.

“Death” before Adam?
Universe Cursed because of Adam?

- Death was brought to Adam – not animals.
- The Tree of Life (immortality) was not given to Animals.
- Jesus didn’t die for Animals.
- The Text doesn’t say the entire Universe and Earth suddenly changed. It just says that Adam now will encounter Thorns (outside the Garden) – and will work the Ground.

- If no Animal ever died – similarly Adam & Eve and their offspring would never die – how fast would Earth overflow with Animals – and how fast would Earth overflow with Bacteria that never dies?

(Genesis 3)

15 I will put enmity between you and the woman,
and between your offspring and her offspring;
he shall bruise your head,
and you shall bruise his heel.”

16 To the woman he said,

“I will surely multiply your pain in childbearing;
in pain you shall bring forth children.
Your desire shall be contrary to your husband,
but he shall rule over you.”

17 And to Adam he said,

“Because you have listened to the voice of your wife
and have eaten of the tree
of which I commanded you,
‘You shall not eat of it,’
cursed is the ground because of you;
in pain you shall eat of it all the days of your life;
18 thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you;
and you shall eat the plants of the field.
19 By the sweat of your face
you shall eat bread,
till you return to the ground,
for out of it you were taken;
for you are dust,
and to dust you shall return.”

The Flood

The Flood was a Regional Flood in Mesopotamia





Objections:
The Flood – Isn't that disproven by Science?

- Science says there has never been a Global Flood.
  - The Bible is disproven because it claims there was a Global Flood.
- The Flood is a "Global Flood" because the Bible Text says it covered "The Entire Earth".



The Ancient Flood is likely a Historical Fact

- Nearly every Ancient Culture has a “Flood Origin Myth”.
  - This very reasonably implies this event actually took place, and all cultures on planet earth are retelling a common origin story – with their own local retelling.
- But, Amongst all the Stories – which story is correct?



“The Earth” –
Does this actually mean the Worldwide Planet Earth?

- Yes – clearly it is stated “The Whole Earth” was flooded.
- Yes – clearly it is stated “The Mountains” were flooded.
- Yes – clearly it is stated “all flesh died … upon the earth”.

- But - What is the text forcing you to believe at a minimum, and not forcing you to believe?

(Genesis 7)

10 And after seven days the waters of the flood came upon the earth.

11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all
the fountains of the great deep burst forth, and the windows of the heavens were opened. 12 And rain fell upon the earth forty days and forty nights.

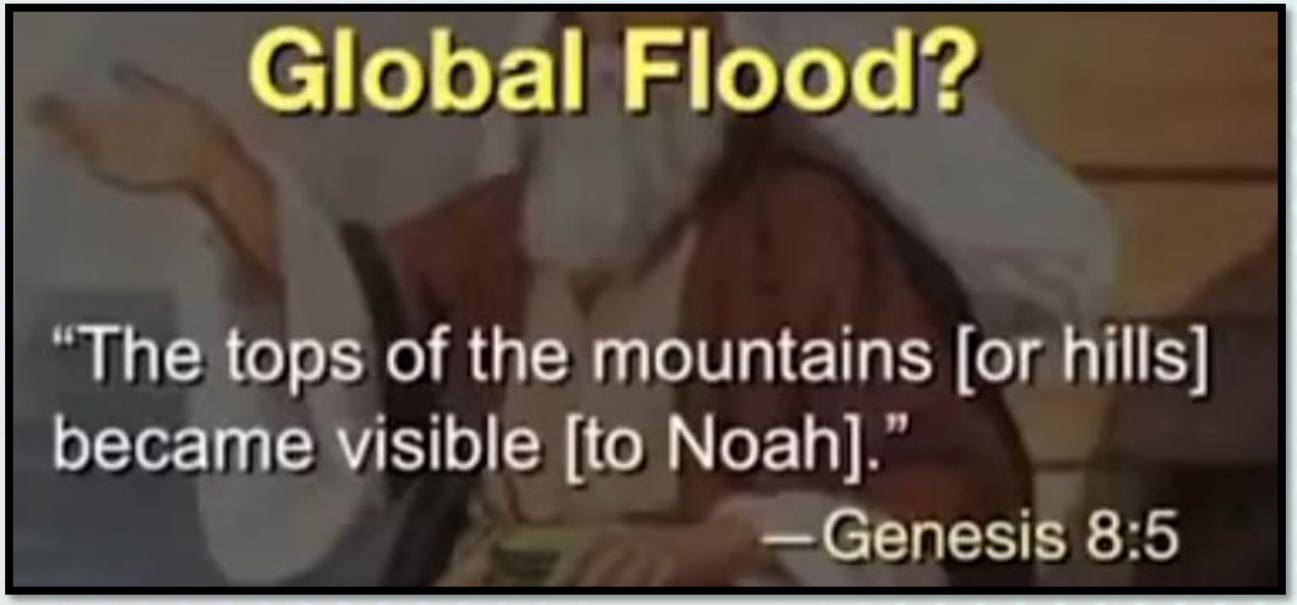
(Genesis 7)

19 And the waters prevailed so mightily on the earth that all the high mountains under the whole heaven were covered. 20 The waters prevailed above the mountains, covering them fifteen cubits deep. 21 And all flesh died that moved on the earth, birds, livestock, beasts, all swarming creatures that swarm on the earth, and all mankind. 22 Everything on the dry land in whose nostrils was the breath of life died. 23 He blotted out every living thing that was on the face of the ground, man and animals and creeping things and birds of the heavens. They were blotted out from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those who were with him in the ark.

https://youtu.be/KTuUCAkpHUQ?si=SqQ3ujiGLAGLNmbP&t=995

The Flood – The Mountains were covered?

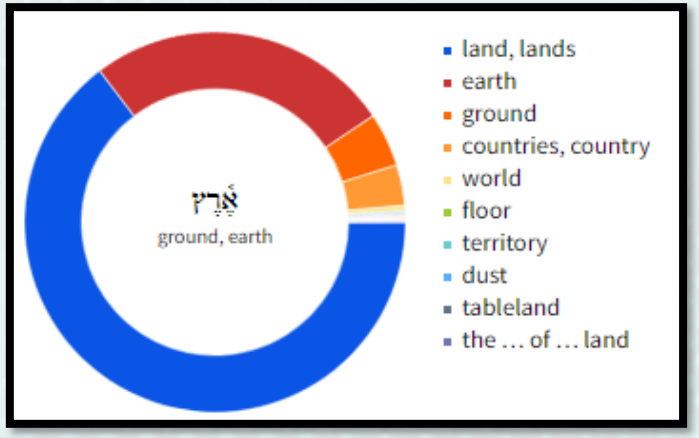
- Mountains (Hebrew “har”)
  - Can mean mountains, hills, or anything in between.
  - Context dependent – relative to narrator.



https://youtu.be/Q07gxxbggJs?si=KMSHJcM5TZ2pNqmC&t=284

"The Entire Earth" – Often – it just simply means the Local Region of the Narrator

- "The Flood" was likely just "The Entire Earth" - from the Perspective of the Narrator, a person on the Ark.
- The Earth (Hebrew "ĕʾ·rĕṣ") –
  - Can mean: the entire earth / local region / the ground
- The "Entire Earth" often simply means "the Local Region".
  - This is an extremely common use of the phrase "entire earth" in Genesis – and overall in the entire Bible.
  - The Bible is very often saying "The Earth" to imply the local region of the narrator.
- **It is GUARANTEED** – that the narrator is saying that the "Entire Earth, from the POV of the Narrator" was flooded.
- **It is not GUARANTEED** that the Narrator is claiming the entire "Planet Earth" was flooded.



כל ארץ
"Is not the whole land before you?"
– Genesis 13:9

"Now when all the land came to the forest, behold, there was honey on the ground."
– 1 Samuel 14:25

"The whole earth is at rest and quiet; they break forth into singing."
– Isaiah 14:7

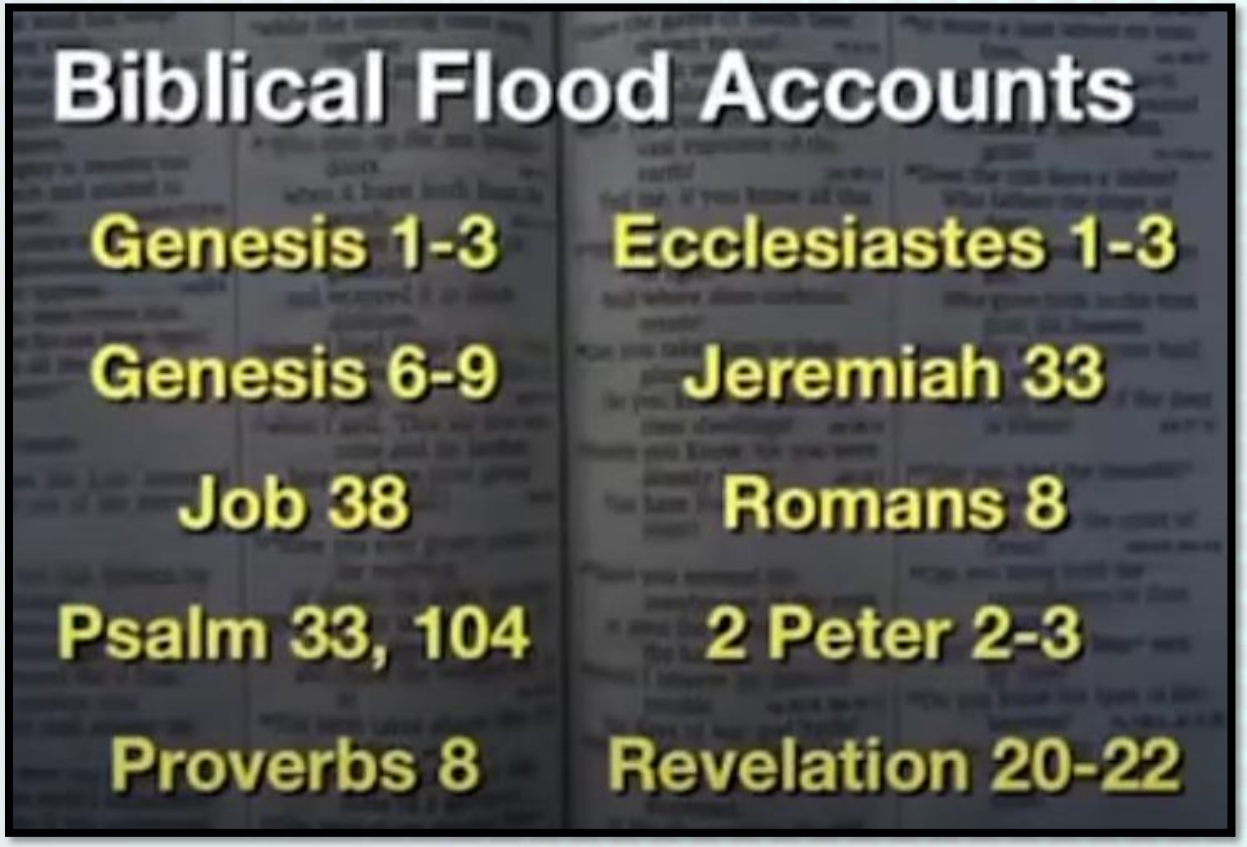
"Moreover, all the earth came to Egypt to Joseph to buy grain, because the famine was severe over all the earth."
– Genesis 41:57

"If there is dew on the fleece alone, and it is dry on all the ground, then I shall know that you will save Israel by my hand, as you have said."
– Judges 6:37b

https://youtu.be/KTuUCAkpHUQ?si=SqQ3ujiGLAGLNmbP&t=995

The Flood - Global or Local?

- Genesis tells us about the Flood being “the whole earth” – does this mean just the local region from the narrator’s perspective, or all planet earth?
- Other Bible verses about the Flood can help clarify.



The Flood - Global or Local?

- Is Psalm 104 a text about Creation, or the Flood?
- In the Beginning – God stretches out the heavens (v. 2)
- In the Beginning – God begins “in the waters” (v.3)
- In the Beginning – God Set the Foundations of the Earth (v. 5)
- In the Beginning – God covered the entire Earth with the Great Oceans (v.6)
- Day #3 – God raises up the Land from the Oceans (v. 7-8)
- => The Waters will never cover the Earth again (v. 9)
- Was this just a Description of the Flood Event?
  - Why does it begin with the Stretching of the Heavens?
  - Why does it begin with the Foundations of the Earth?

(Psalm 104)

Bless the LORD, O my soul!
O LORD my God, you are very great!
You are clothed with splendor and majesty,
2 covering yourself with light as with a garment,
stretching out the heavens like a tent.
3 He lays the beams of his chambers on the waters;
he makes the clouds his chariot;
he rides on the wings of the wind;
4 he makes his messengers winds,
his ministers a flaming fire.

5 He set the earth on its foundations,
so that it should never be moved.
6 You covered it with the deep as with a garment;
the waters stood above the mountains.
7 At your rebuke they fled;
at the sound of your thunder they took to flight.
8 The mountains rose, the valleys sank down
to the place that you appointed for them.
9 You set a boundary that they may not pass,
so that they might not again cover the earth.

https://youtu.be/Q07gxxbggJs?si=gr59CjEVnBa3dT6o&t=370

The Flood Ends

- "The Waters were dried from the Earth"
  - If Global, Did the entire Earth lose it oceans in a year?

"In the six hundred and first year, in the first month, the first day of the month, the waters were dried from off the earth."

– Genesis 8:13a

- The waters were on the "Face of the Whole Earth"
  - Yet the Tops of the Mountains were seen?

"And the waters continued to abate until the tenth month; in the tenth month, on the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains were seen."

– Genesis 8:5

"Then he sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters had subsided from the face of the ground. But the dove found no place to set her foot, and she returned to him to the ark, for the waters were still on the face of the whole earth."

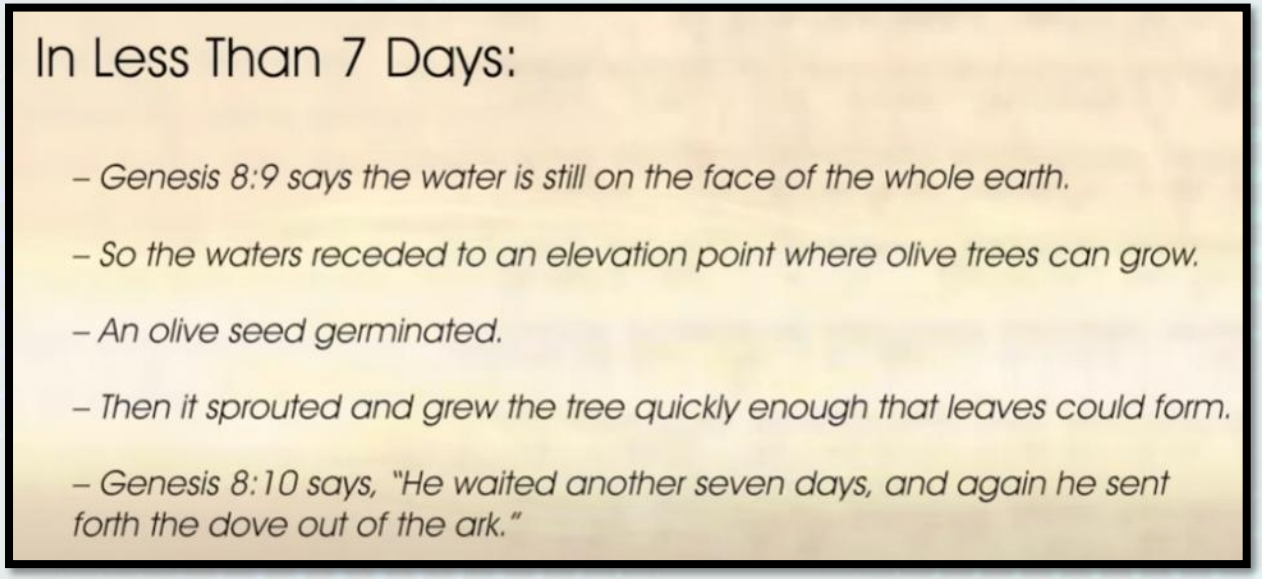
כל ארץ

– Genesis 8:8-9

https://youtu.be/Q07gxxbggJs?si=u1aT1aY18Hdh7xoB&t=457

The Flood Ends

- Does a Global Flood leave in-tact Olive Trees?



- Does a "wind passing over the earth" cause a Global Flood to end?

(Genesis 8)

But God remembered Noah and all the beasts and all the livestock that were with him in the ark. And God made a wind blow over the earth, and the waters subsided. **2** The fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed, the rain from the heavens was restrained, **3** and the waters receded from the earth continually. At the end of 150 days the waters had abated,

Global or Local?

- Job 38 is about Creation (“Where was thou when I laid the foundations of the earth?”)
- The sea was shut with doors – after it had been broken forth (verse 8)
- He set a Boundary (“and brake it up for my decreed place, and set bars and doors”)
- The Waves have a Boundary (“here shall thy proud waves be stayed”)
- Job 38

(Job 38) Then the LORD answered Job out of the whirlwind and said:

2 “Who is this that darkens counsel by words without knowledge?
3 Dress for action like a man;
I will question you, and you make it known to me.

4 “Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth?
Tell me, if you have understanding.
5 Who determined its measurements—surely you know!
Or who stretched the line upon it?
6 On what were its bases sunk,
or who laid its cornerstone,
7 when the morning stars sang together
and all the sons of God shouted for joy?

8 “Or who shut in the sea with doors
when it burst out from the womb,
9 when I made clouds its garment
and thick darkness its swaddling band,
10 and prescribed limits for it
and set bars and doors,
11 and said, ‘Thus far shall you come, and no farther,
and here shall your proud waves be stayed’?

Global or Local?

- Proverbs 8 is about Creation
- He set boundaries for the sea ("…gave to the sea his decree, that the waters should not pass his commandment; when he appointed the foundations of the earth")
- Proverbs 8

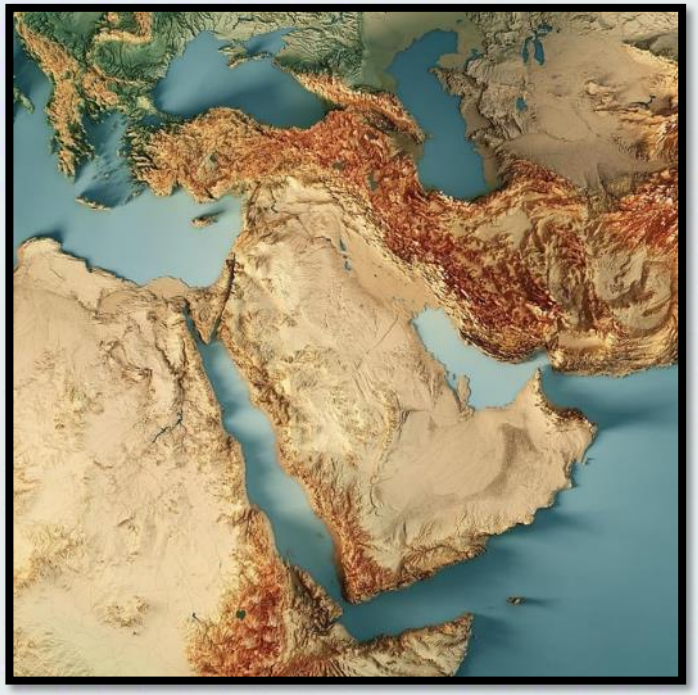
(Proverbs 8)

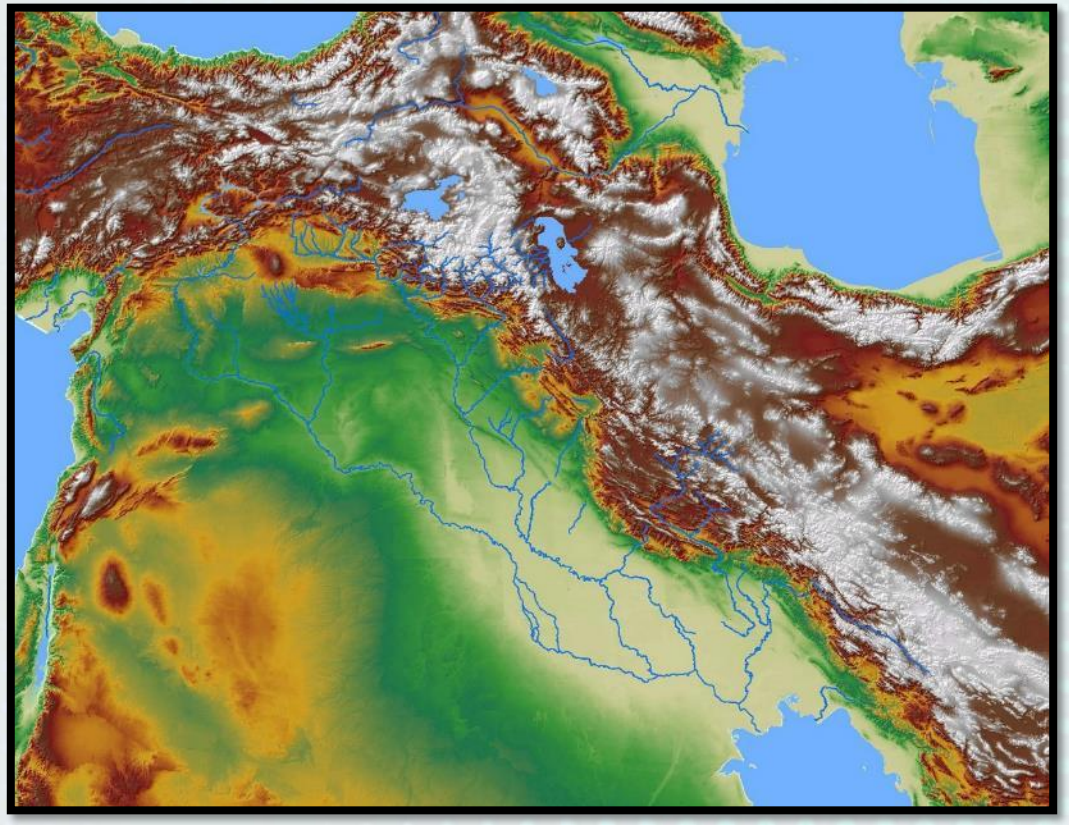
22 "The LORD possessed me at the beginning of his work,
the first of his acts of old.
23 Ages ago I was set up,
at the first, before the beginning of the earth.
24 When there were no depths I was brought forth,
when there were no springs abounding with water.
25 Before the mountains had been shaped,
before the hills, I was brought forth,
26 before he had made the earth with its fields,
or the first of the dust of the world.
27 When he established the heavens, I was there;
when he drew a circle on the face of the deep,
28 when he made firm the skies above,
when he established the fountains of the deep,
29 when he assigned to the sea its limit,
so that the waters might not transgress his command,
when he marked out the foundations of the earth,

https://www.asor.org/resources/photo-collection/maps/mid000020

Ancient Mesopotamian Flood

- Topographic Maps of Mesopotamian Plain
- (The Entire region is boxed-in by Mountain Ranges – perfect for a Local Flood)





https://reasons.org/explore/publications/facts-for-faith/noah-s-flood-a-bird-s-eye-view

Ancient Mesopotamian Flood

- The topography of the Mesopotamian region forms a huge U-shaped bowl that stretches 600 miles from the Persian Gulf to the northwest.
- Steep escarpments that rise quickly from less than 200 meters to 1,000 meters set boundaries for the Mesopotamian Plain on the north and the east.
- Huge underground aquifers ("the springs of the great deep" in Genesis 7:11) suddenly "burst forth." In addition, Genesis 7:12 states that "the floodgates of the heavens" opened, and rain fell for 40 days and 40 nights. In other words, hard rain fell in the region continuously for 40 days. Meteorologically, these factors constitute an unprecedented rain event in a region that averages only 10-20 inches of rainfall per year. No natural explanation exists for a storm so large, intense, or persistent in this region.
- Assuming the Earth's entire human population lived on the Mesopotamian Plain at that time, a flood that reached 200 to 300 meters deep would have destroyed all humanity on the land. The geographical extent of such a flood would have included areas that today belong to Iraq, Iran, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, and Syria.
- Hugh Ross



https://reasons.org/explore/publications/questions-from-social-media/what-is-the-best-date-for-noahs-flood

Flood Timeline

- [Question to Hugh Ross] "How do you respond to those who critique the Reasons to Believe (RTB) flood model by mentioning human fossils and artifacts found in Africa, Egypt, and Israel at 85,000 to 55,000 years ago show that humankind had already spread out long before the RTB flood model would propose?"
- The RTB flood model dates the flood of Noah at about 50,000 +/- 40,000 years ago.
- Neither the scientific nor the biblical dates for the creation of Adam and the flood of Noah are very accurate. The Bible implies that the dates for both the creation of Adam and Eve and the flood of Noah are sometime during an ice age, most likely the last ice age.
- The scientific date range for the last ice age is 130,000–14,000 years ago and the ice age before that 230,000–135,000 years ago.
- Hugh Ross



https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/new-research-confirms-postflood-disperal-of-humanity

Flood Timeline

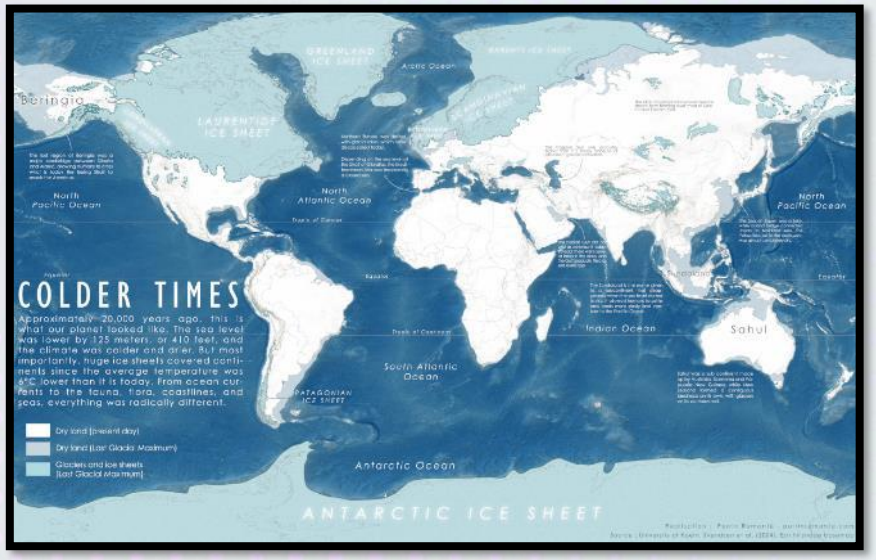
- Recent scientific findings go a long way toward affirming a literal, historical interpretation of Genesis 1–11.
- Genesis 9–11 records that after the Flood, humans remained in one region, refusing to obey God's twice stated command to "spread out over the earth and multiply upon it" (Genesis 9:1, 7).
- Genesis 11:7–9 describes how God dealt with this bold rebellion. He forcibly scattered people across Earth's continents and islands.
- Evidence now shows that an aggressive, nearly simultaneous scattering of humanity from the region encompassing the Near and Middle East, and parts of Africa did, in fact, occur.
- The earliest undisputed evidence for anatomically modern human fossil remains in Europe date to 44,000–39,000 years ago... [Four dating methods] yield consistent dates indicating that anatomically modern humans migrated and began to colonize nearly all of Europe between 44,000 and 40,000 years ago.
- The same four dating methods establish that anatomically modern humans began to colonize virtually all the land area of Asia between 50,000 and 40,000 years ago.
- It seems likely that Noah's Flood occurred prior to 40,000 years ago, most probably earlier than 45,000 years ago.
- Thus, the dispersal of humanity described in Genesis 10–11 need not be considered a fantastic element.
- Hugh Ross 2023

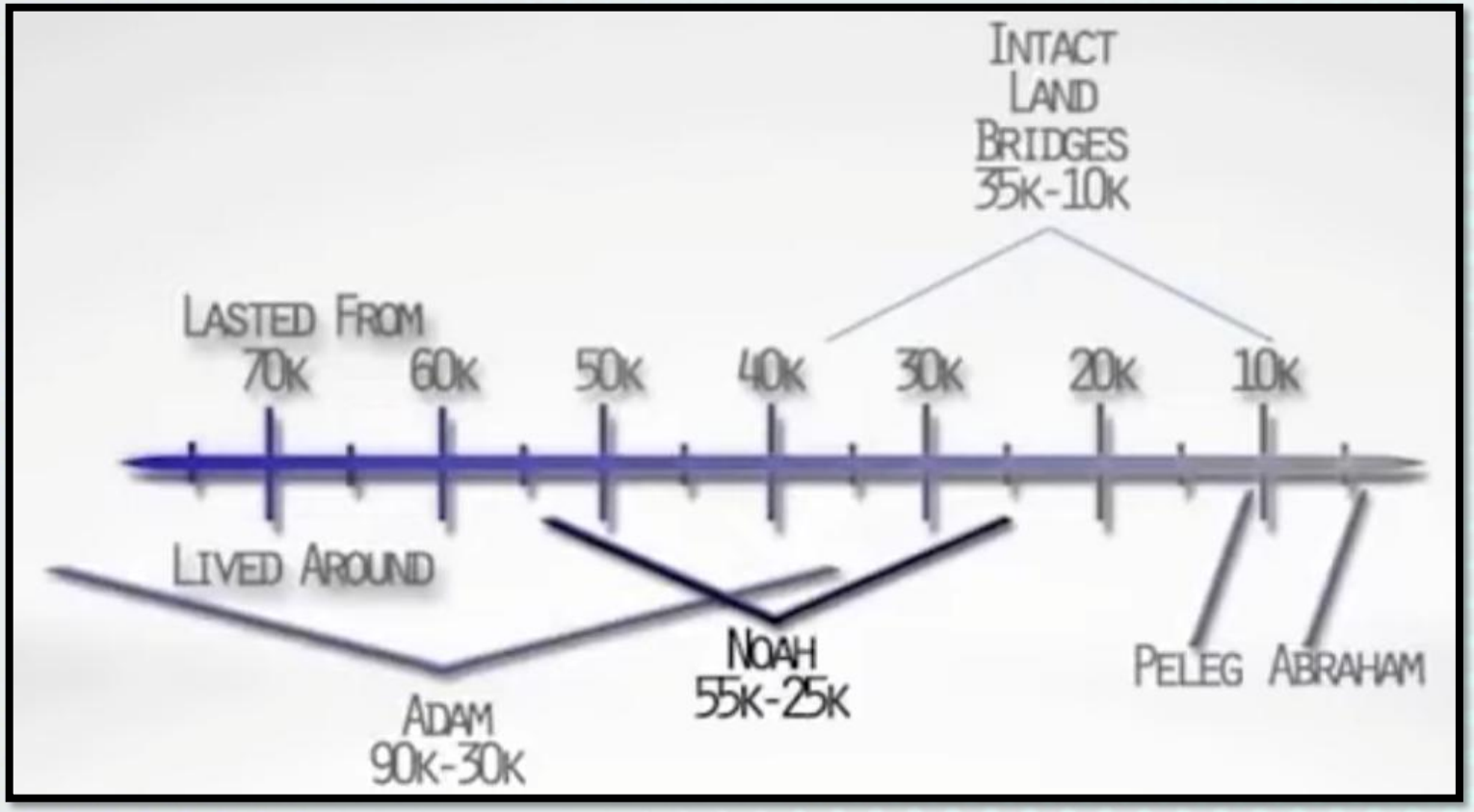


https://youtu.be/KTuUCAkpHUQ?si=bmi24hJVtHNWjGel&t=2721

Flood Timeline

- All the Flood might require is that the Ice Age, which covered much of the Earth, allow some melt to cause a gigantic regional flood, in the last 100,000 years.
- "… Geologists have pointed out that all you need is aggressive Ice & Snow melt coming off the Mountains [around Mesopotamia]."
- Hugh Ross





https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/when-did-god-create-adam-and-eve

Adam & Eve Timeline

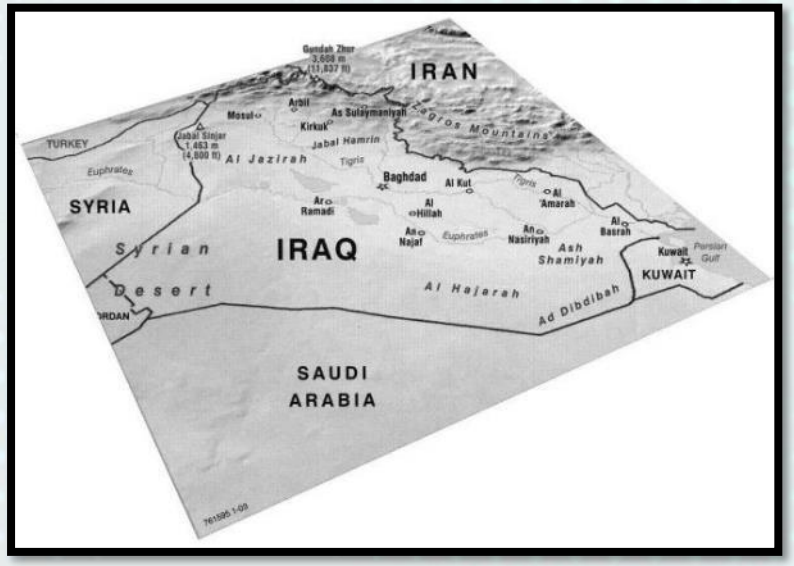
- Genesis 2 describes four known rivers flowing out from named locations—in the mountains of Arabia and the mountains surrounding Mesopotamia—and meeting together in the Garden of Eden. (Adam was placed in Eden shortly after he was created, and Eve was created in Eden.) The only time these rivers can join together on dry land is when most of the Persian Gulf is dry. The drying up of most of the Persian Gulf requires that Earth be in an ice age.
- The last ice age persisted from 120,000 to 13,000 years ago and the ice age before that from 135,000 to 230,000 years ago.
- Third, the earliest archaeological evidence for human activity appears in both the Persian Gulf region and in eastern and southern Africa. This evidence implies an easy migration route between the Persian Gulf region and eastern and southern Africa. This route took the form of lush growth along the Gihon River through southern Arabia and a land bridge connecting the southwestern part of Arabia to the horn of Africa. Such a migration route existed three times during the last two ice ages: 55,000, 75,000–130,000, and 150,000–160,000 years ago. It was most favorable for human migration during the first two of the three epochs.
- The most likely biblical date for the creation of Adam and Eve, therefore, would lie between 55,000 and 120,000 years ago. However, the date could be stretched as far back as 230,000 years ago.
- Hugh Ross 2016

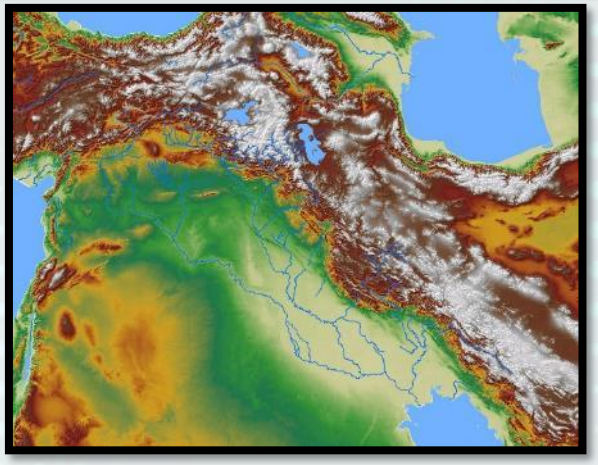


https://ncse.ngo/yes-noahs-flood-may-have-happened-not-over-whole-earth

Ancient Mesopotamian Flood Evidence

- “The watershed for the Euphrates and Tigris Rivers on which the flood could have occurred extends for more than 1600 km from the Persian Gulf through Mesopotamia into Syria and Turkey and laterally for about 1000 km from eastern Saudi Arabia to southwestern Iran — an area of more than 1.6 million square kilometers.
- Thus, it would be possible for a flood to have occurred in mid- Mesopotamia, perhaps about 2900 BCE, as evidenced by the scientifically dated flood deposits.
- When the huge storm ceased that caused the flood, there would have been huge lakes, and it could have taken months to drain the water in these lakes into the gulf — which could easily explain why the Noachian Flood took so long to recede (as much as one year, according to Genesis 8:14). Evidence for this poor drainage can be seen in the present-day lakes in the flood plains. Lake Hawr al Hammar is 32 km wide and more than 80 km long, lies on the flood plain of the Euphrates River west of Basra, and several other large lakes are on flood plains adjacent to the Tigris River (for example, Hawr as Sa'diya and Hawr as Saniyalt). The poor drainage would be caused by the fact that the water covering the flood plains would have no channel through which to flow, would not flow uphill over the sloping natural levees to re-enter the river channels, and the slopes of the bottoms of the lakes would have been nearly flat with gradients toward the gulf of 0.025 to 0.075 meters per kilometer.
- If the 3.4-meter–thick layer of flood deposits in southeastern Mesopotamia (MacDonald 1988) represents a huge flood of ancient times, and if it is the remnants of the one described in the early Babylonian epics, then the authors of these epics were likely survivors who lived in a village on natural levees on the lower parts of either the Euphrates or Tigris Rivers where the flood waters covered their village, natural levees, and adjacent flood plains for distances of 160 to 320 kilometers so that no land could be seen, and their "whole world" would have been under water.”



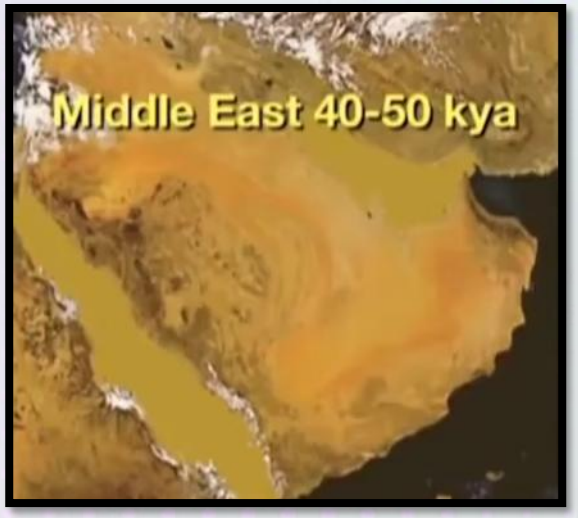


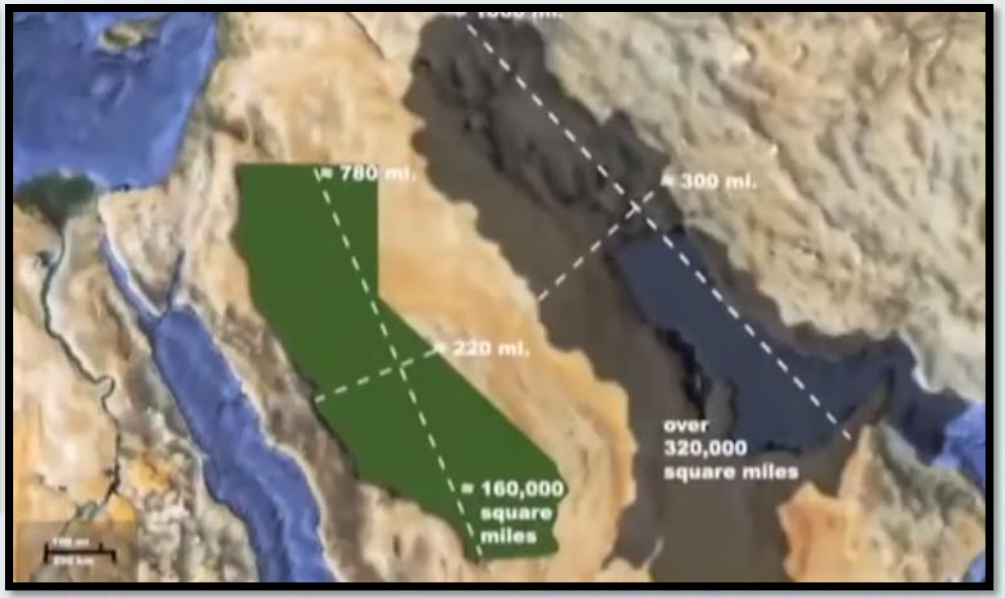
https://youtu.be/KTuUCAkpHUQ?si=bmi24hJVtHNWjGel&t=2721

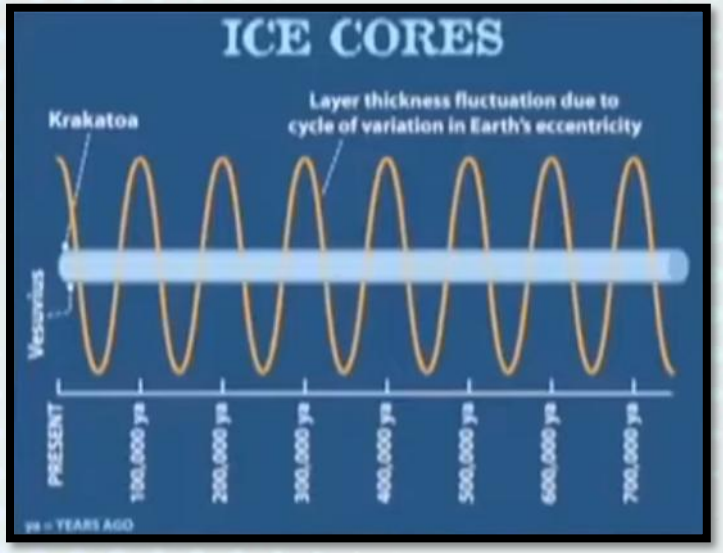
Ancient Mesopotamian Flood Evidence

- [The ice cores] give you a continuous record of the last [100,000+] years … that you are going to get a signal in those ice layers.
- Thanks to these ice cores, you can get a decent calibration of that.
- … Geologists have pointed out that all you need is aggressive Ice & Snow melt coming off the Mountains [around Mesopotamia].
- Hugh Ross









Prophecy
The Messiah

General Overview – All Messiah Prophecies





Did the Bible really predict the Messiah? Do the Texts exist beforehand?

- The Time Periods of the Written Texts
- The Prophecies of the Messiah were “traditionally written” mostly from **1,000 BCE to 200 BCE**.
  - This is the Traditional Dating of the texts.
- The earliest known manuscripts of the Old Testament Texts are in the Dead Sea Scrolls – which are approx. **125 BCE – 300 BCE.**
  - The Texts existed before the fulfillment of the Prophecies.
- The Time Period of the Messiah
- Almost 100+ prophecies fulfilled themselves from approx. **10 AD to 70 AD** – fulfilled by Jesus Christ.





Summary of Topics
=> List of all Messianic Prophecy in the Bible



- Topics
- King Messiah
- Priestly Messiah (Suffering Messiah)
- Divine Messiah
- Details of The Life of the Messiah
- Required Time Period of the Arrival of the Messiah
- Full Explanation for why the Messiah must Appear Twice
  - 1st Appearance as Priestly Messiah
  - 2nd Appearance as King Messiah
- Who are the Servants of Isaiah 40-53?
  - One servant is the Nation of Israel
  - One servant is the Messiah of Israel
- Objections to Jesus being the Messiah
- "The Messiah is a Political Leader. He will be King to Israel, bring world peace, rebuild the temple, etc... Jesus did not fulfill any of these Messianic Prophecies."
- "The Messiah does not 'appear Twice', that is a Christian belief."
- "The Messiah is not God himself - and God never appears as a Man in the Bible."
- "The Messiah does not Suffer, Die, and Resurrect.
- "The Messiah is not a Priest who dies for the people's atonement."



First,
What identifies a Verse as a “Messianic Prophecy”?

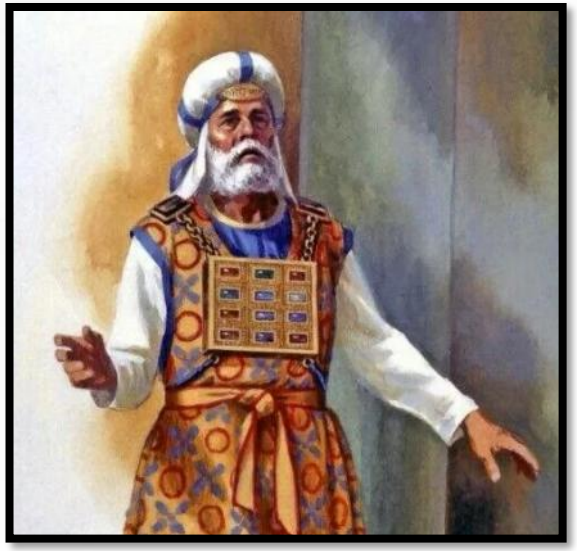


- The Old Testament can sometimes be non-direct about a Verse being a “Messianic Prophecy”.
  - We must use Context to determine the Purpose.
- Title Identifiers for Messianic Prophecy
  - “Anointed One”
    - Context determines if “anointed one” / “messiah” is messianic, or just about a Person who God has “anointed” to do a purpose (such as Cyrus the Great, in Daniel).
    - Translated sometimes directly as “Messiah” although it literally means “anointed one” which is Hebrew “Mashiach”
  - “The Branch”
  - “The Arm of the Lord / The Lord’s Holy Arm”
  - “The Root of David/Jesse”
  - The Future Messianic Eternal “King of Israel”
- Contextual Identifiers for Messianic Prophecy
  - The Context is about final Salvation, Atonement, and Redemption provided by God (and might mention a singular individual who achieve this)
  - The Context is about a Person who does things only God can possibly do, or a Person having titles only God is able to have

The Messiah
=> Kingly-Priest Yeshua (Jesus)

- The Kingly-Priest Messiah
- The Messiah would be a King (Zechariah 9:10, Zechariah 14)
- The Messiah would be a Priest (Psalm 110:4, Zechariah 3:8, Zechariah 6:11-13)
  - Psalm 110 is Messianic according to Rabbis https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/
- The Messiah would be a Kingly-Priest (Zechariah 6:11-13, 1 Chronicles 15:25–27)
  - David was a Priestly-King https://youtu.be/w0IThMUEiO4?si=ub2Bwwz4R8tfn-fd&t=1029
- Messiah is an Individual Man
- The Messiah would be an Individual Man – who builds the Temple of God (Zechariah 6:12-13)
- Messiah "Yeshua" who is the Kingly-Priest
- Yeshua (Joshua/Jesus) is a Type of the Messiah (the Branch) who is the High Priest and Kingly Ruler (Zechariah 6:11-13)

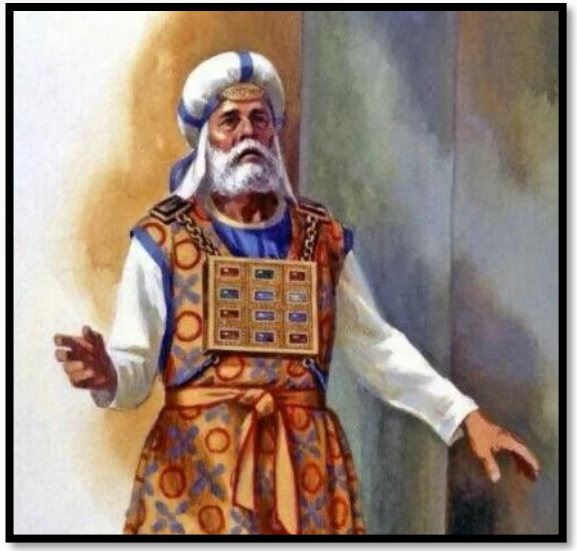




The Messiah
=> New Covenant, Son of David, Son of God

- New Covenant
- The Messiah would bring in a new covenant (Jeremiah 31:31, Isaiah 53, Zechariah 11)
- The New Covenant will have The Law “written on their Hearts” – the new covenant cannot be broken like the old covenant was by the Jews (Jeremiah 31:31-34)
- Son of David
- The Messiah would be a Paternal descendant of David – Jews must inherit Rights from their Father (2 Samuel 7:12–16)
    - Jesus inherited Paternal rights through his mother Mary https://youtu.be/wuwY1H9pDQc?si=gTHNnu7rvVEnAU1P
    - Jesus inherited Paternal rights from his Mother Mary https://youtu.be/xG26JPXZVx0?si=CZosGcIC4RQA2tYB&t=2390
    - Jesus inherited from Joseph https://jewsforjesus.org/messianic-prophecies/the-messiah-would-be-a-descendant-of-david
- The Messiah - David’s Descendant - would be greater than David Himself – “The Lord says to my Lord…” (Psalm 110:1–4)
    - Psalm 110 is Messianic according to Rabbis https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/
- The Messiah would be the descendant of Abraham through whom all nations would be blessed (Genesis 12:3)
- Son of God
- The Messiah would be called “God’s Son” (Psalm 2:1–12)
    - Does God have a Son? https://realmessiah.com/theological/





The Messiah
=> Start of His Life

- Preceded by a Messenger like Elijah (John the Baptist)
- The Messiah would be preceded by Elijah the prophet (Malachi 4:5–6)
    - Jesus was preceded by John the Baptist – in this case not Elijah himself, but one like Him.
- The Messiah would be preceded by a Forerunner in the Wilderness saying “A Voice cries: In the wilderness prepare the way of the Lord; make straight in the desert a highway for our God… The Glory of the LORD shall be revealed, and all Flesh shall see it together…" (Isaiah 40:3-5)
    - John the Baptist preached about Jesus in the Desert, before Jesus arrived.
- Life of the Messiah
- The Messiah would be born in Bethlehem (Micah 5:2)
- The Messiah would be called out of Egypt – just like Israel the Nation (Hosea 11:1)
- The Messiah would be of Galilee (Isaiah 9:1)
- The Messiah would enter Jerusalem Riding a Donkey (Zechariah 9:9)
- The Messiah would be born of a Supernatural Birth – Perhaps even a Virgin Birth - and be named Immanuel – which means “God with Us” (Isaiah 7:14)
    - The Messiah will be born supernaturally (or maybe even a virgin)
        - https://youtu.be/eI15ExvNzvM?si=r_EqNVpvk-nnNH1D
        - https://youtu.be/Z5aQkUPoK1U?si=OdaGZ8jA-DBuh5UG&t=1103



The Messiah
=> Death & Resurrection - Atonement for Sins
=> Priestly Messiah

- The Suffering Servant & Atonement for All Sins
- **The Next Section "The Servants of Isaiah 40-53" will show that the Servants are both Israel & The Messiah.**
- The Messiah who is the "Righteous Suffering Servant" who provides Atonement from All Sins (Isaiah 49-53, Psalm 69, Zechariah 13:1)
- The Messiah will be Publicly Beaten, His Back Beaten, He will be Spit Upon, and His Beard Pulled – Pierced for our sins – He willingly suffers (Isaiah 49-53)
- Atonement for the People because of the Death of the High Priest
- The Death of the High Priest can Atone for the Sins of the People (Joshua 20:1-6)
  - Payment/Atonement for Sin has always required Blood Sacrifice & Penal Substitution – Repentance accepts Jesus' Payment
    - https://youtu.be/A6v3I2tXKcU?si=nfjoCgS3E91cE1FB&t=104
  - Jesus' Death is not Human Sacrifice – its Self-Sacrifice and penal substitution for sin by God Himself. The Penalty for Sin is Death. The Righteous Servant's Death in Isaiah 53 provides Atonement.
    - https://youtu.be/A6v3I2tXKcU?si=yvyJl1OmSGy5oznK&t=248
- Death & Resurrection
- The Messiah will be Killed & Resurrected (Isaiah 53:8-10, Psalms 16:8–11, Psalm 118:17–18)
  - The Messiah would be Resurrected https://jewsforjesus.org/messianic-prophecies/the-messiah-would-be-resurrected
  - Psalms 16 is about the Resurrection of the Messiah https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/





The Messiah
=> Pierced for our Sins
=> Priestly Messiah

- Hands & Feet Pierced - He is Lifted Up
- The Messiah will be Pierced - in the Hands & Feet (Psalm 22:16)
  - Psalm 22 is about the Messiah – not just King David https://youtu.be/UhIYfKurqw4?si=cn4-ELxUlezELXco
  - Psalm 22 is about the Messiah https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/
  - "Pierced in the Hands & Feet" is an Accurate Translation https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/
- The Messiah's garments will be divided amongst them (Psalms 22:18)
- He will be Mocked – they will say "Why doesn't the LORD Rescue you?" (Psalms 22:7-8)
- He will cry out - "My God, My God, Why have you Forsaken Me?" (Psalms 22:1)
- The Messiah would be Lifted Up – like the Bronze Serpent (Numbers 21:6–9)
- The Messiah would be a perfect atonement - like the Passover lamb (Exodus 12:1–51)
- The Messiah's Bones would not be Broken – like the Passover Lamb (Psalm 34:20, Exodus 12:46)





The Messiah
=> Israel Rejects the Messiah & Gentiles Accept the Messiah





- Israel Rejects the Messiah
- The Messiah would be the Rejected Cornerstone of Israel (Psalm 118:22–24, Isaiah 28:14-18)
- Israel during **"The Latter Days"** will finally seek the Davidic King Messiah, who they Rejected - and be regathered to the Nation of Israel (Hosea 3)
- God is angry against the Leaders of Israel - who rejected his Cornerstone from Judah (Zechariah 10:3-4)
- The Messiah will be Rejected by His People – the Nation of Israel (Isaiah 53)
  - The Messiah Jesus is rejected by Israel – yet accepted by all the Gentiles https://youtu.be/w0IThMUEiO4?si=cjPDNmlynFA2Cgm2&t=7191
- The Messiah – the Good Shepherd - would be Rejected & Betrayed by the Shepherds of Israel (Zechariah 11)
- The Messiah would be betrayed for 30 pieces of silver – and the 30 pieces would be Thrown into the House of the Lord (Zechariah 11)
- Israel will be Blind & Deaf to the Messiah (Isaiah 6:10-13)
- The Gentiles Accept the Messiah
- The Gentiles will accept the Messiah (Isaiah 42:4, Isaiah 52:15)
- God Himself will be Pierced / The Nation of Israel will mourn for the Messiah on His Return
- God Himself (and/or the Messiah) will be looked upon "Pierced" – who was Pierced by Israel themselves – and he will be mourned for like "an Only Child" (Zechariah 12:8-10)
  - The Translation of "They will look on Me [God/Yahweh] whom they [Israel] have pierced" is accurate https://youtu.be/vLnvmgDZBME?si=A7EBSlx4g8sF5QyP&t=1986
  - Key Question - The Nation of Israel will "mourn" for the Messiah who has appeared to them, after all this time of waiting… Instead of being Happy at the Coming of the Messiah, the Nation of Israel mourns? Why? (Zechariah 12:8-10)

The Messiah
=> Divine Messiah

- The Messiah is God
- The Messiah will be called “the Mighty God” and the “Everlasting Father” (Isaiah 9:6–7)
  - The Child is the one **DIRECTLY STATED TO BE** “Mighty God / Everlasting Father”
    - https://youtu.be/oWouObse9dw?si=mvLdcSveAEPTUagZ&t=610
    - https://youtu.be/_ZjPaRv8SZw?si=dA4Yg_quk3iQ_hEP&t=693
- The Messiah would be the “Son of Man coming with the Clouds of Heaven” (Daniel 7:13–14)
  - This Man has **ALL AUTHORITY & POWER** (sitting at right hand of God) – presumably Omnipotent & Omniscient.
  - This Man is “Served” by all people – “pelah” – only used of **WORSHIP OF GOD(S)** in the Book of Daniel
  - This Man **RIDES THE CLOUDS** of Heaven - something **ONLY** God does approx. 80 times (Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalms 68:4)
- The Messiah will be “whose Coming Forth is from of Old" and "from Ancient Days“ (Micah 5:2)
  - **ONLY GOD** is “the one from Ancient Days.”
- The Messiah is a Child given to us – a Son - who would be called Emmanuel - “God with Us” (Isaiah 9:6, Isaiah 7:14)
- The Messiah will show the Glory of the Lord revealed, and all Flesh will See It – How can the Glory of God be revealed, Even more than even the Ark of the Covenant? (Isaiah 40:5)
- The Messiah - the Earthly King - is described as sitting on the throne of God: “Your Throne, O God”. The Messianic King is directly called “O God”. (Psalms 45)
- The “Rejected Shepherd” of Zechariah 11 speaks as God in first-person, and calls the covenant with Israel "My covenant".
  - https://youtu.be/vLnvmgDZBME?si=2IHmSrvKwEPQ7Koj&t=1445
- God's "Feet" will stand on the Mount of Olives - when God will fight a battle against the nations (Zechariah 14)
  - https://youtu.be/vLnvmgDZBME?si=z7jTBUfP73qOvmZR&t=2356
- God has a one-of-a-kind Son – sonship being a status of Equality of Essence (Proverbs 30:4)
- Can God appear as a Man?
- **Read The Section “God appears as a Man in the Tanach”.**





The Messiah
=> Types of the Messiah (Models of the Messiah)

- #1 Messianic Type - The Sacrifice of Isaac (The Crucifixion of Jesus)
- Father Abraham was willing to sacrifice His "Only Son" Isaac.
  - Abraham's first son was Ishmael, but Abraham's "Unique Only-Son" of the Covenant from Sarah was Isaac
  - Isaac, the "Only Son", submits to His Father Abraham for the Sacrifice, like a Lamb to the Slaughter.
- **Abraham expected Isaac to be KILLED – and then RESURRECTED.**
  - He knew that God had promised Descendants through Isaac, therefore if Killed he must be Resurrected. (Confirmed in the New Testament - Hebrews 11:18-19)
  - God's Only Son gave his only life, just like the Passover lamb, as the Messiah to Atone for Sin.
- Messianic Types
- David the Priestly King is a Type of the Messiah.
  - The Messiah would come through David (of Judah).
    - Yet, Joseph – the Sufferer - not Judah, the King - still has the Highest Birthright. (1 Chronicles 5:2)
- Joseph and His Brothers are a Type of the Messiah.
  - His Brothers reject Him, and apparently "kill him", only for Him to reappear as the Ruler of the Gentiles.
- The Passover Lamb
  - The Unblemished Sacrifice, No Bones Broken – for the Atonement of the Sins of All
- Moses
  - Savior of the People of Israel
- The Bronze Serpent - To be saved from the fiery snake venom (sin) – look to the Bronze Serpent mounted on the Pole (the crucifixion) – to be saved by God. (Numbers 21:4-9)
  - Jesus confirms He is the Bronze Serpent Lifted up (John 3:14-15)
- Jonah spent 3 days in the Belly of the Whale, then Exited.
  - Jesus spent 3 days dead, then Resurrected.

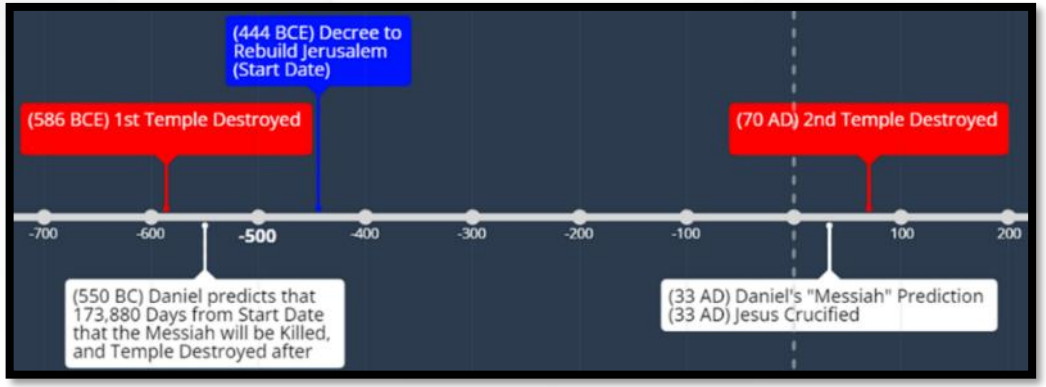




The Messiah
=> Messiah had to come before Temple Destruction (70 AD)
=> Messiah had to come during Roman Empire (33 BC – 476 AD)

- The Time Period of the Messiah has Already Happened
- **The Messiah being killed - HAD TO HAPPEN before the 2nd Temple Destruction in 70 AD** (Daniel 9).
  - Daniel 9 is about The Messiah https://youtu.be/Kf1f10pPcao?si=T4oBxaydSlH8Soqb
- **God's "Permanent Atonement for Sin" HAD TO HAPPEN before the 2nd Temple Destruction in 70 AD** (Daniel 9).
  - The Messiah must come before the 2nd Temple Destruction & bring Atonement for Sin https://youtu.be/w0IThMUEiO4?si=MtTBPcbHxWxwuDsg&t=7228
- **God's Eternal Priestly Kingdom HAD TO HAPPEN during the Roman Empire** (Daniel 2).
  - Rashi says during the Roman Empire the Messiah must come https://youtu.be/M5efUqXI33w?si=iL0pzcqp5u1YnWRy&t=789
- The Messiah would come 173,880 days ("69 weeks of years") from the Decree to Rebuild Jerusalem – which ends up to be approx. 33 AD (Daniel 9:24–27)
  - **See Section "Prophecies of the Messiah (Daniel)" for a Study on when Daniel's final date of the Messiah's arrival is.**
- God Himself will Enter the Temple - with the Messenger of the New Covenant – during the 2nd Temple Period (Malachi 3:1-5)





The Messiah
=> Is Daniel 9 (and Daniel 2) about the Messiah?

- Daniel 9
- **Once the Jews return from the Babylonian Exile, there will be a 70 weeks which will put an end to sin & atone forever & create a holy place – Messiah alert!**
  - 70 weeks = 490 years
- Timeline
  - **"An anointed one"** (a prince) will come. Then there shall be 7 weeks.
  - After 62 weeks, **"an anointed one"** shall be cut off – and the City of Jerusalem, and the Temple, will be destroyed.
- The 1st anointed one – **King Cyrus** – who returns the Jews to Israel is approx. 538 BC (just like in Isaiah 45).
- The 2nd anointed one is the **Priestly Messiah** – who will be "cut off" (killed).
- Finally, the Temple & City will be destroyed (70 AD).
- This event apparently brought in "everlasting righteousness" and "put an end to sin"… sounds like the role of the Messiah!
- Daniel 2
- In the Days of the 4th Kingdom (Roman Empire) God will establish a Kingdom that will never be Destroyed – Messianic Kingdom – which will end sin.
- Conclusion – Jesus is the only Messiah
- **During the Days of the Roman Empire (33 BC – 500 AD), and before the Temple is destroyed (70 AD), God sets up his Eternal Priestly Kingdom, which will end sin forever.**
- The 1st Anointed one might be King Cyrus – the 2nd Anointed One, who brings Atonement, must be Messiah Jesus https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/

Daniel 9

Daniel 2

(Daniel 9)

24 "Seventy weeks are decreed about your people and your holy city, to
finish the transgression, to put an end to sin, and to atone for
iniquity, to bring in everlasting righteousness, to seal both vision and
prophet, and to anoint a most holy place. 25 Know therefore and
understand that from the going out of the word to restore and build
Jerusalem to the coming of an anointed one, a prince, there shall be
seven weeks.

Then for sixty-two weeks it shall be built again with squares and
moat, but in a troubled time.

26 And after the sixty-two weeks, an anointed one shall be cut off and
shall have nothing. And the people of the prince who is to come shall
destroy the city and the sanctuary. Its end shall come with a flood, and
to the end there shall be war. Desolations are decreed. 27 And he shall
make a strong covenant with many for one week, and for half of the
week he shall put an end to sacrifice and offering. And on the wing of
abominations shall come one who makes desolate, until the decreed
end is poured out on the desolator."

(Daniel 2) 40 And there shall be a fourth kingdom, strong as iron,
because iron breaks to pieces and shatters all things. And like iron that
crushes, it shall break and crush all these. 41 And as you saw the feet
and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron, it shall be a divided
kingdom, but some of the firmness of iron shall be in it, just as you saw
iron mixed with the soft clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly
iron and partly clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong and partly
brittle. 43 As you saw the iron mixed with soft clay, so they will mix with
one another in marriage, but they will not hold together, just as iron
does not mix with clay.

44 And in the days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a
kingdom that shall never be destroyed, nor shall the kingdom be left to
another people. It shall break in pieces all these kingdoms and bring
them to an end, and it shall stand forever,

The Messiah
=> King Messiah (1/2)

- Time Period of King Messiah vs. Time Period of Suffering Messiah
- "King Messiah" will reign during **"The Latter Days"** (Isaiah 2, Hosea 3)
  - **Meanwhile:** the "Suffering Messiah" must've come during 2nd Temple period – before 70 AD – and during the Roman Empire (Daniel 2, Daniel 9, Isaiah 49-53)
- King of The Regathered Nation of Israel
- He will be the Anointed King of Israel
  - Spiritually, Completed on the Cross – signpost above read "King of the Jews" – as he Died for Atonement of Sins as Priestly Messiah.
  - Literally, will be completed by King Messiah at His 2nd coming.
- He will regather Israel as a Nation (Isaiah 10, Isaiah 11)
  - At His 2nd Coming - "King Messiah" will begin his reign - when he is finally Revealed to Israel – just like Joseph to his Brothers.
- Gentiles will rebuild Israel (Isaiah 60:10-14)
- He will expand Israel's Borders from Egypt to the Euphrates
- He will Rule the Entire Earth, from Israel (Zechariah 9:10)
- Earth Filled with Knowledge of God
- The Entire Earth will be filled with Knowledge of God (Isaiah 11)
  - Completed by Jesus alone – impossible for any future person to do, since it was already completed by Jesus himself.
- Egypt, Assyria, and Israel will all worship the same God (Isaiah 19:19-25)





The Messiah
=> King Messiah (2/2)

- World Peace
- There will be World Peace (Isaiah 2, Isaiah 11)
- No Death & Sickness
- There will be no sickness (Isaiah 35)
- Death will be eliminated (Isaiah 25)
- The Temple
- He will Build the 3rd Temple (Micah 4:1, Ezekiel 37:26-28)
    - Completed Atonement on the Cross – as stated by Daniel – that Sin will be finished forever by the Messiah, before the 2nd Temple was destroyed. “Priestly Messiah” has completed his job.
    - The 3rd Temple (physically) might be built by Jesus at the 2nd Coming.

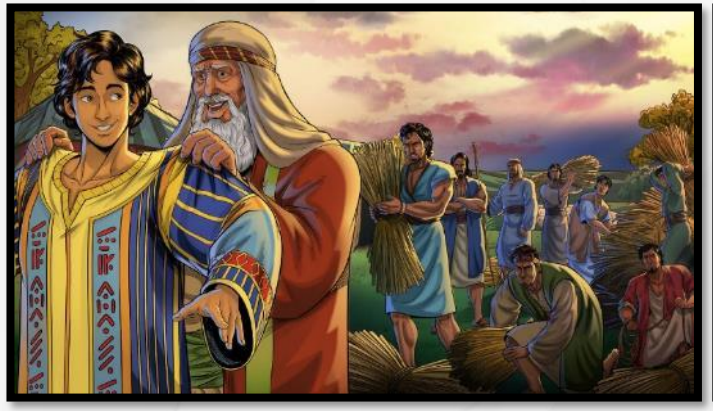


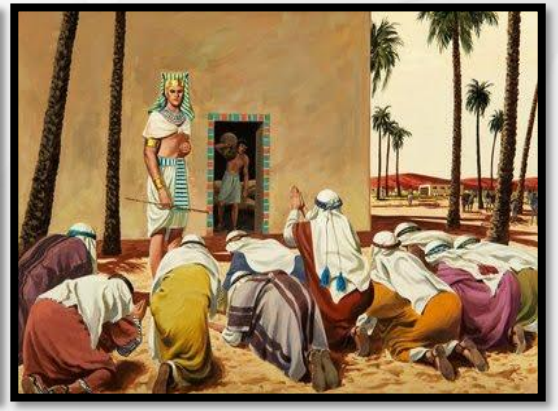


https://www.hebrew4christians.com/Articles/Mashiach_ben_Yosef/mashiach_ben_yosef.html

The Messiah
=> Suffering Messiah (Joseph)
=> 2 Appearances (Priest & King)

- #1 - The Brothers (Israel) reject Joseph as their Leader - then Plot to Kill Him
- Joseph's brothers refused his Role as their Savior & Leader (Genesis 37:8)
- Joseph's brothers conspired to Kill Him (Genesis 37:19-20)
- #2 - "Death" of Joseph – killed by His Brothers (Israel)
- Joseph's brothers conspired to Kill Him (Genesis 37:19-20)
- Joseph's brothers stripped him of his Tunic, mocked him, and then cast him into a Pit (Genesis 37)
- Joseph's brothers sold him for shekels of silver (Genesis 37:28)
- Joesph was imprisoned with 2 other criminals (Genesis 40:2-3)
- #3 - Joseph not recognized until 2nd Appearance in Egypt (the Gentile World) by His Brothers (Israel)
- 1st Appearance (in Egypt) – Joseph treats The Brothers (Israel) like Strangers, and Joseph is not Recognized by The Brothers (Genesis 42:6-8)
- 2nd Appearance (in Egypt) – Joseph finally revealed Himself to The Brothers (Israel), after his "Death" (Genesis 45)
- Joseph was "alive from the dead" for The Brothers of Israel (Genesis 45:26-28)
- #4 - God's Plan for Joseph's Suffering
- The Suffering & Death of Joseph (at the Hands of His Brothers) was intended by God to lead to the Salvation to the Entire World – and Israel (Genesis 50:20)





- Joseph is the Exalted Savior of the Gentiles & Israel
- Joseph is the Ruler & Savior of the Entire Gentile World (subject only to Pharaoh) – his brothers do not recognize Him at his 1st Appearance in Egypt - while he is Exalted among the Gentiles. (Genesis 39:4, Genesis 45:7)
- Joseph given authority and glory - Every knee will bow (Genesis 41:43)
- Joseph is Guiltless & Did not Defend Himself against His Accusers
- Joseph was not Guilty of any offense – not deserving to be "Killed" in the Pit (Genesis 40:15)
- Joseph was Tempted, but did not Sin. He was falsely accused, and made no Defense. (Genesis 39:7-10, Genesis 39:11-20, Genesis 40:15, Genesis 39:19-20)
- Joseph is the Father's Anointed "Only Son"
- Joseph was the "beloved of his father" (Genesis 37:3) - another way to put it his "Only Son" - just as Isaac was the "Only Son" of Abraham.
- Joseph was "anointed" by his Father (Genesis 37:3)
- Life of Joseph
- Joseph was given a Gentile Bride (Genesis 41:45)
- Joseph was taken to Egypt to avoid being killed (Genesis 37:28)
- Joseph was 30 years old when he began his public ministry in Egypt (Genesis 41:46)
- Joseph was the Bread Giver to preserve life on earth (Genesis 41:55, Genesis 45:7-8)
- Joseph's sons (Manasseh and Ephraim) were incorporated into the commonwealth of Israel as two great tribes (Genesis 48:1-5)
- Joseph was in charge of all people In the Egyptian Prison (Genesis 39:22)

The Messiah
=> Zechariah – Humble? Or a King?



- Zechariah 9 – Priestly Messiah & King Messiah?
  - Messiah will come riding on a Donkey (Humble Messiah)
  - Messiah will "speak peace to the nations" and have Worldwide Dominion (A Spiritual Dominion over All the Earth? A Kingdom by King Messiah? A Peaceful Priestly Messiah?)
- Zechariah 10 – Israel Regathered
  - The Jews will be Exiled Worldwide
  - The Jews will be Regathered
- Zechariah 12 – Final Battle, then God Revealed
  - All Nations will Battle Israel at once. God will then save Israel.
  - After God saves Jerusalem at the Battle - Israel will see God who they have Pierced - they will see "Him" who they have Pierced - they will mourn for Him like "an Only Child".
- Zechariah 14 – Final Battle, then King Messiah
  - All Nations will Battle Israel at once. God will then save Israel.
  - God will be King of the Entire Earth (Kingly Messiah)

=> The Events in Zechariah are not necessarily Chronological.

- Zechariah 12 & 14 – Israel faces the Nations for a Final Battle.
- Zechariah 12 & 14 & 9 – God becomes King of the Entire Earth.
- This would allegedly mean all of these Events happen multiple times, if read chronologically.

=> The Events in Prophetic Books are not necessarily Chronological.

- Isaiah 2, 11 – the Messiah will Rule the Entire Earth
- Isaiah 24, 45 – Earth's Judgment & Destruction
- Isaiah 52 – Jerusalem is already a Perfect Holy city
- Isaiah 53 – Messiah finally Atones for the Sins of all the Nations

The Messiah
=> 1 Messiah - 2 Appearances

- => Suffering Priest Messiah (1st Coming)
  - => King Messiah (2nd Coming)
- Priestly Messiah will Die & Reurrect – and then the 2nd Temple will be Destroyed – before 70 AD – all this must happen during the Roman Empire... (Daniel 2, Daniel 9)
  - **Meanwhile…** King Messiah will come in **"The Latter Days"** and then Rule the Entire Earth. (Isaiah 2, Hosea 3)
  - **Meanwhile…** the Messiah – **In the Future** – will also be the Son of Man who "comes with the clouds of heaven" - and will Rule All Nations forever **– an Exalted King**. (Daniel 7)
- The Messiah will come humbly riding a Donkey… (Zechariah 9:9)
  - **Meanwhile…** he will also Reign as an Exalted King on Earth (Zechariah 9:10, Zechariah 14)
- The Suffering Servant Messiah will be Rejected and Die... (Isaiah 52-53)
  - **Meanwhile…** He will be Resurrected and will be Exalted Greatly – just like King Messiah (Isaiah 52-53)
- Joseph's Brothers (Israel) did not recognize Him until his 2nd Appearance in Egypt, as de-facto King of Egypt & Gentiles.
  - **Meanwhile…** He was Finally Recognized when he explicitly Revealed Himself - at his 2nd Appearance in Egypt to his Brothers. He was now a Powerful Leader (Kingly) amongst the Gentiles of Egypt (Genesis 45).
  - **Meanwhile…** After the Final Battle - Israel will look upon God – whom they have Pierced – and mourn for Him like "an only child" (Zechariah 12:10).
- Messiah 1st comes to be a Priest – and 2nd comes to be King.
  - https://youtu.be/w0IThMUEiO4?si=rApBPYBCM20pusF_&t=1079
- Judaism – 2 Messiahs, Ben David and Ben Yosef
  - Michael Brown - "According to the Talmud (b. Sukkah 52a), the Messiah, son of Joseph (also called son of Ephraim) would first accomplish many brave acts on behalf of his Jewish people, before dying in the great war that would precede the arrival of the Messiah, son of David. Due to the prayers of the Messiah, son of David, the Messiah, son of Joseph, would be raised from the dead." https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/





Jesus thinks that the Messiah would be a Priest First, then a King

- "Slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! … **Was it not necessary that *the Christ* (Messiah) should *suffer these things*** and ***enter into his glory***?"
- Luke 24:25-26





The Messiah & Nation of Israel
The Servants of Isaiah 40-53

Isaiah 40-53
The Messiah, or The Nation of Israel?

- Isaiah 40-41 and 43-48 – **Unrighteous Nation of Israel**
- Isaiah 42 and 49-53 – **Righteous Messiah of Israel**

- Key Problems with Israel as "the Servant of Isaiah 42, 49-53"
- Is the "Righteous Nation of Israel" being Exiled & Punished – for the Atonement of Sins for All the Nations?
  - If Israel was Righteous, they wouldn't be Exiled – nor Suffering. Israel would be in the Land, and protected by God.
  - The Suffering Servant of Isaiah, who Suffers and Brings Atonement, cannot be Israel.
- Were Gentiles were Healed by the Suffering of The Nation of Israel?
  - The Righteous of Israel have never "Atoned" for The Gentiles by their Suffering - The Gentile Nations were always Destroyed (Babylon) when they put suffering on the Righteous of Israel.

- Summary Videos on this Topic
- Isaiah 40-53 Messiah or Israel? https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/
- Isaiah 40-53 Messiah or Israel? https://youtu.be/ZkGv0AEUFF4?si=vHaEAc81c-BzPoiV
- Isaiah 40-53 Messiah or Israel? https://youtu.be/9kq4sCWOMcw?si=ZND3ozey8itMCJ5z
- Isaiah 42, 49, 50, 51 there are only 4 places where the Servant is a Singular Servant who is the Key to the Salvation of the Nation of Israel https://youtu.be/9kq4sCWOMcw?si=OYb1rgi6xoKnmjxC&t=664

Isaiah 40, 41, 43, 44, 45 => Israel

- Isaiah 40
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** (v. 27)
- Isaiah 41
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** (v. 8, 9)
- Isaiah 43
- **Israel Nation of Witnesses** (v. 10)
- God says that He Himself is the Only Savior (v. 11)
- Isaiah 44
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** (v. 1, 21)
- God says that He Himself alone removes Transgressions (v. 22)

Isaiah 45

- **Israel Nation of Jacob** (v. 4)

(Isaiah 40) 27 Why do you say, O Jacob, and speak, O Israel,
"My way is hidden from the LORD, and my right is disregarded by my God"?
28 Have you not known? Have you not heard? The LORD is the everlasting God, the Creator of the ends of the earth.
He does not faint or grow weary; his understanding is unsearchable.
29 He gives power to the faint, and to him who has no might he increases strength.
30 Even youths shall faint and be weary, and young men shall fall exhausted;
31 but they who wait for the LORD shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings like eagles;
they shall run and not be weary; they shall walk and not faint.

(Isaiah 41) 8 But you, Israel, my servant, Jacob, whom I have chosen,
the offspring of Abraham, my friend;
9 you whom I took from the ends of the earth,
and called from its farthest corners,
saying to you, "You are my servant,
I have chosen you and not cast you off";

(Isaiah 43) 10 "You are my witnesses," declares the LORD,
"and my servant whom I have chosen,
that you may know and believe me
and understand that I am he.
Before me no god was formed,
nor shall there be any after me.

(Isaiah 44) "But now hear, O Jacob my servant,
Israel whom I have chosen!

21 Remember these things, O Jacob,
and Israel, for you are my servant;
I formed you; you are my servant;
O Israel, you will not be forgotten by me.
22 I have blotted out your transgressions like a cloud
and your sins like mist;
return to me, for I have redeemed you.

(Isaiah 45) 4 For the sake of my servant Jacob,
and Israel my chosen,
I call you by your name,
I name you, though you do not know me.

Isaiah 42
=> Israel & Messiah

- Isaiah 42 (v. 1-9)
- **“Behold, my Servant” (Isaiah 42:10, Isaiah 52:13)**
- He will not cry aloud (v. 2)
- He will bring forth Justice (v. 3)
- All the Gentiles will know him (v. 4)
- He will bring a New Covenant (v. 6)
- God does not give his Glory to Anyone Else (v. 8)
- Isaiah 42 (v. 18-25)
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** - is Deaf & Blind (v. 18-20)
  - Servant of Isaiah 49-53 is Righteous
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** – The People are Evil (v. 22-24)

(Isaiah 42)

The Lord’s Chosen Servant

Behold my servant, whom I uphold,
my chosen, in whom my soul delights;
I have put my Spirit upon him;
he will bring forth justice to the nations.
2 He will not cry aloud or lift up his voice,
or make it heard in the street;
3 a bruised reed he will not break,
and a faintly burning wick he will not quench;
he will faithfully bring forth justice.
4 He will not grow faint or be discouraged
till he has established justice in the earth;
and the coastlands wait for his law.

5 Thus says God, the LORD,
who created the heavens and stretched them out,
who spread out the earth and what comes from it,
who gives breath to the people on it
and spirit to those who walk in it:
6 “I am the LORD; I have called you in righteousness;
I will take you by the hand and keep you;
I will give you as a covenant for the people,
a light for the nations,
7 to open the eyes that are blind,
to bring out the prisoners from the dungeon,
from the prison those who sit in darkness.
8 I am the LORD; that is my name;
my glory I give to no other,
nor my praise to carved idols.
9 Behold, the former things have come to pass,
and new things I now declare;
before they spring forth
I tell you of them.”

(Isaiah 42)

Israel's Failure to Hear and See

18 Hear, you deaf,
and look, you blind, that you may see!
19 Who is blind but my servant,
or deaf as my messenger whom I send?
Who is blind as my dedicated one,
or blind as the servant of the LORD?
20 He sees many things, but does not observe them;
his ears are open, but he does not hear.
21 The LORD was pleased, for his righteousness' sake,
to magnify his law and make it glorious.
22 But this is a people plundered and looted;
they are all of them trapped in holes
and hidden in prisons;
they have become plunder with none to rescue,
spoil with none to say, “Restore!”
23 Who among you will give ear to this,
will attend and listen for the time to come?
24 Who gave up Jacob to the looter,
and Israel to the plunderers?
Was it not the LORD, against whom we have sinned,
in whose ways they would not walk,
and whose law they would not obey?
25 So he poured on him the heat of his anger
and the might of battle;
it set him on fire all around, but he did not understand;
it burned him up, but he did not take it to heart.

Isaiah 48 => Israel

- Isaiah 48
- **Israel Nation of Jacob** (v. 12)
- **Israel Nation of Jacob –** Evil Idolatry (v.5)

(Isaiah 48) Hear this, O house of Jacob,
who are called by the name of Israel,
and who came from the waters of Judah,
who swear by the name of the LORD
and confess the God of Israel,
but not in truth or right.
2 For they call themselves after the holy city,
and stay themselves on the God of Israel;
the LORD of hosts is his name.

3 "The former things I declared of old;
they went out from my mouth, and I announced them;
then suddenly I did them, and they came to pass.
4 Because I know that you are obstinate,
and your neck is an iron sinew
and your forehead brass,
5 I declared them to you from of old,
before they came to pass I announced them to you,
lest you should say, 'My idol did them,
my carved image and my metal image commanded
them.'

6 "You have heard; now see all this;
and will you not declare it?
From this time forth I announce to you new things,
hidden things that you have not known.
7 They are created now, not long ago;
before today you have never heard of them,
lest you should say, 'Behold, I knew them.'
8 You have never heard, you have never known,
from of old your ear has not been opened.
For I knew that you would surely deal treacherously,
and that from before birth you were called a rebel.

9 "For my name's sake I defer my anger;
for the sake of my praise I restrain it for you,
that I may not cut you off.
10 Behold, I have refined you, but not as silver;
I have tried you in the furnace of affliction.
11 For my own sake, for my own sake, I do it,
for how should my name be profaned?
My glory I will not give to another.

(Isaiah 48) "Listen to me, O Jacob,
and Israel, whom I called!
I am he; I am the first,
and I am the last.
13 My hand laid the foundation of the earth,
and my right hand spread out the heavens;
when I call to them,
they stand forth together.

14 "Assemble, all of you, and listen!
Who among them has declared these things?
The LORD loves him;
he shall perform his purpose on Babylon,
and his arm shall be against the Chaldeans.
15 I, even I, have spoken and called him;
I have brought him, and he will prosper in his way.
16 Draw near to me, hear this:
from the beginning I have not spoken in secret,
from the time it came to be I have been there."
And now the Lord GOD has sent me, and his Spirit.

17 Thus says the LORD,
your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel:
"I am the LORD your God,
who teaches you to profit,
who leads you in the way you should go.
18 Oh that you had paid attention to my commandments!
Then your peace would have been like a river,
and your righteousness like the waves of the sea;
19 your offspring would have been like the sand,
and your descendants like its grains;
their name would never be cut off
or destroyed from before me."

20 Go out from Babylon, flee from Chaldea,
declare this with a shout of joy, proclaim it,
send it out to the end of the earth;
say, "The LORD has redeemed his servant Jacob!"
21 They did not thirst when he led them through the deserts;
he made water flow for them from the rock;
he split the rock and the water gushed out.

22 "There is no peace," says the LORD, "for the wicked."

Isaiah 49
=> Messiah

- Isaiah 49
- **Israel (?)** – You are my Servant Israel? (v. 3)
- **This "Israel" is not the Entire Nation – it's a Person**
  - Whenever the Servant is Israel – they are almost always explicitly called "Israel Nation of Jacob" in Isaiah 40-48.
  - He is not referenced with Jacob.
  - He is Righteous, unlike "Israel of Jacob" (Isaiah 42, 49-53).
- Distant Gentile Lands will hear of Him (v. 1)
- The Nation has anguished God (v. 4)
- **Rejected by Israel** - Israel rejected Him, He labored in Vain (v. 4)
- **Gathers Israel Nation of Jacob** - The Servant will gather the Preserved of the Nation of Israel (v. 5-6)
- **Light to Nations** - The Servant will be a Light for all Nations (v. 6)
- **Rejected by Isreal** - The Servant will be Despised by the Nation of Israel (v. 7)
- Gentile Kings will Bow Down to Him (v. 7)
- **New Covenant** – Servant receives New Covenant, for the benefit of The People of Israel (v. 8)

(Isaiah 49)

The Righteous Servant of the LORD

Listen to me, O coastlands,
and give attention, you peoples from afar.
The LORD called me from the womb,
from the body of my mother he named my name.
2 He made my mouth like a sharp sword;
in the shadow of his hand he hid me;
he made me a polished arrow;
in his quiver he hid me away.
3 And he said to me, "You are my servant,
Israel, in whom I will be glorified."
4 But I said, "I have labored in vain;
I have spent my strength for nothing and vanity;
yet surely my right is with the LORD,
and my recompense with my God."

5 And now the LORD says,
he who formed me from the womb to be his servant,
to bring Jacob back to him;
and that Israel might be gathered to him—
for I am honored in the eyes of the LORD,
and my God has become my strength—
6 he says:
"It is too light a thing that you should be my servant
to raise up the tribes of Jacob
and to bring back the preserved of Israel;
I will make you as a light for the nations,
that my salvation may reach to the end of the earth."

7 Thus says the LORD,
the Redeemer of Israel and his Holy One,
to one deeply despised, abhorred by the nation,
the servant of rulers:
"Kings shall see and arise;
princes, and they shall prostrate themselves;
because of the LORD, who is faithful,
the Holy One of Israel, who has chosen you."

(Isaiah 49)

The Restoration of Israel, by The Servant

8 Thus says the LORD:
"In a time of favor I have answered you;
in a day of salvation I have helped you;
I will keep you and give you
as a covenant to the people,
to establish the land,
to apportion the desolate heritages,
9 saying to the prisoners, 'Come out,'
to those who are in darkness, 'Appear.'
They shall feed along the ways;
on all bare heights shall be their pasture;
10 they shall not hunger or thirst,
neither scorching wind nor sun shall strike them,
for he who has pity on them will lead them,
and by springs of water will guide them.
11 And I will make all my mountains a road,
and my highways shall be raised up.
12 Behold, these shall come from afar,
and behold, these from the north and from the west,
and these from the land of Syene."

13 Sing for joy, O heavens, and exult, O earth;
break forth, O mountains, into singing!
For the LORD has comforted his people
and will have compassion on his afflicted.

Isaiah 50
=> Israel & Messiah

- Isaiah 50 (v. 1-3)
- **Israel Nation of Exiles –** The Exiled Nation (v. 2)
- Isaiah 50 (v. 4-11)
- **He was not Rebellious to God – unlike Israel of Jacob (v. 5)**
  - Verses 1-3: Israel is Exiled - they would not be Exiled if they were Righteous.
  - Verses 4-11: The Servant is Righteous – unlike the Exiled Israel
- His Back was Beaten & his Beard Pulled (v. 6)
- He was Publicly disgraced & spit upon (v. 6)

(Isaiah 50)

Israel's Sin

Thus says the LORD:
"Where is your mother's certificate of divorce, with which I sent her away?
Or which of my creditors is it to whom I have sold you? Behold, for your iniquities you were sold, and for your transgressions your mother was sent away.
2 Why, when I came, was there no man; why, when I called, was there no one to answer? Is my hand shortened, that it cannot redeem? Or have I no power to deliver? Behold, by my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make the rivers a desert; their fish stink for lack of water and die of thirst.
3 I clothe the heavens with blackness and make sackcloth their covering."

The Servant's Obedience

4 The Lord GOD has given me the tongue of those who are taught,
that I may know how to sustain with a word him who is weary.
Morning by morning he awakens; he awakens my ear to hear as those who are taught.
5 The Lord GOD has opened my ear, and I was not rebellious; I turned not backward.
6 I gave my back to those who strike, and my cheeks to those who pull out the beard; I hid not my face from disgrace and spitting.

7 But the Lord GOD helps me; therefore I have not been disgraced;
therefore I have set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be put to shame.
8 He who vindicates me is near. Who will contend with me? Let us stand up together.
Who is my adversary? Let him come near to me.
9 Behold, the Lord GOD helps me; who will declare me guilty?
Behold, all of them will wear out like a garment; the moth will eat them up.

10 Who among you fears the LORD and obeys the voice of his servant?
Let him who walks in darkness and has no light
trust in the name of the LORD and rely on his God.
11 Behold, all you who kindle a fire, who equip yourselves with burning torches!
Walk by the light of your fire, and by the torches that you have kindled!
This you have from my hand: you shall lie down in torment.

Isaiah 51
=> Messiah

- Isaiah 49
- **The "Arm of the Lord" (Messiah) will save the Righteous of Israel**
  - Will make a way for the Remaining Redeemed of Israel will be saved by the Servant (v. 9-10)
  - Will save The Remaining Righteous of Israel (v. 11, v. 23)

(Isaiah 51)

4 "Give attention to me, my people,
and give ear to me, my nation;
for a law will go out from me,
and I will set my justice for a light to the peoples.
5 My righteousness draws near,
my salvation has gone out,
and my arms will judge the peoples;
the coastlands hope for me,
and for my arm they wait.

(Isaiah 51)

9 Awake, awake, put on strength,
O arm of the LORD;
awake, as in days of old,
the generations of long ago.
Was it not you who cut Rahab in pieces,
who pierced the dragon?
10 Was it not you who dried up the sea,
the waters of the great deep,
who made the depths of the sea a way
for the redeemed to pass over?
11 And the ransomed of the LORD shall return
and come to Zion with singing;
everlasting joy shall be upon their heads;
they shall obtain gladness and joy,
and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

(Isaiah 51)

22 Thus says your Lord, the LORD,
your God who pleads the cause of his people:
"Behold, I have taken from your hand the cup of staggering;
the bowl of my wrath you shall drink no more;
23 and I will put it into the hand of your tormentors,
who have said to you,
'Bow down, that we may pass over';
and you have made your back like the ground
and like the street for them to pass over."

Isaiah 52, 53 => Messiah

- Isaiah 52, 53
- **"Behold, my Servant" (Isaiah 42:10, Isaiah 52:13)**
- **Messianic Arm of the Lord** "Lord's Holy Arm" will be the representation of God to the Nations (52:10)
- **The Messianic Arm of the Lord** will be revealed (v. 1)
- **Rejected by Israel (the People of Isaiah)**
  - He was Rejected & Despised by Men (v. 3)
  - We esteemed Him not ("We" – the People of Isaiah) (v.3)
- **Accepted by the Gentiles**
  - Respected by Gentile Kings (52:15)
- **If the "Sufferer" is Righteous Israel – Isaiah would be a Gentile.**
  - (Israel?) He was pierced for our transgressions (v. 5)
  - (Gentiles?) All we like sheep have Gone Astray… The LORD has laid on him the Iniquity of Us All. (v. 6)
- **Death**
  - He was Killed for the Sins of all (v. 8)
  - If this was Israel – that means the Entire Nation of Israel was eliminated in Isaiah 53.
- **Resurrection**
  - His Days will be Extended after Death (Resurrection) and he will see his offspring (v. 10)
  - What does "see his seed" mean? https://youtu.be/0-VjiiQZMq8?si=bq0Oj52agUfk9Moh
- **Silent before Accusers** - Did not Defend Himself against his Accusers - he went like a lamb to the slaughter (v. 7)
- **An Individual Buried in a Rich Man's Grave** (v. 9)

(Isaiah 52) 10 The LORD has bared his holy arm
before the eyes of all the nations,
and all the ends of the earth shall see
the salvation of our God.

(Isaiah 52) 13 Behold, my servant shall act wisely;
he shall be high and lifted up,
and shall be exalted.
14 As many were astonished at you—
his appearance was so marred, beyond human
semblance,
and his form beyond that of the children of
mankind—
15 so shall he sprinkle many nations.
Kings shall shut their mouths because of him,
for that which has not been told them they see,
and that which they have not heard they
understand.

(Isaiah 53) Who has believed what he has heard from
us?
And to whom has the arm of the LORD been
revealed?
2 For he grew up before him like a young plant,
and like a root out of dry ground;
he had no form or majesty that we should look at him,
and no beauty that we should desire him.
3 He was despised and rejected by men,
a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief;
and as one from whom men hide their faces
he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

4 Surely he has borne our griefs
and carried our sorrows;
yet we esteemed him stricken,
smitten by God, and afflicted.
5 But he was pierced for our transgressions;
he was crushed for our iniquities;
upon him was the chastisement that brought us peace,
and with his wounds we are healed.

(Isaiah 53)

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have
turned—every one—to his own way;
and the LORD has laid on him the iniquity of us all.

7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted,
yet he opened not his mouth;
like a lamb that is led to the slaughter,
and like a sheep that before its shearers is
silent,
so he opened not his mouth.
8 By oppression and judgment he was taken away;
and as for his generation, who considered
that he was cut off out of the land of the living,
stricken for the transgression of my people?
9 And they made his grave with the wicked and with
a rich man in his death,
although he had done no violence, and there was
no deceit in his mouth.

10 Yet it was the will of the LORD to crush him; he
has put him to grief;
when his soul makes an offering for guilt, he shall
see his offspring; he shall prolong his days;
the will of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.
11 Out of the anguish of his soul he shall see and be
satisfied;
by his knowledge shall the righteous one, my
servant, make many to be accounted righteous,
and he shall bear their iniquities.
12 Therefore I will divide him a portion with the
many, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong,
because he poured out his soul to death and was
numbered with the transgressors;
yet he bore the sin of many, and makes
intercession for the transgressors.

Isaiah and Zephaniah
=> Righteous Remnant of Israel?

- Isaiah 53
- The Servant of Isaiah 53 will “be Just and have no Lies” (Isaiah 53:9)
- Zephaniah 3
- The Remaining of Israel will “be Just and have no Lies” (Zephaniah 3:13)

- Atonement by the Righteous of Israel?
- The Righteous of Israel have never “Atoned” for “The Nations” by their “Suffering” - The Nations were Destroyed when they put suffering on the Righteous of Israel.
- Is Isaiah 53 the Nation? God’s Covenant with Israel (Leviticus 26, Deuteronomy 28) states that if Israel was Righteous, they would be Exalted & Blessed – and if they Sinned, they would be Punished. Therefore, The Nation cannot suffer or atone for the Sins of others… Also, the Servant is Perfectly Righteous, unlike when Israel The Nation is the Servant in Isaiah 41, 43-48.
  - https://youtu.be/O9kYhJHTjxE?si=DqR2XeBUOj24Ec1I&t=2656
- Zephaniah 3
- No suffering mentioned for the Righteous of Israel (Zephaniah 3).
- Isaiah 52 & 53
- The “Arm of the Lord” (**Messiah**) will be revealed, He Suffered, Atoned for Sins of All People, was Silent before Accusers, willing Lamb to Slaughter, No Violence done, buried in a Rich mans grave, Beaten beyond Recognition, Was Killed & then Resurrected.

(Zephaniah 3)

9 “For at that time I will change the speech of the peoples
to a pure speech,
that all of them may call upon the name of the LORD
and serve him with one accord.
10 From beyond the rivers of Cush
my worshipers, the daughter of my dispersed ones,
shall bring my offering.

11 “On that day you shall not be put to shame
because of the deeds by which you have rebelled against me;
for then I will remove from your midst
your proudly exultant ones,
and you shall no longer be haughty
in my holy mountain.
12 But I will leave in your midst
a people humble and lowly.
They shall seek refuge in the name of the LORD,
13 those who are left in Israel;
they shall do no injustice
and speak no lies,
nor shall there be found in their mouth
a deceitful tongue.
For they shall graze and lie down,
and none shall make them afraid.”

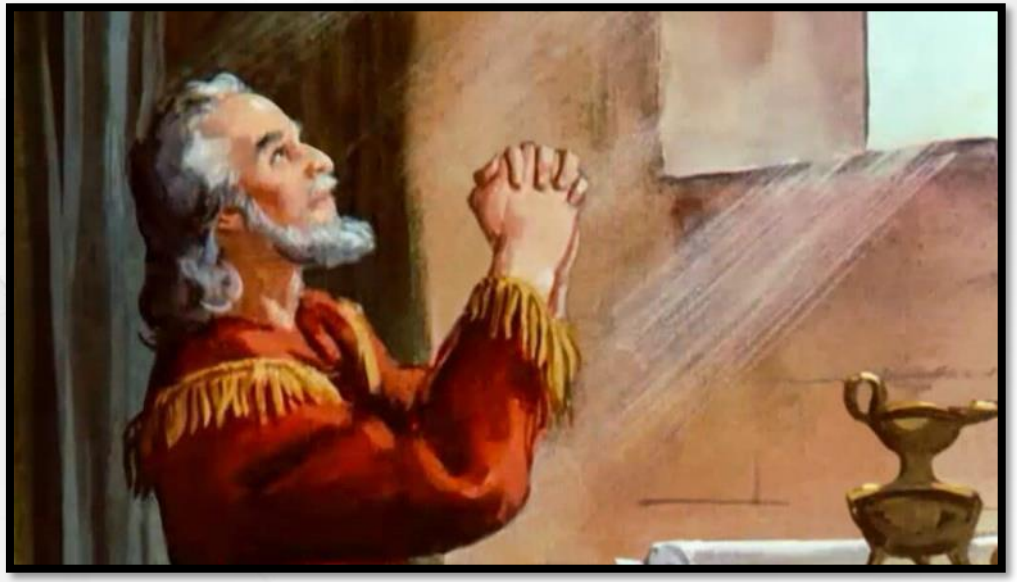
Prophecy
Book of Daniel

Prophecy of Messiah & World Events



Daniel – Written in 550 BC?

- => It is our opinion that Daniel was written 550 BC (the traditional view).
- Skeptics will assert it was written around 150 BC during the Maccabean Revolt, about Antiochus Epiphanes.
- Even if that were true - Daniel has Prophecies about events long after 150 BC – therefore it's still accurate as Prophecy.



- Reasons for Traditional 550 BC Date:
- Mike Winger - https://youtu.be/5z4c4DxTHhE?si=IAvn9DbSuEHJvDxV
- Biola - https://www.biola.edu/blogs/good-book-blog/2022/who-wrote-the-book-of-daniel-part-4-five-positive-evidences-for-an-early-daniel1
- John Oakes - https://evidenceforchristianity.org/what-evidence-do-we-have-that-the-book-of-daniel-was-written-in-the-600s-bc-and-what-evidence-is-used-for-a-later-date-of-composition-after-the-time-of-antiochus-epiphanes/
- Daniel was in the Hebrew Canon atleast by 200 BC (The inclusion of Daniel in the Greek Septuagint translation (made by about 180 BC, and probably earlier) as well as the discovery of fragements of Daniel in the Dead Sea Scrolls.) [John Oakes]

Book of Daniel - Prophecy Timeline

- **=> (550 BC) – Traditional Date of "Daniel" being Written**
- (600 BC – 504 BC) - Kingdom #1 – Babylon
- (540 BC – 330 BC) - Kingdom #2 – Medo-Persian Empire
- (444 BC) – Decree to Rebuild Jerusalem
- (330 BC – 323 BC) - Kingdom #3 – Greek Empire
- (323 BC) – Alexander's Land is divided amongst his 4 Generals
- (150 BC) – Antiochus Epiphanes desecrates the Temple
- **=> (approx. 100 BCE) – Earliest Known Daniel Texts**
- (31 BC – 476 AD) - Kingdom #4 – Roman Empire
- *** Year 1 AD ***
- (32 AD) – God setups an "Eternal Kingdom" (Jesus Christ) during the 4th Empire
- (32 AD) – Messiah predicted 173,800 days from Decree to Rebuild Jerusalem (444 BC)
- (70 AD) – Messiah came before 2nd Temple Destruction (Temple Destroyed by Romans)
- (96 AD) – 11th Emperor of Rome "Domitian" – made war with the Saints & against God
- (395 AD) – Rome (4th Empire) divided into Eastern & Western Empire
- **Valid Prophecy?** - Daniel successfully predicts multiple specific events, and also in correct chronological order. The Text itself is objectively verified to exist before the Events happen, and the Events themselves can be objectively verified to happen in History.







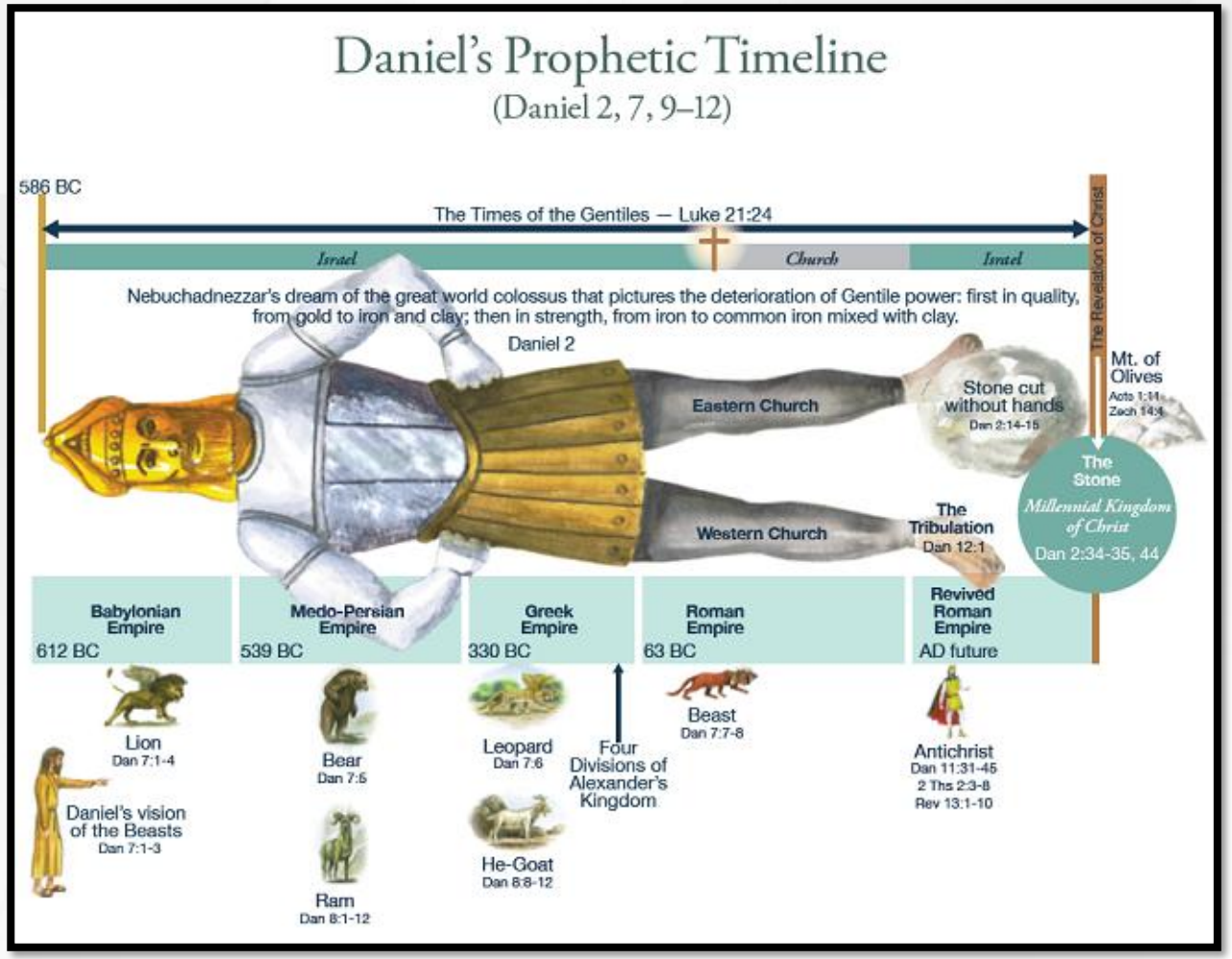


https://www.harvesthousepublishers.com/blog/do-you-know-how-to-interpret-the-four-kingdoms-of-daniel

Daniel Predicts future World Empires

- => Daniel Written 500 BC
- Kingdom #1 – Babylon (600 - 540 BC)
- Kingdom #2 – Medo-Persian Empire (540 - 330 BC)
- Kingdom #3 – Greek Empire (330 - 323 BC)
- Kingdom #4 – Roman Empire (31 BC – 476 AD)





https://bibletalk.tv/four-visions-of-daniels-prophecies

Beast #1 - Babylon

- Nebuchadnezzar had his “wings plucked” (madness) but repented & was given “a man’s heart”
- Nebuchadnezzar Death – 562 BC

(Daniel 7)

3 And four great beasts came up out of the sea, different from one another.

4 The first was like a lion and had eagles' wings. Then as I looked its wings were plucked off, and it was lifted up from the ground and made to stand on two feet like a man, and the mind of a man was given to it.



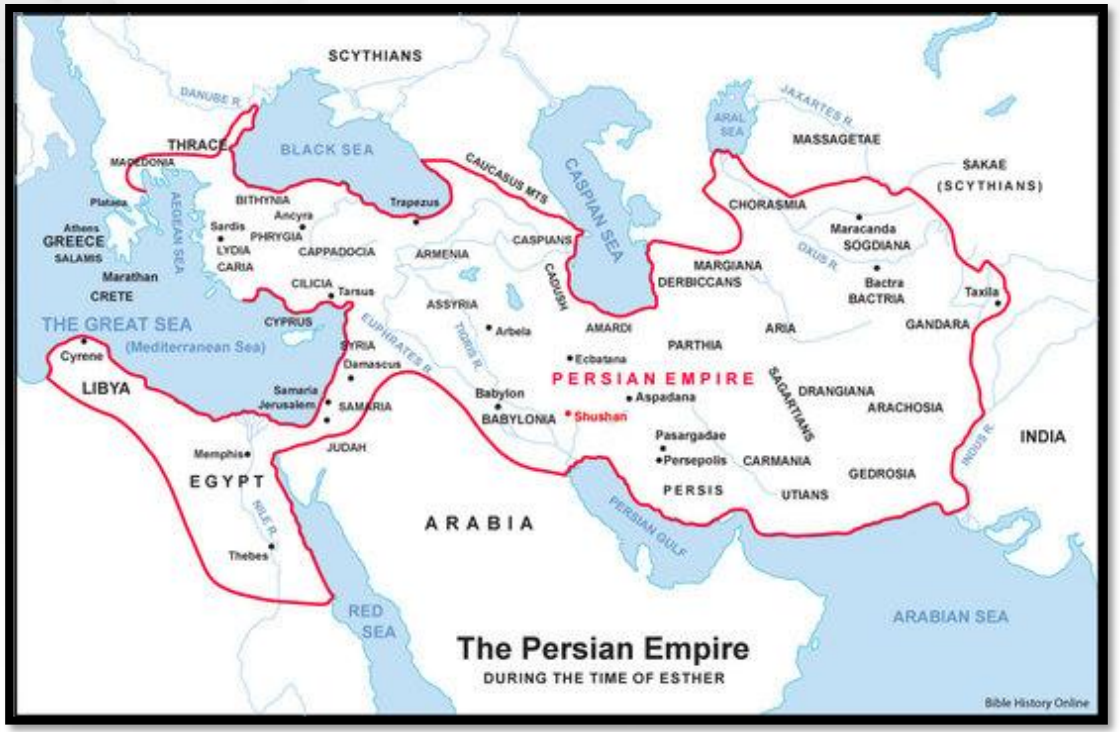
https://bibletalk.tv/four-visions-of-daniels-prophecies

Beast #2 – Medo-Persian Empire

- The Persians were Stronger than the Medes ("Raised up itself on one side")
- Medo-Persians defeated by Alexander the Great in 333 BC

(Daniel 7)

5 And behold, another beast, a second one, like a bear. It was raised up on one side. It had three ribs in its mouth between its teeth; and it was told, 'Arise, devour much flesh.'



https://bibletalk.tv/four-visions-of-daniels-prophecies

Beast #3 – Greeks & Alexander the Great

- Leopard with Wings – Swift Conquest
- 323 BC – Alexander dies
- 323 BC - His Conquered Land is divided amongst his 4 Generals ("The Four Heads")

(Daniel 7)

6 After this I looked, and behold, another, like a leopard, with four wings of a bird on its back. And the beast had four heads, and dominion was given to it.





https://bibletalk.tv/four-visions-of-daniels-prophecies

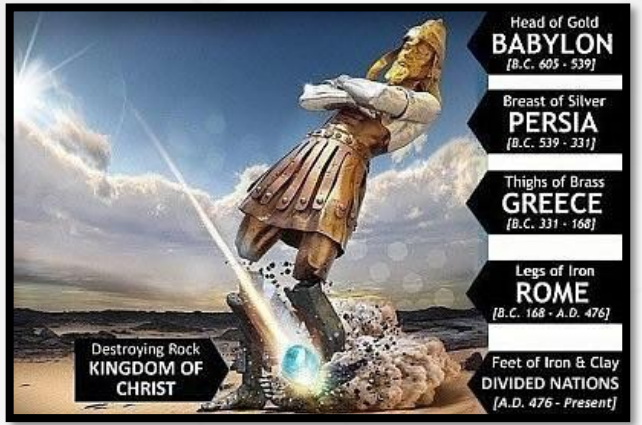
https://www.britannica.com/topic/list-of-Roman-emperors-2043294

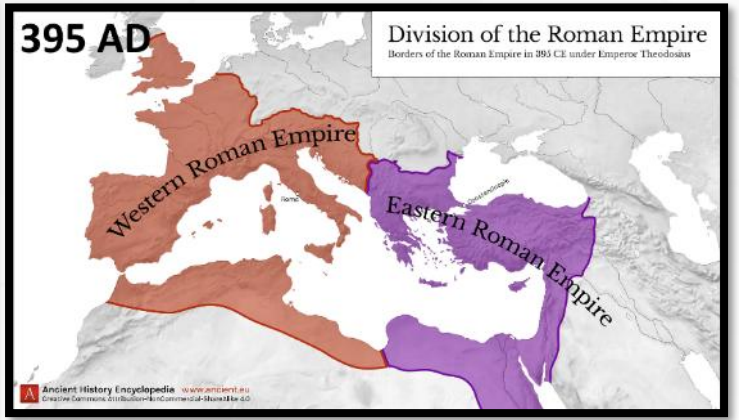
Beast #4 – Roman Empire

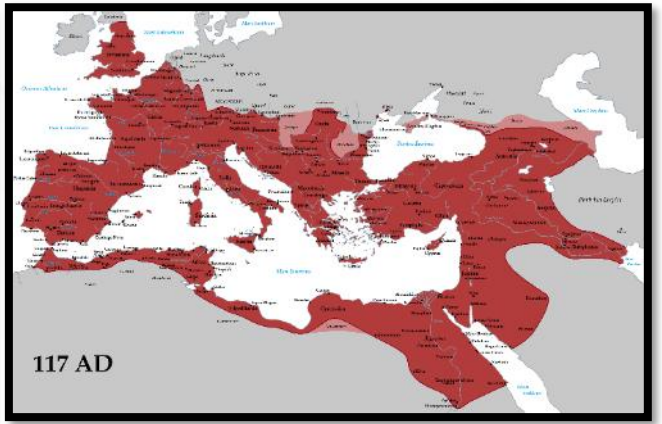
- Imperial Rome (31 BC – 476 AD)
- #1 – Rome split into Eastern & Western 395 AD ("The Kingdom shall be divided")
- #2 – God will setup an "Eternal Kingdom" during the 4th Kingdom … The Messiah Jesus Christ 30 AD ("In the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a Kingdom, which shall never be destroyed")

(Daniel 2)

40 And there shall be a fourth kingdom, strong as iron, because iron breaks to pieces and shatters all things. And like iron that crushes, it shall break and crush all these. 41 And as you saw the feet and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron, it shall be a divided kingdom, but some of the firmness of iron shall be in it, just as you saw iron mixed with the soft clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly iron and partly clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong and partly brittle. 43 As you saw the iron mixed with soft clay, so they will mix with one another in marriage, but they will not hold together, just as iron does not mix with clay. 44 And in the days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that shall never be destroyed, nor shall the kingdom be left to another people. It shall break in pieces all these kingdoms and bring them to an end, and it shall stand forever,





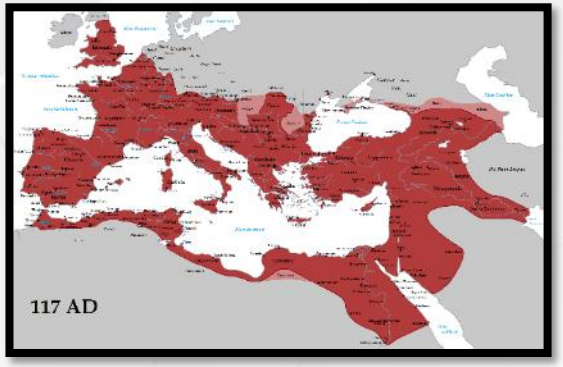


https://bibletalk.tv/four-visions-of-daniels-prophecies

https://www.britannica.com/topic/list-of-Roman-emperors-2043294

Beast #4 – Roman Empire Domitian "11th Horn"

- Imperial Rome (31 BC – 476 AD)
- Augustus (27 BC – 14 CE) began line of Roman Emperors
- Domitian (96 AD) - 11th Emperor of Rome (11th Horn) ("Made war with the Saints… Speak great words against the most High")
- "The significance of the horns is the following. Before Christ, Rome was ruled as a republic. After Julius Caesar, Rome was ruled by single emperors beginning with Augustus through Domitian who was the eleventh ruler, the little horn. The three horns displaced to make room for him could refer to "house emperors," co-conspirators with Domitian who were later killed. The eyes and voice of the little horn suggest that the empire was embodied by this one person. Daniel says that this horn blasphemes God and historical records show that Domitian ordered his subjects to refer to him as Lord and God while he was alive." [1]



1st century CE

- Augustus (27 BCE–14 CE)
- Tiberius (14–37 CE)
- Caligula (37–41 CE)
- Claudius (41–54 CE)
- Nero (54–68 CE)
- Galba (68–69 CE)
- Otho (January–April 69 CE)
- Aulus Vitellius (July–December 69 CE)
- Vespasian (69–79 CE)
- Titus (79–81 CE)
- Domitian (81–96 CE) #11
- Nerva (96–98 CE)

(Daniel 7) [7] After this I saw in the night visions, and behold, a fourth beast, terrifying and dreadful and exceedingly strong. It had great iron teeth; it devoured and broke in pieces and stamped what was left with its feet. It was different from all the beasts that were before it, and it had ten horns. [8] I considered the horns, and behold, there came up among them another horn, a little one, before which three of the first horns were plucked up by the roots. And behold, in this horn were eyes like the eyes of a man, and a mouth speaking great things.

(Daniel 7) [19] "Then I desired to know the truth about the fourth beast, which was different from all the rest, exceedingly terrifying, with its teeth of iron and claws of bronze, and which devoured and broke in pieces and stamped what was left with its feet, [20] and about the ten horns that were on its head, and the other horn that came up and before which three of them fell, the horn that had eyes and a mouth that spoke great things, and that seemed greater than its companions. [21] As I looked, this horn made war with the saints and prevailed over them, [22] until the Ancient of Days came, and judgment was given for the saints of the Most High, and the time came when the saints possessed the kingdom.

[23] "Thus he said: 'As for the fourth beast,

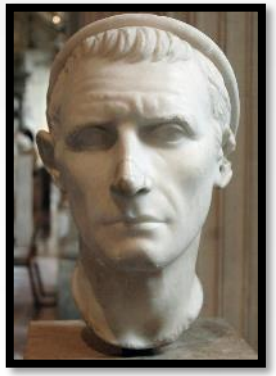
there shall be a fourth kingdom on earth,
which shall be different from all the kingdoms,
and it shall devour the whole earth,
and trample it down, and break it to pieces.
[24] As for the ten horns,
out of this kingdom ten kings shall arise,
and another shall arise after them;
he shall be different from the former ones,
and shall put down three kings.
[25] He shall speak words against the Most High,
and shall wear out the saints of the Most High,
and shall think to change the times and the law;
and they shall be given into his hand
for a time, times, and half a time.

https://atoday.org/why-the-little-horn-of-daniel-8-must-be-antiochus-epiphanes/

Antiochus Epiphanies "Little Horn"

- Antiochus IV Epiphanes (174 BC – 163 BC)
- "Eighty thousand Jews were either slaughtered or sold into slavery. To circumcise a child or to possess a copy of the Law was a crime punishable by death. History has seldom, or never, seen so deliberate attempt to wipe out the faith and religion of a whole people.
- …He desecrated the Temple.
- ….He erected an altar to Olympian Zeus in the Holy Place
- …and on it he sacrificed swine's flesh; and he turned the rooms of the Temple into public brothels… To the Jews Antiochus was the incarnation of all evil; he is the blasphemous little horn of Daniel; he is the nearest approach to Antichrist in human form." (William Barclay) [1]

(Daniel 8) [9] Out of one of them came a little horn, which grew exceedingly great toward the south, toward the east, and toward the glorious land. [10] It grew great, even to the host of heaven. And some of the host and some of the stars it threw down to the ground and trampled on them. [11] It became great, even as great as the Prince of the host. And the regular burnt offering was taken away from him, and the place of his sanctuary was overthrown. [12] And a host will be given over to it together with the regular burnt offering because of transgression, and it will throw truth to the ground, and it will act and prosper. [13] Then I heard a holy one speaking, and another holy one said to the one who spoke, "For how long is the vision concerning the regular burnt offering, the transgression that makes desolate, and the giving over of the sanctuary and host to be trampled underfoot?" [14] And he said to me, "For 2,300 evenings and mornings. Then the sanctuary shall be restored to its rightful state."



The Messiah
=> Is Daniel 9 (and Daniel 2) about the Messiah?

- Daniel 9
- **Once the Jews return from the Babylonian Exile, there will be a 70 weeks which will put an end to sin & atone forever & create a holy place – Messiah alert!**
  - 70 weeks = 490 years
- Timeline
  - **"An anointed one"** (a prince) will come. Then there shall be 7 weeks.
  - After 62 weeks, **"an anointed one"** shall be cut off – and the City of Jerusalem, and the Temple, will be destroyed.
- The 1st anointed one – **King Cyrus** – who returns the Jews to Israel is approx. 538 BC (just like in Isaiah 45).
- The 2nd anointed one is the **Priestly Messiah** – who will be "cut off" (killed).
- Finally, the Temple & City will be destroyed (70 AD).
- This event apparently brought in "everlasting righteousness" and "put an end to sin"… sounds like the role of the Messiah!
- Daniel 2
- In the Days of the 4th Kingdom (Roman Empire) God will establish a Kingdom that will never be Destroyed – Messianic Kingdom – which will end sin.
- Conclusion – Jesus is the only Messiah
- **During the Days of the Roman Empire (33 BC – 500 AD), and before the Temple is destroyed (70 AD), God sets up his Eternal Priestly Kingdom, which will end sin forever.**
- The 1st Anointed one might be King Cyrus – the 2nd Anointed One, who brings Atonement, must be Messiah Jesus https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/

Daniel 9

Daniel 2

(Daniel 9)

24 "Seventy weeks are decreed about your people and your holy city, to
finish the transgression, to put an end to sin, and to atone for
iniquity, to bring in everlasting righteousness, to seal both vision and
prophet, and to anoint a most holy place. 25 Know therefore and
understand that from the going out of the word to restore and build
Jerusalem to the coming of an anointed one, a prince, there shall be
seven weeks.

Then for sixty-two weeks it shall be built again with squares and
moat, but in a troubled time.

26 And after the sixty-two weeks, an anointed one shall be cut off and
shall have nothing. And the people of the prince who is to come shall
destroy the city and the sanctuary. Its end shall come with a flood, and
to the end there shall be war. Desolations are decreed. 27 And he shall
make a strong covenant with many for one week, and for half of the
week he shall put an end to sacrifice and offering. And on the wing of
abominations shall come one who makes desolate, until the decreed
end is poured out on the desolator."

(Daniel 2) 40 And there shall be a fourth kingdom, strong as iron,
because iron breaks to pieces and shatters all things. And like iron that
crushes, it shall break and crush all these. 41 And as you saw the feet
and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron, it shall be a divided
kingdom, but some of the firmness of iron shall be in it, just as you saw
iron mixed with the soft clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly
iron and partly clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong and partly
brittle. 43 As you saw the iron mixed with soft clay, so they will mix with
one another in marriage, but they will not hold together, just as iron
does not mix with clay.

44 And in the days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a
kingdom that shall never be destroyed, nor shall the kingdom be left to
another people. It shall break in pieces all these kingdoms and bring
them to an end, and it shall stand forever,

https://youtu.be/xiAJ71MhrDY?si=kKN7zagNpBSZPVWE&t=2575

https://youtu.be/pK5RsOaVy4U?si=4S25slhkagN9eQoV&t=857

https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/a/68419

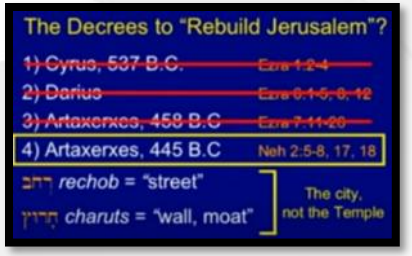
Exact Date of The Messiah (33 AD) predicted by Daniel 9 (550 BC)

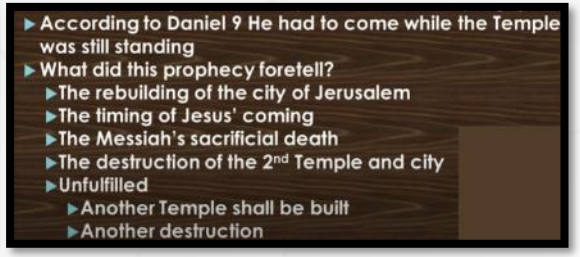
- **Daniel (550 BC) predicts that the Messiah would come 173,880 days from the Decree to Rebuild Jerusalem – and Messiah will come before the Destruction of the 2nd Temple. Messiah will put an End to Sin.**
- **#1 – There will be a Decree to Rebuild Jerusalem and the 2nd Temple. It will then be Rebuilt.**
- **#2 – After 69 "weeks" total, the Messiah will be Killed.**
- **#3 – After Messiah is Killed, then the 2nd Temple will be Destroyed.**
- Start Date 444 BC Persia's King Artaxerxes started commandment to Rebuild ("From the Commandment to Rebuild Jerusalem") [Date 444 based on Chuck Missler]
- Timeline 69 weeks (weeks of years) -"There will be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks" – 7 weeks + 62 weeks, where each week is 7 years - Weeks of Years (Leviticus 25:8)
- From Start 173,880 days - 30 day months in The Jewish/Ancient calendars (with 360 days of the year). 69 x 7 x 360 => 173,880 days
- Which is approx. 476 years (from Start Date to Messiah) – shown by 173,880 days / 365.242 (leap year adjusted)
- **=> 33 AD (Approx.) The Messiah Jesus Christ is Crucified** - 444 BC + 476 years => approx. 33 AD
- **=> The 2nd Temple is destroyed by Romans (70 AD).**
- Verse 26 – the "62 weeks, the anointed one will be cut off" starts after the initial "7 weeks" (verse 25). Messiah is "killed" after 69 weeks total.
- "Anointed One" is a term often used for "The Messiah".
- Michael Brown on Daniel 9 https://realmessiah.com/prophetic/

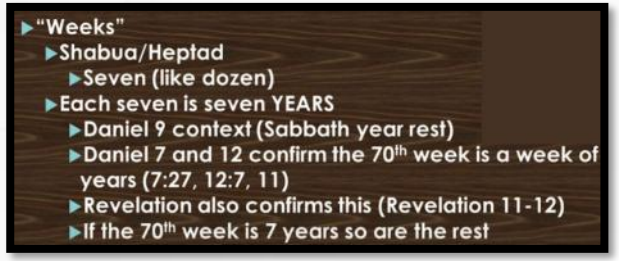
(Daniel 9)

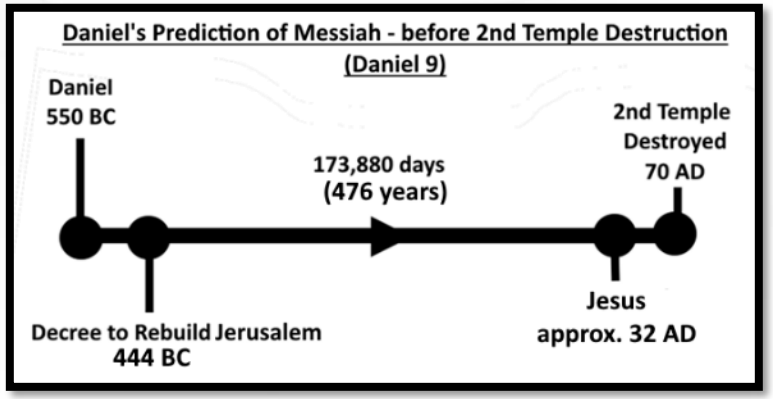
25 Know therefore and understand that from the going out of the word to restore and build Jerusalem to the coming of an anointed one, a prince, there shall be seven weeks. Then for sixty-two weeks it shall be built again with squares and moat, but in a troubled time.

26 And after the sixty-two weeks, an anointed one shall be cut off and shall have nothing. And the people of the prince who is to come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary. Its end shall come with a flood, and to the end there shall be war. Desolations are decreed.

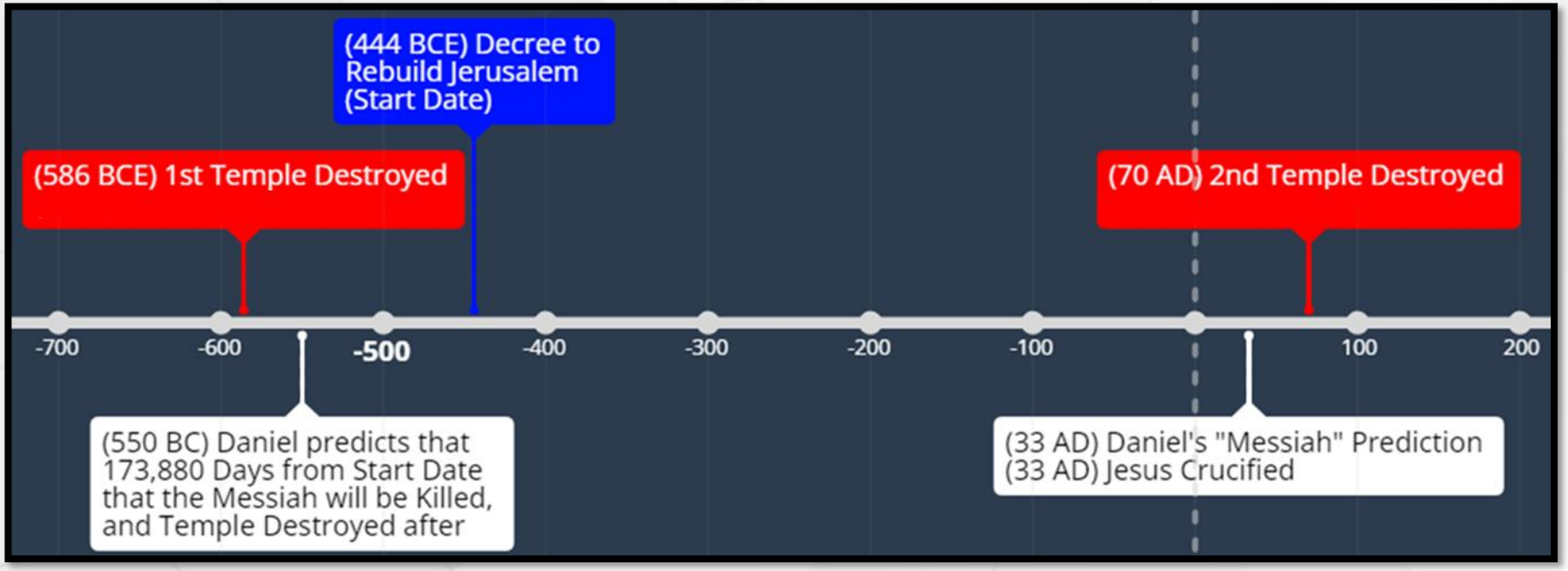


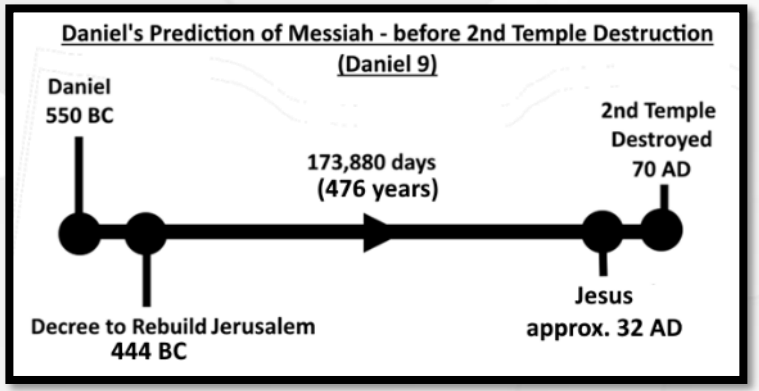






Exact Date of The Messiah (33 AD) predicted by Daniel (550 BC)







Daniel 7
Who is “the Son of Man coming with clouds of heaven”?

https://youtu.be/-_xsth20rJU?si=I3vheaUU0tM6uelF&t=508

https://www.answering-islam.org/authors/shamoun/messiah_sonofman.html

"Son of Man coming with the clouds" => The King Messiah

- => While it's true that both the "Son of Man" and "The Saints" possess the Kingdom in Daniel 7 – it is not explicitly stated that they are the same person/group. They are just 2 people/groups that simultaneously "receive the Kingdom forever".
- => Is it provable that the "Son of Man" is the King Messiah? Why did Ancient Jews think the Son of Man was the Messiah?
- => "The Most High" is a new title (of God?), used only after the Introduction of the Son of Man (purposefully?). The Saints receive the Kingdom from the Most High – is the Most High the Son of Man?
- Messianic King (of David) – who is God Himself – the Son of Man – who will Rule as King Forever:
- Let Your hand be upon the man of Your right hand, Upon the Son of Man whom You made strong for Yourself. (Psalms 80:17)
- One king shall be king over them all... David My servant shall be king over them... My servant David shall be their prince forever... My tabernacle also shall be with them; indeed I will be their God... My sanctuary is in their midst forevermore (Ezekiel 21-28)
- For unto us a Child is born, Unto us a Son is given; And the government will be upon His shoulder. And His name will be called Wonderful, Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. Of the increase of His government and peace There will be no end, Upon the throne of David and over His kingdom, To order it and establish it with judgment and justice From that time forward, even forever. (Isaiah 9:6-7)
- And the rulers take counsel together, Against the Lord and against His Anointed... Yet I have set My King On My holy hill of Zion... You are My Son, Today I have begotten You. Ask of Me, and I will give You The nations for Your inheritance, And the ends of the earth for Your possession. (Psalms 2:1-8)
- Give the king Your judgments, O God, And Your righteousness to the king's Son... He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, And from the River to the ends of the earth... Yes, all kings shall fall down before Him; All nations shall serve Him.... His name shall endure forever (Psalms 72:1-17)
- I have exalted one chosen from the people. I have found My servant David... Also My arm shall strengthen him... He shall cry to Me, 'You are my Father, My God, and the rock of my salvation.' Also I will make him My firstborn... And his throne as the days of heaven... I will not lie to David: His seed shall endure forever, And his throne as the sun before Me; It shall be established forever like the moon, Even like the faithful witness in the sky." (Psalms 89:19-37)
- The Lord said to my Lord, Sit at My right hand... You are a priest forever According to the order of Melchizedek... The Lord is at Your right hand... (Psalms 110:1-7)

(Daniel 7)

The Son of Man Is Given Dominion

13 "I saw in the night visions, and behold, with the clouds of heaven there came one like a son of man, and he came to the Ancient of Days and was presented before him.
14 And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him; his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom one that shall not be destroyed.

- Divine Attributes of the "Son of Man"
- Son of Man has All Authority and All Power.
- Son of Man is "Served" by all people – "pelah" - exclusively used of "worship of God(s)" in the Book of Daniel
- Son of Man Rides the Clouds of Heaven - something only God does approx. 80 times (Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalms 68:4)

https://hermeneutics.stackexchange.com/questions/13905/daniel-727-translation

"Son of Man coming with the clouds" => "The Most High" is the Son of Man

- => While it's true that both the "Son of Man" and "The Saints" possess the Kingdom in Daniel 7 – it is not explicitly stated that they are the same person/group. They are just 2 people/groups that simultaneously "receive the Kingdom forever".
- => Verse 27 is the key verse: "All dominion shall serve and obey [Who? What Pronoun?]"
- Aramic Analysis of Pronouns

In conclusion, the NASB therefore provides an accurate, and therefore very acceptable, translation of this verse in keeping with the Masoretic system of accentuation and cantillation.

> Dan 7:27 (NASB)
> 27 Then the sovereignty, the dominion and the greatness of all the kingdoms under the whole heaven will be given to the people of the saints of the Highest One; ***His*** kingdom will be an everlasting kingdom, and all the dominions will serve and obey ***Him***.'
> [emphases added]

In summary, if we understand this verse through the Masoretic system of accentuation, the word "the Most High" (עִלָּיוֹנִין) carries the Atnach, which is the strongest accent in the first half of the verse. The other words, "to the people" (לְעַם) and "holy ones" (קַדִּישֵׁי), on the other hand, carry lesser accentuation, and have ***no direct*** accentual relationship to the remainder of the verse. To illustrate, the following diagram provides the vertical perspective of how these accents interact with one another. The blue stars indicate the point in time when the hearers of the public reading of the passage would start to anticipate the complementary words and accents indicated by the red arcs. (The "harmony to the ear" would be grammatical, musical, and logical.) Please note that the word "the Most High" (עִלָּיוֹנִין) has ***direct*** accentual relationship to the remainder of the verse.

(Daniel 7)

13 "I saw in the night visions, and behold, with the clouds of heaven
there came one like a son of man, and he came to the Ancient of
Days and was presented before him.

14 And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that
all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him; his dominion
is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his
kingdom one that shall not be destroyed.

(Daniel 7)

18 But the saints of the Most High shall receive the kingdom and
possess the kingdom forever, forever and ever.'

(Daniel 7)

22 until the Ancient of Days came, and judgment was given for the
saints of the Most High, and the time came when the saints
possessed the kingdom.

(Daniel 7)

27 And the kingdom and the dominion and the greatness of the
kingdoms under the whole heaven shall be given to the people
of the saints of the Most High;
his kingdom shall be an everlasting kingdom,
and all dominions shall serve and obey him.'

https://youtu.be/-_xsth20rJU?si=I3vheaUU0tM6uelF&t=508

"Son of Man coming with the clouds" => Exclusively God Worship

- The "Service" to the "Son of Man" is exclusively identified as Worship of God(s).
- "Serve/Worship" – Hebrew "pelah"
- In the Context of Daniel "pelah" is only used in the Context of Deity Worship.
  - The Book of Daniel is about refusing to Worship False Gods. It would be the Exception that "pelah" would not be talking about Godly Worship.
- The only other use of this word "pelah" – Ezra 7:24 "servants of the house of God" – is used in a Deity Worship/Service context.
- In Targum – the word "pelach" generally means "basic service" – but Daniel does not ever use this definition.

False Worship	True Worship
"These men, O king, have disregarded you; they do not serve [פלח] your gods or worship the golden image which you have set up" (3:12)	"If it be *so*, our God whom we serve [פלח] is able to deliver us from the furnace of blazing fire" (3:17)
"Is it true, Shadrach, Meshach and Abed-nego, that you do not serve [פלח] my gods or worship the golden image that I have set up?" (3:14)	"Your God whom you constantly serve [פלח] will Himself deliver you" (6:16)
"But *even* if *He does* not, let it be known to you, O king, that we are not going to serve [פלח] your gods or worship the golden image that you have set up." (3:18)	"Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you constantly serve [פלח], been able to deliver you from the lions?" (6:20)
"Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abed-nego, who has sent His angel and delivered His servants who put their trust in Him, violating the king's command, and yielded up their bodies so as not to serve [פלח] or worship any god except their own God." (3:28)	"And to him was given dominion, glory and a kingdom, that all the peoples, nations and *men of every* language might serve [פלח] him." (7:14)

serve | 7 of 10

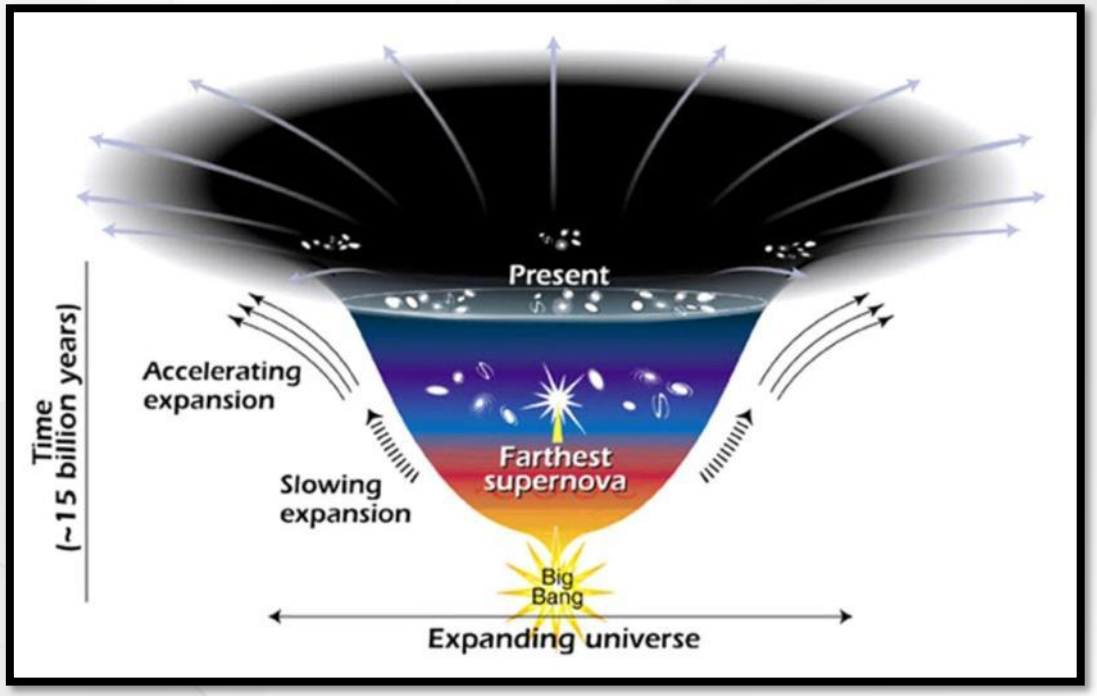
Da 3:12	There are certain Jews whom you have appointed over the affairs of the province of Babylon: Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men, O king, pay no attention to you; they do not serve your gods or worship the golden image that you have set up."
Da 3:17	If this be so, our God whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning fiery furnace, and he will deliver us out of your hand, O king.
Da 3:28	Nebuchadnezzar answered and said, "Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent his angel and delivered his servants, who trusted in him, and set aside the king's command, and yielded up their bodies rather than serve and worship any god except their own God.
Da 6:16	Then the king commanded, and Daniel was brought and cast into the den of lions. The king declared to Daniel, "May your God, whom you serve continually, deliver you!"
Da 6:20	As he came near to the den where Daniel was, he cried out in a tone of anguish. The king declared to Daniel, "O Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you serve continually, been able to deliver you from the lions ?"
Da 7:14	And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him; his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom one that shall not be destroyed.
Da 7:27	And the kingdom and the dominion and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven shall be given to the people of the saints of the Most High; his kingdom shall be an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey him.'

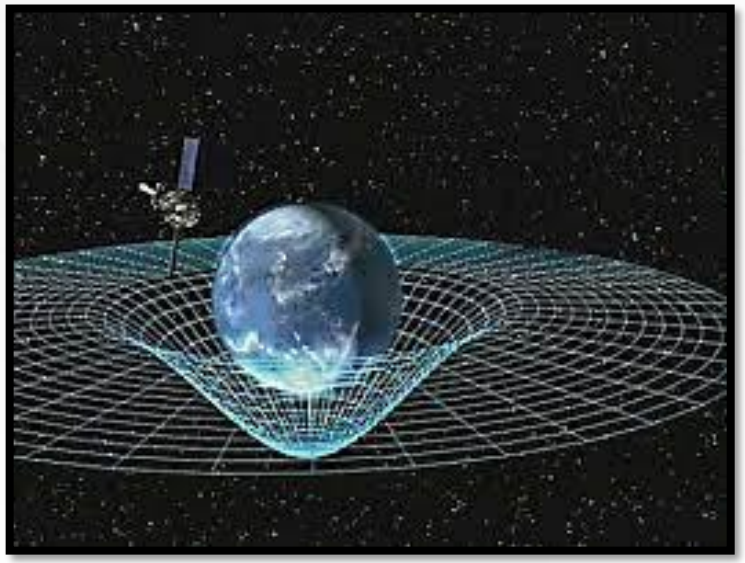
Prophecy Modern Science



Science – The Universe

- The Universe is Expanding
  - "Expands / Stretches the Heavens"
  - Isaiah 40:22, Psalm 104:2, Isaiah 51:13
- The Universe had a Beginning
  - "In the Beginning"
  - Genesis 1:1
- The Heavens (Spacetime) can be Rolled Up & Bent
  - The heavens will be bent "like a scroll"
  - Isaiah 34





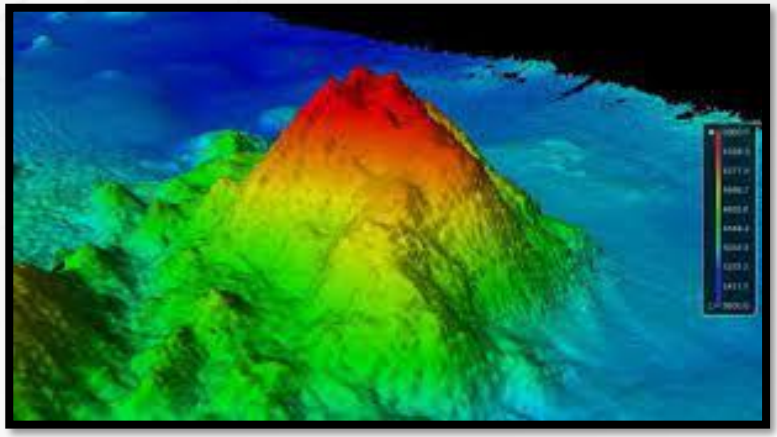
Science – The Earth

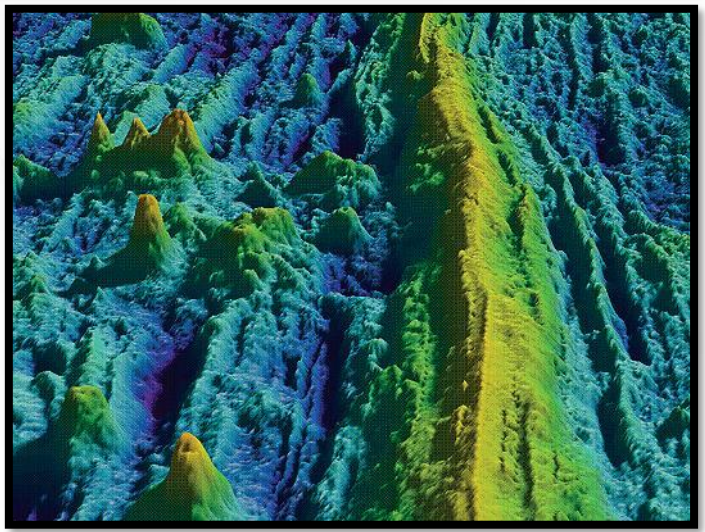
- The Earth sits suspended
  - “He hangs the Earth on nothing”
  - Job 26



Science – Oceans

- The Ocean has Channels
  - 2 Samuel 22
  - Then the channels of the sea were seen; the foundations of the world were laid bare…
- The Ocean has Mountains
  - Job 38:16
  - Have you entered into the springs of the sea, or walked in the recesses of the deep?
- The Ocean has Springs
  - Job 38 & Genesis 7
  - …all the fountains of the great deep burst forth…





https://youtu.be/MfOm9xvEIvg?si=TPrmZ8ccUvRMU9Jf

The Final Battle (Armageddon) – Nuclear Fallout?

- Israel will spend 7 years destroying the Weapons, with Fire…
- Do not use Wood from the Field…
- Dead Soldiers will be buried on the "East of the Sea" – to avoid the Noses of the People in the Land (Downwind of Dead Sea)
- Ezekiel 39





(Ezekiel 39)

6 I will send fire on Magog and on those who dwell securely in the coastlands, and they shall know that I am the LORD.

7 "And my holy name I will make known in the midst of my people Israel, and I will not let my holy name be profaned anymore. And the nations shall know that I am the LORD, the Holy One in Israel. 8 Behold, it is coming and it will be brought about, declares the Lord GOD. That is the day of which I have spoken.

9 "Then those who dwell in the cities of Israel will go out and make fires of the weapons and burn them, shields and bucklers, bow and arrows, clubs and spears; and they will make fires of them for seven years,

10 so that they will not need to take wood out of the field or cut down any out of the forests, for they will make their fires of the weapons. They will seize the spoil of those who despoiled them, and plunder those who plundered them, declares the Lord GOD.

11 "On that day I will give to Gog a place for burial in Israel, the Valley of the Travelers, east of the sea. It will block the travelers, for there Gog and all his multitude will be buried. It will be called the Valley of Hamon-gog.

https://youtu.be/MfOm9xvEIvg?si=TPrmZ8ccUvRMU9Jf

The Final Battle (Armageddon) – Nuclear Fallout?

- Wait 7 Months – then Clear Battlefield for 7 months…
- Dead Bodies will be marked, and a Professional "Burier" will bury it…
- Ezekiel 39





(Ezekiel 39)

12 For seven months the house of Israel will be burying them, in order to cleanse the land. 13 All the people of the land will bury them, and it will bring them renown on the day that I show my glory, declares the Lord GOD.

14 They will set apart men to travel through the land regularly and bury those travelers remaining on the face of the land, so as to cleanse it. At the end of seven months they will make their search.

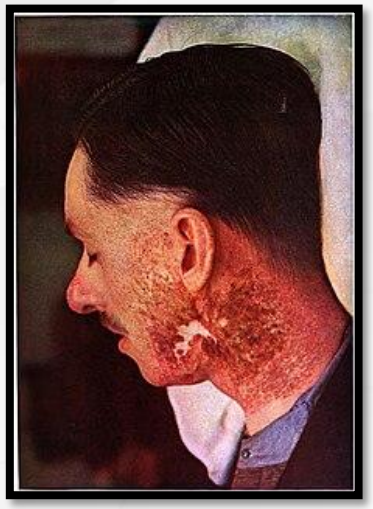
15 And when these travel through the land and anyone sees a human bone, then he shall set up a sign by it, till the buriers have buried it in the Valley of Hamon-gog.

https://youtu.be/MfOm9xvEIvg?si=TPrmZ8ccUvRMU9Jf

The Final Battle (Armageddon) – Nuclear Fallout?

- Flesh evaporates away…
- Eyes evaporate away…
- Tongues evaporate away…
- Zechariah 14





(Zechariah 14)

Behold, a day is coming for the LORD, when the spoil taken from you will be divided in your midst.

2 For I will gather all the nations against Jerusalem to battle, and the city shall be taken and the houses plundered and the women raped. Half of the city shall go out into exile, but the rest of the people shall not be cut off from the city. 3 Then the LORD will go out and fight against those nations as when he fights on a day of battle.

(Zechariah 14)

9 And the LORD will be king over all the earth. On that day the LORD will be one and his name one.

(Zechariah 14)

12 And this shall be the plague with which the LORD will strike all the peoples that wage war against Jerusalem: their flesh will rot while they are still standing on their feet, their eyes will rot in their sockets, and their tongues will rot in their mouths.

Terminology
Trinity / Son of God / Son of Man



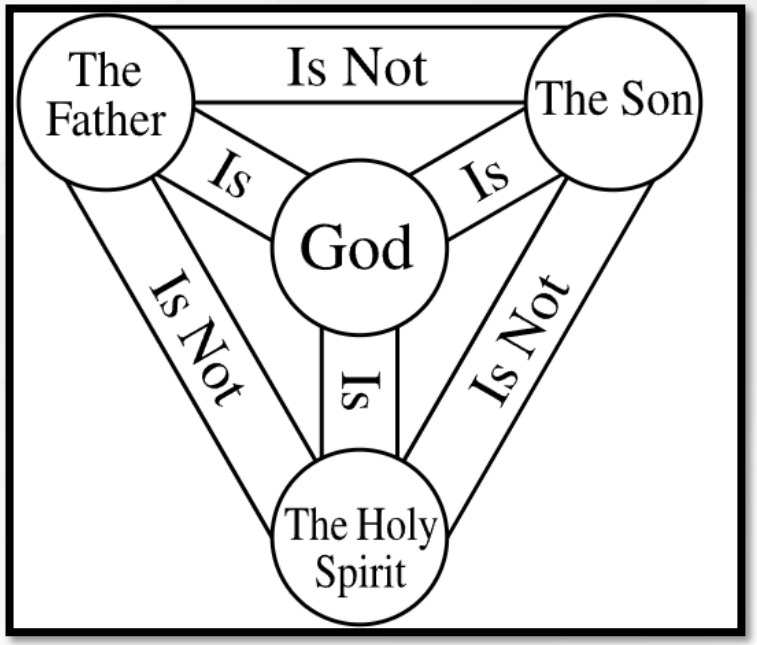
The Trinity

https://beginningwisdom.org/100-scriptural-arguments-for-the-trinity/

https://beginningwisdom.org/100-scriptural-arguments-for-unitarianism-refuted/

The Trinity – God is 3?

- Definition
- 1 Essence – there is only One God **(Monotheism)**
  - God is only of 1 character, 1 essence, 1 nature
- 3 Persons – who are all "Distinct/Unique" in their "Role/Purpose" **(Trinitarian)**
  - The Father
  - The Son
    - God's Humanly Communion with Man
    - God's "Penal Substitution" for sins (the Cross).
    - Jesus models perfect Humanly Obedience to God the Father. He models Praying & Worship & Obedience.
  - Holy Spirit
    - Spiritual Teacher & Messenger



- Reminders
- #1 – 3 Distinct Persons of the Trinity
  - A Non-Trinitarian Rebuttal might point out a Unique Distinction between the Persons of the Trinity, and then states they must not all be Co-Equal as God.
- #2 – They are all 1 God
  - A Non-Trinitarian Rebuttal might fail to realize All 3 Persons of the Trinity are all 1 God – all of them can be referred to as a single God.
- #3 – Jesus had Full Humanity
  - A Non-Trinitarian Rebuttal might use Jesus' Humanity as an argument against Deity – Human Limitations, Roles, Prayers, Worship, "Having a God", being "Given" things by God – anything a Perfect Human would do – this does not disprove his Divinity.



Son of God

Who is The Son of God? ("Only Begotten Son of God")

- Jesus is the "Only **Begotten** Son of God".
  - Greek **monogenēs:** One-of-its-Kind / One-and-Only.
- The term "Son of God" means (1) followers of God (2) created directly by God like Adam or Angels (3) The Nation of Israel (4) the specific Only Begotten Son of God.
  - Many people are Sons of God … but there is a "One of a Kind" Son of God ("Only Son of God").
- #1 – In the Old Testament, God's "Only Begotten Son" – is a very special "Son of God".
  - God's "Only Begotten Son" will be his King (Psalm 2:6-7)
  - The Messiah is a unique "Son" who will be Born - who sits on the Throne of David forever - who will be called Mighty God & Everlasting Father, and is Emmanuel "God with Us" (Isaiah 9:6, Isaiah 7:14)
  - God Himself (and/or the Messiah) will be looked upon "Pierced" - and mourned for like "an Only Child/Son" (Zechariah 12:8-10)
- #2 – Jesus is the "Only Begotten Son" of God (John 3:16, Hebrews 1:2)
  - No one has seen God; yet The "Only Begotten Son" of the Father shows the Essence of the Father, and is God. (John 1)
  - "The Son" (Only Begotten Son) is equal to "the Father" (John 5)
  - Jesus is shown to be just as Omnipotent & Omniscient as God the Father. (Matthew 9:6, Matthew 28:18, John 16:15, etc.)
- #3 – God gave his unique "Only Son" - Jesus Christ - as a sacrifice for all people (John 3:16)
  - Father Abraham was willing to sacrifice His "Only Son" Isaac to God. (Abraham's first son was Ishmael, but Abraham's "Unique Only-Son" of the Covenant from Sarah was Isaac)

(John 1) In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. [2] He was in the beginning with God. [3] All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made. [4] In him was life, and the life was the light of men. [5] The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness has not overcome it.

[6] There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. [7] He came as a witness, to bear witness about the light, that all might believe through him. [8] He was not the light, but came to bear witness about the light.

[9] The true light, which gives light to everyone, was coming into the world. [10] He was in the world, and the world was made through him, yet the world did not know him. [11] He came to his own, and his own people did not receive him. [12] But to all who did receive him, who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God, [13] who were born, not of blood nor of the will of the flesh nor of the will of man, but of God.

[14] And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth. [15] (John bore witness about him, and cried out, "This was he of whom I said, 'He who comes after me ranks before me, because he was before me.'") [16] For from his fullness we have all received, grace upon grace. [17] For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ. [18] No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.



Son of Man
(Son of Man, coming with the clouds of heaven)

Who is the "Son of Man" coming with the clouds? (Messiah, Man, All-Powerful, God Himself)

- The "Son of Man coming in the clouds" is the Messiah, who is a Human, who is essentially All Powerful (just like God) – and he is Served/Worshipped by God's People forever, in the same manner that you Serve/Worship God himself.
    - Jesus states that He is this "Son of Man coming with the clouds" (Matthew & Mark) from Daniel 7.
- The term "Son of Man" describes anyone who is a Human.
- "Son of Man coming with the clouds of heaven" is a special Messianic title of God's Eternal Ruler (Daniel 7:13-14).
    - This Man has **ALL AUTHORITY & POWER** (sitting at right hand of God) – presumably Omnipotent & Omniscient.
    - This Man is "Served" by all people – "pelah" – only used of **WORSHIP OF GOD(S)** in the Book of Daniel
    - This Man **RIDES THE CLOUDS** of Heaven - something **ONLY** God does approx. 80 times (Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalms 68:4)
- At his Trial, Jesus claims to be "The Son of Man coming in the clouds of heaven" - Messianic "Son of Man" of Daniel. (Matthew 26:62-66)
- Jesus says this of Himself, the "Son of Man":
    - #1 – He is the Lord of the Sabbath - only God is Lord of the Sabbath. (Matthew 12:8)
    - #2 – He can forgive sins – only God can forgive Sins. (Matthew 9:6)
    - #3 – He is presumably just as Omnipotent & Omniscient as God the Father. (Matthew 9:6, Matthew 28:18, John 16:15, etc.)
    - #4 – He Executes Judgement – Only God executes Judgment. (John 5:27, Joel 3:12)
- The idea of a "Son of Man coming with the Clouds of Heaven" shows us the dual Humanity & Deity of Jesus – and is foretold as far back as Daniel.

(Daniel 7)

The Son of Man Is Given Dominion

13 "I saw in the night visions, and behold,
with the clouds of heaven there came
one like a son of man, and he came to
the Ancient of Days and was presented
before him.
14 And to him was given dominion and
glory and a kingdom, that all peoples,
nations, and languages should serve
him; his dominion is an everlasting
dominion, which shall not pass away,
and his kingdom one that shall not be
destroyed.



Jesus is God
(His Words)





Jesus: God, or just a Prophet?

- Jesus has said things that apparently show He claims to be God:
  - Jesus says “Whoever has seen Me, has seen the Father.”
- Meanwhile - Jesus has also said many things which might seem to show that He is just a Man:
  - Jesus prays to God
  - Jesus worships God
  - Jesus says “The only true God, and Jesus Christ who you sent”
  - Jesus said “The Father is Greater than I”
  - Jesus says “My God, my God, why have you forsaken Me?”
  - Jesus is just a Man?



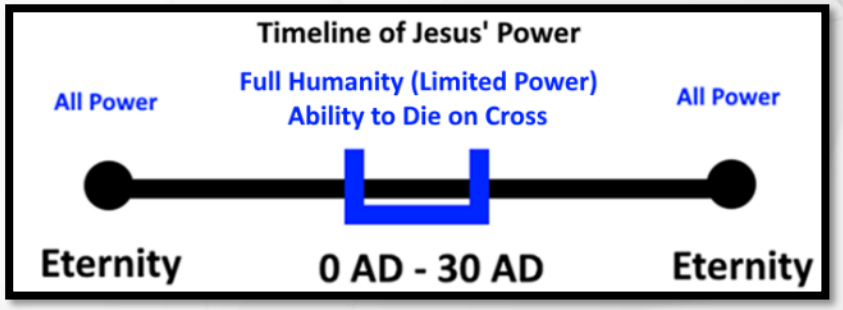




Jesus - God & Man: Objections Summary

- **Divinity & Humanity**
- Jesus is **FULLY DIVINE** – just as God the Father – and they are 1 God/Essence/Character (**MONOTHEISM**)
- Jesus was **FULLY HUMAN** - unlike God the Father (**TRINITARIANISM** – Unique/Distinct 3 Persons of God)
- **DURING HIS LIFE ("INCARNATION")** Jesus was born fully human - and was fully limited and fully able to die.
    - Why? God himself (sinless) must Die as Payment for our Sins (penal substitution).
- **AFTER RESURRECTION** Jesus had All Power & All Authority – and knew all things. (John 21:17, Matthew 28:18, Matthew 26:64)
- The Son **EXISTED ETERNALLY** just as God the Father. Jesus Existed before His Birth, Existed before Abraham, He Descended From Heaven, and Jesus Originated from the Father (John 3, 8, 16, 17).
- The **3 PERSONS** of the Trinity are **DISTINCT** Persons & Roles – but they are all the **SAME GOD/ESSENCE.**
- **The Only Begotten Son of God**
- Jesus is the "**ONLY BEGOTTEN SON OF GOD**" – He is God's special son – Many people/angels are "sons of gods".
- **Read the section "Trinity / Son of God / Son of Man" for an in-depth definition of what "Son of God" means.**

- **Jesus worships & prays to God?**
- Jesus – fully human – **MODELED PERFECT OBEDIENCE** of the Will of the Father (such as Praying & Worship).
- **Jesus can only do "the Will of The Father"?**
- The Son can **ONLY** do the **EXACT WILL** of God the Father – a clear statement of **EQUAL ESSENCE/DIVINITY**.
- **Jesus said "The Father is Greater than I"?**
- Jesus was temporarily **FULLY LIMITED** as a Human (**INCARNATION**) – while the Father was still All Powerful – yet still was just as Divine as God the Father.
- Jesus needed to be **FULLY HUMAN** – to be able to Die on the Cross, to take on the Payment of Death for our Sin.
- **Jesus said "the only true God, and Jesus Christ"?**
- Jesus said The Father is God – while Jesus also simultaneously stated He **HIMSELF** is the Son, who is God. (John 17:3)
- Jesus **THEN SAID THE NEXT VERSE** that He has Existed forever, with God, before the Earth existed – He is God (John 17:5)
- Jesus said that God is "True" – **SIMULTANEOUSLY** the Father **SENT** The Son (Jesus) to the world – and Jesus confirms that He Himself **IS ALSO** God (in many places).
- **Jesus is Divine only in "John", and not all 4 Gospels?**
- Jesus is stated directly to be Divine in **ALL 4 GOSPELS**. (Evidence for the fact that Jesus is Divine in all 4 Gospels – not just John - is given in next slides & other sections)



- **Why isn't there a "Trinity" in the Old Testament?**
- God himself **APPEARS AS A MAN** very often - The Presence of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit happens often in the Old Testament.
- **Read The Section "God appears as a Man in the Old Testament".**
- **The Bible says God can't be a Man?**
- God is not **LIKE** a Man… he does Not Lie (Number 23:19)
- God is not **LIKE** a Man… he is Perfectly Holy (Hosea 11:9)
- No one has seen God **–** yet **SEEING** the Human Jesus is the same as Seeing the **BEING** of God (John 14, John 1)
- **Read The Section "God appears as a Man in the Old Testament".**
- **The Bible says God does not Change?**
- God's **ESSENCE/CHARACTER** does not Change – His Appearances, Location, Words, and Responses towards Human Beings change.
- If God appears in 1 Location, then teleports to a 2nd Location – has God suddenly "**CHANGED**"?
- **Was God Limited if Jesus was a Human?**
- During Jesus' Life, "The Father" existed in All Power – while **SIMULTANEOUSLY** Jesus "The Son" was Fully Limited as a Man on Earth. Therefore, God **HIMSELF** was still in **FULL CONTROL**.

Jesus – You have Seen God
(Jesus is the Same Essence as the Invisible Father)

- Phillip – "Lord, show us the Father…"
- Jesus – "If you had Known me, you would have known my Father also."
- Jesus states they have **KNOWN** the Father because Jesus is **IDENTICAL** in **ESSENCE** to God the Father
- Jesus – "From now on you do Know Him and have Seen him.
- Jesus claims they **HAVE KNOWN OF** God, but more amazingly **ALSO SEEN** the Manifestation of God Himself.
- Jesus – "Whoever has Seen me has Seen the Father."
- Beyond just **KNOWING** God, they have **SEEN** God – physical sight & manifestation.
- The Son (Jesus) is not the Father – but the Son displays the Essence of the Father.
- Jesus – "…The words that I say to you I do not speak on my own authority, but the Father who dwells in me does his works."
- Jesus says they have **SEEN** and **KNOWN** God – and the **EVIDENCE** is the Works from God, on the Authority of God the Father.
- Jesus **IS NOT** just saying they simply have **SEEN WORKS OF GOD.** They have also **SEEN** God.
- Jesus – "I am in the Father, and the Father in Me"
- Jesus is **WITHIN** God Himself – not just **WITHIN GOD'S PURPOSE** but specifically His Being is **ONE WITH** God's Being.

(John 14) "Let not your hearts be troubled. Believe in God; believe also in me. 2 In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you? 3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, that where I am you may be also. 4 And you know the way to where I am going." 5 Thomas said to him, "Lord, we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?" 6 Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. 7 If you had known me, you would have known my Father also. From now on you do know him and have seen him."

8 Philip said to him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us." 9 Jesus said to him, "Have I been with you so long, and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? 10 Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I say to you I do not speak on my own authority, but the Father who dwells in me does his works. 11 Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else believe on account of the works themselves.

Jesus – Yes, I am your God, Thomas

- Thomas [speaking to Jesus] – "My Lord and my God!"
- Thomas "**SAID TO HIM"** (speaking to Jesus) calls Jesus **GOD**. Thomas calls Jesus Yahweh.
- Jesus – "Have you believed because you have seen me? Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed."
- Jesus **CONFIRMS** Thomas' statement – that Jesus is God.
    - "God" – Theos (G2316) – primarily used of "The Almighty God".
        - In a small minority of uses of "Theos", it refers to rulers, usually stylized as "god(s)". Examples can include Herod in Acts 12 – he is called a "god".
    - "Lord" – Kyrios (G2962) – often used of simply "my Master", but also can be "The Lord"

(John 20) [26] Eight days later, his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them and said, "Peace be with you." [27] Then he said to Thomas, "Put your finger here, and see my hands; and put out your hand, and place it in my side. Do not disbelieve, but believe."

[28] Thomas answered him, "My Lord and my God!" [29] Jesus said to him, "Have you believed because you have seen me? Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed."[30] Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of the disciples, which are not written in this book; [31] but these are written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name.



https://biblehub.com/commentaries/john/8-58.htm

Jesus has Existed Forever
(1) Existed before Abraham Existed
(2) Existed before the Earth Existed & Glorified with God
(3) Descended from Heaven
(4) Originated from the Father

- Jesus – "Before Abraham was, I am"
- Abraham at one point **DIDN'T** Exist – the Son has **ALWAYS** Existed.
- Jesus claims to have been **BEFORE** Abraham was Existing.
- If Jesus was claiming to have "Existed in the Mind of God, then revealed to Abraham" – he would've said only "Abraham knew of Me, in a Vision" – and not "Before Abraham I am".
- The Crowds **REACTION** – of Stoning him for Blasphemy – **CONFIRMS** Jesus' statements.
- (Note: "I am" here probably does not directly mean the same thing as Exodus 3:14. It's not a valid proof.)
- Jesus – "Father, Glorify Me in your own Prescence with the Glory I had with you before the World Existed."
- Jesus was **WITH** the Father – **BEFORE** the World even **EXISTED**.
- Jesus **HAD** Glory - with the Father - **BEFORE** being Sent to Earth.
- Jesus is not **"GETTING GLORY"** from God, he is **"SHARING GLORY"** with the Father - God does not **SHARE** His Glory with Anyone Else, but he does Give Glory (Isaiah 42:8)
- Jesus – "No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from Heaven, the Son of Man."
- Jesus - unlike a normal Man born on Earth - **STARTED EXISTING** in Heaven – before He was Born.
- Jesus – "… [You have believed] I came from the Father and have come into the world."
- Jesus – unlike a normal Man – **BEGAN WITH GOD** and **ORIGNATED FROM** the Father.

John 8

John 17

John 3

John 16

(John 8) [54] Jesus answered, "If I glorify myself, my glory is nothing. It is my Father who glorifies me, of whom you say, 'He is our God.' [55] But you have not known him. I know him. If I were to say that I do not know him, I would be a liar like you, but I do know him and I keep his word. [56] Your father Abraham rejoiced that he would see my day. He saw it and was glad." [57] So the Jews said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and have you seen Abraham?" [58] Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I am." [59] So they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.

(John 17) [5] And now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had with you before the world existed.

(John 3) [13] No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven, the Son of Man.

(John 16) [27] for the Father himself loves you, because you have loved me and have believed that I came from God. [28] I came from the Father and have come into the world, and now I am leaving the world and going to the Father."

Expositor's Greek Testament

John 8:58. The misunderstanding of His words elicits from Jesus the statement: πρὶν Αβραὰμ γενέσθαι, ἐγώ εἰμι. "Before Abraham was born I am." "Antequam Abraham fieret, Ego sum," Vulgate. Plummer aptly compares Psalm 90:2, πρὸ τοῦ ὄρη γενηθῆναι … σὺ εἶ. Before Abraham came into existence I am, eternally existent. No stronger affirmation of pre-existence occurs, and Beyschlag's subtle attempt to evade the meaning is unsuccessful.

Jesus has Divine Titles
(1) The Son of Man coming on the Clouds of Heaven
(2) The Right Hand of God
(3) Lord of the Sabbath

- The Jews – "Tell us if you are the Christ, the Son of God."
- Jesus – "You will see the Son of Man … coming on the clouds of heaven"
- "Son of Man coming with the clouds of heaven" is a special Messianic title of God's Eternal Ruler (Daniel 7:13-14).
    - This Man has **ALL AUTHORITY & POWER** (sitting at right hand of God) – presumably Omnipotent & Omniscient.
    - This Man is "Served" by all people – "pelah" – only used of **WORSHIP OF GOD(S)** in the Book of Daniel
    - This Man **RIDES THE CLOUDS** of Heaven - something **ONLY** God does approx. 80 times (Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalms 68:4)
- Jesus – "You will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Power…"
- Jesus claims to be sitting "at the right hand of the power of God" – a claim of both having the **POWER** of God, and having **EQUALITY** with God.
- Jesus – "For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."
- The Son is "Lord of the Sabbath" – **ONLY** God is Lord of the Sabbath.

Matthew 26

Daniel 7

Matthew 12

(Matthew 26) 62 And the high priest stood up and said, "Have you no answer to make? What is it that these men testify against you?" 63 But Jesus remained silent. And the high priest said to him, "I adjure you by the living God, tell us if you are the Christ, the Son of God." 64 Jesus said to him, "You have said so. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven."

65 Then the high priest tore his robes and said, "He has uttered blasphemy. What further witnesses do we need? You have now heard his blasphemy. 66 What is your judgment?" They answered, "He deserves death."

(Daniel 7) 13 "I saw in the night visions, and behold, with the clouds of heaven there came one like a son of man, and he came to the Ancient of Days and was presented before him. 14 And to him was given dominionand glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him; his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom one that shall not be destroyed.

(Matthew 12) 8 For the Son of Man is lord of the Sabbath."

Jesus is Equal in Status to God
(1) Honor Jesus exactly the way you Honor God
(2) "The Son" and "The Father" are Equal Essence
(3) Only God Himself "Raises the Dead" and "Executes Judgment" – Jesus does too

- Jesus – "All may Honor the Son, just as they Honor the Father."
- Honor Jesus **EXACTLY JUST AS** God the Father – Worship & Service & Status – which can only be given to God.
- Jesus – "[Working on the Sabbath] My Father is working until now, and I am working."
- The Father and The Son **BOTH** have the **AUTHORITY** to work on the Sabbath. **ONLY** God can work on the Sabbath.
- The Jews state that Jesus said he was Equal with God.
- Jesus **DOES NOT REFUTE** the Jews for claiming Equality with God – **HE CONFIRMS** and continues: "Most assuredly… The Son can do nothing of Himself, but what He sees the Father do…"
- Jesus **CONTINUES** to show why The Son and The Father are the **SAME** God (verses 19-30).
- Jesus – "The Son can do nothing of his own accord, but only what he sees the Father doing. For whatever the Father does, that the Son does likewise."
- Jesus cannot do anything **EXCEPT** that which The Father (God) does – a clear claim of **EQUAL BEING**.
- Jesus – "For as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also the Son gives life to whom he will… An Hour is coming when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live… An Hour is coming when all who are in the tombs will hear his voice and come out, those who have done good to the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil to the resurrection of judgment."
- God **ALONE** is the one who will Raise the Dead (Isaiah 26:19) – **SIMULTANEOUSLY** Jesus (The Son) will raise the Dead.
- Jesus – "For the Father judges no one, but has given all judgment to the Son… The Father… has given Him authority to execute judgment, because He is the Son of Man."
- God **ALONE** is the Final Judge (Joel 3:12) – **SIMULTANEOUSLY** Jesus (The Son) will Execute Judgment.

(John 5) 15 The man went away and told the Jews that it was Jesus who had
healed him. 16 And this was why the Jews were persecuting Jesus, because he
was doing these things on the Sabbath. 17 But Jesus answered them, "My Father
is working until now, and I am working."

18 This was why the Jews were seeking all the more to kill him, because not only
was he breaking the Sabbath, but he was even calling God his own
Father, making himself equal with God.

19 So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, the Son can do nothing of his
own accord, but only what he sees the Father doing. For whatever the
Father does, that the Son does likewise. 20 For the Father loves the Son and
shows him all that he himself is doing. And greater works than these will he
show him, so that you may marvel. 21 For as the Father raises the dead and gives
them life, so also the Son gives life to whom he will. 22 For the Father judges no
one, but has given all judgment to the Son, 23 that all may honor the Son, just as
they honor the Father. Whoever does not honor the Son does not honor the
Father who sent him. 24 Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever hears my word
and believes him who sent me has eternal life. He does not come into
judgment, but has passed from death to life.

25 "Truly, truly, I say to you, an hour is coming, and is now here, when the dead
will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live. 26 For as the
Father has life in himself, so he has granted the Son also to have life in
himself. 27 And he has given him authority to execute judgment, because he is
the Son of Man. 28 Do not marvel at this, for an hour is coming when all who are
in the tombs will hear his voice 29 and come out, those who have done good to
the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil to the resurrection of
judgment.

30 "I can do nothing on my own. As I hear, I judge, and my judgment is just,
because I seek not my own will but the will of him who sent me.

Jesus is as Powerful as God
(1) All Power & Authority in Heaven & Earth
(2) The Power to Forgive Sins
(3) Full Ownership of All the Father Owns

- Jesus – "All Authority in Heaven and on Earth has been given to me."
- Jesus has **ALL AUTHORITY** of God after **RESURRECTION**.
- Jesus is **OMNIPOTENT & OMNISCIENT**
- Jesus – "You will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power…"
- Jesus has **ALL POWER** of God (sitting at Right Hand of God)
- Jesus is **OMNIPOTENT & OMNISCIENT**
- Jesus – "…the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"
- **ONLY** God has the Power to Forgive Sins.
- (John 20:23) Jesus **ALLEGEDELY** gives the **DISCIPLES** the ability to Forgive Sins… In Context, he gives the Disciples the Ability to forgive sins **AS THEY** Preach the Gospel – therefore the Forgiveness still originates from the Gospel - Faith in Jesus (God).
- Jesus – "All that the Father has is mine"
- Jesus owns all things the Father owns.

Matthew 28

Matthew 26

Matthew 9

John 16

(Matthew 28) 16 Now the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain to which Jesus had directed them. 17 And when they saw him they worshiped him, but some doubted. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age."

(Matthew 26) 64 Jesus said to him, "You have said so. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven."

(Matthew 9) And getting into a boat he crossed over and came to his own city. 2 And behold, some people brought to him a paralytic, lying on a bed. And when Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralytic, "Take heart, my son; your sins are forgiven." 3 And behold, some of the scribes said to themselves, "This man is blaspheming." 4 But Jesus, knowing their thoughts, said, "Why do you think evil in your hearts? 5 For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Rise and walk'? 6 But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins"—he then said to the paralytic—"Rise, pick up your bed and go home." 7 And he rose and went home. 8 When the crowds saw it, they were afraid, and they glorified God, who had given such authority to men.

(John 16) 12 "I still have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. 13 When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come. 14 He will glorify me, for he will take what is mine and declare it to you. 15 All that the Father has is mine; therefore I said that he will take what is mine and declare it to you.

16 "A little while, and you will see me no longer; and again a little while, and you will see me."

Jesus Executes Prayers Himself (Only God can Execute Prayers – Omniscient & Omnipotent)

- Jesus – "Whatever you ask in my Name, this I will do…"
- Jesus – **ALONG WITH** God the Father - claims to be able to Enact Prayers.
- Executing Prayers requires the full power of both **OMNIPOTENCE** & **OMNISCIENCE**.
- Jesus – "If you ask Me anything in My Name, I will do it."
- Jesus can Execute Prayers – he has **OMNIPOTENCE** & **OMNISCIENCE**.
- Jesus says to **PRAY** to **HIM** – Equating Himself to God, who to God **ALONE** are able to pray to.
- You must only believe in "The Name" of God. Therefore, when you believe in "The Name" of Jesus, or Ask in His Name – you equate him to God.

(John 14) 12 "Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever believes in me will also do the works that I do; and greater works than these will he do, because I am going to the Father. 13 Whatever you ask in my name, this I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. 14 If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it.

Jesus Sent The Prophets & Gathered Israel (Only God sent the Prophets & Gathered Israel)

- Jesus – "Therefore I send you Prophets… some of whom you will kill and crucify…"
- Jesus – "…from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zechariah…"
- Jesus claims to have **SENT ALL** Past Prophets, and others – such as Abel and Zechariah.
- **ONLY** God sent all the Prophets (Jeremiah 7:25).
- Jesus claims to be God – and have Existed before He Himself was born.
- Jesus – "Jerusalem… How often would I have gathered your children together as a hen gathers her brood…
- God – and **SIMULTANEOUSLY** Jesus – is the one who **GATHERED** the Children of Israel.
- Jesus claims to **BE** the God of Israel.

Matthew 23

Jeremiah 7

(Matthew 23) 34 Therefore I send you prophets and wise men
and scribes, some of whom you will kill and crucify, and some
you will flog in your synagogues and persecute from town to
town, 35 so that on you may come all the righteous blood shed
on earth, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood
of Zechariah the son of Barachiah, whom you murdered
between the sanctuary and the altar. 36 Truly, I say to you, all
these things will come upon this generation.

37 "O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the city that kills the prophets and
stones those who are sent to it! How often would I
have gathered your children together as a hen gathers her
brood under her wings, and you were not willing! 38 See, your
house is left to you desolate. 39 For I tell you, you will not see me
again, until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of
the Lord.'"

(Jeremiah 7) 25 From the day that your fathers came out of the
land of Egypt to this day, I have persistently sent all my servants
the prophets to them, day after day.

Jesus is Equal in Status with God
(1) Jesus Shares the Father's Glory
(2) Baptize in the Name of Father, Son, Holy Spirit

- Jesus – "Son of Man… comes in the Glory of His Father with the holy angels"
- Jesus **SHARES** with the Glory of God
- God does not **SHARE** His Glory with Anyone Else, but he does Give Glory (Isaiah 42:8)
- Jesus – "…Baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit."
- Baptizing "**IN THE NAME OF**" the "Father, Son, Holy Spirit" - **MAKES** them all **EQUAL** in status & reverence. You would never Baptize in the Name of anyone except God.
- At a minimum – God & His Spirit are God. Jesus adds himself to those 2.

Mark 8

Matthew 28

(Mark 8) 38 For whoever is ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, of him will the Son of Man also be ashamed when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

(Matthew 28) 16 Now the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain to which Jesus had directed them. 17 And when they saw him they worshiped him, but some doubted. 18 And Jesus came and said to them, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. 19 Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 20 teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, to the end of the age."

Jesus – Believe in Me exactly like you Believe in God, I am the Truth, The Way, The Life

- Jesus – "Believe in God; believe also in Me."
- Jesus says to "Believe in God… also in Me" - just like you believe in God – almost a statement that could be read as "I am God, Worship Me".
- **BELIEVE** in Jesus **JUST LIKE** you Believe in God
- Do you "believe in" a Prophet – or the Words from God said by the Prophet?
- Jesus – "I am the Way, the Truth, and the Life. No one comes to the Father except through Me."
- **ONLY** God is the Truth
- **ONLY** God is the Life
- **ONLY** God is the Way
- Is a Prophet the access to God? Moses was not the Access to God – Prayer & Sacrifice was.

(John 14)

I Am the Way, and the Truth, and the Life

"Let not your hearts be troubled. Believe in God; believe also in
me. 2 In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have
told you that I go to prepare a place for you? 3 And if I go and prepare a
place for you, I will come again and will take you to myself, that where I
am you may be also. 4 And you know the way to where I am
going." 5 Thomas said to him, "Lord, we do not know where you are going.
How can we know the way?" 6 Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the
truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. 7 If you
had known me, you would have known my Father also. From now on you
do know him and have seen him."

8 Philip said to him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for
us." 9 Jesus said to him, "Have I been with you so long, and you still do not
know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you
say, 'Show us the Father'? 10 Do you not believe that I am in the Father and
the Father is in me? The words that I say to you I do not speak on my own
authority, but the Father who dwells in me does his works. 11 Believe me
that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else believe on account
of the works themselves.

Jesus has All-Power & All-Authority
(1) Authority over All Flesh
(2) the power to give Everlasting Life
(3) possesses All People the Father Owns

- Jesus – "…You have given Him [The Son] authority over all flesh, to give eternal life to all whom you have given Him."
- Jesus has Authority over all Flesh.
- Jesus has Power to Give Eternal Life.
- Jesus – "All mine are yours, and yours are mine…"
- Jesus states he owns all who the Father owns – an equality with God over all who follow God.

(John 17) When Jesus had spoken these words, he lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, "Father, the hour has come; glorify your Son that the Son may glorify you, [2] since you have given him authority over all flesh, to give eternal life to all whom you have given him. [3] And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent. [4] I glorified you on earth, having accomplished the work that you gave me to do. [5] And now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had with you before the world existed.

[6] "I have manifested your name to the people whom you gave me out of the world. Yours they were, and you gave them to me, and they have kept your word. [7] Now they know that everything that you have given me is from you. [8] For I have given them the words that you gave me, and they have received them and have come to know in truth that I came from you; and they have believed that you sent me. [9] I am praying for them. I am not praying for the world but for those whom you have given me, for they are yours. [10] All mine are yours, and yours are mine, and I am glorified in them.

I and my Father are One (Equal Ownership with God)

- Jesus – "My sheep hear My voice… I give them Eternal Life…"
- Jesus claims to give Eternal Life - Only God can give Eternal Life
- Jesus – "… no one will snatch them out of my hand… no one is able to snatch them out of my Father's hand…"
- Jesus claims Ownership of the People of God – something only the Father has ownership of.
- Jesus – "I and the Father are One"
- "I and my Father are One" – Jesus is co-equal with the Father in these powers and ownership.
- This is not "One in Purpose" - this is "One" in Godhood & Authority.
- The Jews state that they are trying to stone him for the blasphemy of being a Man and Claiming to be God.

(John 10) 22 At that time the Feast of Dedication took place at Jerusalem.
It was winter, 23 and Jesus was walking in the temple, in the colonnade of
Solomon. 24 So the Jews gathered around him and said to him, "How long
will you keep us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly." 25 Jesus
answered them, "I told you, and you do not believe. The works that I
do in my Father's name bear witness about me, 26 but you do not believe
because you are not among my sheep. 27 My sheep hear my voice, and I
know them, and they follow me. 28 I give them eternal life, and they will
never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. 29 My
Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one is able
to snatch them out of the Father's hand. 30 I and the Father are one."

31 The Jews picked up stones again to stone him. 32 Jesus answered
them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father; for which of
them are you going to stone me?" 33 The Jews answered him, "It is not for
a good work that we are going to stone you but for blasphemy, because
you, being a man, make yourself God." 34 Jesus answered them, "Is it not
written in your Law, 'I said, you are gods'? 35 If he called them gods to
whom the word of God came—and Scripture cannot be broken— 36 do
you say of him whom the Father consecrated and sent into the world,
'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'? 37 If I am not
doing the works of my Father, then do not believe me; 38 but if I do
them, even though you do not believe me, believe the works, that you
may know and understand that the Father is in me and I am in the
Father." 39 Again they sought to arrest him, but he escaped from their
hands.

Jesus is the Alpha and Omega, the Almighty

- Jesus – "I am the Alpha and Omega, the Beginning and the End"
- "Alpha and Omega" is a Title of God
- Jesus – "I am … the Almighty"
- "The Almighty" is a Title of God

(Revelation 22) 6 And he said to me, "These words are trustworthy and true. And the Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, has sent his angel to show his servants what must soon take place."

7 "And behold, I am coming soon. Blessed is the one who keeps the words of the prophecy of this book."

8 I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I heard and saw them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who showed them to me, 9 but he said to me, "You must not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers the prophets, and with those who keep the words of this book. Worship God."

10 And he said to me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near. 11 Let the evildoer still do evil, and the filthy still be filthy, and the righteous still do right, and the holy still be holy."

12 "Behold, I am coming soon, bringing my recompense with me, to repay each one for what he has done. 13 I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end."

(Isaiah 44)

Besides Me There Is No God

6 Thus says the LORD, the King of Israel
and his Redeemer, the LORD of hosts:
"I am the first and I am the last;
besides me there is no god.

Revelation 22

Isaiah 44

The Father & Son will send you the Holy Spirit

- Jesus – "He will give you another Helper, to be with you forever, even the Spirit of Truth, whom the world cannot receive..."
- Judas – "How is it that You will manifest Yourself to us, and not to the world?"
- Jesus – "My Father will love him, and We will come to him and make Our home with him."
- Jesus states that He & the Father will make their Abode with those who follow him. He has the same Power as God.

(John 17)

Jesus Promises the Holy Spirit

15 "If you love me, you will keep my commandments. 16 And I will ask the
Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you
forever, 17 even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive,
because it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells
with you and will be in you.

18 "I will not leave you as orphans; I will come to you. 19 Yet a little while
and the world will see me no more, but you will see me. Because I live,
you also will live. 20 In that day you will know that I am in my Father,
and you in me, and I in you. 21 Whoever has my commandments
and keeps them, he it is who loves me. And he who loves me will be
loved by my Father, and I will love him and manifest myself to
him." 22 Judas (not Iscariot) said to him, "Lord, how is it that you will
manifest yourself to us, and not to the world?"

23 Jesus answered him, "If anyone loves me, he will keep my word, and
my Father will love him, and we will come to him and make our home
with him.

Jesus denies being God?

Jesus denies being God?

(1) The only True God… and Jesus Christ?
(2) My Father is Greater than I?
(3) Jesus is "Not Good"?

- **Jesus often claims that He Himself is God – Simultaneously, none of these verses deny that Jesus is God.**
- Jesus – "…the only True God, and Jesus Christ whom You have sent." (John 17:3)
- Jesus said that God is True – **SIMULTANEOUSLY** the Father sent His Son (Jesus) to the world, who is God.
- This is not a statement that Jesus himself is not God – simply that the Father sent the Son.
- Jesus – "My Father is Greater than I"
- During His Life ("The Incarnation") - Jesus was **TEMPORARILY** "made lower than the angels" – The Son was a **LIMITED HUMAN BEING** - to serve his Purpose in this Lifetime – of refusing to sin, modeling a Human's relationship with the Father, and dying on the cross. (Hebrews 2:9)
- Jesus - "Why do you call Me good? No one is good except God alone."
- "Why do you call Me good" – Jesus asks a **RHETORICAL QUESTION** to the stranger.
- Jesus **DID NOT** confirm that He Himself is **"NOT GOOD".** We also know that Jesus is sinless (Hebrews 4:15)
- This **BEGS THE QUESTION** – Is Jesus God?
- https://youtu.be/bnNKOMpXg8U?si=cfAqyAVga9kbs1TI

Mark 10
- Jesus – "But of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heave, but My Father only."

Mathew 24
- In Jesus' life on Earth – he was fully Man. For his purpose on Earth, he does not know when the Hour is – he was not presently "All-Knowing" - like the Father is.

John 17
- After the Resurrection – Jesus then had full power, while still being a Son of Man. (Revelation 19)

John 14

(Mark 10) 17 And as he was setting out on his journey, a man ran up and knelt before him and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

18 And Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone. 19 You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, Do not commit adultery, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Do not defraud, Honor your father and mother.'" 20 And he said to him, "Teacher, all these I have kept from my youth." 21 And Jesus, looking at him, loved him, and said to him, "You lack one thing: go, sell all that you have and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow me." 22 Disheartened by the saying, he went away sorrowful, for he had great possessions.

(Matthew 24) 35 Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away.

36 "But concerning that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but the Father only.

(John 17) 3 And this is eternal life, that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent.

(John 14) 28 You heard me say to you, 'I am going away, and I will come to you.' If you loved me, you would have rejoiced, because I am going to the Father, for the Father is greater than I.

The Trinity in the New Testament

A Brief Introduction
(Only statements by the writers – not the words of Jesus)



The “Word” is God
The “Only Son” is God
No one has seen God – now Jesus shows Him

- John – “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.”
- Jesus Christ is the Word of God, the Word was God.
- John – “All things were made through him.”
- All things were made by the Word – Jesus, Equality to God
- John – “And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us… as of the only Son from the Father.”
- Jesus is “the Word”.
- John – “No one has ever seen God. The only God, who is at the Father’s side, he has made him known.”
- Jesus is the exclamation of the God who cannot be seen.

(John 1) In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God,
and the Word was God. [2] He was in the beginning with God. [3] All things
were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that
was made. [4] In him was life, and the life was the light of men. [5] The light
shines in the darkness, and the darkness has not overcome it.

[6] There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. [7] He came as
a witness, to bear witness about the light, that all might believe
through him. [8] He was not the light, but came to bear witness about
the light.

[9] The true light, which gives light to everyone, was coming into the
world. [10] He was in the world, and the world was made through him,
yet the world did not know him. [11] He came to his own, and his own
people did not receive him. [12] But to all who did receive him, who
believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of
God, [13] who were born, not of blood nor of the will of the flesh nor of
the will of man, but of God.

[14] And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen
his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace
and truth. [15] (John bore witness about him, and cried out, “This was he
of whom I said, ‘He who comes after me ranks before me, because he
was before me.’”) [16] For from his fullness we have all received, grace
upon grace. [17] For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth
came through Jesus Christ. [18] No one has ever seen God; the only
God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

“The Only Begotten Son” is God

- Hebrews – “God… has in these last days spoken to us by His Son…
- Hebrews – “His Son… through whom also He made the worlds; who being the brightness of His glory and express image of His person…
- “The Son of God” is the express image of God.
- “The Son of God” made the Earth
- Hebrews – “…sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.”
- “The Son of God” sits at the right hand of God
- Hebrews – “For to which of the angels did He ever say: ‘You are My Son, Today I have begotten You?’”
- Did God ever declare an Angel to be “The Son of God”?
- Jesus is unique as “The Son of God”
- Hebrews – “When He again brings the firstborn into the world, he says: ‘Let all the angels of God worship him’”.
- The Angels worship Jesus (only God can be worshipped)

(Hebrews 1)

The Supremacy of God's Son

Long ago, at many times and in many ways, God spoke to our fathers
by the prophets, [2] but in these last days he has spoken to us by his Son,
whom he appointed the heir of all things, through whom also he
created the world. [3] He is the radiance of the glory of God and the
exact imprint of his nature, and he upholds the universe by the word of
his power. After making purification for sins, he sat down at the right
hand of the Majesty on high, [4] having become as much superior to
angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs.

[5] For to which of the angels did God ever say,

“You are my Son,
today I have begotten you”?

Or again,

“I will be to him a father,
and he shall be to me a son”?

[6] And again, when he brings the firstborn into the world, he says,

“Let all God's angels worship him.”

[7] Of the angels he says,

“He makes his angels winds,
and his ministers a flame of fire.”

Jesus is the Invisible Image of God

- Paul – "He is the image of the invisible God"
- Jesus is the image of God
- Paul – "…by him were all things created"
- All things were made by Jesus

(Collosians 1)

13 He has delivered us from the domain of darkness and
transferred us to the kingdom of his beloved Son, 14 in whom we
have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

The Preeminence of Christ

15 He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all
creation. 16 For by him all things were created, in heaven and on
earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or
rulers or authorities—all things were created through him and for
him. 17 And he is before all things, and in him all things hold
together.

John the Baptist prepares for God Himself
Isaiah says God will be Seen

- Isaiah – "Prepare the way of the LORD…"
- Isaiah – "The glory of the LORD shall be revealed."
- Isaiah – "Behold your God!"
- Isaiah – "Behold, the Lord God shall come with a strong hand, and His arm shall rule for Him."
- God will be Seen & Revealed
- God's Glory will be revealed
- God's "Arm" will rule for Him
- John the Baptist – "[Jesus] This is the Son of God"
- John the Baptist associates "God" with Jesus (John 1:29)
- Isaiah says "Prepare the way for God in the Desert" (Isaiah 40:3)

(John 1) 23 He said, "I am the voice of one crying out
in the wilderness, 'Make straight the way of the
Lord,' as the prophet Isaiah said."

(John 1) 29 The next day he saw Jesus coming toward
him, and said, "Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes
away the sin of the world! 30 This is he of whom I
said, 'After me comes a man who ranks before me,
because he was before me.' 31 I myself did not know
him, but for this purpose I came baptizing with water,
that he might be revealed to Israel." 32 And John bore
witness: "I saw the Spirit descend from heaven like a
dove, and it remained on him. 33 I myself did not know
him, but he who sent me to baptize with water said
to me, 'He on whom you see the Spirit descend and
remain, this is he who baptizes with the Holy
Spirit.' 34 And I have seen and have borne witness that
this is the Son of God."

(Mark 1) The beginning of the gospel of Jesus
Christ, the Son of God.

2 As it is written in Isaiah the prophet,

"Behold, I send my messenger before your face,
who will prepare your way,
3 the voice of one crying in the wilderness:
'Prepare the way of the Lord,
make his paths straight,'"

(Isaiah 40) 3 A voice cries:
"In the wilderness prepare the way of the LORD;
make straight in the desert a highway for our
God.
4 Every valley shall be lifted up,
and every mountain and hill be made low;
the uneven ground shall become level,
and the rough places a plain.
5 And the glory of the LORD shall be revealed,
and all flesh shall see it together,
for the mouth of the LORD has spoken."

(Isaiah 40) 9 Go on up to a high mountain,
O Zion, herald of good news;
lift up your voice with strength,
O Jerusalem, herald of good news;
lift it up, fear not;
say to the cities of Judah,
"Behold your God!"
10 Behold, the Lord GOD comes with might,
and his arm rules for him;
behold, his reward is with him,
and his recompense before him.
11 He will tend his flock like a shepherd;
he will gather the lambs in his arms;
he will carry them in his bosom,
and gently lead those that are with young.

John 1

Mark 1

Isaiah 40

Jesus is Baptized in the Prescence of the Trinity

- Who is present at Jesus' Baptism?
- #1 – Jesus himself
- #2 - Jesus saw The Spirit of God
- #3 - A voice from Heaven (God) spoke to Jesus
- The Trinity is present
- Jesus is The Son of God

(Matthew 3)

16 And when Jesus was baptized, immediately he went up from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to rest on him;

17 and behold, a voice from heaven said, "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased."

The Holy Spirit speaks

- Holy Spirit – "Now separate to me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them."
- The Holy Spirit speaks on his own.
- The Holy Spirit is not just simply an extension of God the Father. He is also his own Person.

(Acts 13)

2 While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them."

Jesus is the True God

- John – "…His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God and eternal life."
- Jesus is God

(1 John 5)

20 And we know that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding, so that we may know him who is true; and we are in him who is true, in his Son Jesus Christ. He is the true God and eternal life.

Every Knee shall Bow to Jesus & Confess Jesus Christ is Lord

- Paul – "That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, and of those on earth, and of those under the earth."
- Jesus is given Dominion everywhere
- Paul – "Every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father."
- Jesus Christ is worshipped. Only God is allowed to be Worshipped

(Phillipians 2)

9 Therefore God has highly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that
is above every name, 10 so that at the name of Jesus every knee should
bow, in heaven and on earth and under the earth, 11 and every tongue
confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.

God (Yahweh) Appears as a Man

The Trinity in the Old Testament









Objection: God can't appear as a Man!

- Numbers 23:19
  - "**God is not a Man**… that He should lie… or a son of man, that He should change his mind."
  - It simply means God is not **LIKE A MAN** – who Lies & Changes his mind.
- Hosea 11:9
  - "**For I am God, and not man**, The Holy One in your midst…"
  - It simply means God is not **LIKE A MAN** – he is Holy & Righteous.

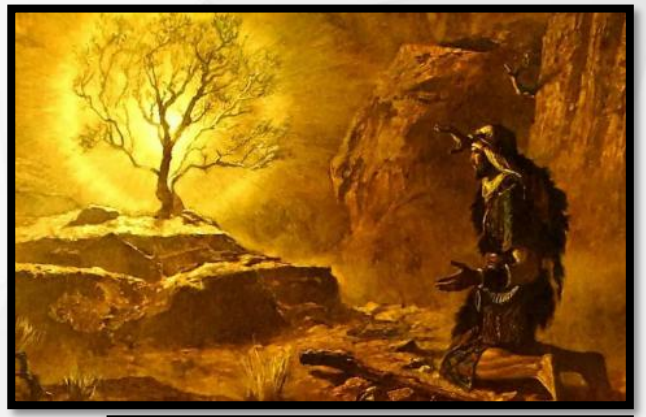
- **These are not saying "God cannot appear as a Man". They are saying he is Perfect, unlike a Man.**
- They are a metaphor of his attribute of Perfect Righteousness, unlike sinful men.
- Meanwhile, the Old Testament **clearly** teaches God appeared to the Israelites as a Man.

Numbers 23

Hosea 11

God appears as a Man (Theophanies)

The Angel of the Lord Complete Summary







- The Angel always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself.
- The Angel **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** (“Gabriel”) – and he doesn’t make a distinction between Himself and God.
- “**Angel**” (malach) just means “**Messenger**”. This is God’s **personal** Messenger – Who is he?
- God uses a **special messenger (a man) to represent himself.**
  - God calls him “**My Angel**” (Exodus 32:34, Exodus 23:23)
  - God says that He “**will send His Angel”** (Genesis 24:7, Genesis 24:40, Daniel 6:22)
  - The Angel has "**the name of God" in Him** (Exodus 23:21)
  - The Angel said that **His Name was** “**Wonderful**” (Judges 13:18)
  - The Angel **calls out from Heaven** just like God (Genesis 22:11, Genesis 21:17, Nehemiah 9:13)
  - The Angel appears as a **Man** (most examples)
- The Angel often **shares Location** with God – and the Angel **speaks as if he is God,** and also The Angel **is often referred to as God**.
  - Shares Location with God in the **Burning Bush** – talking to Moses (Exodus 3)
  - Shares Location with God talking to **Gideon** (Judges 6)
  - Shares Location with God in the **Pillar of Clouds** during the Exodus (Exodus 14:19-24)
- The Angel is given credit for **actions** that are said that God Himself **alone** did
  - The Angel **led Israel out of Egypt** (Exodus 23:20-21, Numbers 20:16)
  - The Angel **blesses Jacob** (Genesis 48)
  - The Angel **sets Jacob’s new name as “Israel”** (Genesis 32) – Jacob wrestled with an Angel, who is a Man (Hosea 12)
  - The Angel **made the Covenant with the Israelites** (Judges 2:1-2)
  - The Angel **watches Israel from the Pillar of Cloud like God** (Exodus 14:19-24)
  - The Angel **removes Sins** (Zechariah 3:1-4)
- People **expect to die because they saw God** when they **only saw The Angel** (Moses, Jacob, Gideon)
  - All who see God die… Yet they saw God appearing as a Man and did not Die? Why?

"The Angel of the Lord" appears to Gideon God Himself Talks to Gideon



- The Angel of the Lord said: "The LORD is with you"
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?
- "**The Angel of the Lord**" appears to Gideon
- Gideon asks: "If the Lord is with us… The Lord has forsaken us and given us into the hand of Midian."
- **The LORD turned to Him…**
- **The LORD said:** "Do I not send you? Save Israel from Midian."
- God Himself **turned to** Gideon **–** yet **only** "The Angel of the Lord" was said to be **present** - directly implying that He is God Himself.
- Gideon is Worried - because he has "seen the Angel of the Lord face-to-face" – but God says not to worry, you shall not die.
- Why was Gideon **expecting to Die** upon **seeing this Person**? Gideon clearly was thinking of the saying – "Anyone who **sees** the **Face of God** shall **die**" – Gideon **clearly** thought He had **seen** God.

(Judges 6)

11 Now the angel of the LORD came and sat under the terebinth at Ophrah, which belonged to Joash the Abiezrite, while his son Gideon was beating out wheat in the winepress to hide it from the Midianites.

12 And the angel of the LORD appeared to him and said to him, "The LORD is with you, O mighty man of valor." 13 And Gideon said to him, "Please, my lord, if the LORD is with us, why then has all this happened to us? And where are all his wonderful deeds that our fathers recounted to us, saying, 'Did not the LORD bring us up from Egypt?' But now the LORD has forsaken us and given us into the hand of Midian."

14 And the LORD turned to him and said, "Go in this might of yours and save Israel from the hand of Midian; do not I send you?"

(Judges 6) 21 Then the angel of the LORD reached out the tip of the staff that was in his hand and touched the meat and the unleavened cakes. And fire sprang up from the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened cakes. And the angel of the LORD vanished from his sight. 22 Then Gideon perceived that he was the angel of the LORD. And Gideon said, "Alas, O Lord GOD! For now I have seen the angel of the LORD face to face." 23 But the LORD said to him, "Peace be to you. Do not fear; you shall not die."

God Himself appears in the Burning Bush
"The Angel of the Lord" appears in the Burning Bush



- The "Angel of the Lord" appears in the Burning Bush.
- "The LORD saw he turned aside to look, God called him from the midst of the Bush…"
- **"The Angel of the Lord" is in the Burning Bush.**
- **"The LORD" in the Burning Bush called to Moses.**
- Moses was afraid to "**Look Upon God**".
- Moses thought He was **Looking Upon God Himself**.
- **The Angel:** "I am the God your Father… I AM WHO I AM"
- **The Angel**: "The place you stand is Holy Ground"
- **The Angel:** "Tell the Elders of Israel that **The LORD**… has **Appeared to Me**".
- **God appeared** to **Moses** – not just "an angel".
- The place they are standing is called "**Holy Ground**" - Indicator of the **Prescence** of God.
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Exodus 3) Now Moses was keeping the flock of his father-in-law, Jethro, the priest of Midian, and he led his flock to the west side of the wilderness and came to Horeb, the mountain of God. 2 And the angel of the LORD appeared to him in a flame of fire out of the midst of a bush. He looked, and behold, the bush was burning, yet it was not consumed. 3 And Moses said, "I will turn aside to see this great sight, why the bush is not burned." 4 When the LORD saw that he turned aside to see, God called to him out of the bush, "Moses, Moses!" And he said, "Here I am." 5 Then he said, "Do not come near; take your sandals off your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground." 6 And he said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." And Moses hid his face, for he was afraid to look at God.

(Exodus 3) 14 God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And he said, "Say this to the people of Israel: 'I AM has sent me to you.'" 15 God also said to Moses, "Say this to the people of Israel: 'The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.' This is my name forever, and thus I am to be remembered throughout all generations. 16 Go and gather the elders of Israel together and say to them, 'The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, has appeared to me, saying, "I have observed you and what has been done to you in Egypt,

Jacob wrestled with a Man (The Angel of God) at Peniel



- Jacob wrestles with a Man… The man says "you have struggled with God and with Men, and have prevailed"… Jacob says "I have seen God face to face"… Jacob called the place "Peniel" – meaning "The Face of God"
- Jacob wrestled with "God" **(Elohim)** and has seen "God" face to face **(Elohim)**
  - "**Elohim"** – any Heavenly/Spiritual Being (although most of the time used for God).
  - Contextually - is it Just a Heavenly Being (like an angel), or is it actually the God Yahweh?
- In Genesis 32, Jacob is praying to God to be delivered from Esau's wrath. Next, Jacob wrestled with an "Elohim".
  - It's logical that this "Elohim" is, once again, God himself (not just one of God's angels).
- The Man blesses Jacob after their wrestling match – and The Man sets Jacob's new name to "Israel"
- The Man **blessed** Jacob… **only** God can bless Jacob.
- The Man **changed** Jacobs name to "Israel"… presumably **only** God can change His Name… This action means that this Man has **Authority over Jacob.**
- Jacob – "The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked… The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the Boys…"
- "The Angel" **blessed Jacob's children and redeems Him from evil**. Only God did that to Jacob.
- Jacob **switches** between "God" and "The Angel" - Jacob **equates** them.
- "He strove with the angel and prevailed…"
- Hosea calls the Wrestling Man "The Angel" (messenger). **Who Is the Angel,** who is a Man?

Genesis 32

Genesis 48

Hosea 12

(Genesis 32)

22 The same night he arose and took his two wives, his two female servants, and his
eleven children, and crossed the ford of the Jabbok. 23 He took them and sent them
across the stream, and everything else that he had.

24 And Jacob was left alone. And a man wrestled with him until the breaking of the
day. 25 When the man saw that he did not prevail against Jacob, he touched his hip
socket, and Jacob's hip was put out of joint as he wrestled with him. 26 Then he said,
"Let me go, for the day has broken." But Jacob said, "I will not let you go unless you
bless me." 27 And he said to him, "What is your name?" And he said, "Jacob." 28 Then he
said, "Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel, for you have striven with
God and with men, and have prevailed." 29 Then Jacob asked him, "Please tell me your
name." But he said, "Why is it that you ask my name?" And there he blessed him.

30 So Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, saying, "For I have seen God face to
face, and yet my life has been delivered." 31 The sun rose upon him as he
passed Penuel, limping because of his hip. 32 Therefore to this day the people of Israel
do not eat the sinew of the thigh that is on the hip socket, because he touched the
socket of Jacob's hip on the sinew of the thigh.

(Genesis 48)

15 And he blessed Joseph and said,

"The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked,
the God who has been my shepherd all my life long to this day,
16 the angel who has redeemed me from all evil, bless the boys;
and in them let my name be carried on, and the name of my fathers Abraham and
Isaac;
and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth."

(Hosea 12)

2 The LORD has an indictment against Judah and will punish Jacob according to his ways;
he will repay him according to his deeds.
3 In the womb he took his brother by the heel, and in his manhood he strove with God.
4 He strove with the angel and prevailed; he wept and sought his favor.
He met God at Bethel, and there God spoke with us—

God appears to Abraham (God and 2 Angels)



- The LORD appeared to Abraham by the Oaks of Mamre.
- God **appeared to** Abraham… **by the Oak trees**.. God's Appearance has a **Location.**
- Abraham looks up and sees 3 Men before Him.
- God "**appears"** to Abraham – stated **directly** after: "Abraham **saw 3 Men standing before him"**.
- Abraham bowed himself before The Men – saying: "My Lord… Wash Your Feet… and rest Yourselves.".
- Abraham **talks directly to God** – using the **singular** "My Lord" – **while** He is **simultaneously bowing** himself before **The Men** – Abraham clearly thinks God is **amongst** the Group of Men.
- The LORD said: "Sarah will have a Son" - Sarah laughed - the LORD said to Abraham "Why did Sarah laugh?"
- Sarah can **listen to** the LORD and Abraham speaking – while **simultaneously** Abraham is talking to **The Men**.
- The LORD says: "I will go down to see [Sodom]" – Then the Men turn and went towards Sodom.
- God is **directly** being implied to be **amongst** The Men - who are now **going** to Sodom.
- Abraham still stood before the LORD… He Talks to Abraham… Then the LORD went his Way.
- God **went his way** – He has a **Location** in relation to Abraham.
- Only 2 Angels arrived at Sodom.
- The 3rd Man is not **confirmed** as an Angel – while also the LORD speaks **amongst** the group of The Men.

Genesis 18

Genesis 19

(Genesis 18) And the LORD appeared to him by the oaks of Mamre, as he sat at the door of his tent in the heat of the day. 2 He lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing in front of him. When he saw them, he ran from the tent door to meet them and bowed himself to the earth 3 and said, "O Lord, if I have found favor in your sight, do not pass by your servant. 4 Let a little water be brought, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree,

9 They said to him, "Where is Sarah your wife?" And he said, "She is in the tent." 10 The LORD said, "I will surely return to you about this time next year, and Sarah your wife shall have a son." And Sarah was listening at the tent door behind him. 11 Now Abraham and Sarah were old, advanced in years. The way of women had ceased to be with Sarah. 12 So Sarah laughed to herself, saying, "After I am worn out, and my lord is old, shall I have pleasure?" 13 The LORD said to Abraham, "Why did Sarah laugh and say, 'Shall I indeed bear a child, now that I am old?'

20 Then the LORD said, "Because the outcry against Sodom and Gomorrah is great and their sin is very grave, 21 I will go down to see whether they have done altogether according to the outcry that has come to me. And if not, I will know."

22 So the men turned from there and went toward Sodom, but Abraham still stood before the LORD. 23 Then Abraham drew near and said, "Will you indeed sweep away the righteous with the wicked?

33 And the LORD went his way, when he had finished speaking to Abraham, and Abraham returned to his place.

(Genesis 19) The two angels came to Sodom in the evening, and Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom. When Lot saw them, he rose to meet them and bowed himself with his face to the earth

24 Then the LORD rained on Sodom and Gomorrah sulfur and fire from the LORD out of heaven.

Hagar meets "The Angel of the Lord" Hagar sees God Himself



- The Angel of the Lord speaks to Hagar
- Hagar says she spoke with, and has "Seen her God".
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Genesis 16)

7 The angel of the LORD found her by a spring of water in the wilderness, the spring on
the way to Shur. 8 And he said, "Hagar, servant of Sarai, where have you come from and
where are you going?" She said, "I am fleeing from my mistress Sarai." 9 The angel of
the LORD said to her, "Return to your mistress and submit to her." 10 The angel of
the LORD also said to her, "I will surely multiply your offspring so that they cannot be
numbered for multitude." 11 And the angel of the LORD said to her,

"Behold, you are pregnant
and shall bear a son.
You shall call his name Ishmael,
because the LORD has listened to your affliction.
12 He shall be a wild donkey of a man,
his hand against everyone
and everyone's hand against him,
and he shall dwell over against all his kinsmen."

13 So she called the name of the LORD who spoke to her, "You are a God of seeing," for
she said, "Truly here I have seen him who looks after me." 14 Therefore the well was
called Beer-lahai-roi; it lies between Kadesh and Bered.

Samson's Parents meet "The Angel of the Lord" They saw God Himself

- The Angel of the Lord appeared to Manoah
- **The Angel of the Lord** appears to Manoah & His Wife.
- Manoah – "We shall surely die, because we have seen God!"
- Manoah's Wife – "If the LORD had meant to kill us, he would not have accepted a burnt offering."
- Manoah says they have **seen God** (Elohim).
- Manoah's Wife says The LORD (**Yahweh distinctly**) would have **killed them** if he was angry with them (talking about Manoah's reference to the Angel of the Lord they just met).
- Manoah's wife **directly states** that The Angel of the Lord **is Yahweh**.
- Then Manoah knew that he was The Angel of the Lord
- If it was just a random Angel, why was this Stated? Or did Manoah notice this "Angel" (Messenger) was God's Personal Messenger?

(Judges 13)

17 And Manoah said to the angel of the LORD, "What is your name, so that, when your
words come true, we may honor you?" 18 And the angel of the LORD said to him, "Why
do you ask my name, seeing it is wonderful?" 19 So Manoah took the young goat with
the grain offering, and offered it on the rock to the LORD, to the one who
works wonders, and Manoah and his wife were watching.

20 And when the flame went up toward heaven from the altar, the angel of
the LORD went up in the flame of the altar. Now Manoah and his wife were
watching, and they fell on their faces to the ground.

21 The angel of the LORD appeared no more to Manoah and to his wife. Then Manoah
knew that he was the angel of the LORD. 22 And Manoah said to his wife, "We shall
surely die, for we have seen God."

23 But his wife said to him, "If the LORD had meant to kill us, he would not have accepted
a burnt offering and a grain offering at our hands, or shown us all these things, or now
announced to us such things as these."

Moses & 74 Elders see God & eat with God



- "They saw the God of Israel… under His feet as it were a paved work of sapphire stone…"
- Doesn't anyone who sees God die? How are they seeing the invisible God? Does God have feet, is it metaphorical?
- "But on the nobles… He did not lay His Hand"
- This was not a Vision – this was the **LITERAL** God of Israel.
- "They beheld God, and ate and drank"
- They ate & drank with God? They beheld God?

(Exodus 24)

Then he said to Moses, "Come up to the LORD, you and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel, and worship from afar. 2 Moses alone shall come near to the LORD, but the others shall not come near, and the people shall not come up with him."

(Exodus 24)

9 Then Moses and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel went up, 10 and they saw the God of Israel. There was under his feet as it were a pavement of sapphire stone, like the very heaven for clearness. 11 And he did not lay his hand on the chief men of the people of Israel; they beheld God, and ate and drank.

12 The LORD said to Moses, "Come up to me on the mountain and wait there, that I may give you the tablets of stone, with the law and the commandment, which I have written for their instruction."

The "Angel of His Prescence" is God

- The "Angel of His Presence" saved the Jews
- **Only** God can save the Jews
- **THE ANGEL** is "the Angel of the Lord" – who is God appearing as a Man.
- The "Angel of His Presence" Redeemed the Jews
- **Only** God can redeem the Jews
- The "Angel of His Presence" fought against the Jews
- **Only** God fought against the Jews
- The Jews were led God's "Glorious Arm"
- **Only** God led the Jews
- God's Holy Spirit led them, by the right hand of Moses, With his glorious arm
- Father, Son ("Arm of the Lord"), Holy Spirit

(Isaiah 63)

9 In all their affliction he was afflicted,
and the angel of his presence saved them;
in his love and in his pity he redeemed them;
he lifted them up and carried them all the days of old.

10 But they rebelled
and grieved his Holy Spirit;
therefore he turned to be their enemy,
and himself fought against them.
11 Then he remembered the days of old,
of Moses and his people.
Where is he who brought them up out of the sea
with the shepherds of his flock?
Where is he who put in the midst of them
his Holy Spirit,
12 who caused his glorious arm
to go at the right hand of Moses,
who divided the waters before them
to make for himself an everlasting name,

The Angel of the Lord is the God of Bethel

- In a Dream, the Angel of the Lord tells Jacob "I am the God of Bethel".
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Genesis 31)

11 Then the angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob,'
and I said, 'Here I am!' 12 And he said, 'Lift up your eyes
and see, all the goats that mate with the flock are striped,
spotted, and mottled, for I have seen all that Laban is
doing to you.

13 I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar and
made a vow to me. Now arise, go out from this land and
return to the land of your kindred.'"

Moses talks to God in Human Form

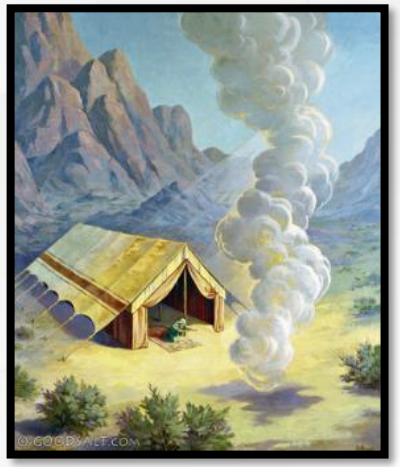
- God – “With Him [Moses] I speak mouth-to-mouth…”
- God – “And He sees the form of the Lord.”
- God has a Form – and Moses speaks with him “mouth to mouth”.
- Only Moses saw the “Form of God” – so that the Israelites would not make an Image and fall into Idolatry.

(Numbers 12)

Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses because of the Cushite woman whom
he had married, for he had married a Cushite woman. 2 And they said, “Has
the LORD indeed spoken only through Moses? Has he not spoken through us
also?” And the LORD heard it. 3 Now the man Moses was very meek, more than
all people who were on the face of the earth. 4 And suddenly the LORD said to
Moses and to Aaron and Miriam, “Come out, you three, to the tent of
meeting.” And the three of them came out.

5 And the LORD came down in a pillar of cloud and stood at the entrance of the
tent and called Aaron and Miriam, and they both came forward. 6 And he said,
“Hear my words: If there is a prophet among you, I the LORD make myself
known to him in a vision; I speak with him in a dream. 7 Not so with my servant
Moses. He is faithful in all my house.

8 With him I speak mouth to mouth, clearly, and not in riddles, and he
beholds the form of the LORD. Why then were you not afraid to speak against
my servant Moses?” 9 And the anger of the LORD was kindled against them, and
he departed.



God walks in the Garden with Adam

- How did God walk in the Garden, with Adam?
- If God was not “Local” like a Person – his statement “Where are you?” to Adam wouldn’t make sense.

(Genesis 3)

8 And they heard the sound of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day, and the man and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God among the trees of the garden. 9 But the LORD God called to the man and said to him, “Where are you?” 10 And he said, “I heard the sound of you in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked, and I hid myself.”



Jeremiah talks with "The Word of the Lord"
"The Word of the Lord" has a Hand
"The word of the Lord" is God

- "The Word of the Lord" talked to Jeremiah…
- "The LORD" talked to Jeremiah…
- "The LORD" put out his Hand and Touched Jeremiah's Mouth
- "The Lord" was been **Interchangeably Equated** to "The Word of the Lord"
- "The Lord" apparently had a Physical Body

(Jeremiah 1)

The words of Jeremiah, the son of Hilkiah, one of the priests who were in Anathoth
in the land of Benjamin, [2] to whom the word of the LORD came in the days of Josiah
the son of Amon, king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign. [3] It came also in
the days of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of Judah, and until the end of the
eleventh year of Zedekiah, the son of Josiah, king of Judah, until the captivity of
Jerusalem in the fifth month.

The Call of Jeremiah

[4] Now the word of the LORD came to me, saying,

[5] "Before I formed you in the womb I knew you,
and before you were born I consecrated you;
I appointed you a prophet to the nations."

[6] Then I said, "Ah, Lord GOD! Behold, I do not know how to speak, for I am only a
youth." [7] But the LORD said to me,

"Do not say, 'I am only a youth';
for to all to whom I send you, you shall go,
and whatever I command you, you shall speak.
[8] Do not be afraid of them,
for I am with you to deliver you,
declares the LORD."

[9] Then the LORD put out his hand and touched my mouth. And the LORD said to me,

"Behold, I have put my words in your mouth.
[10] See, I have set you this day over nations and over kingdoms,
to pluck up and to break down,
to destroy and to overthrow,
to build and to plant."

"The Angel of the Lord" made the Covenant with the Israelites

- "The Angel of the Lord" appears – he said he Brought the Jews out of Egypt, and held a Covenant with the Jews.
- **Only** God did all these things.
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Judges 2)

Now the angel of the LORD went up from Gilgal to Bochim.

And he said, "I brought you up from Egypt and brought you into the land that I swore to give to your fathers. I said, 'I will never break my covenant with you, 2 and you shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land; you shall break down their altars.' But you have not obeyed my voice. What is this you have done?

3 So now I say, I will not drive them out before you, but they shall become thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare to you." 4 As soon as the angel of the LORD spoke these words to all the people of Israel, the people lifted up their voices and wept. 5 And they called the name of that place Bochim. And they sacrificed there to the LORD.

The Angel of the Lord has "The Name of God" in Him

- The Angel… has the Name of God in Him
- The Angel has the same Being as God.

(Exodus 23)

Conquest of Canaan Promised

20 "Behold, I send an angel before you to guard you on the way and to bring
you to the place that I have prepared. 21 Pay careful attention to him and
obey his voice; do not rebel against him, for he will not pardon your
transgression, for my name is in him.

22 "But if you carefully obey his voice and do all that I say, then I will be an
enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries.

The Angel of the Lord is God
The Angel of the Lord forgives Sins

- The Angel of the Lord was standing next to Satan & Joshua.
- Next: The LORD said to Satan, 'The LORD rebuke you, Satan!'
- The LORD speaks to Satan – yet **only** "The Angel of the Lord", Joshua, and Satan – are present.
- The Angel of the Lord forgives Sin – "See, I have removed your iniquity from you…"
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Zechariah 3)

A Vision of Joshua the High Priest

Then he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of
the LORD, and Satan standing at his right hand to accuse him. [2] And
the LORD said to Satan, "The LORD rebuke you, O Satan! The LORD who
has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you! Is not this a brand plucked from the
fire?" [3] Now Joshua was standing before the angel, clothed with filthy
garments. [4] And the angel said to those who were standing before
him, "Remove the filthy garments from him." And to him he said,

"Behold, I have taken your iniquity away from you, and I will clothe you
with pure vestments." [5] And I said, "Let them put a clean turban on his
head." So they put a clean turban on his head and clothed him with
garments. And the angel of the LORD was standing by.

[6] And the angel of the LORD solemnly assured Joshua, [7] "Thus says
the LORD of hosts: If you will walk in my ways and keep my charge, then you
shall rule my house and have charge of my courts, and I will give you the
right of access among those who are standing here.

Angel of the Lord claims to be God Abraham & Isaac

- The Angel of the Lord appeared – "For now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your Son, your Only Son, from Me."
- **The Angel of the Lord:** He always Assumes **First Person –** as if he was speaking as God himself. He **Never** introduces Himself with His **Own Name** ("Gabriel") – and he doesn't make a distinction between Himself and God. Angel just means "**Messenger**". This is God's **personal** Messenger – Based on Context, Who is He?

(Genesis 22)

11 But the angel of the LORD called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." 12 He said, "Do not lay your hand on the boy or do anything to him, for now I know that you fear God, seeing you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me."



Joshua meets God who appeared to him as a Man



- The Man was Holding a Sword
- Joshua [prostrated himself] before the Man
- "The place where you stand is Holy"
  - Exodus 3 – Moses "looks upon God" and is told he is on "Holy ground"
- Joshua had God appear to Him on "Holy Ground" – just like Moses.
- The LORD speaks to Joshua – and gives Military Advice to Conquer Jericho – immediately after Joshua is talking to this "Man".
- The LORD is implied to be this Man, who is the commander of the Army.

Joshua 5

Joshua 6

(Joshua 5)

The Commander of the LORD's Army

13 When Joshua was by Jericho, he lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, a man was standing before him with his drawn sword in his hand. And Joshua went to him and said to him, "Are you for us, or for our adversaries?" 14 And he said, "No; but I am the commander of the army of the LORD. Now I have come." And Joshua fell on his face to the earth and worshiped and said to him, "What does my lord say to his servant?" 15 And the commander of the LORD's army said to Joshua, "Take off your sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy." And Joshua did so.

(Joshua 6)

Now Jericho was shut up inside and outside because of the people of Israel. None went out, and none came in. 2 And the LORD said to Joshua, "See, I have given Jericho into your hand, with its king and mighty men of valor.

God speaks “face-to-face”

- God spoke to Moses “face to face… as a man speaks to his friend”
- God appeared as a Man, face to face, speaking “like a friend” or like a Man.
- God speaks “face to face” In the midst of the fire

(Exodus 33) [9] When Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would descend and stand at the entrance of the tent, and the LORD would speak with Moses. [10] And when all the people saw the pillar of cloud standing at the entrance of the tent, all the people would rise up and worship, each at his tent door. [11] Thus the LORD used to speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. When Moses turned again into the camp, his assistant Joshua the son of Nun, a young man, would not depart from the tent.

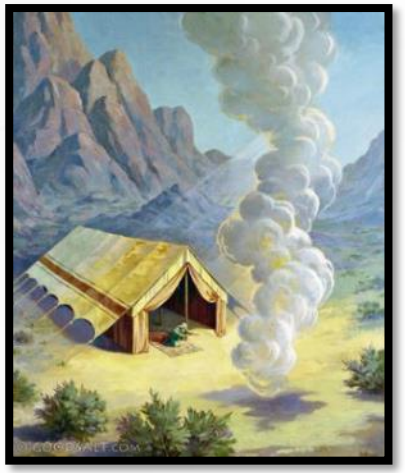
(Deuteronomy 5)

[4] The LORD spoke with you face to face at the mountain, out of the midst of the fire,

(Deuteronomy 34)

[10] And there has not arisen a prophet since in Israel like Moses, whom the LORD knew face to face, [11] none like him for all the signs and the wonders that the LORD sent him to do in the land of Egypt, to Pharaoh and to all his servants and to all his land,





Exodus 33

Deuteronomy 5

Deuteronomy 34

Isaiah sees God… as a Man

- Isaiah – "I saw the Lord sitting on a Throne…"
- Isaiah's Eyes have physical seen the Lord sitting on a Physical Throne
- Isaiah – "…the Train of His Robe filled the temple"
- God wears a physical Robe.
- Does an Invisible God wear a Robe?
- Isaiah – "seraphim… two covered his face, with two he covered his feet"
- God has a Face and Feet
- Isaiah – "For my Eyes have seen the King – the Lord…"
- Isaiah's Eyes have physically seen God



(Isaiah 6)

In the year that King Uzziah died I saw the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up; and the train of his robe filled the temple.

2 Above him stood the seraphim. Each had six wings: with two he covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew.

3 And one called to another and said:

"Holy, holy, holy is the LORD of hosts;
the whole earth is full of his glory!"

4 And the foundations of the thresholds shook at the voice of him who called, and the house was filled with smoke. 5 And I said: "Woe is me! For I am lost; for I am a man of unclean lips, and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for my eyes have seen the King, the LORD of hosts!"

God has a Waist

- Ezekiel – "The appearance of His waist"
- Ezekiel – "This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the Lord"
- Does a spirit God have a physical waist?



(Ezekiel 1)

26 And above the expanse over their heads there was the likeness of a throne, in appearance like sapphire; and seated above the likeness of a throne was a likeness with a human appearance.

27 And upward from what had the appearance of his waist I saw as it were gleaming metal, like the appearance of fire enclosed all around. And downward from what had the appearance of his waist I saw as it were the appearance of fire, and there was brightness around him. 28 Like the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud on the day of rain, so was the appearance of the brightness all around.

Such was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell on my face, and I heard the voice of one speaking.

God has Physical Form on his Throne

- God was Seated on a Physical Throne
- God had a physical garment
- God had Hair on his Head
- Does a spirit God have these descriptions?



(Daniel 7)

9 "As I looked,

thrones were placed,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat;
his clothing was white as snow,
and the hair of his head like pure wool;
his throne was fiery flames;
its wheels were burning fire.

The Angel of the Lord watches in a Pillar of Cloud
God watches in a Pillar of Cloud

- "The Angel of the Lord" watched the camp in a pillar of cloud
- The Angel is the one in the pillar of cloud
- The Angel rides the Clouds, something only God does.
- "The Lord" watched from the pillar of fire & cloud
- God is the one in the pillar of cloud

(Exodus 14)

19 Then the angel of God who was going before the host of Israel moved and went behind them, and the pillar of cloud moved from before them and stood behind them, 20 coming between the host of Egypt and the host of Israel. And there was the cloud and the darkness. And it lit up the night without one coming near the other all night.

21 Then Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and the LORD drove the sea back by a strong east wind all night and made the sea dry land, and the waters were divided. 22 And the people of Israel went into the midst of the sea on dry ground, the waters being a wall to them on their right hand and on their left. 23 The Egyptians pursued and went in after them into the midst of the sea, all Pharaoh's horses, his chariots, and his horsemen.

24 And in the morning watch the LORD in the pillar of fire and of cloud looked down on the Egyptian forces and threw the Egyptian forces into a panic,



God (a man) will Dwell in his 3rd Temple Forever

- (During God's 3rd Temple)
- His Prescence was like the "sound of many waters"
- The "Glory of the LORD" entered the Temple by the East Gate… The Glory of the LORD filled the Temple
- "While the man was standing beside me, I heard one [a man] speaking to me out of the Temple, and he said to me, "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell in the midst of the people of Israel forever."
- God is directly implied to be a Man ("I heard one [a man]", and also "this is the place.. Of the soles of my feet")
- God will dwell with his People Forever

(Ezekiel 43)

Then he led me to the gate, the gate facing east. 2 And behold, the glory of the God of Israel was coming from the east. And the sound of his coming was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory. 3 And the vision I saw was just like the vision that I had seen when he came to destroy the city, and just like the vision that I had seen by the Chebar canal. And I fell on my face. 4 As the glory of the LORD entered the temple by the gate facing east, 5 the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court; and behold, the glory of the LORD filled the temple.

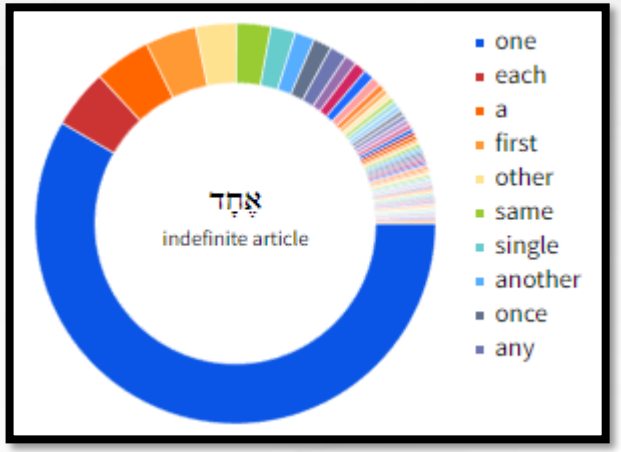
6 While the man was standing beside me, I heard one speaking to me out of the temple, 7 and he said to me, "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell in the midst of the people of Israel forever. And the house of Israel shall no more defile my holy name, neither they, nor their kings, by their whoring and by the dead bodies of their kings at their high places,

Father, Son, Holy Spirit

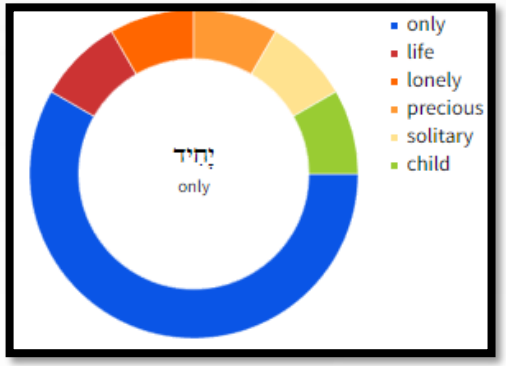
How “One” is God?

- “Hear, O Israel, The LORD our God, The LORD is **one** (ĕ·ḥāḏ) !” (Deuteronomy 6:4)

- ĕ·ḥāḏ: “One, Unity, First…”
- **(Unity)** “Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be **one** flesh” (Genesis 2:24)
- **(Unity & Singular)** “And the LORD said, “Behold, they are **one** people, and they have all **one** language, and this is only the beginning of what they will do. And nothing that they propose to do will now be impossible for them.” (Genesis 11:6)
- **(First)** “And God called the light Day, and the darkness he called Night. And the evening and the morning were the **first** day.” (Genesis 1:15)



- yā·ḥîḏ: “One and Only”
- “…Make mourning as for **an only** son…” (Jeremiah 6:26)
- => “One and Only” is not the word used to describe “The One God”!



God - Let Us make man in Our Image

- The Spirit of God was hovering on the Face of the Waters.
- The Holy Spirit is also God.
- God – "Let Us make man in Our image"
- God speaks as "Us"
- God says "Our image"
- "Let us Make" presupposes that only God can "make" – therefore it could be a Plurality of the single 1 God.
- God – "According to Our likeness"
- If God was referring to The Likeness of "Us" as "God and the Angels surrounding God" – how is it possible that Man was "Made in the Image" of the Angels?

(Genesis 1)

In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth. [2] The earth was without form and void, and darkness was over the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters.

[26] Then God said, "Let us make man in our image, after our likeness. And let them have dominion over the fish of the sea and over the birds of the heavens and over the livestock and over all the earth and over every creeping thing that creeps on the earth."

God - Let Us confuse the Languages

- God – "Let Us go down and there confuse their language…"
- God refers to himself as "Us"
- God alone can execute this action, of confusing languages.

(Genesis 11)

7 Come, let us go down and there confuse their language, so that they may not understand one another's speech."

https://youtu.be/BNt5NKSse0Y?si=wMxYT9saF6UVz3C6&t=265

The Holy Spirit is a Distinct Person

- The Spirit of the Lord said “Speak!”
- The Spirit of the Lord speaks as the Lord
- Both “The Lord” and “The Spirit of the Lord” speak at different points

(Ezekiel 11)

5 And the Spirit of the LORD fell upon me, and he said to me, “Say, Thus says the LORD: So you think, O house of Israel. For I know the things that come into your mind.

(1 Samuel 10)

10 When they came to Gibeah, behold, a group of prophets met him, and the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he prophesied among them.

Ezekiel 11

1 Samuel 10

God sent God?

God Himself sent God (The Father sent The Son)

- Thus said the LORD of Hosts, after His Glory Sent Me to the Nations…
- Then you will know that the LORD of Hosts has Sent Me…
- God sent “Me”. Who is “Me”?
- I will come and I will dwell in your midst
- God will dwell in the midst, like the Tabernacle.

(Zechariah 2)

7 Up! Escape to Zion, you who dwell with the daughter of Babylon.

8 For thus said the LORD of hosts, after his glory sent me to the nations who plundered you, for he who touches you touches the apple of his eye:

9 “Behold, I will shake my hand over them, and they shall become plunder for those who served them. Then you will know that the LORD of hosts has sent me.

10 Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion, for behold, I come and I will dwell in your midst, declares the LORD.

11 And many nations shall join themselves to the LORD in that day, and shall be my people. And I will dwell in your midst, and you shall know that the LORD of hosts has sent me to you.

God Himself sent God (God the Father, Holy Spirit, The Son)

- The LORD God… has sent Me… and his Spirit.
- God the Father… sent The Son ("Me")… God's Spirit.
- God the Father, God's Spirit, and "Me" are all distinct – and all 3 are God.
- I am He; I am the First, and I am the Last. My Hand laid the foundations of the Earth.
- The Person who is "Has Sent Me" says they are the First & The Last, and creator of the Earth, just like the Father.
- The LORD loves Him… I, even I, have spoken and called Him.
- The Lord loves "Him" … who is "I, even I"
- From the Beginning I have not spoken in secret, form the time it came to be I have been there.
- Father, Son, Holy Spirit

(Isaiah 48)

12 "Listen to me, O Jacob,
and Israel, whom I called!
I am he; I am the first,
and I am the last.
13 My hand laid the foundation of the earth,
and my right hand spread out the heavens;
when I call to them,
they stand forth together.

14 "Assemble, all of you, and listen!
Who among them has declared these things?
The LORD loves him;
he shall perform his purpose on Babylon,
and his arm shall be against the Chaldeans.
15 I, even I, have spoken and called him;
I have brought him, and he will prosper in his way.
16 Draw near to me, hear this:
from the beginning I have not spoken in secret,
from the time it came to be I have been there."
And now the Lord GOD has sent me, and his Spirit.

The Messiah
& God's Only Begotten Son

God has one "Begotten Son"

- God – "Yet I have set My King…"
- => The Son is a King
- God – "You are My Son, Today I have begotten You."
- => There is a "Son of God"
- => The Son is equal with God
- God – "Kiss the Son… Blessed are those who put their trust in Him."
- => The Son is a Man

(Psalm 2)

4 He who sits in the heavens laughs;
the Lord holds them in derision.
5 Then he will speak to them in his wrath,
and terrify them in his fury, saying,
6 "As for me, I have set my King
on Zion, my holy hill."

7 I will tell of the decree:
The LORD said to me, "You are my Son;
today I have begotten you.
8 Ask of me, and I will make the nations your heritage,
and the ends of the earth your possession.
9 You shall break them with a rod of iron
and dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel."

10 Now therefore, O kings, be wise;
be warned, O rulers of the earth.
11 Serve the LORD with fear,
and rejoice with trembling.
12 Kiss the Son,
lest he be angry, and you perish in the way,
for his wrath is quickly kindled.
Blessed are all who take refuge in him.

https://youtu.be/qWi7GJ_QZ4E?si=W8GyirsJL2_rNmaE

God - like an "Only Child" - will be Pierced
The Messiah will be Pierced in the Hands and Feet

- The House of David will be "like God"
- The "House of David", will become like God.
- The House of David will be "like the Angel of the Lord".
- The "Angel of the Lord" is shown to be God, appearing as a Man, repeatedly in the Old Testament.
- Jesus Christ makes the House of David like God, and the Angel of the Lord, who is God.
- God will pour out "the Spirit" onto Jerusalem
- What is "The Spirit" of God?
- God will be Pierced
- Can God, made of spirit, be pierced?
- God will be mourned for as one mourns for his Only Child.
- Who is like God's only Son?
- Psalm 2 - "You are My Son, Today I have begotten You."
- They will look on Me whom they pierced… They will mourn for "Him"…
- God refers to Himself being Pierced, and simultaneously refers to this event as a separate person "Him"
- Messiah – "They pierced My hands and My feet"
- Messiah – "They divided my garments among them"
- The Messiah will have his Hands & Feet Pierced

Zechariah 12

Psalms 22

(Zechariah 12)

8 On that day the LORD will protect the inhabitants of Jerusalem,
so that the feeblest among them on that day shall be like David,
and the house of David shall be like God, like the angel of
the LORD, going before them. 9 And on that day I will seek to
destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem.

Him Whom They Have Pierced

10 "And I will pour out on the house of David and the inhabitants
of Jerusalem a spirit of grace and pleas for mercy, so that, when
they look on me, on him whom they have pierced, they shall
mourn for him, as one mourns for an only child, and weep bitterly
over him, as one weeps over a firstborn. 11 On that day the
mourning in Jerusalem will be as great as the mourning for
Hadad-rimmon in the plain of Megiddo.

(Psalm 22)

16 For dogs encompass me;
a company of evildoers encircles me;
they have pierced my hands and feet—
17 I can count all my bones—
they stare and gloat over me;
18 they divide my garments among them,
and for my clothing they cast lots.

The King Messiah "Son of Man" is God

- The "Son of Man coming in the clouds" is the God's Messianic Ruler for All Time.
- The term "Son of Man" describes anyone who is a Human.
- Daniel – "…One like the Son of Man, Coming with the clouds of heaven…"
- He is a Man.
- Daniel – "...He came to the Ancient of Days, And they brought Him near before Him…"
- God is referred to as "They".
- He will be greatly exalted before God.
- Daniel – "…His dominion is an everlasting dominion…"
- Daniel – "All peoples, nations, and languages should serve him…"
- "Son of Man coming with the clouds of heaven" is a special Messianic title of God's Eternal Ruler (Daniel 7:13-14).
    - This Man has **ALL AUTHORITY & POWER** (sitting at right hand of God) – presumably Omnipotent & Omniscient.
    - This Man is "Served" by all people – "pelah" – only used of **WORSHIP OF GOD(S)** in the Book of Daniel
    - This Man **RIDES THE CLOUDS** of Heaven - something **ONLY** God does approx. 80 times (Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalms 68:4)

(Daniel 7)

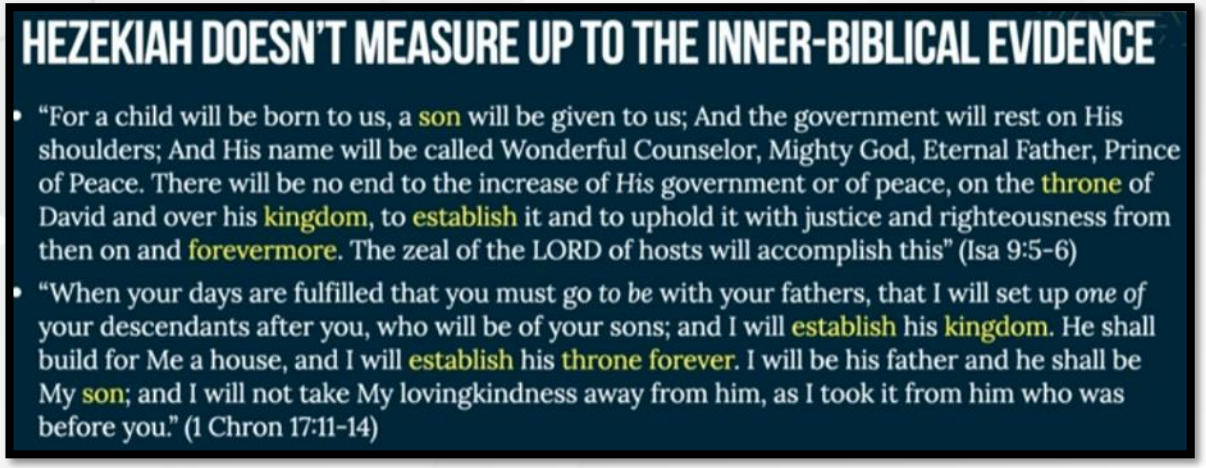
The Son of Man Is Given Dominion

13 "I saw in the night visions, and behold,
with the clouds of heaven there came one
like a son of man, and he came to
the Ancient of Days and was presented
before him.
14 And to him was given dominion and glory
and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations,
and languages should serve him; his
dominion is an everlasting dominion, which
shall not pass away, and his kingdom one
that shall not be destroyed.

https://youtu.be/_ZjPaRv8SZw?si=Bq_mz7KalBk0B8ZM

The Messiah - the Only Begotten Son – is the Mighty God

- Messiah is a Human
- Messiah is the Only Begotten Son
  - "You are My Son, Today I have begotten You" (Psalms 2:7)
- Messiah is "Mighty God"
- Messiah will be the Almighty God
- Messiah is "Everlasting Father"
- Only God can be called "Everlasting" – or more specifically the a title of God which is the "Everlasting Father"
- Messiah is of the Line of David
- Messiah is of the Stem of Jesse (which is David)



Isaiah 9

Psalms 2

(Isaiah 9)

6 For to us a child is born,
to us a son is given;
and the government shall be upon his shoulder,
and his name shall be called
Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God,
Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.
7 Of the increase of his government and of peace
there will be no end,
on the throne of David and over his kingdom,
to establish it and to uphold it
with justice and with righteousness
from this time forth and forevermore.
The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this.

(Psalm 2)

7 I will tell of the decree:
The LORD said to me, "You are my Son;
today I have begotten you.

https://jewsforjesus.org/messianic-prophecies/the-messiah-would-be-the-wonderful-counselor-mighty-god-everlasting-father-and-prince-of-peace

The Messiah – Human who is from Eternity

- Messiah is a Human born in Bethlehem
- Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem
- Messiah is "From Everlasting"
- Only God Himself is from Eternity

- "Some Jewish traditions applied the names directly to the child. For example, Deuteronomy Rabbah says that,"the Messiah is called by eight names," and includes five references to the Isaiah verses, saying that among the Messiah's names are Wonderful, Counselor, God, Hero, and Eternal Father of Peace" [1]

(Micah 5)

2 But you, O Bethlehem Ephrathah,
who are too little to be among the clans of Judah,
from you shall come forth for me
one who is to be ruler in Israel,
whose coming forth is from of old,
from ancient days.

https://jewsforjesus.org/messianic-prophecies/the-messiah-would-be-the-wonderful-counselor-mighty-god-everlasting-father-and-prince-of-peace

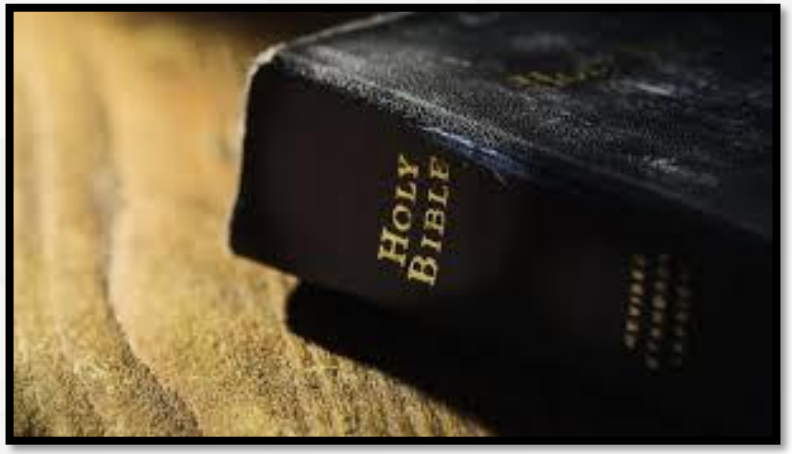
Joshua son of Jehozadak – a direct type of Jesus (Jesus is the Priestly King)

- "Joshua" = Yeshua (hebrew name of Jesus)
- "The Branch" = Messianic Title
- Yeshua is the High Priest
- Yeshua is the King
- Yeshua will build the Temple
- Yeshua will be the Messiah
- Name of Jesus & Purpose stated in the Old Testament (as a type)

(Zechariah 6)

11 Take from them silver and gold, and make a crown, and set it on the
head of Joshua, the son of Jehozadak, the high priest. 12 And say to him,
'Thus says the LORD of hosts, "Behold, the man whose name is the
Branch: for he shall branch out from his place, and he shall build the
temple of the LORD. 13 It is he who shall build the temple of the LORD and
shall bear royal honor, and shall sit and rule on his throne. And there shall
be a priest on his throne, and the counsel of peace shall be between
them both."'

How Reliable are the Bible Texts?
Are the Texts Preserved or Corrupted?





Objections:
Aren't the Bible Texts Corrupted?

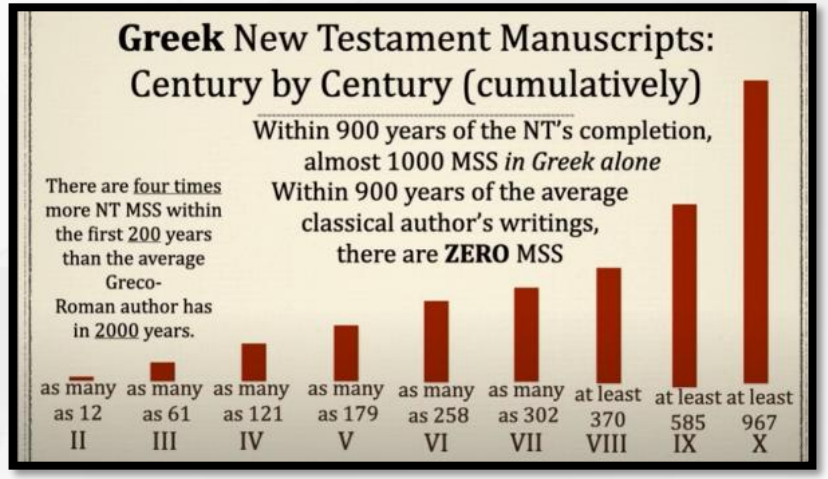


- Objection #1 - Didn't the New Testament texts come 200-300 years later than Jesus?
- Objection #2 – Weren't the Gospels authored by "Anonymous" People? Not Eyewitnesses?
- Objection #3 – Aren't there 400,000 "edits/errors/variants" of the New Testament?
- Objection #4 – How do we know the Old Testament is a reliable text? Isn't it 2,500 years old?

Sources Listed in Next Slides

New Testament – Summary of Textual Reliability

- The Basic Facts
- #1 – The Essential Beliefs of Christianity are essentially consistent across all Manuscripts - despite variants & copying.
  - Modern Bibles accurately reflect the words of Ancient Texts.
- #2 – Historically "Very Early" Earliest Documents (The Gospels being written approx. 50-100 AD)
  - The earliest First "Full Manuscript of the New Testament" is approx. 325 AD (Codex Sinaiticus)
  - The earliest First "Full Gospel" is approx. 200 AD (P66 – Gospel of John)
  - The earliest First "Fragments" show up approx. 125 AD – like a Fragment of John (P52).
- #3 – There are "400,000 variants" in the New Testament
  - 95%+ of variants are defined as "minor spelling or phrasing differences" or "non-meaningful variants".
  - 1% of remaining variants do not affect major beliefs.

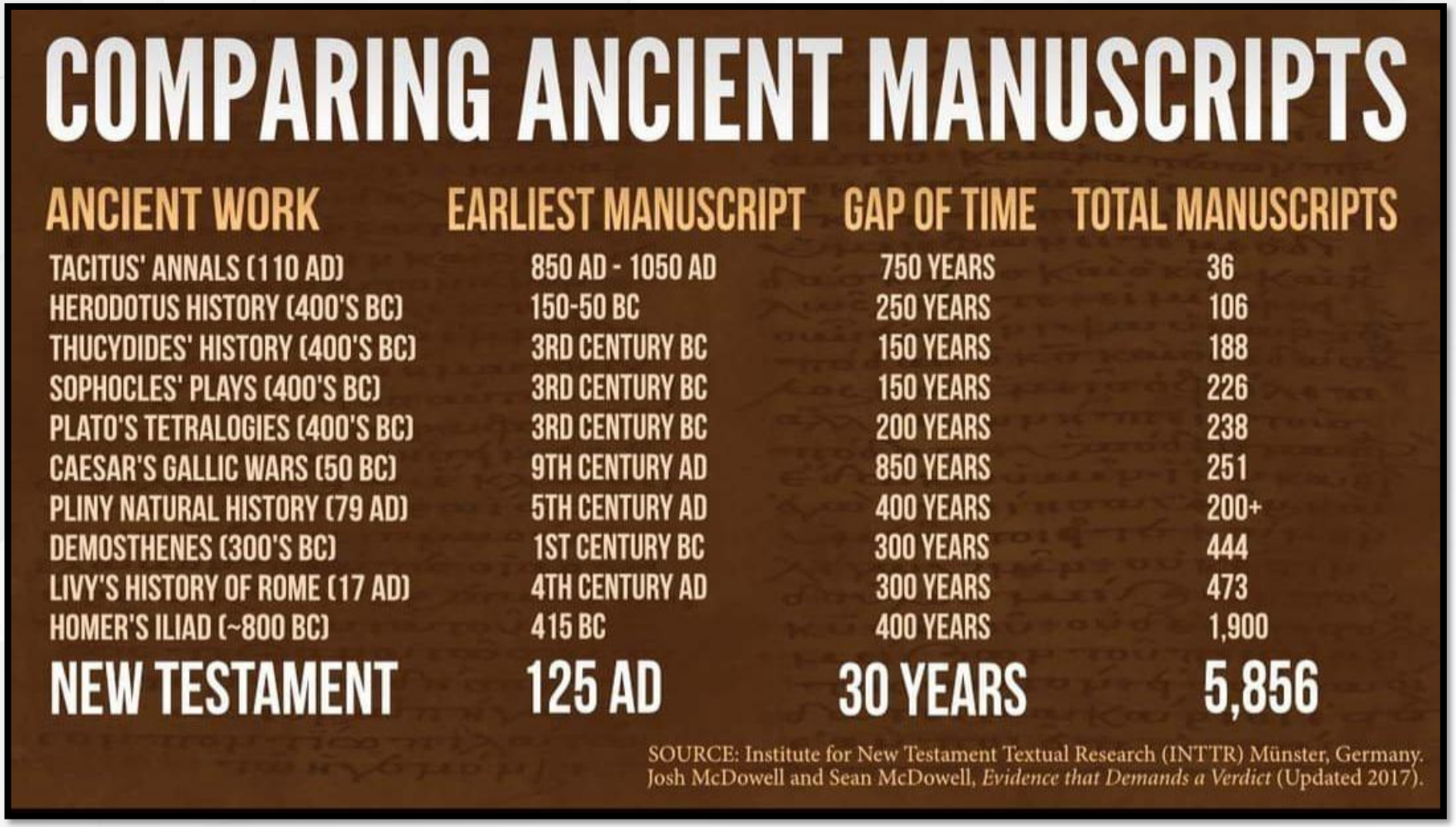


- #4 - As few as approx. 15 individual verses – and a few individual passages - have been removed in Modern Bibles, out of nearly 8,000 verses.
  - That's approx. 50 verses out of 8,000 – which is approx. 0.5% of the New Testament that is disputed.
- #4 – High Number of "Early Manuscripts" (Full or Fragment) in the immediate 100 to 200 years after the Original Copies.
  - The total number of Manuscripts (full or fragments) is 10x the amount of many other Historical Documents.
- #5 – The Earliest Manuscripts affirm the Divinity of Jesus Christ – for example John 1:1 – "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God".
- #6 – You can't know for sure what the "original documents" said – unless you had the actual originals – as is true with any other Historical Document. Many of the Books were written independently, and at different times, and distributed decentralized – yet all agree in content.
- Historicity Conclusions
- #1 – Up to 95%+ of the content of the New Testament is essentially not under any dispute – nor has any direct evidence of corruption.
- #2 – The New Testament has an extremely strong case for Historicity – early dates of the first documents, large number of early documents, and consistency between all of the documents.
- #3 – There is not much "Positive Evidence" that the New Testament is actually corrupted – it is generally only inferential, for example the Fact that "No one has the actual originals, it must be corrupt" – which is a highly skeptical position to take for Historical Documents.

- Christian Beliefs about the Bible
- The Bible was created by Men – and copied and distributed by Men – but also Inspired by God.
- The Bible was complete (in content) in its original form. We likely retain most/all of that content.
- The Bible Texts have been "changed", and we know where it was changed. It is likely still upwards of 99% accurate.

The Bible – A Very Strong Historical Document

- The New Testament is one of the strongest Historical Texts ever.
- Many Ancient Texts have an “earliest manuscript” that is 500-1000 years after the Event or Person it describes.
- The New Testament texts begin to show up as early as 100-200 years after the Life of Jesus (died 33 AD).
- The New Testament has very strong Close-to-Event dating, as well as the Events of Jesus Life being Historical Fact.
- If any Ancient Text had a strong case for accurately describing a Biography of a Persons life, it would be the 4 Gospels.



https://www.youtube.com/@WesHuff/videos

Preservation of the Bible

- Wesley Huff youtube channel
  - https://youtu.be/iaub_Ch0Auo?si=rnagh6x-OHYh5qzW





https://youtu.be/ay_Db4RwZ_M?si=XXAaMINXciS4rZfv&t=3067

Historicity of the Existence & Life of Jesus

- "[In Bart Ehrman's book] he gives 11 independent sources for the Crucifixion of Jesus."
- "Paul Meyer, professor of ancient history… says many things in the Ancient World depend on [only] 1 Witness – and [having] 2 Witnesses makes an event unimpeachable."
- Dr. Gary Habermas



https://danielbwallace.com/2012/10/08/fifteen-myths-about-bible-translation/

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_New_Testament_verses_not_included_in_modern_English_translations

New Testament – Removed Verses? Is it Corrupted?

- => There is only a small amount of verses/stories that have been modified/removed from Modern Bibles – due to modern scholarship.
- Myth: "Essential doctrines are in jeopardy in modern translations."
  - Actually, no doctrine essential for salvation is affected by translations, modern or ancient—unless done by a particular cult for its own purposes.
- Myth: "Modern translations have removed words and verses from the Bible."
  - Most biblical scholars—both conservative and liberal—would say instead that the KJV added words and verses, rather than that the modern ones have removed such. And this is in part because the oldest and most reliable manuscripts lack the extra verses that are found in the KJV.
- Dan Wallace

The sixteen omitted verses

- Matthew 17:21.
- Matthew 18:11.
- Matthew 23:14.
- Mark 7:16.
- Mark 9:44 and 9:46.
- Mark 11:26.
- Mark 15:28.
- Luke 17:36.

More items...

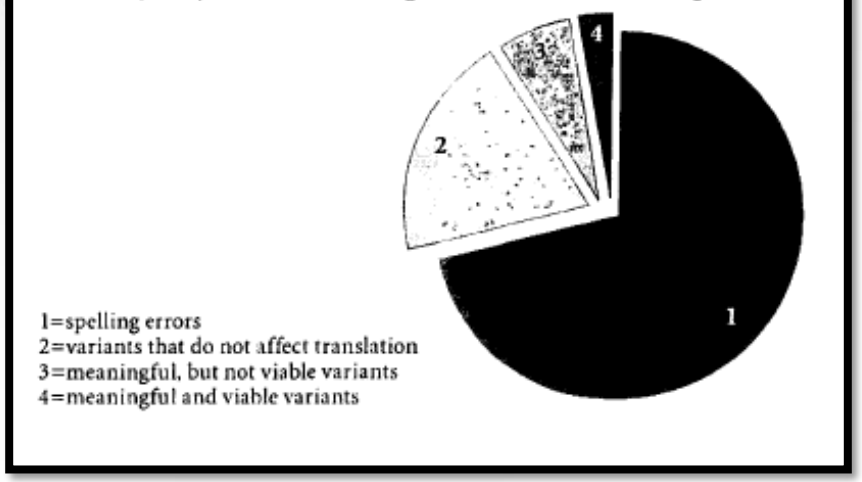


https://www.thegospelcoalition.org/blogs/justin-taylor/an-interview-with-daniel-b-wallace-on-the-new-testament-manuscripts/

New Testament – 400,000 Variants?

- => 99% of the variants in Early Texts are differences in spelling or phrasing. The remaining 1% do not affect major theology or stories of Christianity.
- As far as Greek manuscripts, over 5800 have been catalogued.
- At the same time, it should be pointed out that most of our manuscripts come from the second millennium AD, and most of our manuscripts do not include the whole New Testament. A fragment of just a verse or two still counts as a manuscript. And yet, the average size for a NT manuscript is more than 450 pages.
- At the other end of the data pool are the quotations of the NT by church fathers. To date, more than one million quotations of the NT by the church fathers have been tabulated. These fathers come from as early as the late first century all the way to the middle ages.
- The very best classical author in terms of extant copies is Homer: manuscripts of Homer number less than 2,400, compared to the NT manuscripts that are approximately ten times that amount.
- The variants can be categorized into four kinds:
  - #1 - Spelling and nonsense readings
  - #2 - Changes that can't be translated; synonyms
  - #3 - Meaningful variants that are not viable
  - #4 - Meaningful and viable variants
- The smallest category by far is the last category: meaningful and viable variants.
- These comprise less than 1% of all textual variants. Yet, even here, no cardinal belief is at stake.
- These variants do affect what a particular passage teaches, and thus what the Bible says in that place, but they do not jeopardize essential beliefs.
- Dan Wallace

Histories	Oldest Manuscripts	Number Surviving
Livy 59 B.C.-A.D. 17	4th century	27
Tacitus A.D. 56-120	9th century	3
Suetonius A.D. 69-140	9th century	200+
Thucydides 460-400 B.C.	1st century A.D.	20
Herodotus 484-425 B.C.	1st century A.D.	75
New Testament	c. 100-150	c. 5,700 (counting only Greek manuscripts) (plus more than 10,000 in Latin and more than 1 million quotations from church fathers, etc.)



https://youtu.be/5jVb6zboKmE?si=OIDX39RQeEPupcS9&t=111

New Testament – Early Texts claim Jesus was God

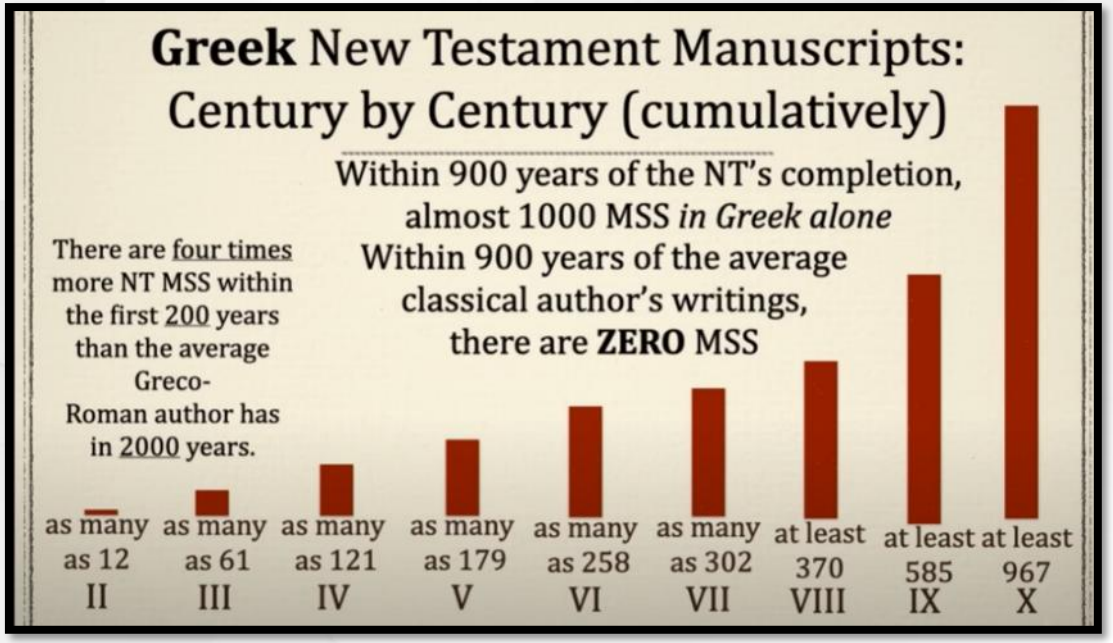
- => The Earliest Manuscripts affirm the Deity of Jesus Christ.
- We can "Zero In" on what the original text said.
- Very early manuscripts – John 1:1 for example – in all the Manuscripts, in all languages, say:
  - "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God." (John 1:1)
- We've got it in P66… a long time before the Council of Nicea, when the Muslims would like to claim "this is where the Deity of Christ was invented".
- Dan Wallace



https://youtu.be/n5AKPiBZcis?si=jM-OEZLXq1yBA1QP&t=2055

New Testament – Abundance of Manuscripts

- => The Number of Early Manuscripts is very high.
- We have a ton of Early Evidence…
- We can get to the Original, pretty closely, by sifting through the Data.
- Dan Wallace



https://youtu.be/n5AKPiBZcis?si=PiXd6mMzucZaHq2r&t=1407

New Testament – Church Father Quotations

- => The Early Church Fathers quote much of the New Testament – which helps authenticate the early documents.
- What if you wiped out all of the Manuscripts?
- The Church Fathers – who commented on the New Testament…
- We have more than 1,000,000 quotations from them in the New Testament.
- We can virtually reproduce the entire New Testament, many times over, from the writings of just the Church Fathers.
- Dan Wallace



https://www.cbn.com/special/apologetics/articles/koukl_misquoting_jesus_bart_ehrman.aspx

New Testament – 400,000 variants?

- => 99% of the variants in Early Texts are trivial. The remaining 1% do not affect major theology or stories of Christianity.
- Most of the changes found in our early Christian manuscripts have nothing to do with theology or ideology. Far and away the most changes are the result of mistakes, pure and simple—slips of the pen, accidental omissions, inadvertent additions, misspelled words, blunders of one sort of another.
- What can we conclude from the evidence? Virtually all of the 400,000 differences in the New Testament documents—spelling errors, inverted words, non-viable variants and the like—are completely inconsequential to the task of reconstructing the original. Of the remaining differences, virtually all yield to a vigorous application of the accepted canons of textual criticism.
- This means that our New Testament is over 99% pure. In the entire text of 20,000 lines, only 40 lines are in doubt (about 400 words), and none affects any significant doctrine.
- Greg Koul





New Testament – Are the Gospels "Anonymous"?

- Video Responses
  - https://youtu.be/GZbgW_0ELnk?si=ot9l8E_C6guvok54
  - https://youtu.be/ky4lQ40v-lo?si=ATGE5qfu99M3VTz_
  - https://youtu.be/C7s22DR9gaI?si=qbyUVE84wLJSYDcd
  - https://youtu.be/zmqr-xtGYnQ?si=pGN5mXHlPc7W3Dsf
  - https://youtu.be/wHFLUIU4mps?si=LJ-uDPgX0rcSLf6_
- Matthew – 1st Hand Eyewitness Disciple
- John – 1st Hand Eyewitness Disciple
- Mark – 2nd Hand Witness - Follower of Peter
- Luke – Knew Paul of Tarsus
- Paul – 2nd Hand Witness (born 3 AD died 62 AD)





https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/voices/new-radiocarbon-ages-of-dead-sea-scrolls-part-2

Old Testament – Dead Sea Scrolls

- => The Dead Sea scrolls are manuscripts dating from 100 BCE – 300 BCE, which contain many books such as Genesis, Psalms, Daniel, etc.
- => The Modern Bible is accurate to all these ancient manuscripts.
- These documents all have unambiguous pre-Christian radiocarbon dates.
- John Bloom

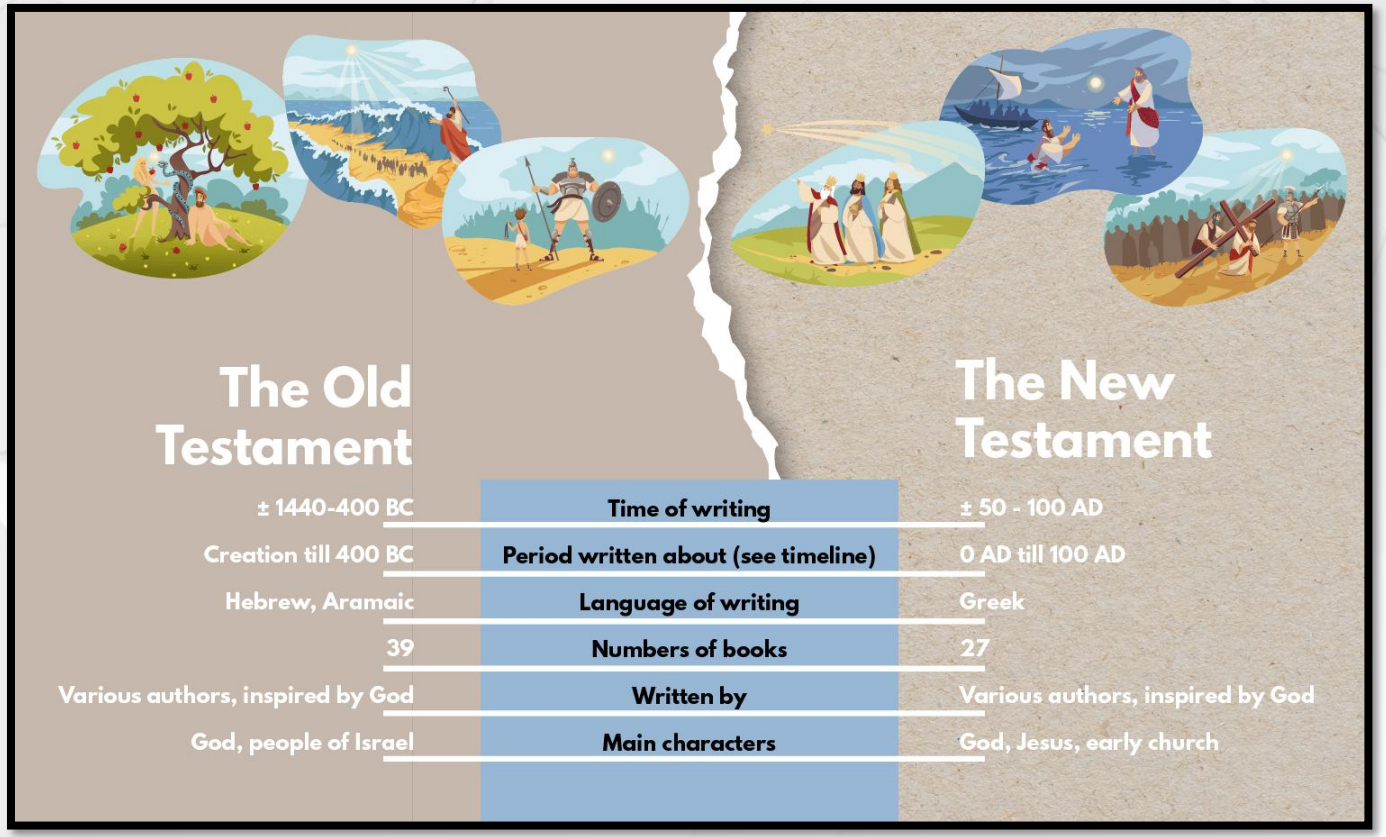


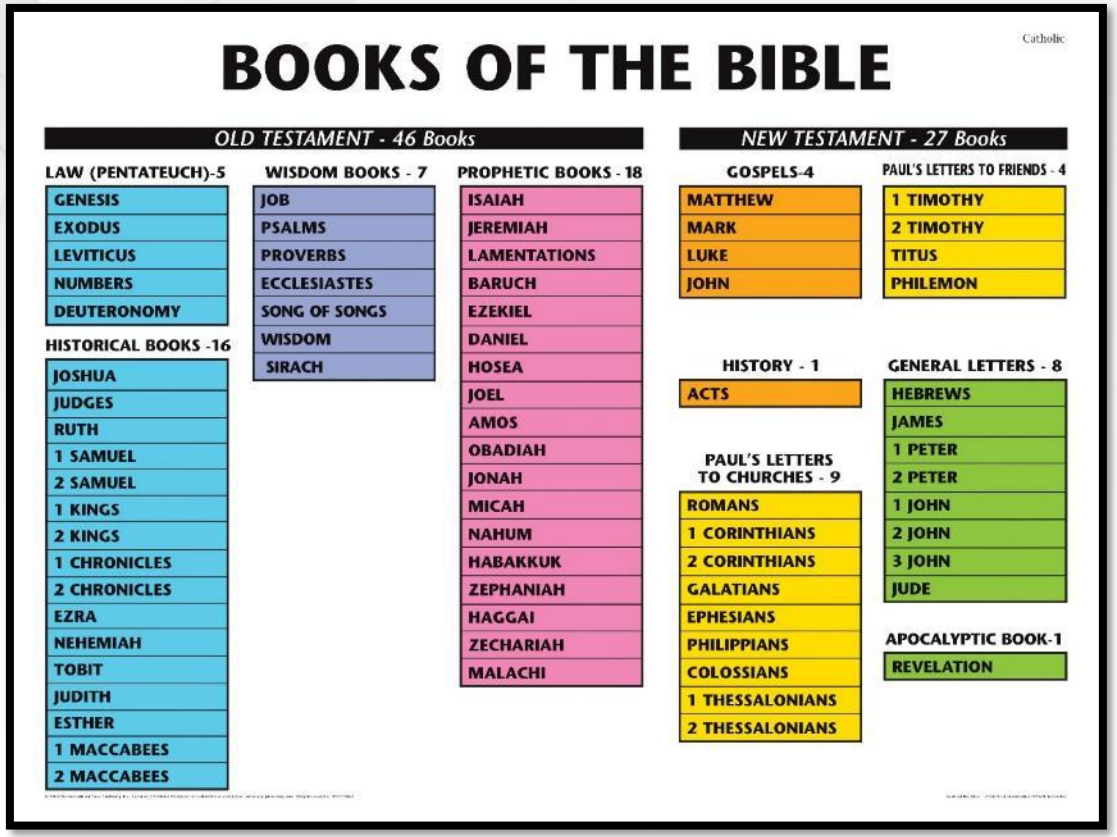
Biblical document	^{14}C BP (CRA)	Previous calib age (1s)	New calib age (IntCal20, 1s)	Paleographic age
1QIsaiah^{a} (Arizona lab, 1995)	2141	356–291 BC, 250–103 BC (2s)	342–322 BC, 204–145 BC, 142–106 BC	150–100 BC[2]
1QIsaiah^{a} (ETH lab, 1991)	2128	335–327 BC, 202–107 BC	336–329 BC, 198–97 BC, 70–57 BC	150–100 BC
Book of Samuel (4Q53Samuel)	2095	192–63 BC	172–45 BC	100–75 BC

Essene document	^{14}C BP (CRA)	Previous calib age (1s)	New calib age (IntCal20, 1s)	Paleographic age
11QT Temple Scroll	2030	97 BC–AD 1	92–76 BC, 54 BC–AD 27, AD 47–57	100 BC–AD 100
4Q266 Damascus Document a	1954	45 BC–120 AD	AD 22–121	100–50 BC
1QpHab Habakkuk Commentary	2054	120–5 BC	97–71 BC, 57–36 BC, 14 BC–AD 5	30–1 BC
1QS Community Rule	2041	206 BC–AD 111	150–131 BC, 120 BC–AD 30, AD 40–60	100–75 BC
4Q171 Psalms Commentary a	1944	95 BC–122 AD	AD 34–36, AD 61–121	~100 BC
4Q267 Damascus Document b	2094	93 BC–80 AD	151–130 BC, 122–88 BC, 83–52 BC	100–80 BC
4Q22 PaleoExodus m[1]	2044	207 BC–AD 89	151–130 BC, 122 BC–AD 28, AD 45–58	100–25 BC

Old Testament vs New Testament?

- => “New Testament” does not mean “Edited version of the Old Testament”.
- => The New & Old Testament are separate book series – separated by nearly 500 years.
- Old Testament – the books written approx. 1,200 BCE – 400 BCE
- New Testament – the books written approx. 50 AD





https://www.blueletterbible.org/Comm/stewart_don/faq/historical-accuracy-of-the-bible/question10-when-were-the-gospels-written.cfm

When were the Gospels written?

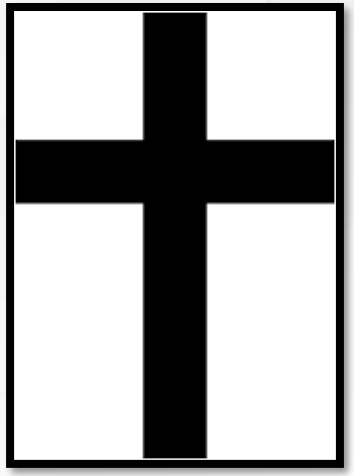
- => The Scholarly Consensus is dating the Gospels anywhere from 40 AD to 140 AD.
- => There is Intra-Textual Evidence to suggest the Gospels were written immediately after Jesus – anywhere from 30 AD to 70 AD.
- #1 - The City of Jerusalem and the Temple Were Still Standing When the Gospels Were Written
  - We know that Titus the Roman destroyed the city and Temple in A.D. 70. Hence, the composition of the first three Gospels most likely occurred sometime before this event, otherwise their destruction would have been recorded. The fact that all four gospels are written from the perspective that the city of Jerusalem and the temple had not been destroyed gives evidence of an early date.
- #3 - The Book of Acts Gives a Clue to the Date of the Gospels
  - The inference is that Acts was written while Paul was still alive, seeing that his death is not recorded. Since there is good evidence that Paul died in the Neronian persecution about A.D. 67, the Book of Acts can be dated approximately A.D. 62.
- #4 - Luke's Gospel Was Written Earlier than Acts
  - If Acts were written about A.D. 62, then this helps us date the four gospels. The Book of Acts is the second half of a treatise written by Luke to a man named Theophilus. Since we know that the Gospel of Luke was written before the Book of Acts, we can then date the Gospel of Luke sometime around A.D. 60 or before.
- #5 - Matthew Was Always Believed to Have Been Written First
  - We now go a step further by considering Matthew's gospel. According to the unanimous testimony of the early church, Matthew was the first gospel written. The church father Eusebius places the date of Matthew's gospel in A.D. 41.
- #6 - John Was an Eyewitness to the Events
  - The Gospel of John is usually assumed to have been the last of the four gospels composed. John testified that he was an eyewitness to the events that he recorded... There is also internal evidence that John himself wrote before A.D. 70. John describes the sheep gate as still standing at the time he wrote. He could not have made this statement after A.D. 70—there was no sheep gate. The sheep gate was destroyed in the year A.D. 70, along with the rest of the city of Jerusalem.



Videos

- Oldest Bible Manuscripts https://youtu.be/TvmAaXUKkco?si=pXeLWGdiIG-S6Mdk
- New Testament Reliability https://youtu.be/rml5Cif01g4?si=hYEIgd3o8lPvqsV7

Christianity Fundamentals



Christianity – What is it?



- All People have sinned (done wrong). - Even just 1 sin is enough to deserve punishment by God.
  - No one is “good”.
    - If you have done 1,000 good acts… and then you murder 1 person – can you stand before the Judge and tell Him you are not Guilty?
- God is all powerful.
- There is only 1 God.
- Jesus is God (The Trinity – Father, Son, Holy Spirit)
- Only God can remove your sins.
- Jesus paid for all sins - by accepting Your Punishment of death on the cross (Jesus is the only sinless person to ever live, only he is worthy to pay your price).
- Jesus was Killed - and Resurrected 3 days later.
- Anyone who Repents of their sins, and accepts Jesus as their Lord & Savior, will be Saved and forgiven.
- All people who believe in Jesus Christ are God’s Children and People of God.
- “Do not presume to say to yourselves, ‘We have Abraham as our father,’ for I tell you, God is able from these stones to raise up children for Abraham. Even now the axe is laid to the root of the trees. Every tree therefore that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire.”
  - John the Baptist (Matthew 3)



Faith?



Faith vs. Blind-Faith

- Faith
  - Trust of promises … Founded on previous evidence/experience … about what God said will Happen in the Future … and belief in the Power of God.
  - Example – “My father said he would arrive at 5:00 PM. He has never been late before, so I Trust he will arrive at 5:00 PM like he said”.
- Blind Faith
  - Believing in things based on no evidence / Believing what we desire to be true
    - By the same logic, we could believe in Idol Worship & Polytheism!

Examples of Faith?

- Noah believed God when he said (**had Faith**) he would bring a Flood. Noah prepared an Ark before the flood came.
- Abraham believed God when he said (**had Faith**) that God would bless & multiply him in Canaan.
- Sarah believed God when he said (**had Faith**) that she would have Isaac, even in her old age.



(Hebrews 11)

Now faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen. [2] For by it the people of old received their commendation. [3] By faith we understand that the universe was created by the word of God, so that what is seen was not made out of things that are visible.

[4] By faith Abel offered to God a more acceptable sacrifice than Cain, through which he was commended as righteous, God commending him by accepting his gifts. And through his faith, though he died, he still speaks. [5] By faith Enoch was taken up so that he should not see death, and he was not found, because God had taken him. Now before he was taken he was commended as having pleased God. [6] And without faith it is impossible to please him, for whoever would draw near to God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him. [7] By faith Noah, being warned by God concerning events as yet unseen, in reverent fear constructed an ark for the saving of his household. By this he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that comes by faith.

[8] By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out to a place that he was to receive as an inheritance. And he went out, not knowing where he was going. [9] By faith he went to live in the land of promise, as in a foreign land, living in tents with Isaac and Jacob, heirs with him of the same promise. [10] For he was looking forward to the city that has foundations, whose designer and builder is God. [11] By faith Sarah herself received power to conceive, even when she was past the age, since she considered him faithful who had promised. [12] Therefore from one man, and him as good as dead, were born descendants as many as the stars of heaven and as many as the innumerable grains of sand by the seashore.

[13] These all died in faith, not having received the things promised, but having seen them and greeted them from afar, and having acknowledged that they were strangers and exiles on the earth.

Examples of Faith?

- Abraham believed that God (**had Faith**) would Resurrect Isaac, if he killed him – because God has promised Abraham that he would have many descendants by Isaac.
  - God himself offered his "only son", and unlike Isaac – was actually killed & resurrected.
- The Israelites believed in the Power of God (**had Faith**) when they crossed the Red Sea – and the water was miraculous held up.



(Hebrews 11)

17 By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac, and he who had received
the promises was in the act of offering up his only son, 18 of whom it was
said, "Through Isaac shall your offspring be named."

19 He considered that God was able even to raise him from the dead, from which,
figuratively speaking, he did receive him back. 20 By faith Isaac invoked future blessings
on Jacob and Esau. 21 By faith Jacob, when dying, blessed each of the sons of
Joseph, bowing in worship over the head of his staff. 22 By faith Joseph, at the end of
his life, made mention of the exodus of the Israelites and gave directions concerning
his bones.

23 By faith Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents,
because they saw that the child was beautiful, and they were not afraid of the king's
edict. 24 By faith Moses, when he was grown up, refused to be called the son of
Pharaoh's daughter, 25 choosing rather to be mistreated with the people of God than
to enjoy the fleeting pleasures of sin. 26 He considered the reproach of Christ greater
wealth than the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking to the reward. 27 By faith he left
Egypt, not being afraid of the anger of the king, for he endured as seeing him who is
invisible. 28 By faith he kept the Passover and sprinkled the blood, so that the
Destroyer of the firstborn might not touch them.

29 By faith the people crossed the Red Sea as on dry land, but the Egyptians, when
they attempted to do the same, were drowned.

Why is Faith Important?

- A person with Faith can be in Union with God.
- A person without Faith does not Believe that God is all powerful, and does not believe in the Future Promises of God.

- You must believe (have Faith/Trust) that:
  - God is who he says he is
  - God will do what he said he will do

(Hebrews 11)

6 And without faith it is impossible to please him, for whoever would draw near to God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him.

(James 1)

5 If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask God, who gives generously to all without reproach, and it will be given him. 6 But let him ask in faith, with no doubting, for the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea that is driven and tossed by the wind.

Hebrews 11

James 1

Evidence Based Faith

- For the Jews talking with Jesus – the evidence that Jesus was the Messiah was the power of His Works (Healings, Signs, etc).
  - Jesus commands the Jews to follow an "Evidenced Based Faith" approach (believe he is the Messiah only if he can prove it).

- For Modern Christians, we have Faith in God for all the modern reasons for believing in God.

(John 10) [24] So the Jews gathered around him and said to him, "How long will you keep us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly." [25] Jesus answered them, "I told you, and you do not believe. The works that I do in my Father's name bear witness about me, [26] but you do not believe because you are not among my sheep. [27] My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me.

(John 10) [36] do you say of him whom the Father consecrated and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'? [37] If I am not doing the works of my Father, then do not believe me; [38] but if I do them, even though you do not believe me, believe the works, that you may know and understand that the Father is in me and I am in the Father."

Have Faith & Ask anything in the Name of Jesus

- Jesus promises that:
  - Anyone who abides in Him
  - His Words abide in you
  - Anything you ask of Him will be done

(John 15)

"I am the true vine, and my Father is the vinedresser. 2 Every branch in me that does not bear fruit he takes away, and every branch that does bear fruit he prunes, that it may bear more fruit. 3 Already you are clean because of the word that I have spoken to you. 4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit by itself, unless it abides in the vine, neither can you, unless you abide in me. 5 I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, he it is that bears much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing. 6 If anyone does not abide in me he is thrown away like a branch and withers; and the branches are gathered, thrown into the fire, and burned. 7 If you abide in me, and my words abide in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be done for you. 8 By this my Father is glorified, that you bear much fruit and so prove to be my disciples.

Pray by Faith

- Prayer with Faith can Heal the Sick…
- Prayer with Faith can Forgive Sins…
- Elijah by Faith prayed it wouldn't rain, and it didn't rain for 3 years and 6 months. He prayed again, and it finally rained.

(James 5)

The Prayer of Faith

13 Is anyone among you suffering? Let him pray. Is anyone
cheerful? Let him sing praise. 14 Is anyone among you sick? Let
him call for the elders of the church, and let them pray over
him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. 15 And the
prayer of faith will save the one who is sick, and the Lord will
raise him up. And if he has committed sins, he will be
forgiven. 16 Therefore, confess your sins to one another and pray
for one another, that you may be healed. The prayer of a
righteous person has great power as it is working.

17 Elijah was a man with a nature like ours, and he prayed
fervently that it might not rain, and for three years and six
months it did not rain on the earth. 18 Then he prayed again, and
heaven gave rain, and the earth bore its fruit.

Faith vs. Evidence





- Faith – Conviction of Belief for unwitnessed things, past or future, based on the prior Validity of Evidence.
  - For Abraham, Faith was when God told Him a Future Event was going to Happen – "I will give you XYZ" – Abraham simply had to Believe God's Promise. Abraham had direct evidence of God, now he just had to believe in the Future Promises of God – which he could have confidence in, based on prior evidence. "Lack of Faith" would not be Based on Evidence – just lack of spirit.
  - For Christians, all unwitnessed things – such as Jesus' Miracles, or Resurrection – must be taken on Faith. Only a few, like Thomas, had direct Evidence of Jesus' Resurrection – or direct evidence of his Miracles. These Miracles were proof for the Generation witnessing them – they are not necessarily True just because "a book said so" – by the same logic Mohammed of Islam would be true.
- Evidence – The summation of total evidence (just like a crime scene) can give us a strong inferential answer, even if we do not know 100% of all information possible.
  - Evidence is the Historicity of Jesus & His Death by Crucifixion under Pontius Pilate.
  - Evidence is verified Historical Prophecy of the Bible being accurate.
  - Evidence is Textual Validity of the Bible.
  - Evidence is the strength of the Argument for Deism (That the universe was created by a God).
- If 80% of all information has strong Evidence – then the remaining 20% of unknowable information can safely be taken "on Faith" – based on Evidence.
- "Blind Faith" means there is no evidence. "Evidence-based Faith" is not Blind Faith.

The Bible in 60 Minutes

Narrative & Theology

Genesis

Genesis

- God created the Heavens & the Earth in 7 Days – modeling the “7 Day Workweek” with 6 days of work and 1 day of rest.
  - Genesis 1
- The Serpent deceived Adam & Eve to eat from “The Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil” in the Garden of Eden – the 1 command God had given them not to do – so God expels them from the Garden.
- God says to Adam: “Because you have listened to the voice of your wife and have eaten of the tree of which I commanded you ‘You shall not eat of it,’” – Adam is punished with a lifetime of working the field.
- God says to Eve: “I will surely multiply your pain in childbearing … Your desire shall be for your husband, and he shall rule over you.”
  - Genesis 2 / Genesis 3





Genesis

- Abel offered a correct offering to God – but Cain offered an incorrect offering to God. So God rejects Cain's offering.
- God says to Cain: "Why are you angry … If you do well, will you not be accepted? And if you do not do well, sin is crouching at the door… you must rule over it"
- Cain kills his brother Abel. God curses Cain, causing him to be a wanderer all of his life. God puts a mark on Cain, to prevent anyone from killing him for his acts on Abel.
  - Genesis 4
- The Sons of God (spiritual beings from the heavenly realm) had children with Human Women – leading to the creation of "The Nephilim", which were giant men.
  - Genesis 6

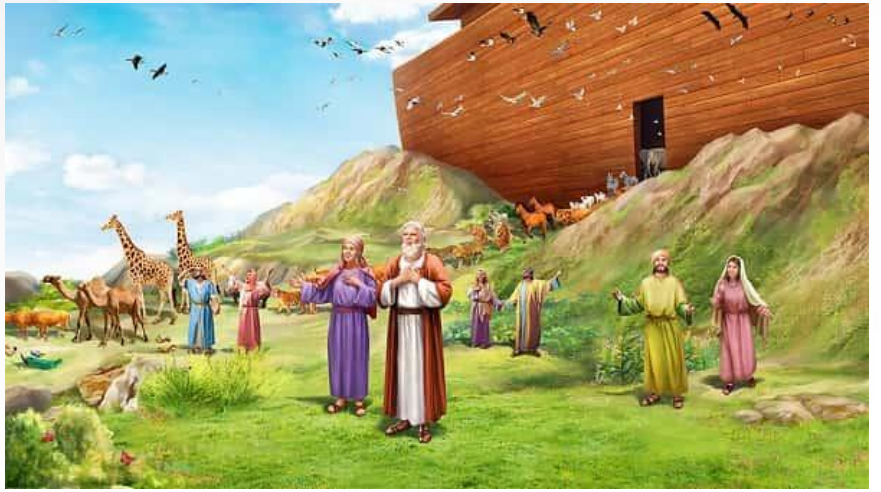




Genesis

- Of all of the people of the land, only Noah was righteous to God. God gives Noah a covenant, and Noah is commanded to construct an ark and save his family.
  - Genesis 7
- God blesses Noah and commands them to “be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth”.
- God says “Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed, for God made man in his own image”. God is condemning the violence he saw in Chapter 6, when it says “The earth was filed with violence”.
  - Genesis 9





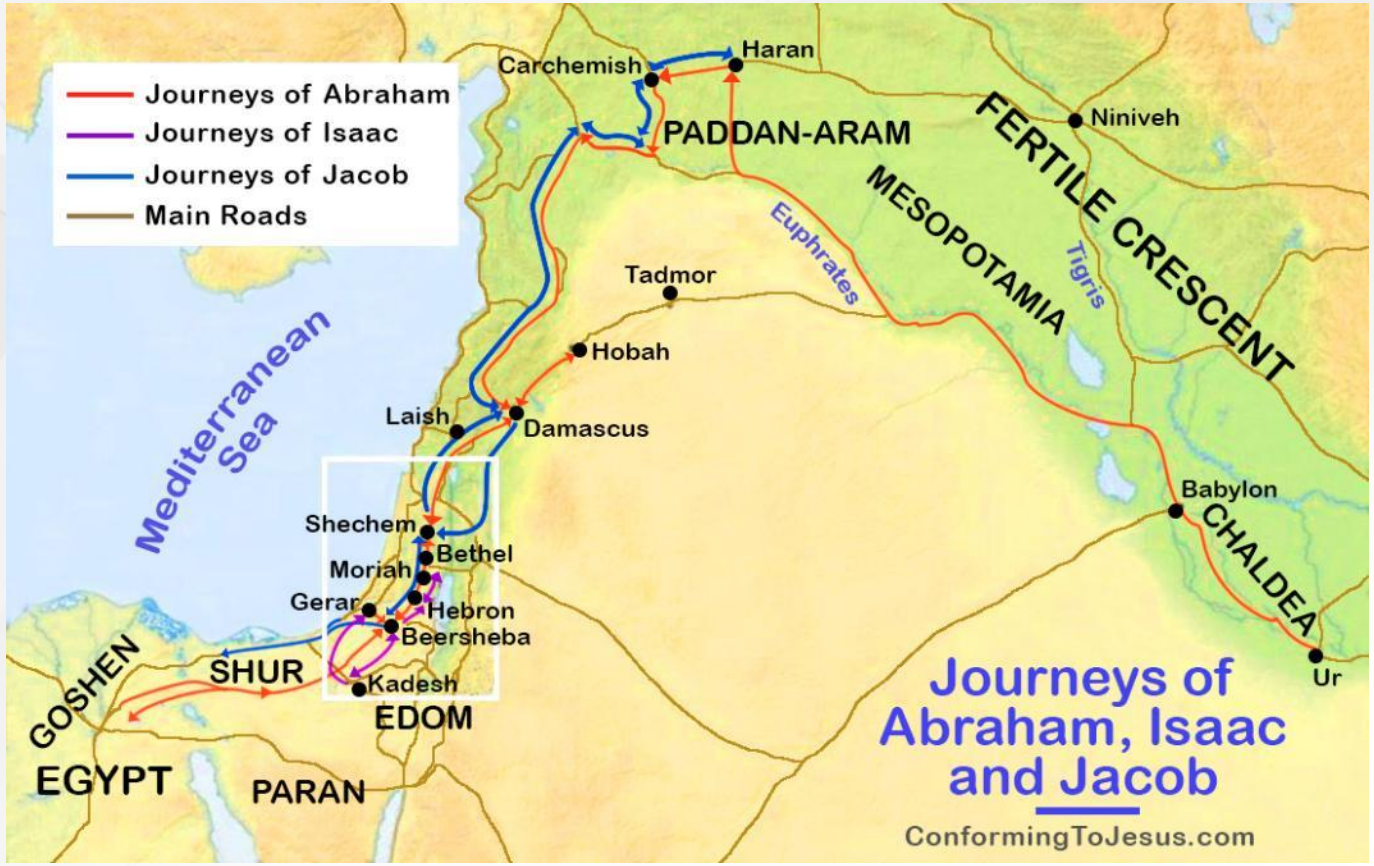
Genesis

- The Entire Earth had one language – and they desired to build a city with a tower that reached Heaven. God said “This is only the beginning of what they will do, and nothing they propose to do will be impossible for them.” So God confused their languages, and forced them to spread out over Earth.
    - Genesis 11



Genesis

- God commands “Abram” to go to Canaan, and tells him he will make him a Great Nation.
  - Genesis 12
- Both Abram and his Nephew, “Lot”, were living on the same land – and were so successful the land could not support them both. Lot chose to settle in the Jordan Valley, and Abram settled in the land of Canaan.
- God says to Abram “all the land that you see I will give to you and to your offspring forever. I will make your offspring as the dust of the earth”. Abram moved his tent to the “Oaks of Mamre” at Hebron, and built an Altar to God.
  - Genesis 13



Genesis

- Abram defeated multiple Kings of the local area – after they took Lot hostage and took his possessions.
- Abram meets “Melchizedek, King of Salem” (Jerusalem) – who was the Priest of the Most High God (Yahweh). Melchizedek blessed him, and Abram gave him a tenth of all of his possessions.
    - Genesis 14



Genesis

- “The Word of the LORD” came to Abram in a vision, saying: “your very own son shall be your heir… number the stars… So shall your offspring be”. Abram believed the LORD, and he “counted it to him as righteousness” – An example of Faith by Abram.
- The LORD came to Abram, creating a Covenant, saying: “To your offspring I give this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the river Euphrates…”
- God was waiting for “the iniquity of the Amorites” to be complete, before driving them off the Land of Canaan – meaning, executing his judgment of their sins.
    - Genesis 15
- Hagar (Sarai’s Egyptian servant) gave birth to Ishmael, Abrams first son.
- “The Angel of the Lord” appeared to Hagar, saying he will multiply Hagar’s offspring.
    - Genesis 16
- God renames Abram to “Abraham”.
- God’s covenant with Abraham is remembered by the sign of circumcision.
- God renames “Sarai” to “Sarah”. God promises a son, “Isaac”, to Sarah, in her old age.
    - Genesis 17





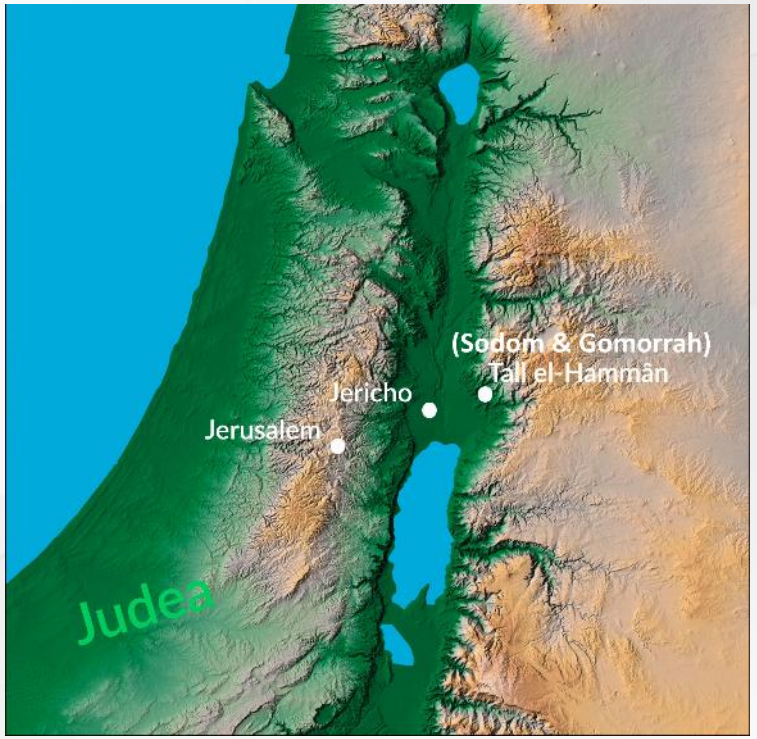
Genesis

- The LORD appears to Abraham, by the Oaks of Mamre.
- God himself (and 2 angels traveling with him) ate a meal with Abraham & Sarah.
- God tells Abraham that Sarah, who is very old, will have a son, in the next year.
- God is preparing to head down to Sodom & Gomorrah to judge them, because their sin is rampant. Abraham intercedes for Sodom, petitioning God to spare the city if even 10 righteous people are found in the city.
    - Genesis 18



Genesis

- Two angels rescue Lot & His family from Sodom, after nearly being attacked by the inhabitants of the city.
- God rained down sulfur & fire on Sodom and Gomorrah, and all of the inhabitants of the Jordan River Valley.
- Lots wife looked back, after being commanded not to, and was turned into a pillar of salt.
- The Daughters of Lot get him drunk and have children with him, creating the “Moabites” and the “Ammonites”.
    - Genesis 19





Genesis

- God says that Abraham “is a Prophet”.
  - Genesis 20
- God commands Abraham to sacrifice his “only son” Isaac.
- “The Angel of the Lord” stops Abraham before doing so – and says ”I know that you fear God, seeing you have not withheld your son, your only son, from me”.
  - Genesis 22



Genesis

- Isaac has two sons – “Jacob” and “Esau”.
- Esau sells his birthright for a bowl of lentil stew.
  - Genesis 25
- Jacob, pretending to be his brother Esau, tricks his father Isaac to give him his blessing.
  - Genesis 27
- Jacob sees a Dream – seeing a ladder between Heaven & Earth, with the angels of God ascending and descending on it. The LORD stood above it. Jacob setup a Pillar, and called the place “Bethel”.
  - Genesis 28
- “The Angel of God” said to Jacob, in a dream – “I am the God of Bethel”
  - Genesis 31
- Jacob wrestled with a man – and prevailed – leaving Jacob’s hip out of socket. The Man says “Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel, for you have striven with God and with men, and have prevailed.” The Man blesses Jacob. Jacob called the place “Peniel” and said “For I have seen God face to face, and yet my life has been delivered.”
  - Genesis 32
- God renames Jacob to “Israel”. Jacob called the place where God had spoken with him Bethel.
  - Genesis 35
- The descendants of Esau are called “The Edomites”
  - Genesis 36

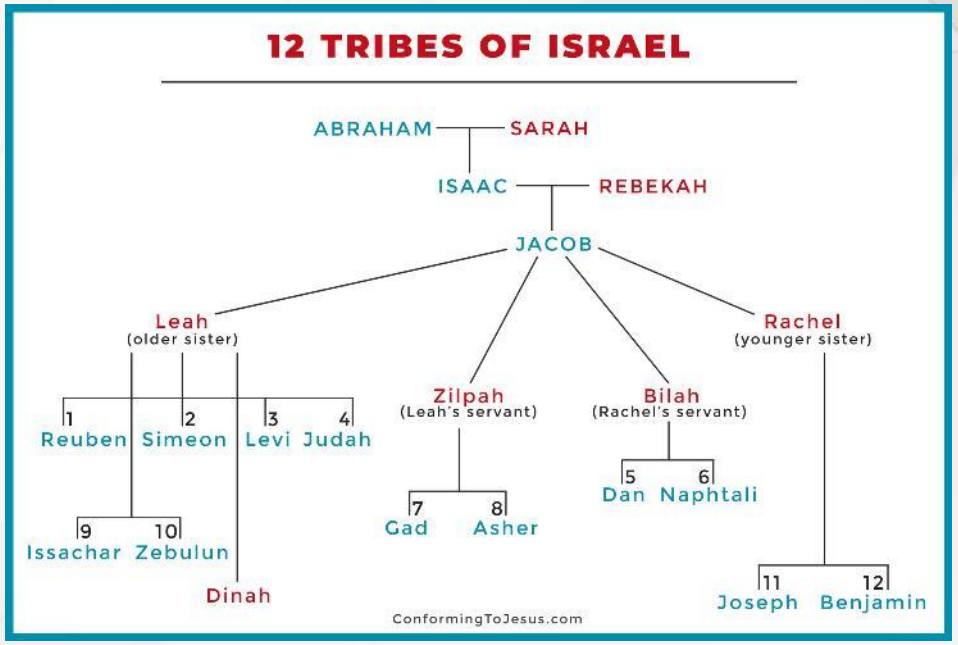






Genesis

- **12 Tribes of Israel** - "Joseph" was the son of Jacob, and had 11 brothers.
- Jacob loved Joseph more than all of his brothers, and the brothers hated him for it.
- **Joseph's Rulership** - Joseph had a dream about how he would rule over his brothers, and be the greatest of this brothers. His Brothers hated him for it.
- Joseph had another dream, where "The sun, the moon, and eleven stars were bowing down to me". His father rebuked him saying "Shall I and your mother and your brothers indeed come to bow ourselves to the ground before you?". His brothers were again jealous of him.
- **The Brothers "Kill" Joesph** - The brothers plotted to Kill Joseph. His brothers stripped him of his "Robe of Many Colors" and threw him in a Pit. Reuben pleaded that they would not kill him, just throw him in the Pit.
- Judah said that it would be better to sell him to the Ishmaelites. So, they pulled him from the Pit, and sold him to the Ishmaelites for twenty shekels of silver. Joseph was taken to Egypt.
- Reuben returned to the Pit, not finding Joseph. The Brothers dipped Joseph's robe in blood, and gave it to their father, who was convinced that Joseph had been killed by a wild animal.
    - Genesis 37





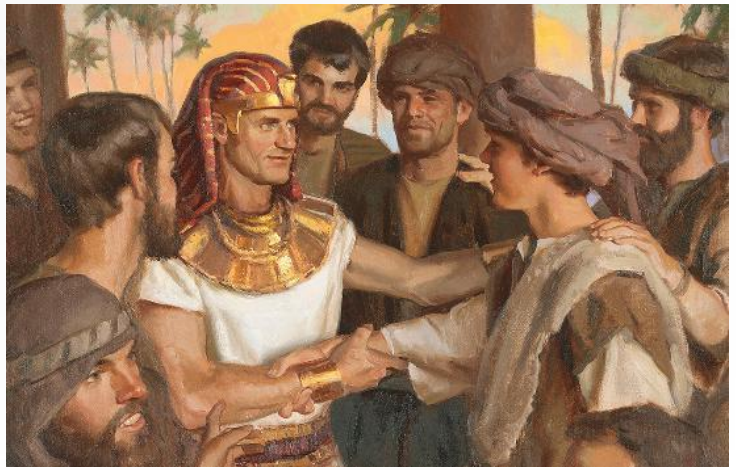


Genesis

- Joseph was in Prison (in Egypt) until he was 30 years old.
- Joseph interprets a Dream of Pharoah, leading to a successful preparation for a coming Famine.
- The Pharoah of Egypt appoints Joseph over his entire house, becoming a great ruler.
  - Genesis 41
- Jacob sends the brothers to Egypt to buy grain.
- **Joseph Unrecognized on 1st Appearance** - The brothers appeared before Joseph and bowed down to him. They did not recognize him, so Joseph treats them like Strangers.
  - Genesis 42
- For a 2nd time, the brothers return to Egypt to buy grain during a Famine.
  - Genesis 43
- **Joseph Recognized on 2nd Appearance** - Joseph finally revealed his identity to his brothers.
- **Ruler of Egypt** - Joseph returned to his father Jacob in Canaan – and the brothers told him “Joseph is alive, and he is ruler of all of the land of Egypt”.
  - Genesis 45
- Joseph brought his family to settle in Egypt, in the area of Goshen.
  - Genesis 47



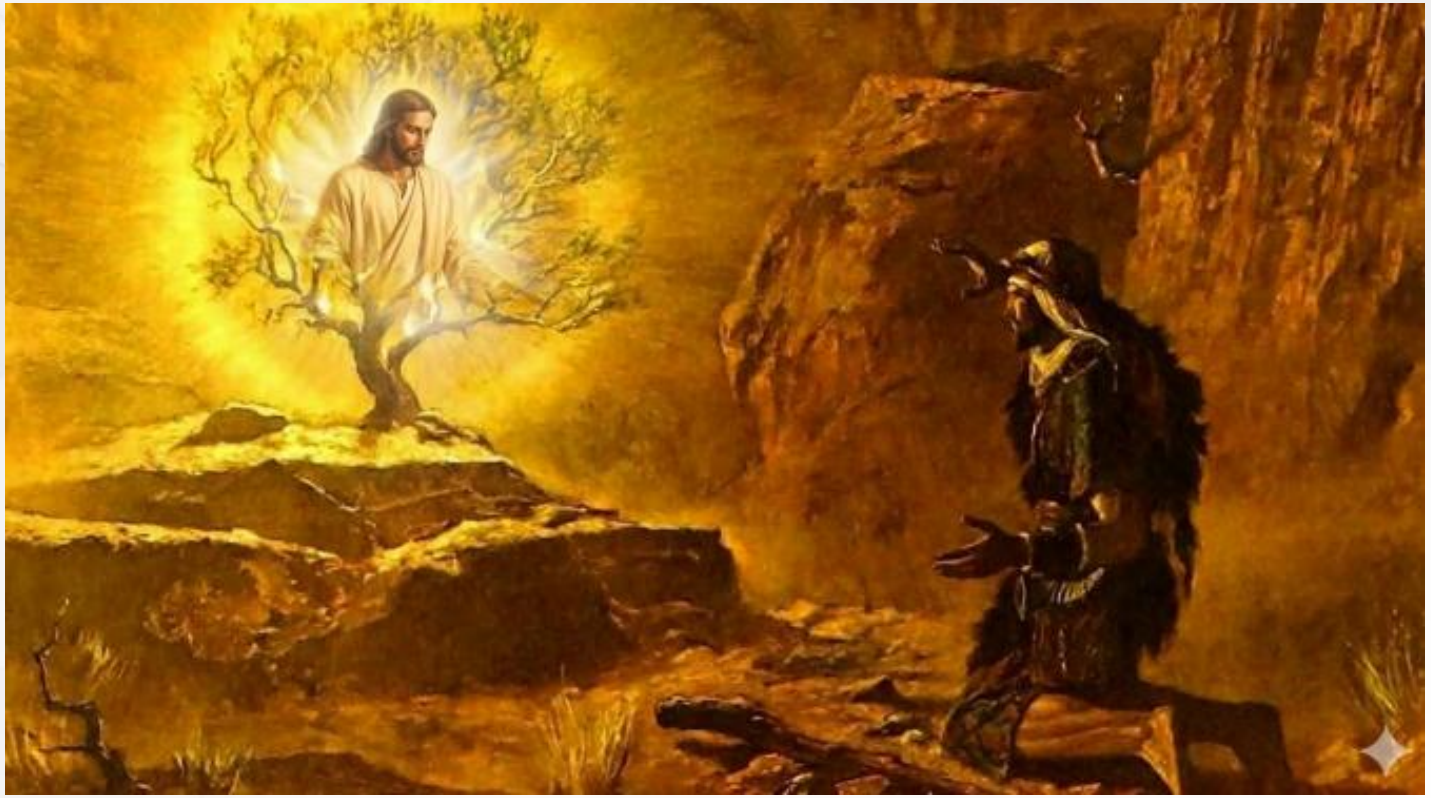




Exodus

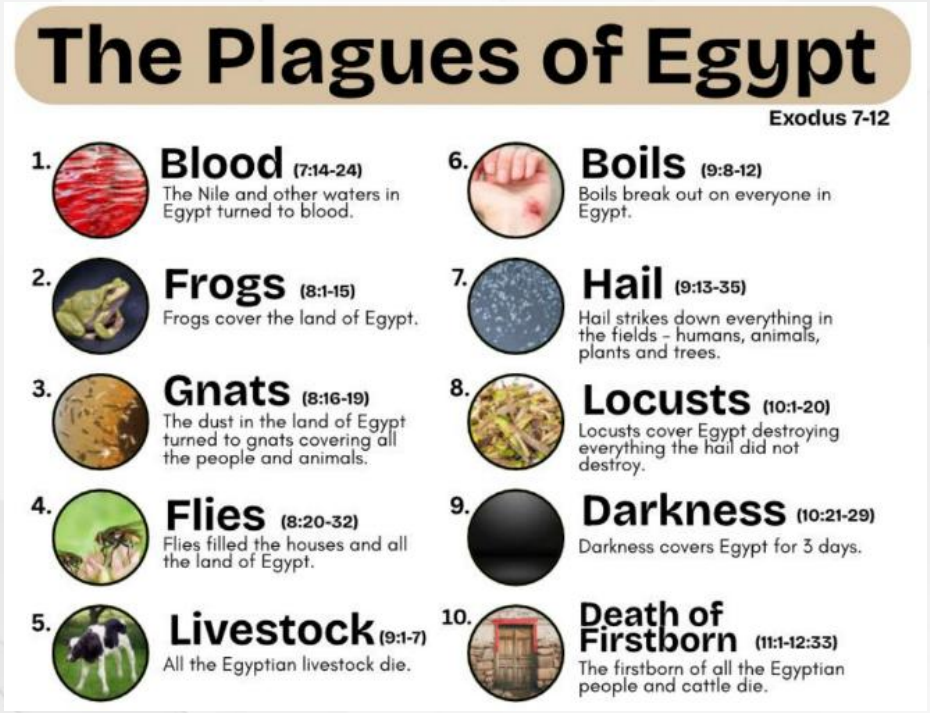
Exodus

- The Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
  - Exodus 1
- “The Angel of the Lord” appears to Moses in the “Burning Bush”.
- The LORD said “Moses, Moses!... Do not come near; take your sandals off your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground”
- He says “I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.” He says his name is “I am Who I am”.
- Moses “hid his face, for he was afraid to look at God.”
- God commands him to free his people from Egypt.
  - Exodus 3



Exodus

- God unleashes Plagues on Pharaoh & Egypt until he releases the Hebrews.
- God says “on all the Gods of Egypt I will execute Judgments: I am the LORD” - (God is using the Plagues to demonstrate his supremacy over the Gods of Egypt – such as the Egyptian Gods of the Nile River, Livestock, the Sky, and the Sun)
- The Blood of the “Passover Lamb” is sacrificed, and protects them from the 10th plague – which is the death of all of Egypt’s firstborn.
    - Exodus 12







Exodus

- God leads the Israelites in a “pillar of cloud and pillar of fire” – and led them across the Red Sea.
- “The Angel of God” stood in the Pillar of Cloud, between the Israelites and the Egyptian Army. The LORD was in the pillar of fire and cloud.
- Moses led them across the “Red Sea” where the waters were held up to cross.
- The Egyptian Army was destroyed by the Red Sea.
    - Exodus 13 / Exodus 14





Exodus

- God delivered the Israelites “bread from heaven” in the Desert – called “Manna”. They ate this bread for 40 years.
  - Exodus 16
- The people demand Water. God says to Moses “you shall strike the rock, and water shall come out of it”.
- Joshua fights a battle with Amalek. God says “I will utterly blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven.”
  - Exodus 17
- Moses appoints Judges over the people, rather than he himself judging all of the people alone.
  - Exodus 18





Exodus

- Moses meets God on Mount Sinai. God is on the Mountain, wrapped in smoke and fire.
  - Exodus 19
- God institutes the “10 Commandments”.
- Moses says to the people: “Do not fear, for God has come to test you, that the fear of him may be before you, that you may not sin”
  - Exodus 20



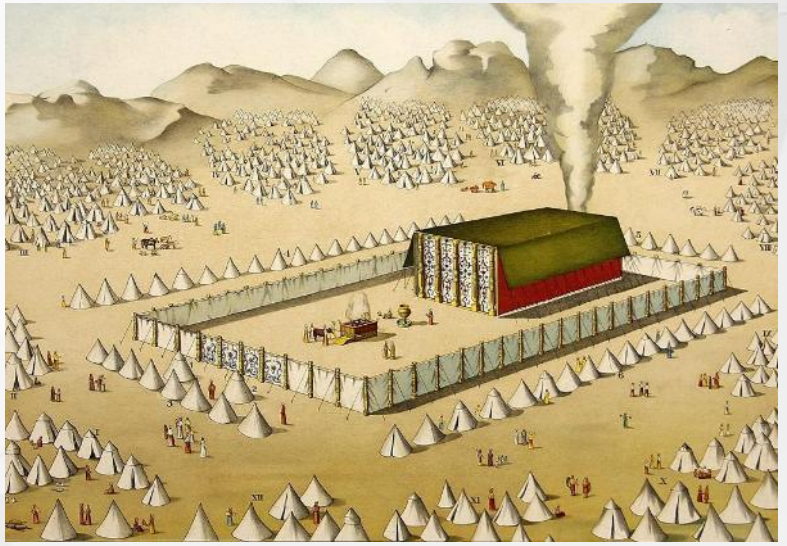
Exodus

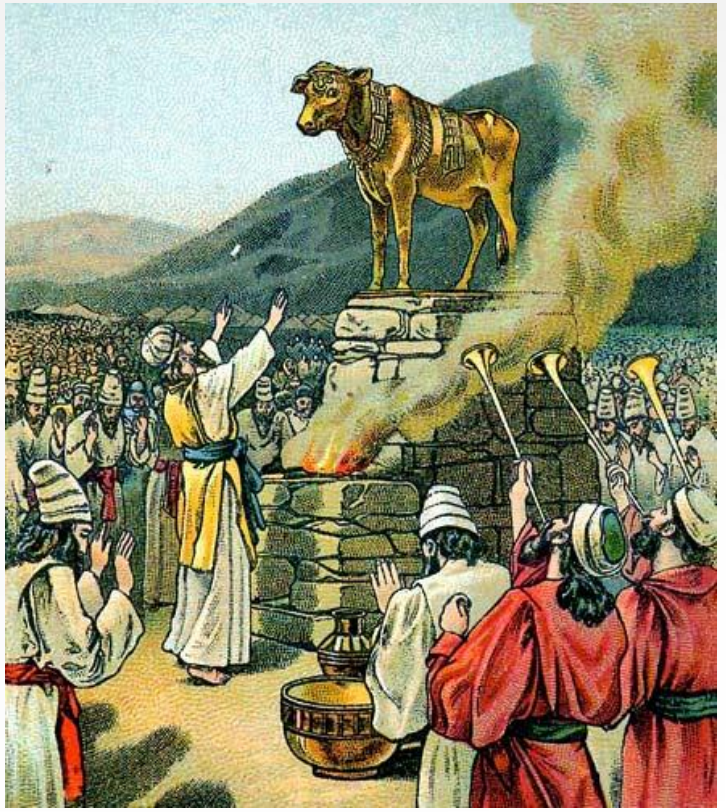
- God institutes various laws – such as the Death Penalty for Murder, judgment of an “Eye for an Eye”, and the protection of Widows and Orphans.
  - Exodus 21 / Exodus 22
- God says “The best of the firstfruits of your ground you shall bring into the house of the LORD your God.”
- God says “I send an Angel before you to guard you on the way and to bring you to the place that I have prepared. Pay careful attention to him and obey his voice; do not rebel against him, for he will not pardon your transgression, for my name is in him.”
- God says he will “send my terror before you” and will “send hornets” to drive out the Canaanites.
  - Exodus 23
- Moses and 70 Elders of Israel went up the Mountain, and “they saw the God of Israel. There was under his feet as it were a pavement of sapphire stone … they beheld God, and ate and drank”.
  - Exodus 24



Exodus

- God establishes Rules for “The Tabernacle” and the priests.
  - Exodus 25 to Exodus 30
- In the Desert, the Israelites construct “a golden calf” idol. The Lord sent plagues on them for it.
  - Exodus 32
- God says “I will send an angel before you, and I will drive out the Canaanites, the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites”
  - Exodus 33





Exodus

- Moses came down from Mount Sinai, with two tablets. His face was shining, and the people were afraid.
  - Exodus 34
- “The Ark of the Covenant” is created.
  - Exodus 37

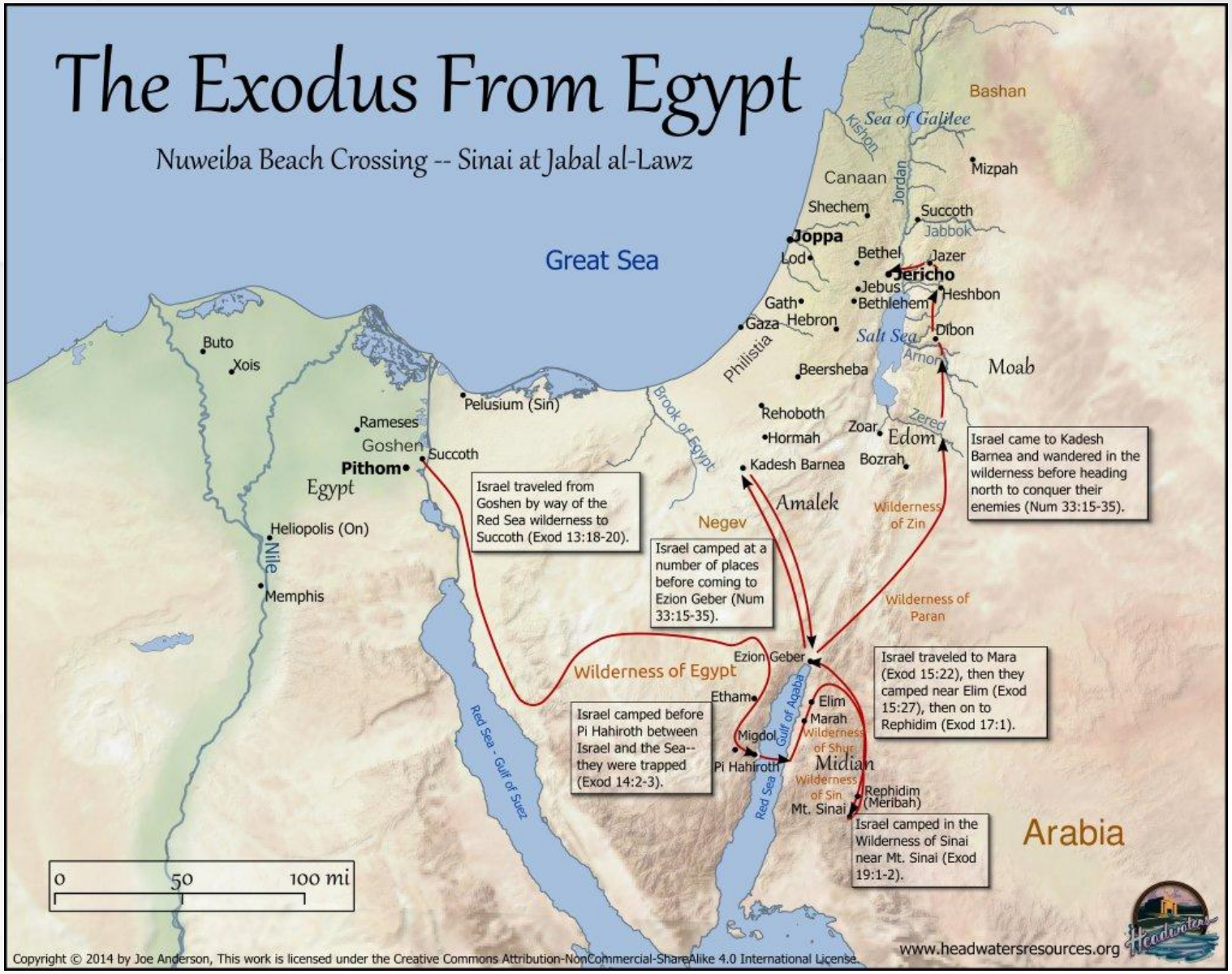




Numbers

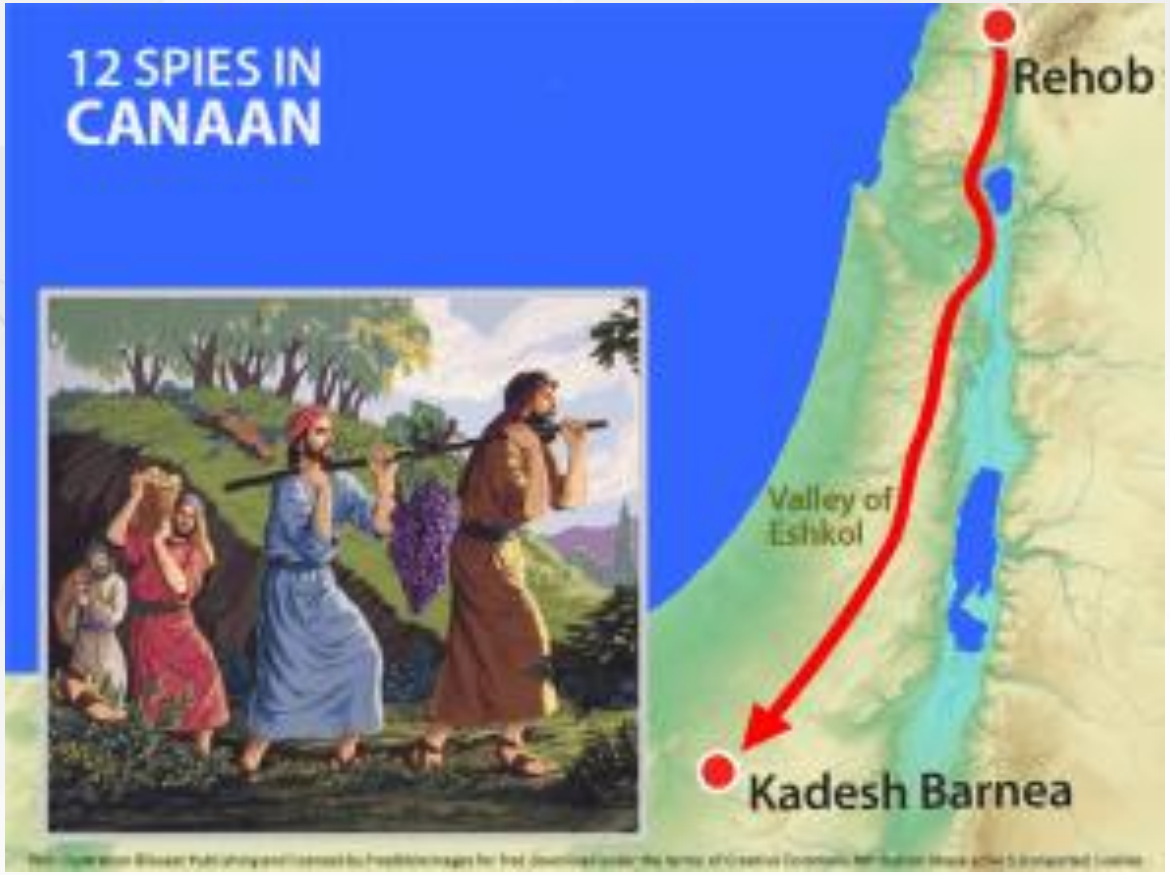
Numbers

- Israel leaves Mount Sinai.
  - Numbers 10
- God tells Moses to “Gather seventy men of the elders of Israel” to assist him with leadership. God will “take some of the Spirit that is on [Moses] and put it on them”
  - Numbers 11
- God says that he speaks to Prophets among the people in visions & dreams – but with Moses, his most faithful, he speaks ”mouth to mouth, clearly, and not in riddles, and [Moses] beholds the form of the LORD”
  - Numbers 12



Numbers

- Twelve spies are sent into Canaan – finding that “the people who dwell in the land are strong, and the cities are fortified and very large. And besides, we saw the descendants of Anak there”.
- Caleb (one of the spies) says “Let us go up at once and occupy it, for we are well able to overcome it.” The rest of the men said they were not strong enough to overcome the Land of Canaan (not having Faith in Gods promise that they would overcome all of the people in the Land of Canaan).
- The spies said they saw “the Nephilim (the sons of Anak, who come from the Nephilim), and we seemed to ourselves like grasshoppers”
    - Numbers 13

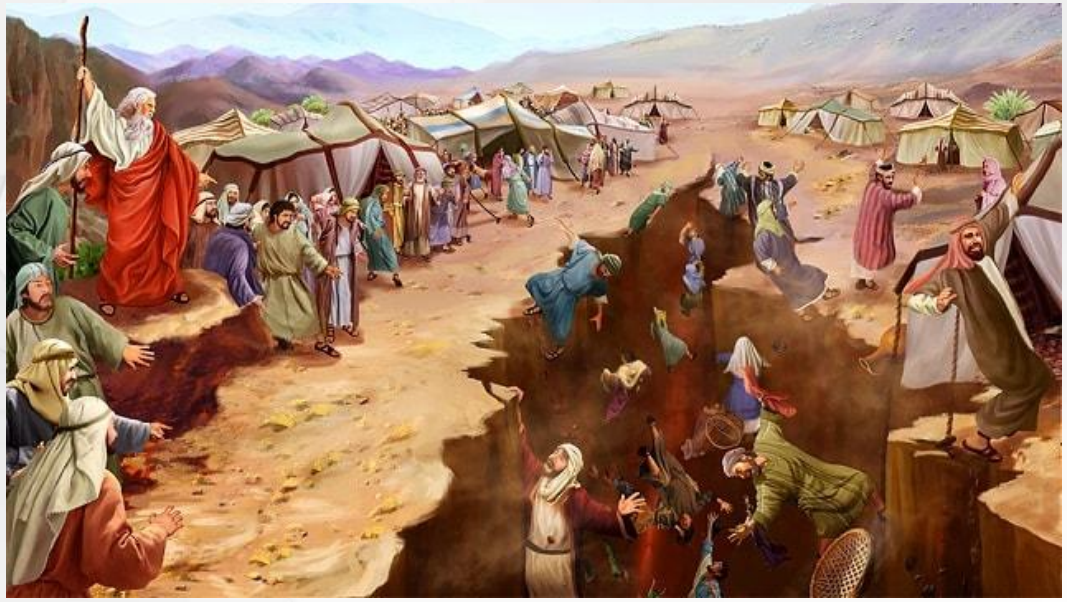


Numbers

- The “Glory of the LORD” appeared at the tent of meeting to all the people of Israel. The LORD said to Moses: “How long will this people despise me? And how long will they not believe in me, in spite of all the signs that I have done among them? I will strike them with the pestilence and disinherit them, and I will make of you a nation greater and mightier than they.” – God is criticizing their lack of Faith in his power & words, in their upcoming conquest of Canaan, despite seeing his power previously. God will empower anyone who has Faith in him, and disinherit & destroy anyone who does not have Faith in him.
- God says the Israelites have “not obeyed my voice” and “none of those who despised me shall see [the land]” – but Caleb “has a different spirit and has followed me fully, I will bring into the land into which he went, and his descendants shall possess it.” – meaning Caleb had faith in God’s future promise of successful conquest. Only Joshua and Caleb, of the spies, remained alive.
- The People of Israel went without Gods command to the Hill Country of Canaan, and the Amalekites and Canaanites defeated them.
    - Numbers 14

Numbers

- “Korah’s Rebellion” was a group of people who rebelled against Moses. God destroys them all by causing the ground to open up, and causes fire to consume them.
  - Numbers 16



Numbers

- Moses strikes a rock with his staff, and water came out. But God had commanded Moses to “tell the rock to yield its water”. God is angry with Moses that he did not “believe in him” (and his words) and punishes him saying “you shall not bring this assembly into the land that I have given them.”
- Edom refuses to allow Israel to pass through their lands on their highway.
- Aaron dies.
  - Numbers 20
- The People of Israel were complaining to God about being in the wilderness, so God sent “fiery serpents” to bite and kill the people. Moses repented for his people, and God told him to “make a fiery serpent, and set it on a pole, and everyone who is bitten, when he sees it, shall live”. The “Bronze Serpent” pole healed the people of Israel.
- “King Og of Bashan” and his sons are defeated by the Israelites. They left no survivors.
  - Numbers 21
- King Og was a remnant of the “Rephaim” – a clan of giants.
  - Deuteronomy 3





Numbers

- “Balak”, King of Moab, attempts to get “Balaam” to curse the People of Israel.
- The LORD puts words in Balaam’s mouth, and blesses Israel.
- The Spirit of God again puts words in Balaam’s mouth, and says “God brings him out of Egypt and is for him like the horns of the wild ox; he shall eat up the nations, his adversaries … Blessed are those who bless you, and cursed are those who curse you.”
- Balak is angered that instead of Cursing Israel, Balaam has blessed Israel.
- Balaam’s final Oracle says “a star shall come out of Jacob, and a scepter shall rise out of Israel” and “Edom shall be dispossessed”. He also says “Amalek was the first among the nations, but its end is utter destruction.”.
    - Numbers 24
- The People of Israel began intermingling with the Daughters of Moab. They sacrificed to their Gods, and worshipping the god “Baal”. God destroyed 24,000 people for this.
    - Numbers 25
- God outlines many rules - including Sabbath Offerings, Passover Offerings, the Feast of Weeks, the Feast of Trumpets, the Day of Atonement, and others.
    - Numbers 28 / Numbers 29



Numbers

- The LORD desired Vengeance on Midian. They killed all of the Males, killed the Kings of Midian, and killed Balaam the Prophet.
  - Numbers 31
- The LORD spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab, by the Jordan, saying “drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you and destroy all their figured stones and destroy all their metal images and demolish all their high places… But if you do not drive out the inhabitants of the land from before you, then those of them whom you let remain shall be as barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides”
  - Numbers 33





Deuteronomy

Deuteronomy

- God forbids “Idolatry” – which is faith & worship of any idols of any creature or person – otherwise God will scatter you among the nations.
- The LORD “spoke to you out of the midst of the fire. You heard the sound of [his] words, but saw no form”. He did this so they would “[not] act corruptly by making a carved image for yourselves, in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female”
- God says that if the Israelites worship other Gods, he will exile them. But, if they seek God again, he will return them.
    - Deuteronomy 4
- God gives “The 10 Commandments” – including not to Murder, commit Adultery, Steal, Lie, or Covet your neighbors possessions.
- God says “You shall have no other gods before me”.
- The Greatest Commandment is to “Love the LORD your God with all your heart”
    - Deuteronomy 5 / Deuteronomy 6





Deuteronomy

- God says of the Canaanites: “You shall not intermarry with them… for they would turn away your sons from following me, to serve other gods… You shall break down their altars… and burn their carved images with fire”
- God says of His People: “He will bless you, [and] multiply you… he will also bless the fruit of your womb and the fruit of your ground… You shall be blessed above all peoples”
  - Deuteronomy 7
- The reason God gives the People of Israel the land is “Not because of your righteousness or the uprightness of your heart are you going in to possess their land, but because of the wickedness of these nations the LORD your God is driving them out from before you, and that he may confirm the word that the LORD swore to your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.”
  - Deuteronomy 9
- God hates the foreign Gods, because “they even burn their sons and their daughters in the fire to their gods.”
  - Deuteronomy 12

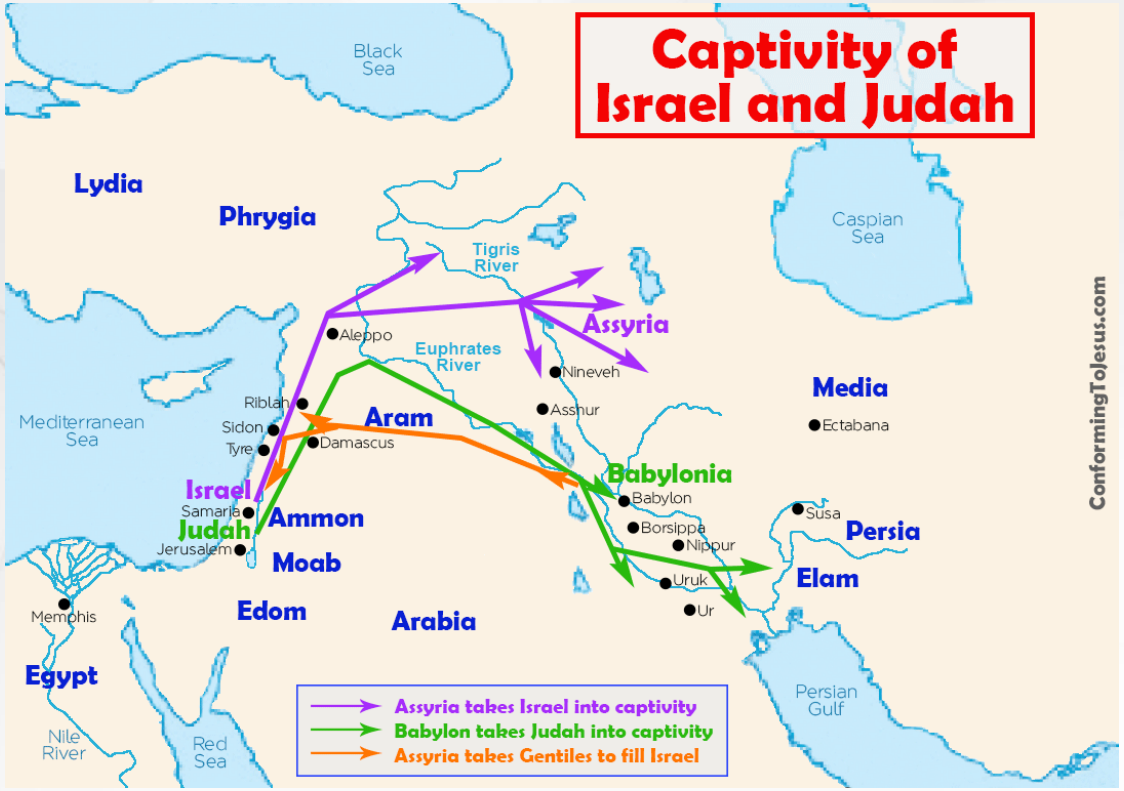


Deuteronomy

- God forbids worship of any other gods or “any of the Host of Heaven” or “the sun or the moon”.
- God commands Israel’s Kings to not acquire many wives, otherwise his “heart will turn away” towards Foreign Gods (as Solomon did)
  - Deuteronomy 17
- God gives examples of practices that the Israelites should not follow, like the Nations that surround them. The Israelites shall not burn their sons or daughters as an offering, they shall not practice divination or tell fortunes or interpret omens, or become a sorcerer or necromancer or attempt to speak to the Dead.
  - Deuteronomy 18
- When besieging a city, “you shall put all its males to the sword”, but plunder everything else.
- God commands the Israelites to completely destroy the Hitttites, Amorites, Cananites, Perizzites, Hivites and Jebusites – so that the Israelites will not do all of their unacceptable practices for their foreign gods.
  - Deuteronomy 20
- God says no Ammonite or Moabite shall enter the assembly of the LORD – because they did not meet Israel with bread and water on their way out of Egypt.
- God says Israel will not detest an Edomite, because they are your brothers. You shall not detest an Egyptian, because you were a sojourner in their land.
  - Deuteronomy 23

Deuteronomy

- No Father shall be put to death because of their children, and no child shall be put to death because of their Father.
  - Deuteronomy 24
- If the Israelites are righteous, they will prosper in the Land of Canaan.
- If the Israelites are unrighteous, God will curse them. He will destroy them, and scatter them across the Earth and serve foreign Gods, and have no Peace.
  - Deuteronomy 28
- Joshua is the successor of Moses.
  - Deuteronomy 31



Deuteronomy

- God “gave the nations their inheritance, when he divided mankind, he fixed the borders of the peoples according to the number of the Sons of God. But the LORD’s portion is his people, Jacob his allotted heritage”. “No Foreign God’ was with Jacob.
    - Deuteronomy 32

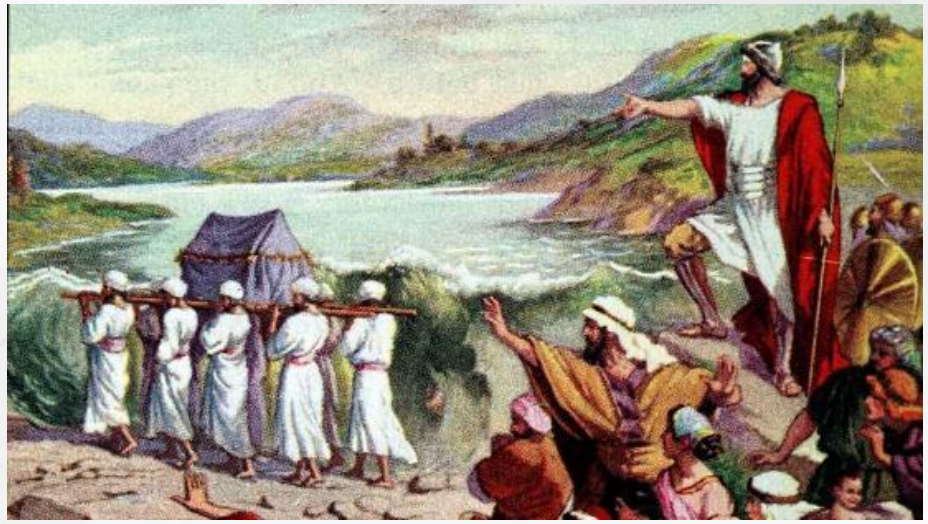




Joshua

Joshua

- Joshua is in charge of taking over the Promised Land.
  - Joshua 1
- Joshua sends 2 spies to Jericho. They hid in the house of “Rahab” in Jericho. The spies promise to protect Rahab against the coming invasion.
  - Joshua 2
- Israel & The Ark of the Covenant cross the Jordan River.
  - Joshua 3
- By Jericho, Joshua encounters a Man with a sword in his hand. He tells Joshua, “I am the commander of the Army of the LORD.” Joshua fell on his face and worshipped him, saying “What does my Lord say to his servant?”, and he said “Take off your sandals, the place where you are standing is holy”.
  - Joshua 5





Joshua

- The Israelites marched around the Walls of Jericho 7 times on the 7th Day, blew the trumpets, shouted all-together, and the walls fell down.
- They burned with fire everything in Jericho, except for the Silver and Gold, which was put in the LORD's treasury.
- Joshua stated that any man who tries to rebuild Jericho is cursed.
    - Joshua 6
- A man named "Achan" had stolen items from the Conquest of Jericho – and brought misfortune upon Isreal. All of Israel destroyed the items he took, and stoned him.
    - Joshua 7





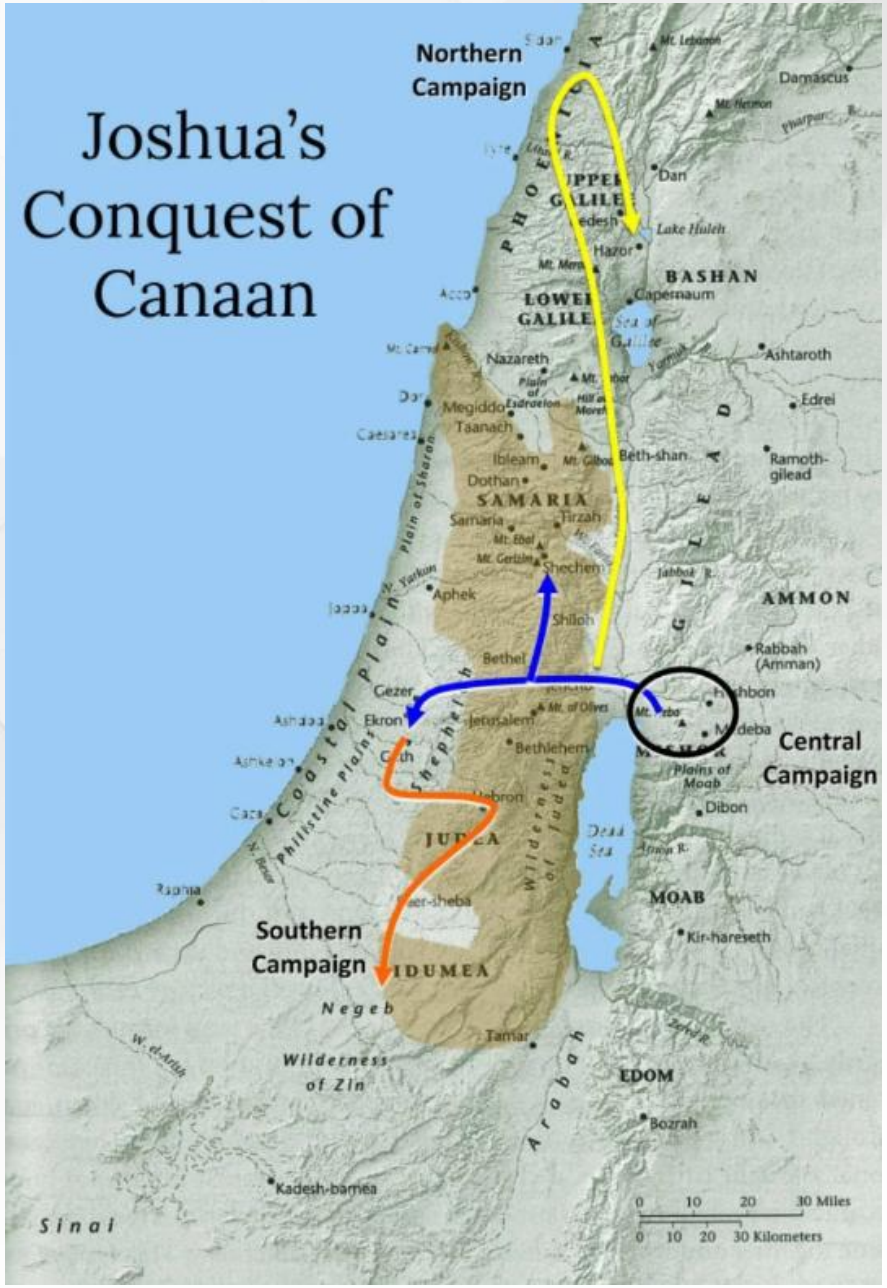
Joshua

- Joshua battled the Amorites, and God cast “stones from heaven” on them.
- God made the Sun (and the Moon) “stand still” for “a whole day” until this battle completed.
  - Joshua 10
- Joshua had conquests in both Southern Canaan and Northern Canaan.
- Joshua eliminated all of the remaining “Anakim”, except for Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod.
  - Joshua 11
- Joshua distributes areas of land to different tribes of Israel.
  - Joshua 13 to Joshua 19



Joshua

- Judah did not successfully “drive out” the Jebusites in their lands (around the area of Jerusalem).
  - Joshua 15
- Ephraim did not successfully “drive out” the Canaanites in their lands.
  - Joshua 16
- Manasseh did not successfully “drive out” the Canaanites in their lands.
  - Joshua 17
- God establishes “Cities of Refuge” – places safe for perpetrators of manslaughter.
- Upon the “Death of the High Priest” – all of the people of the Cities of Refuge can return to their towns (because the Death of the High Priest atones for sins)
  - Joshua 20
- Joshua tells Israel, “[do not] mix with these Nations remaining among you, or make mention of the names of their gods or swear by them or serve them… [If you] make marriages with them… God will no longer drive out these nations before you, but they shall be a snare and a trap for you…”
  - Joshua 23



Judges

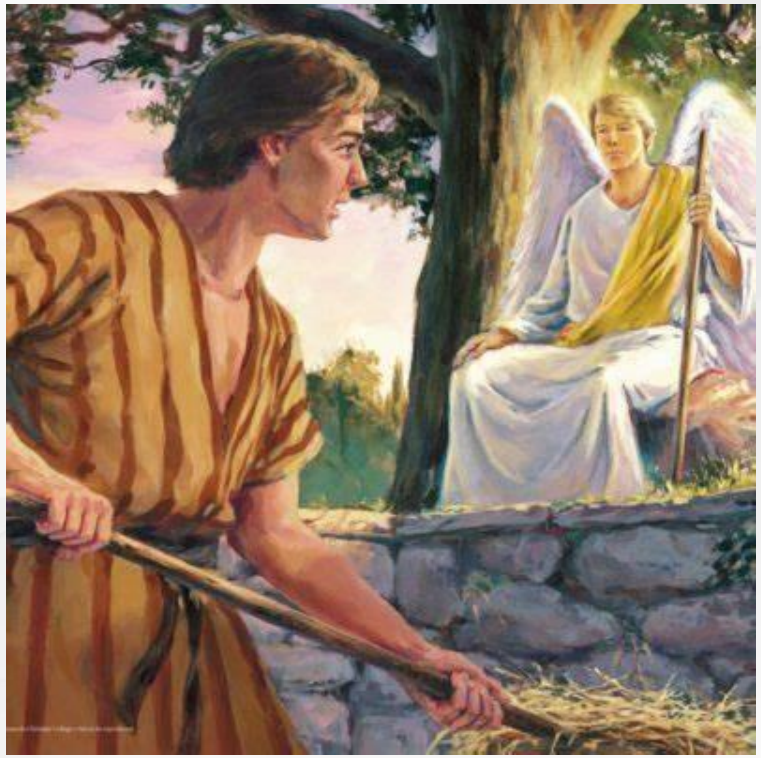
Judges

- Various Tribes of Israel were unsuccessful in “driving out” the Canaanites – and often using the Canaanites for “forced labor”.
  - Judges 1
- The Angel of the Lord said to Israel: “I will never break my covenant with you, and you shall make no covenant with the inhabitants of this land; you shall break down their altars. But you have not obeyed my voice. What is this you have done? So now I say, I will not drive them out before you, but they shall become thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare to you.”
- Joshua dies.
- God raised up “Judges” to fight against Israel’s enemies (after the death of Joshua). But often, after the Judge had died, Israel would go back to following foreign gods.
  - Judges 2



Judges

- God gave Israel into the hands of Midian for 7 years. God said “I am the LORD your God; you shall not fear the gods of the Amorites in whose land you dwell.’ But you have not obeyed my voice.”
- The Angel of the LORD calls upon “Gideon” to destroy the Altars of Baal, and fight Midian.
- Gideon lays a “Fleece of Wool” on the threshing floor. He asks for God to show his favor, by putting water on the fleece, but having the ground itself remain dry. The next morning, he finds it as he asked. Gideon asks again, but in reverse, for the fleece to be dry, and the ground to be covered in water. The next morning it was as he asked. This was God’s sign to Gideon.
  - Judges 6
- Gideon died in old age, having 70 sons (through many wives and concubines).
- After Gideon died, Israel turned to worship the Baals.
  - Judges 8





Judges

- Israel was evil, so God gave them into the hands of the Philistines for 40 years.
- “Manoah” and his wife meet the Angel of God. Manoah asks for his name, and the Angel of God says his name is “wonderful”. They offered burnt offerings on an Altar, and when the flame when up from the altar, the Angel of the LORD also went up “in the flame of the altar”. Manoah is fearful, and says “We shall surely die, for we have seen God”.
- Manoah’s wife, a barren woman, gave birth to “Samson”.
    - Judges 13
- Samson married a Phillistine woman – violating the command to not marry foreign women. She is killed by the Philistines.
- Samson strikes down 1,000 philistine men, with the jawbone of a donkey.
    - Judges 14
- Samson meets “Delilah”, who attempts to deceive him to get the secret to his strength. Samson tells her false reasons for his strength, multiple times, and Delilah attempts to entrap him, multiple times.
- Finally, Samson reveals the truth - that shaving his hair will remove his power. The Philistines shave his head, gouge out his eyes, and take him down to Gaza and bound him in bronze shackles.
- The Lords of the Philistines gather to sacrifice to the god “Dagon”, with Samson bound for their entertainment. Samson brought down the two pillars which held up the building, killing everyone.
    - Judges 16







1 Samuel & 2 Samuel

1 Samuel

- The Prophet “Samuel” is born to “Hannah”, who was barren. God granted her request.
  - 1 Samuel 1
- The Prophet “Eli” had three sons, who were “worthless men” – their sin was great, because they treated their offering to the LORD with contempt. Eli attempts to counsel them, but they do not listen. God desires to end the house of Eli, and says to Samuel: “I declare to him that I am about to punish his house forever, for the iniquity that he knew, because his sons were blaspheming God, and he did not restrain them.”
- The Sons of Eli are killed by the Philistines – and the Prophet Eli quickly dies upon hearing the news.
- The Philistines capture The Ark of the Covenant after a battle
  - 1 Samuel 2 / 1 Samuel 3 / 1 Samuel 4
- The Philistines place The Ark of the Covenant next to an Idol of the god “Dagon”, in Ashdod. By morning, the Idol of Dagon had fallen face downward on the ground before the ark – and his Head and Hands were cut off.
- God puts plagues on all of the people in the camp around the Ark.
  - 1 Samuel 5
- The Philistines return the Ark to Israel
  - 1 Samuel 6
- Samuel commands Israel to reject Foreign Gods – only then will God deliver them from the Philistines. The people of Israel rejected Baal and the Ashtaroth.
  - 1 Samuel 7



1 Samuel

- Israel demands a King to rule over them – like the nations around them. God says in response “Obey the voice of the people in all that they say to you, for they have not rejected you, but they have rejected me from being king over them… Now then, obey their voice; only you shall solemnly warn them and show them the ways of the king who shall reign over them.”
  - 1 Samuel 8
- God chooses King “Saul” to be King. He was the “most handsome man” in all of Israel – and also taller than any man in Israel.
  - 1 Samuel 9
- Saul makes an Unlawful Sacrifice, disobeying God’s command. Samuel says “ the LORD would have established your kingdom over Israel forever. But now your kingdom shall not continue.”
- “Jonathon” is the Son of King Saul.
  - 1 Samuel 13
- God says “I regret that I have made Saul king, for he has turned back from following me and has not performed my commandments.”
  - 1 Samuel 15
- God chooses “David”, son of Jesse, as King.
- David was “handsome”, skillful in playing the lyre, he was a “man of war, prudent in speech, and a man of good Prescence”.
- David became the armor-bearer of Saul. Whenever a “harmful spirit” came upon Saul, David played the lyre, and the harmful spirit “departed from him”.
  - 1 Samuel 16





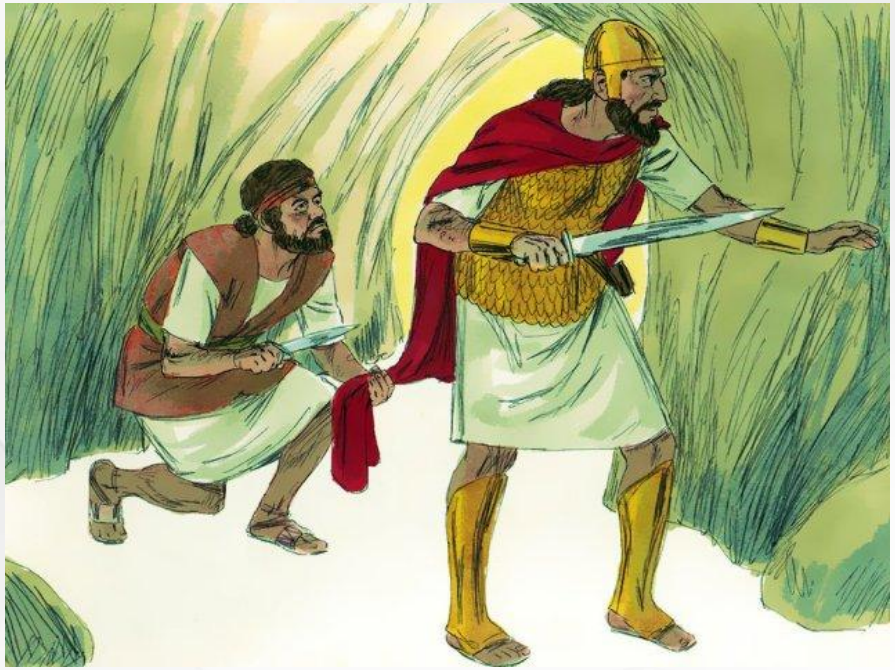
1 Samuel

- David defeats “Goliath”, a Giant of the Philistines.
  - 1 Samuel 17
- Jonathon (son of King Saul) became friends with David.
- Saul is jealous of David, and desires to kill him – and “harmful spirits” came upon Saul in his rage. God was with David, but God had “departed from Saul”.
- David marries the daughter of Saul, “Michal”.
  - 1 Samuel 18
- Saul attempts to kill David, but David evades him.
  - 1 Samuel 19
- Jonathon helps David escape, and Saul says to Jonathon: “For as long as the son of Jesse lives on the earth, neither you nor your kingdom shall be established. Therefore send and bring him to me, for he shall surely die.”
  - 1 Samuel 20
- Saul gives the command to kill the Priests at Nob, because they had given David bread and the Sword of Goliath from the temple, and allowed him to escape. He had 85 priests killed.
  - 1 Samuel 22



1 Samuel

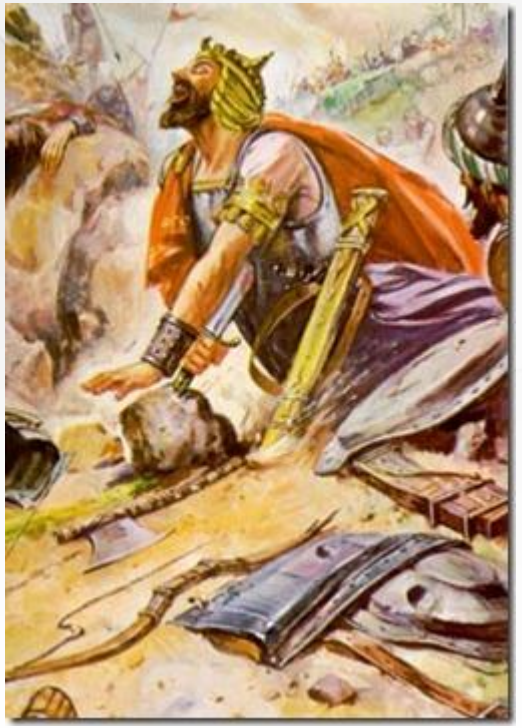
- While hiding in a cave, David spares Saul's life, after having the opportunity to kill him. David cut off the "corner of Saul's robe" to prove this to Saul. Because of this, Saul admits he was unrighteous.
  - 1 Samuel 24
- The Prophet Samuel dies.
  - 1 Samuel 25
- David took "Abigail" as a wife, and also others.
  - 1 Samuel 25
- Saul pursues David again – and David spares Saul's life, yet again, because "[God] forbid that I should put out my hand against the LORD's anointed." Saul again Repents to David.
  - 1 Samuel 26
- David flees to camp in Philistine lands, to avoid the pursuit of Saul.
  - 1 Sameul 27



1 Samuel

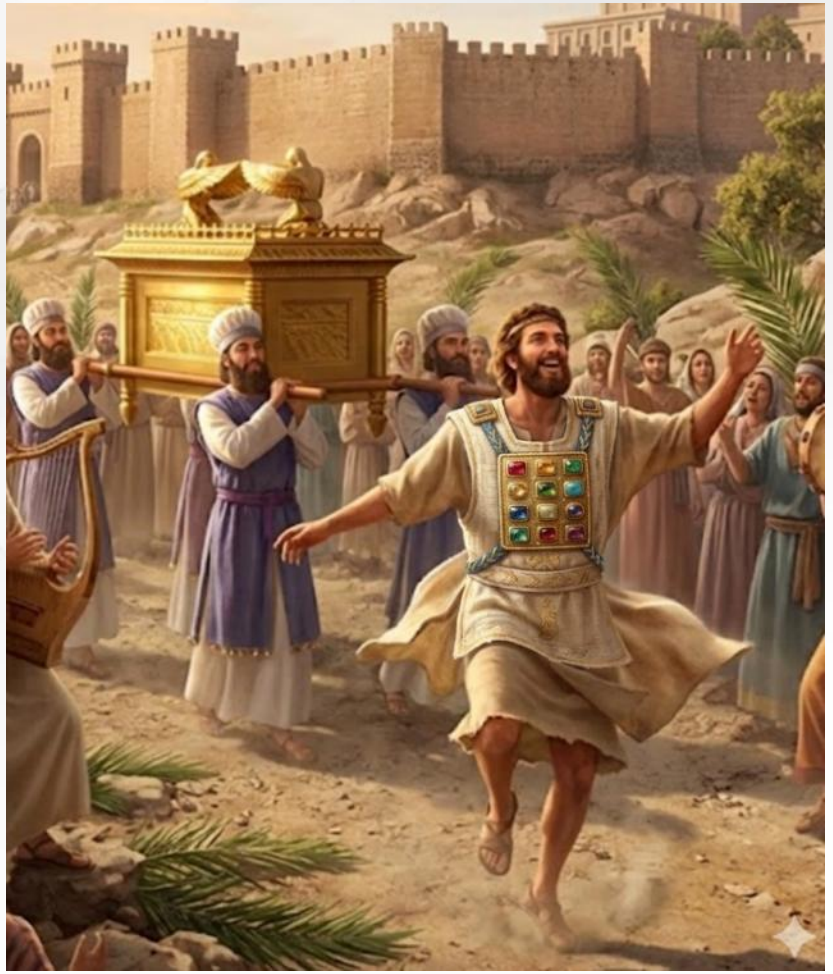
- Saul consults with “The Medium of En-dor” – after being fearful of the size of the army of the Philistines, and not hearing any word from the LORD.
- The woman summons the dead prophet Samuel – He says “The LORD has done to you as he spoke by me, for the LORD has torn the kingdom out of your hand and given it to your neighbor, David. Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD and did not carry out his fierce wrath against Amalek”
  - 1 Samuel 28
- The Amalekites raided the village of David, and took captive his wives.
- David inquired of the LORD if he should pursue the Amalekites. God confirmed his blessing to fight them. David pursued them and defeated them.
  - 1 Samuel 30
- The Philistines defeat Saul.
- Saul fell on his own sword, otherwise the Philistines would mistreat him as a prisoner. Saul’s three sons died.
- The Philistines cut off his head, stripped his armor, and put it in the temple of Ashtaroth. The Israelites later recovered his body and buried him.
  - 1 Samuel 31





2 Samuel

- David is Anointed the King of Judah. Meanwhile, “Ish-Bosheth”, son of Saul, was anointed King of Israel.
  - 2 Samuel 2
- After the Death of the King of Israel, David is anointed King of Israel.
- God told David he would defeat the Philistines in the Valley of the Rephaim, so he did as God commanded.
  - 2 Samuel 5
- Upon returning the Ark of the Covenant to Jerusalem, David “David danced before the LORD with all his might… wearing a linen ephod.”
  - 2 Samuel 6
- God told the Prophet Nathan to tell King David “When your days are fulfilled and you lie down with your fathers, I will raise up your offspring after you, who shall come from your body, and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. I will be to him a father, and he shall be to me a son.”
  - 2 Samuel 7



2 Samuel

- David desires “Bathsheba”, who is the wife of Uriah the Hittite, one of his military commanders.
- David placed Uriah at the frontlines of a battle, killing him.
  - 2 Samuel 11
- The Prophet Nathan tells David the story of a “rich man” and a “poor man”. The Rich Man took the belongings of the poor man. David says “the man who has done this deserves to die, and he shall restore the lamb fourfold, because he did this thing, and because he had no pity.”
- Nathan reveals that David is the “rich man” in the story, who has taken the wife of Uriah.
- The LORD said to David: “I gave you your master's house and your master's wives into your arms and gave you the house of Israel and of Judah… You have struck down Uriah the Hittite with the sword and have taken his wife to be your wife… Behold, I will raise up evil against you out of your own house. And I will take your wives before your eyes and [will] give them to your neighbor”
- Nathan says the new born child of David (born of Bathsheba) will die because of this.
- After this event, a new child is born to David and Bathsheba, named “Solomon”.
  - 2 Samuel 12



2 Samuel

- David defeats an uprising against him, caused by his own son Absalom.
  - 2 Samuel 18
- The anger of the LORD was against Israel, and he “incited” David to “number Israel and Judah”.
- So, David decides to take a census of the army of Israel (rather than relying on the power of God to fight their battles).
- God said to David as punishment, “Shall three years of famine come to you in your land? Or will you flee three months before your foes while they pursue you? Or shall there be three days' pestilence in your land?”
- So, God sent pestilence on Israel, and 70,000 men died.
- David built an altar and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings, and the plague ended.
  - 2 Samuel 24



1 Kings & 2 Kings

1 Kings

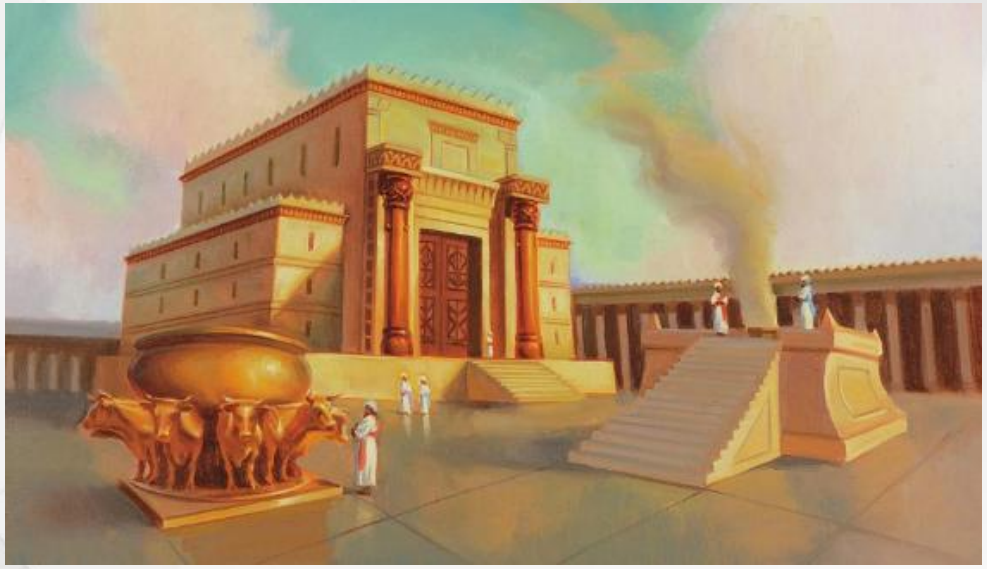
- “Solomon”, son of David and Bathsheba, is anointed King.
  - 1 Kings 1
- King David dies – having reigned for 40 years.
  - 1 Kings 2
- Solomon made a marriage alliance with the Pharoah of the King of Egypt – and married Pharoah’s daughter.
- The LORD appears to Solomon in a dream, saying “Ask what I shall give you”. Solomon asks for Wisdom and discernment. Because Solomon asked for Wisdom - and not long life, or riches, or destruction of his enemies - but asked for discernment, God gives him everything – Wisdom, and also Riches.
  - 1 Kings 3





1 Kings

- Solomon became extremely wealthy, and full of wisdom.
  - 1 Kings 4
- Solomon builds the Temple
  - 1 Kings 6
- Solomon builds himself a grand palace
  - 1 Kings 7
- Solomon places the Ark of the Covenant in the new temple
- "A Cloud" filled the Temple – and "the Glory of the LORD" filled the temple.
  - 1 Kings 8
- God appears to Solomon in a Dream - making a conditional covenant with Solomon, saying – "if you will walk before me, as David your father walked … doing according to all that I have commanded you … then I will establish your royal throne over Israel forever, as I promised David your father … But if you turn aside from following me, you or your children … but go and serve other gods and worship them, then I will cut off Israel from the land that I have given them … And this house will become a heap of ruins."
  - 1 Kings 9
- Solomon was extremely wealthy, with a grand throne room.
  - 1 Kings 10





1 Kings

- Solomon had many “foreign women” – including the Pharoah’s daughter, Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, and Hittite women. (God had previously commanded the Kings of Israel: “You shall not enter into marriage with them, neither shall they with you, for surely they will turn away your heart after their gods”.)
- Solomon had 700 Wives (who were princesses) and 300 Concubines – all who worshipped foreign gods and made offerings to foreign gods.
- Solomon in his old age began following foreign Gods – like the Ashtoreth. He even built a “High Place” for Chemosh from Moab, and for Molech of the Ammonites.
- God said to Solomon “Since … you have not kept my covenant and my statutes that I have commanded you, I will surely tear the kingdom from you and will give it to your servant”
- God began raising adversaries against Solomon for his disobedience.
- Solomon reigned for 40 years.
- Upon Solomon’s death, his son “Rehoboam” reigned in his place.
    - 1 Kings 11





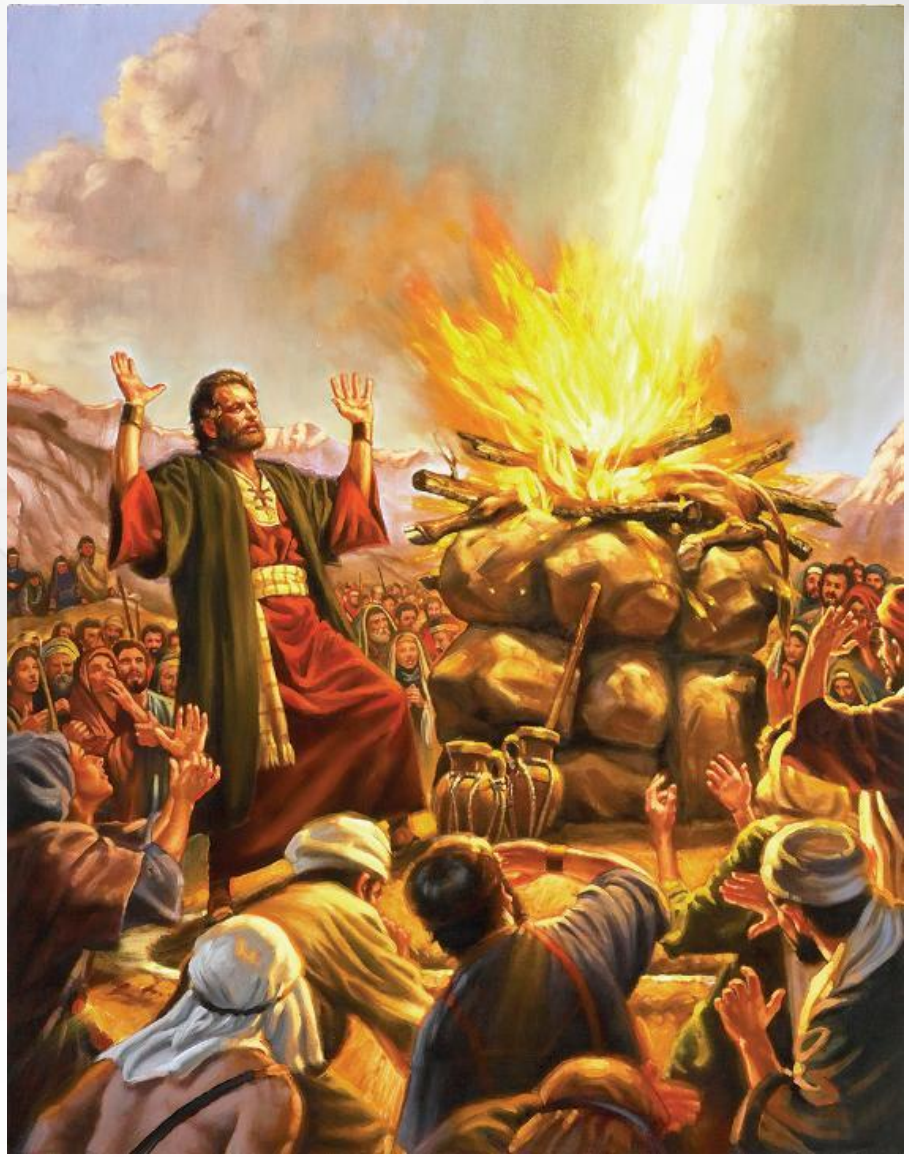
1 Kings

- After the Death of King Solomon, Israel became a Divided Kingdom.
- The Northern Kingdom was called “Israel”
- The Southern Kingdom was called “Judah”
- Jeroboam (King of Israel) made two golden calves, and put them in Dan. He made temples on “high places” and appointed priests who were not Levites.
  - 1 Kings 12
- God says he will destroy the kingdom of Jeroboam – because they have followed foreign gods (and done evil).
- Jeroboam dies after 22 years of reigning
- Judah (the southern kingdom) was also acting with evil – such as building High Places, to foreign gods.
  - 1 Kings 14



1 Kings

- Various Kings act righteously, and various Kings act unrighteously.
  - 1 Kings 15 to 1 Kings 16 (and all chapters)
- The Prophet “Elijah” caused a drought.
- Elijah resurrects a boy who had died of sickness.
  - 1 Kings 17
- God says to Elijah, in the third year, “Go, show yourself to Ahab, and I will send rain upon the earth.”
- “Jezebel” (Wife of King Ahab) killed many prophets.
- Elijah the Prophet confronts the Prophets of Baal, at Mount Carmel. He suggests they see whose God is more powerful. They setup Bulls to set fire to. The Prophets of Baal call upon their god, to no response. Elijah repaired the Altar of the LORD, called to God, and fire fell and consumed the burnt offerings. After winning, Elijah seized the Prophets of Baal and had them executed.
  - 1 Kings 18
- “The Word of the LORD” spoke to Elijah in a Cave.
  - 1 Kings 19



1 Kings

- God condemns Ahab, and says he will end the house of Ahab. God also condemns Jezebel (Wife of Ahab) saying “the dogs shall eat Jezebel within the walls of Jezreel”.
- King Ahab repents – and God says “Have you seen how Ahab has humbled himself before me? Because he has humbled himself before me, I will not bring the disaster in his days; but in his son's days I will bring the disaster upon his house.”
    - 1 Kings 21



1 Kings

- The Prophet Micaiah says that he saw “the LORD sitting on his throne in heaven, surrounded by the host of heaven”. The LORD said “Who will entice Ahab, that he may go up and fall?” and a “spirit came forward saying ‘I will entice him’”, and God sent him. The Spirit was a “lying spirit in the mouth of [Ahab’s Prophets]”.
- King Ahab died in battle against the Syrians.
    - 1 Kings 22



2 Kings

- Upon crossing the Jordan River, “Chariots of Fire and Horses of Fire” separated Elijah and Elisha, and Elijah was taken up “by a whirlwind into heaven”.
- As the prophet Elisha was traveling, “some boys came out of the city and jeered at him, saying ‘Go up, you baldhead!’” Elisha curses them, and two bears came out of the woods and mauled 42 of them.
    - 2 Kings 2
- Elisha prayed to God, and resurrected a young boy.
    - 2 Kings 4





2 Kings

- “Naaman”, commander of the army of the King of Syria, had leprosy.
- The Prophet Elisha instructs Naaman to wash in the Jordan River 7 times.
- Naaman is healed of his leprosy.
- Naaman says “Behold, I know that there is no God in all the earth but in Israel… from now on [I] will not offer burnt offering or sacrifice to any god but the LORD. ”
- Naaman returned to Syria (now confessing his Faith only to the God of Israel.)
    - 2 Kings 5



2 Kings

- The Army of Syria was warring with Isreal. Elisha reveals in a vision to a fearful servant that the mountains were filled with horses and chariots of fire (under the protection of God). When the Syrians came against Elisha, he struck them with blindless.
  - 2 Kings 6
- “Jehu” (King of Israel) had Jezebel (Wife of Ahab) thrown down from the walls, and horses trampled her. Jehu said that Jezebel is a “cursed woman”. They were unable to bury her, because she was completely destroyed.
  - 2 Kings 9
- Jehu put all of the worshippers of Baal into a house, and burned the house down. Jehu wiped out Baal worship from Israel.
  - 2 Kings 10
- The Prophet Elisha dies.
  - 2 Kings 13





2 Kings

- King “Ahaz” burned his son as an offering, to foreign gods.
  - 2 Kings 16
- In the 9th year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria, and carried away the Israelites to Asyria.
- God exiled them because the people of Israel had served idols and built “High Places” to false gods. They worshipped all of “The Host of Heaven” and “Baal” instead of God. They offered their sons and daughters as offering, and practiced divinations and omens.
- The King of Assyria places many foreign people (Babylon, etc.) into the cities of Samaria. Because these people did not fear the LORD or know his laws, God send lions among them. The King of Assyria was told “[God] has sent lions among them … because they do not know the law of the god of the land.” So the King of Assyria sent Prophets of God to them. They feared God, but also worshipped their foreign gods.
  - 2 Kings 17



2 Kings

- “The Angel of the Lord” strikes down 185,000 Assyrians in their war camp.
  - 2 Kings 19
- The Prophet “Isaiah” said to King “Hezekiah”: “Hear the word of the LORD: Behold, the days are coming, when all that is in your house, and that which your fathers have stored up till this day, shall be carried to Babylon.”
  - 2 Kings 20
- King “Josiah” removed all of the priests who “burned incense to Baal, to the sun and the moon and the constellations and all the host of the heavens”.
- Before Josiah, “no such Passover had been kept since the days of the judges who judged Israel, or during all the days of the kings of Israel or of the kings of Judah”
- There was “no king like [Josiah], who turned to the LORD with all his heart… according to all the Law of Moses”
- Josiah dies in battle against Egypt
  - 2 Kings 23

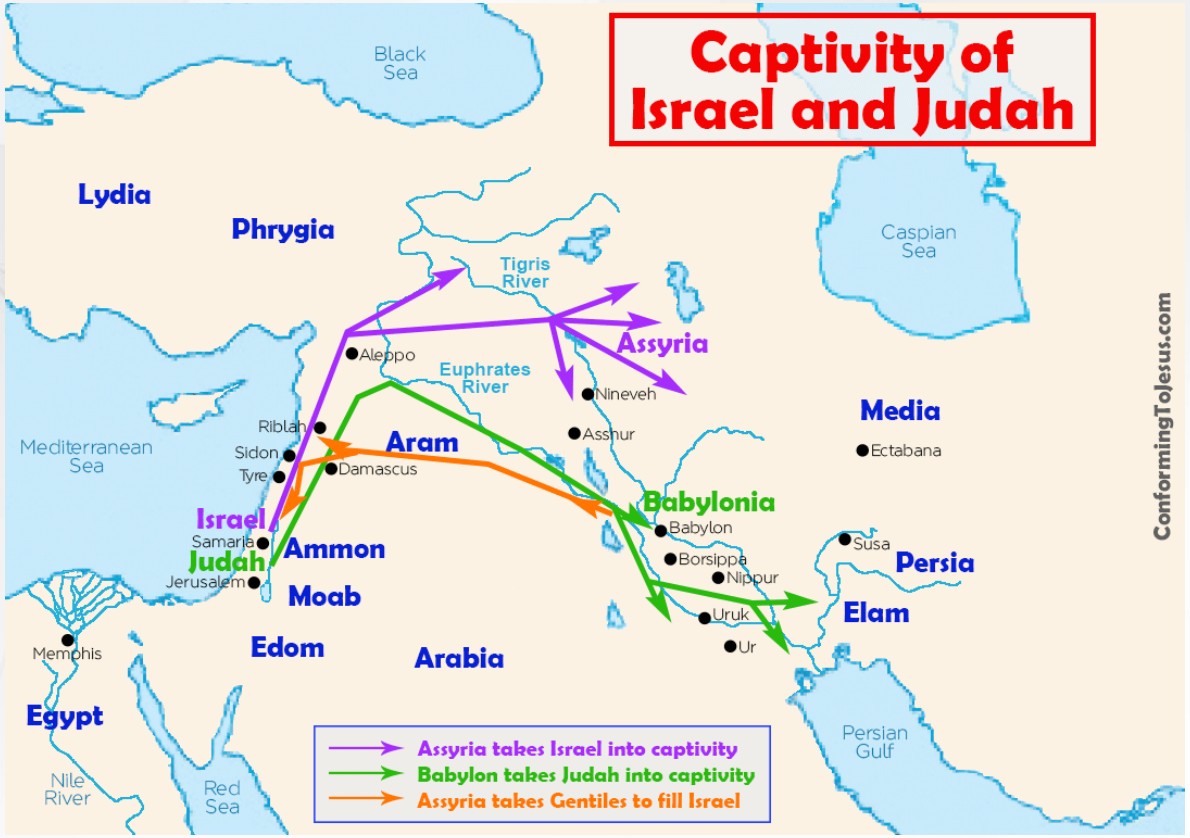




2 Kings

- Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up to Jerusalem and besieged the city.
- He defeated them, and captured them all, taking them all to Babylon (called “The Babylonian Exile”).
- They destroyed the Temple (which was the 1st Temple in Israel).
    - 2 Kings 24 / 2 Kings 25

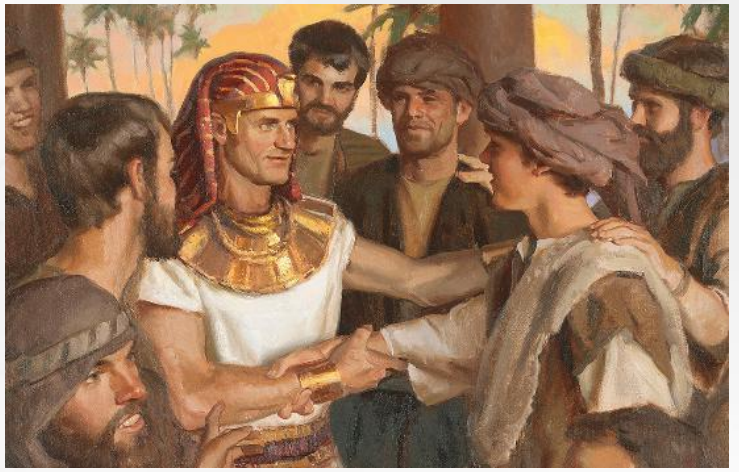




1 Chronicles & 2 Chronicles

1 Chronicles

- Reuben was the firstborn of Jacob – but because he dishonored his father (through his actions), his Birthright was given to the sons of Joseph.
- Judah “became strong” among his brothers and “a chief came from him” (King David), yet the Birthright belonged to Joseph.
  - 1 Chronicles 5
- Saul was of the Tribe of Benjamin.
  - 1 Chronicles 8
- Saul “died for his breach of faith” and he did not keep “the command of the LORD” and also “consulted a medium, seeking guidance” – not seeking guidance from the LORD. So “the LORD put him to death and turned the kingdom over to David”.
  - 1 Chronicles 10
- David defeated many clans of giants – “And there was again war at Gath, where there was a man of great stature, who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot, twenty-four in number, and he also was descended from the giants… These were descended from the giants in Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.”
  - 1 Chronicles 20





1 Chronicles

- “Satan stood against Israel and incited David to number Israel” – and so David decided to call for a census - Leading to God being displeased.
- David repents.
- God sends a pestilence on Israel, killing 70,000.
- God sent “the angel” to Jerusalem – preparing to destroy it. The Angel of the Lord stood on the threshing floor of “Ornan the Jebusite”. David lifted his eyes and saw the Angel of the Lord “standing between earth and heaven, and in his hand a drawn sword stretched out over Jerusalem”. David pleads that the punishment would be on him, not on Israel.
- The Angel of the Lord commanded that an Altar be built. David commits Burnt Offerings & Peace Offerings, and God pulls back the Angel of the Lord.
    - 1 Chronicles 21





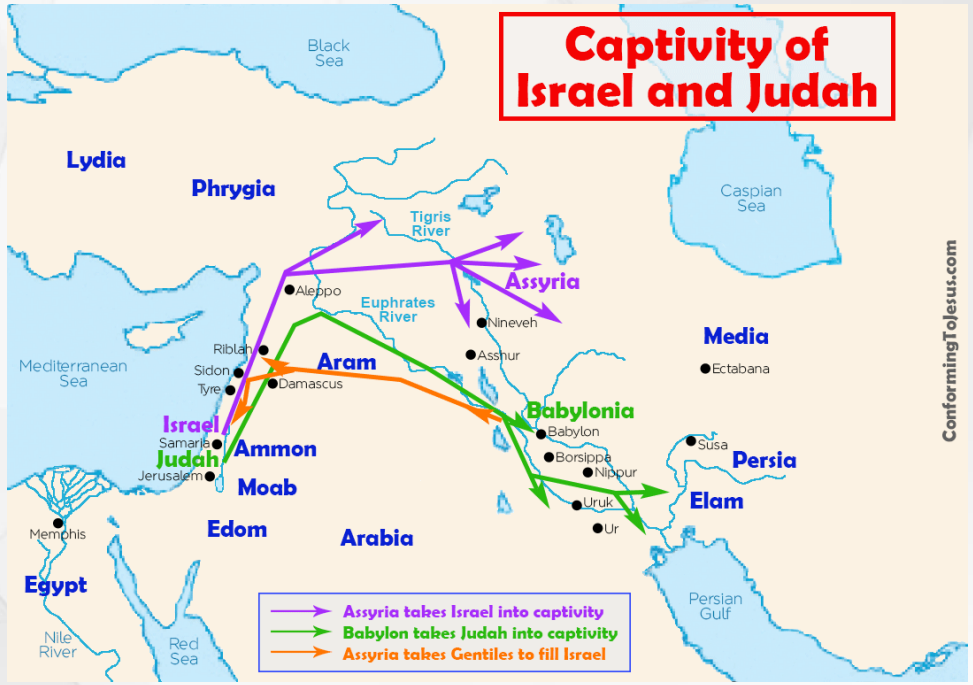
1 Chronicles

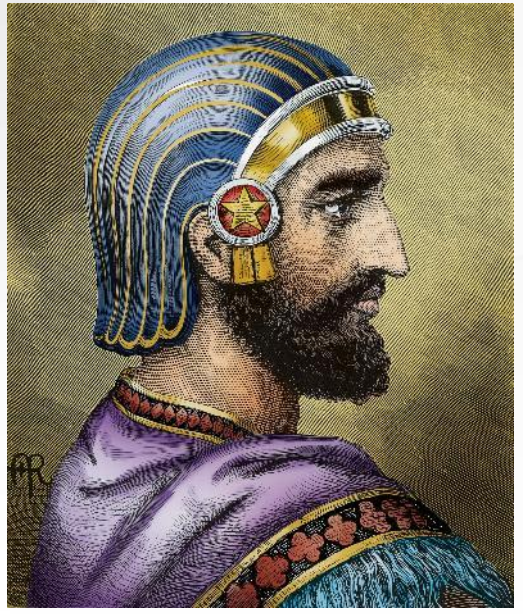
- “The Word of the LORD” came to David and said “You have shed much blood and have waged great wars. You shall not build a house to my name, because you have shed so much blood before me on the earth.” But instead, Solomon will build the Temple.
    - 1 Chronicles 22



2 Chronicles

- King Uzziah began righteously as king, but eventually became proud because of his strength.
- King Uzziah enters the Temple of the LORD, and attempts to burn incense at the altar. The Priests rush in, and tell him that only the Priests can burn incense. Uzziah is struck with leprosy until the day he dies.
    - 2 Chronicles 26
- The reason that God exiled the Israelites was because God "[spoke] persistently to them by his messengers, because he had compassion on his people and on his dwelling place. But they kept mocking the messengers of God, despising his words and scoffing at his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD rose against his people, until there was no remedy."
- King Nebuchadnezzar takes away the Israelites into Exile in Babylon, for a period of 70 years – "until the land had enjoyed its Sabbaths".
- At the end of this period, King Cyrus of Persia allowed them to return to Jerusalem.
    - 2 Chronicles 36





Daniel

Daniel

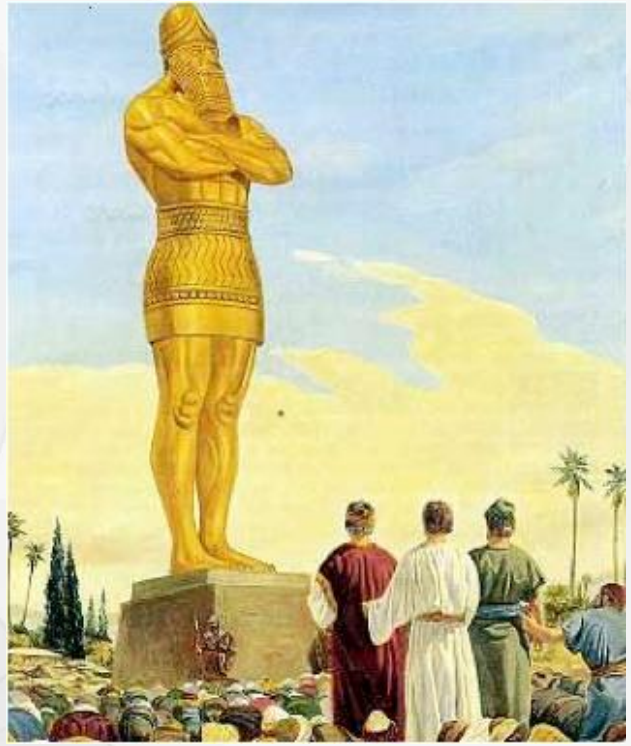
- The Israelites (of the Kingdom of Judah) were exiled to Babylon, by King Nebuchadnezzar.
- King Nebuchadnezzar assembled some of the finest of the Israelites, who were young and well educated, to exist in the Kings Court, and learn the language of the Chaldeans.
- God gave Daniel “understanding in all visions and dreams.”
  - Daniel 1
- Nebuchadnezzar has a dream. None of his “Wise Men” and “Magicians” were able to both tell him what the dream was, and the interpretation of the dream.
- Daniel reveals the Dream. The King saw a great image of a man, with a head of gold, its chest and arms of silver, its middle and thighs of bronze, its legs of iron, and its feet made of partly iron and partly clay. Then, “a stone cut by no human hand” struck the image, and broke it in pieces. The Stone became a great mountain and filled the whole earth.
- Daniel says that nebuchadnezzar is the head of gold, and the kingdoms that rise after Babylon are other kingdoms.
- In the days of the 4th Kingdom, “God will setup a kingdom that shall never be destroyed”.
- Nebuchadnezzar praises Daniel, and says “Truly your God is God of gods and Lord of kings!”
  - Daniel 2





Daniel

- Nebuchadnezzar made an image of gold, and commanded all people to fall down and worship the image, otherwise you will be thrown into a “burning fiery furnace”.
- He says to Daniel’s 3 friends (Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego) that they will be thrown into the fiery furnace, and “who is the god who will deliver you out of my hands?”
- They state the God is able to deliver them, but if not, they will still not serve their gods or the image.
- Nebuchadnezzar heated the furnace 7 times hotter than normal, and threw them in. Upon throwing them in, he says “Did we not cast three men bound into the fire… But I see four men unbound, walking in the midst of the fire, and they are not hurt; and the appearance of the fourth is like a son of the gods.”
- He declares the power of the God of Daniel.
    - Daniel 3





Daniel

- Nebuchadnezzar has a 2nd dream. He sees a tree which was very tall, reaching to heaven. All animals lived around it. He saw “a watcher, a holy one, come down from heaven”, and he said “Chop down the tree… Let the beasts flee from under it… But leave the stump of its roots… bound with a band of iron and bronze… Let his portion be with the beasts in the grass of the earth. Let his mind be changed from a mans, and let a beasts mind be given to him; and let seven periods of time pass over him. The sentence is by the decree of the watchers… that the living may know that the Most High rules the kingdom of men…”
- Daniel says that the tree is King Nebuchadnezzar. He says that the heavenly ones will drive him to live with the beasts of the field, for 7 periods of time, until he knows that the Most High rules earth.
- At the end of this period, God restored Nebuchadnezzar, and he acknowledged the power of the Most High.
    - Daniel 4



Daniel

- “King Belshazzar” (son of Nebuchadnezzar) made a great feast – and commanded that the vessels of gold and silver, taken from the temple in Jerusalem, be brought to his feast.
- A hand appeared, writing on the wall. The King saw it, asking his wise men to read it, but none could. They summon Daniel.
- Daniel says that like his father, the King has not humbled himself, and his lifted himself up “against the Lord of heaven” and used his vessels in his feast – and praising the gods of silver and gold, but not the true god.
- Daniel says the interpretation is “MENE, God has numbered the days of your kingdom and brought it to an end; TEKEL, you have been weighed in the balances and found wanting; PERES, your kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians.”
- That night, Belshazzar the Chaldean king was killed, and “Darius the Mede” received the kingdom.
    - Daniel 5



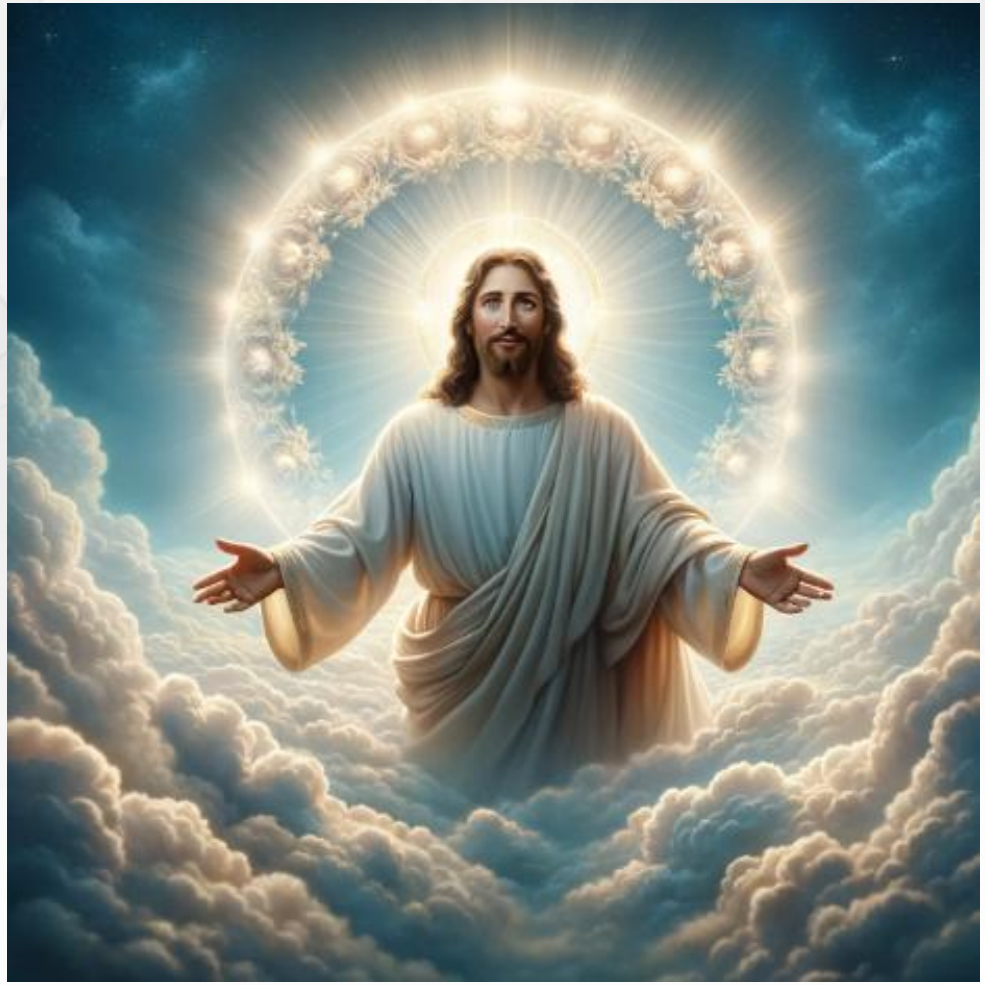
Daniel

- Darius set Daniel over a large portion of his kingdom. The satrap (governors) under him looked for ways to undermine him. They make a law that no one can make a petition to any god or man for 30 days, except to the King, otherwise they will be thrown into the den of lions.
- Daniel is found guilty of this offense, and Darius was forced to throw Daniel into the den of lions (but he desired to deliver him). Darius rises the next morning and finds Daniel unharmed.
- The King has the rulers who conspired against Daniel thrown into the lions den.
    - Daniel 6



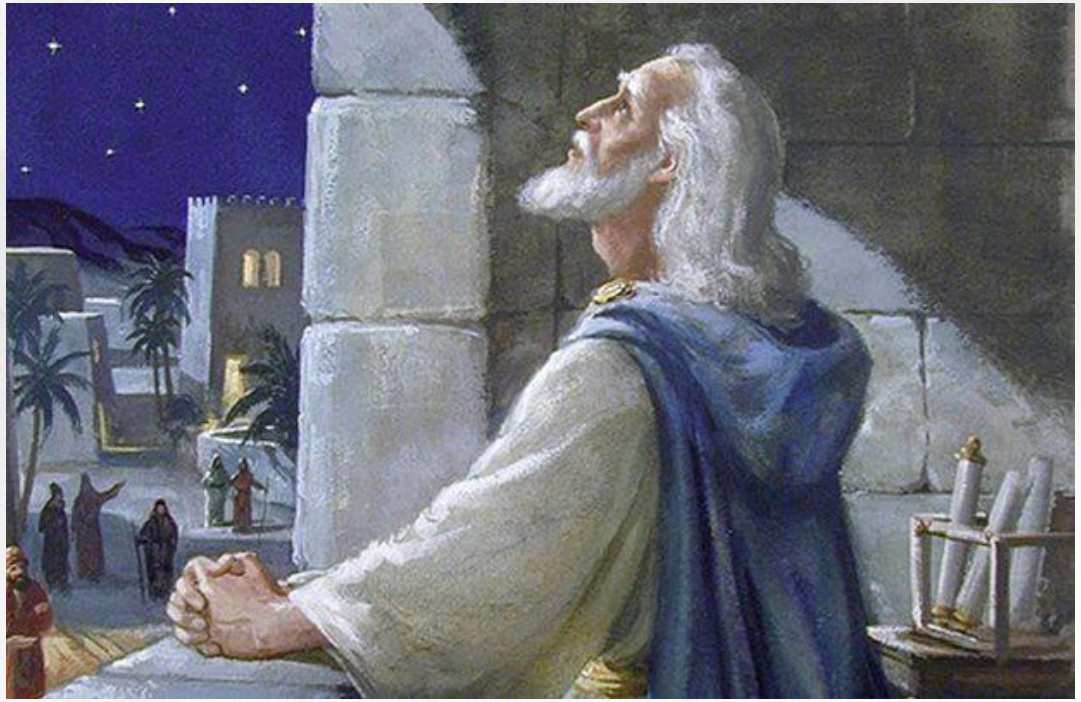
Daniel

- Daniel saw a dream – with a vision of Heaven.
- He saw various beasts, that came and went (which represent the 4 kingdoms).
- Daniel saw "The Ancient of Days" (God) and said
  - "his clothing was white as snow,
    and the hair of his head like pure wool;
    his throne was fiery flames;
    its wheels were burning fire…
  - the court sat in judgment,
    and the books were opened."
- **Son of Man coming with the Clouds of Heaven** - Daniel saw "[in] the clouds of heaven there came one like a son of man, and he came to the Ancient of Days and was presented before him. And to him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve him; his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away…"
- The Saints of the Most High possess the kingdom forever (under the leadership of the "Son of Man" who is served & worshipped by his Saints forever)
  - Daniel 7



Daniel

- Daniel sees a vision of a ram and a goat.
- The ram with the two horns are the kings of Media and Persia, and the goat is the King of Greece.
- A king will cause fear among the saints.
  - Daniel 8
- Daniel prays, and repents to God for his people, in Exile.
- The Angel “Gabriel” appears.
- Gabriel says that “70 weeks” will be the timeline to “put an end to sin”, to “seal both vision and prophet, and to anoint a most holy place”.
- From the start of the rebuilding of Jerusalem, there will be “an anointed one” who is a prince. There will be 7 weeks. Then, for 62 weeks, Jerusalem will be built again. After the 62 weeks, “an anointed one” shall be “cut off”. The city (Jerusalem) will be destroyed, and the Temple will be destroyed.
  - Daniel 9



Daniel

- Daniel sees a vision of a man.
- He saw standing on the banks of the river Tigris, and saw a “man clothed in linen”, with a belt of fine gold. His face was “like the appearance of lightning” his eyes were like “flaming torches”, and his voice was “like the sound of a multitude”.
- The men standing with Daniel did not see the vision.
- The man says to Daniel “Now I have been sent to you… The prince of the kingdom of Persia withstood me twenty-one days, but Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me, for I was left there with the kings of Persia, and came to make you understand what is to happen to your people in the latter days…”
- The man says “But now I will return to fight against the prince of Persia; and when I go out, behold, the prince of Greece will come. But I will tell you what is inscribed in the book of truth: there is none who contends by my side against these except Michael, your prince.”
- (The angel Michael, who fights to protect Israel, is battling the Spiritual powers of the Kingdoms of Persia and Greece)
    - Daniel 10



Daniel

- During the prophetic times of these visions, there will be the “abomination of desolation” in the temple, with an unlawful sacrifice (that is blasphemous to God).
- And “At that time shall arise Michael, the great prince who has charge of your people. And there shall be a time of trouble, such as never has been since there was a nation till that time. But at that time your people shall be delivered, everyone whose name shall be found written in the book. And many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.”
- Daniel 11 / Daniel 12



Ezekiel

Ezekiel

- “The Word of the LORD” spoke with Ezekiel. He told him to say this to the “King of Tyre”:
  - “You were the signet of perfection,
    full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.
    You were in Eden, the garden of God;
    every precious stone was your covering …
  - You were an anointed guardian cherub.
    I placed you; you were on the holy mountain of God;
    in the midst of the stones of fire you walked.
    You were blameless in your ways
    from the day you were created,
    till unrighteousness was found in you…
  - In the abundance of your trade
    you were filled with violence in your midst, and you sinned;
    so I cast you as a profane thing from the mountain of God,
    and I destroyed you, O guardian cherub,
    from the midst of the stones of fire.
    Your heart was proud because of your beauty;
    you corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor.
- (The Word of the LORD is speaking to the spiritual power behind the King of Tyre)
- Ezekiel 28



Psalms

Psalms

- The Book of Psalms is a poetic book of hymns written by King David – but also includes Prophecy (by King David).
  - Psalm 1 to Psalm 150



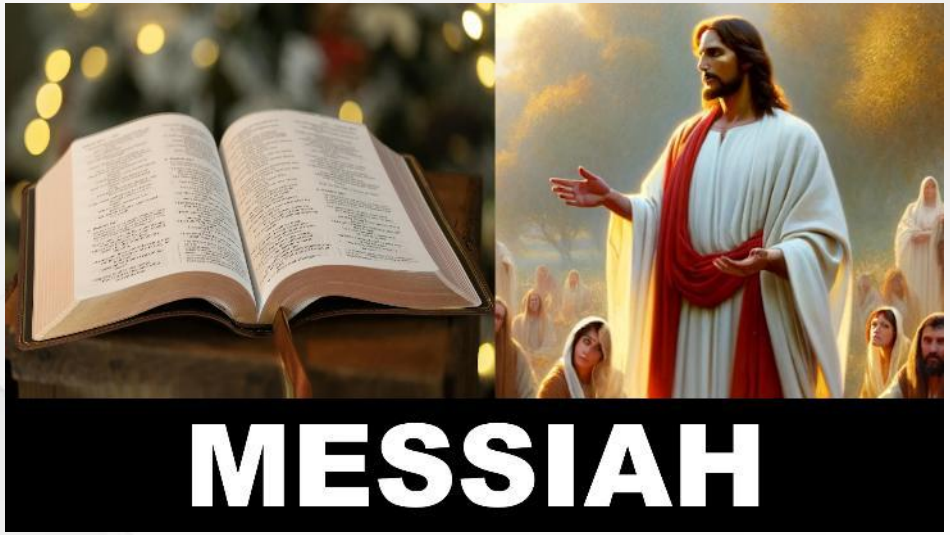
Psalms

- Psalm 2
- Psalm 22
- Psalm 110
- Psalm 118

Prophecy of the Messiah

Prophecy of the Messiah

- There are Messianic Prophecies in various books of the Bible – starting with the Historical books like Genesis – and the Prophecy books – like Daniel, Isaiah, Zecheriah, etc.
- Here is a short summary list of who The Messiah would be:
  - A King
  - A Priest
  - Born in Bethlehem
  - Born to a virgin
  - Descended from King David
  - From Galilee
  - Enter Jerusalem riding a donkey
  - Be “pierced in the hands and feet”
  - Be a righteous suffering servant who atones for the sins of all people
  - Be killed and resurrected
  - The Israelites & their Leaders will reject the “cornerstone” messiah, but the Gentiles will accept him
  - He will appear during the 2nd Temple Period (before 70 AD)
  - The Messiah (who is a man) is God himself
- **Watch my Video on the “Messiah Prophecies” – for a Full Explanation.**

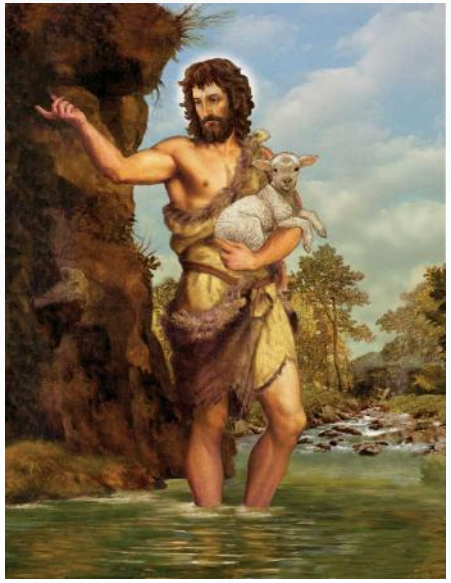


Matthew

Matthew

- Mary, a virgin, conceived of Jesus, through the power of the Holy Spirit. An angel of the lord appeared to Joseph, Mary's Husband, telling him to not divorce her.
- Jesus is descended from King David
  - Matthew 1
- An angel of the Lord appears to Joseph, telling him to flee to Egypt, to avoid Herod who is searching for the child who is to be "the future king", so he can eliminate him.
- When Herod died, an angel of the lord appeared to Joseph in Egypt, and told him to return to Israel, settling in Nazareth (in Galilee).
  - Matthew 2
- "John the Baptist" was preaching in the wilderness of Judea, saying that the Kingdom of Heaven is coming.
- John the Baptist says to the Pharisees to repent, and said: "… Do not presume to say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham as our father,' for I tell you, God is able from these stones to raise up children for Abraham… Every tree therefore that does not bear good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire."
- John the Baptist baptized Jesus in the Jordan River. The Spirit of God descended like a dove on them, and a voice from heaven said "This is my beloved Son"
  - Matthew 3





Matthew

- Jesus was led by the Spirit into the Wilderness, to be tempted by “the devil”.
- The Devil offered to give Jesus all of the kingdoms of the world, if Jesus would worship him. Jesus said “You shall worship the Lord your God and him only shall you serve”.
- Jesus began his ministry in Galilee. He recruits Simon-Peter and his brother Andrew, who were fishermen.
- Jesus became famous for teaching to crowds, and in synagogues. He healed people, and cast out demons, on a massive scale.
    - Mattew 4





Matthew

- Jesus gives “The Sermon on the Mount”.
- He said things like “Blessed are the pure in heart” and “Blessed are the peacemakers”.
- Jesus says that he did not come to “Abolish the Law or the Prophets” but to “fulfill them” and continue those commandments.
- Jesus says “unless your righteousness exceeds that of the scribes and pharisees, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven” – meaning, your righteousness exceeding the religious elite who outwardly look righteous, but inwardly have no love for God in their hearts.
- Jesus teaches many lessons – regarding Anger, Divorce, Retaliation, and Love for your Enemies. He says that if you have even done an evil action “in your heart” – such as desire for murder – you have sinned.
    - Matthew 5



Matthew

- Jesus condemns those who do “good works” in public to be seen by others – rather than doing good works in secret for the sake of doing what is right, to please the Father.
- Jesus explains “The Lords Prayer” – which focuses on reverence for God, alignment with the will of God, requests for daily provisions like bread, forgiveness of our sins and our forgiveness of others, and rejection of sin. He condemns the prayers of those who pray to be seen in public, and condemns the Gentiles who pray with “many words” and “empty phrases” – because “the Father knows what you need before you ask him”.
- Jesus explains that you should “store up treasures in heaven” which are permanent, not “treasures on earth” which are temporary.
- Jesus says “do not be anxious about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink”. But seek firstly “The Kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be added to you” – (Meaning, positive life outcomes will be a natural result, for someone who follows the teachings of God).
    - Matthew 6

Matthew

- Jesus says “Judge not, that you be not judged. For with the judgment you pronounce you will be judged, and with the measure you use it will be measured to you” – Jesus is condemning hypocritical judgment, for sins you are guilty of yourself. Only then can you “take the speck out of your brothers eye” after removing “the log out of your own eye”.
- Jesus encourages asking the Father for what you desire, and that the Father is a good gift giver.
- Jesus explains “The Golden Rule” – which is doing to others what you wish they would do to you.
- Jesus says that the “Gate to Destruction” is very wide and easy to enter – but the “Narrow Gate” to righteousness is narrow and difficult to follow.
- Jesus says that “his words” are a house built on a foundation of rock – but not following his words is like a house built on a foundation of sand.
    - Matthew 7

Matthew

- A Roman Centurion had faith – asking Jesus to health his servant who was Paralyzed (which is belief in the Power and Words of God). Jesus says “With no one in Israel have I found such faith. I tell you, many will come from east and west and recline at table with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven, while the sons of the kingdom will be thrown into the outer darkness… Go, let it be done for you as you have believed.”
- Jesus meets two demon possessed men. The demons said “What have you to do with us, O Son of God? Have you come here to torment us before the time?” Jesus cast the demons into pigs.
    - Matthew 8
- Jesus heals a Paralytic, and says “Your sins are forgiven”.
- Jesus recruits Matthew – a tax collector.
- Jesus heals two blind men. Jesus asks them “Do you believe that I am able to do this?” They say yes. Jesus then says “According to your faith, let it be done to you”.
    - Matthew 9



Matthew

- Jesus says “everyone who acknowledges me before men, I also will acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven, but whoever denies me before men, I also will deny before my Father who is in heaven.”
- Jesus says “Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not worthy of me. Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it.”
    - Matthew 10
- Jesus says that “The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath” – Jesus himself is the Son of Man, and only God is Lord of the Sabbath.
- Jesus tells the Pharisees that “it is lawful to do good works on the Sabbath”.
- The Pharisees desire to destroy him.
- Jesus says “whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven, either in this age or in the age to come.”
    - Matthew 12



Matthew

- Jesus tells the “Parable of the Sower”, describing seeds which grow roots in the ground, and seeds which do not grow roots, and die. These seeds are people’s reactions to the word of God. Various seeds produce various results producing grain, “some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty”.
- Jesus tells the “Parable of the Weeds”, describing “The Harvest” as the End of the Age, and the Reapers being the Angels. The weeds are the sons of the devil. The Weeds will be gathered and burned in the “fiery furnace”, where there will be “weeping and gnashing of teeth”.
- Jesus refused to do miracles in Nazareth, because of their “unbelief” in his powers.
    - Matthew 13



Matthew

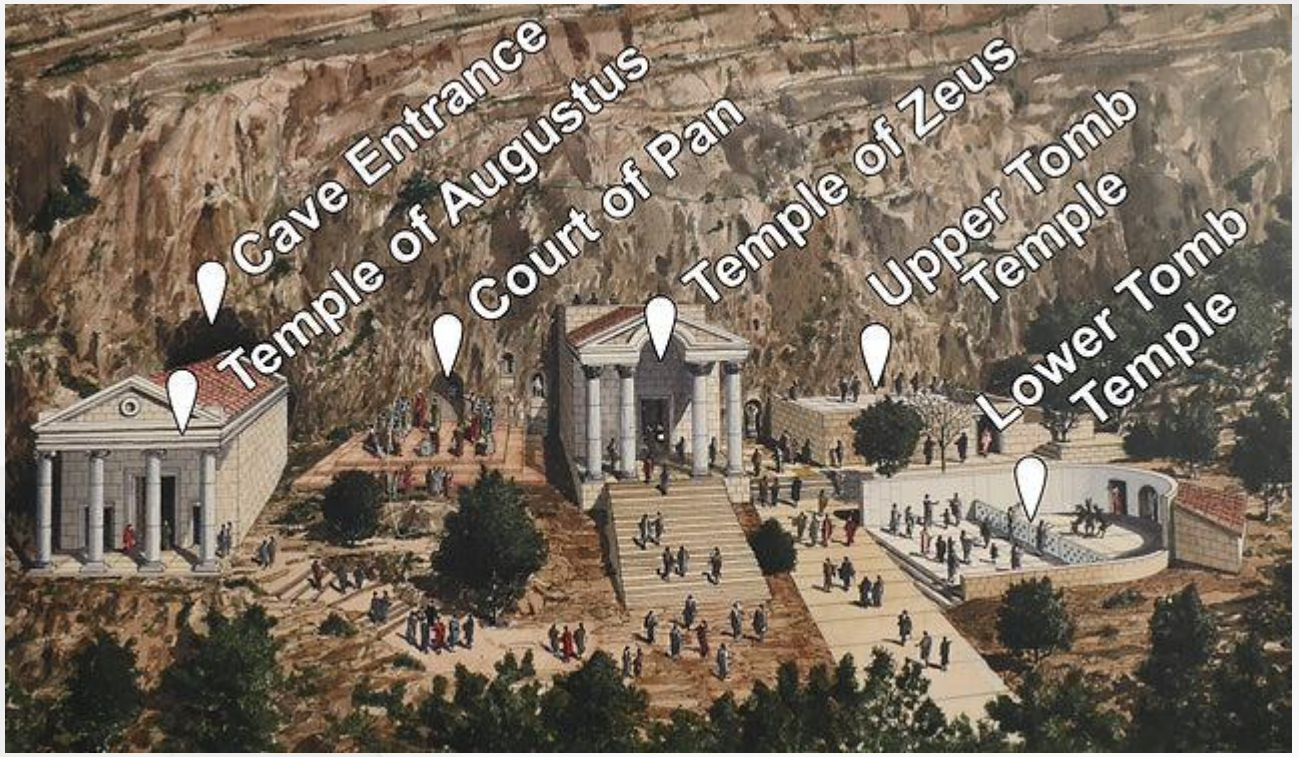
- Jesus feeds 5,000 people by multiplying five loaves of bread and two fish.
- Jesus walks on Water in the middle of a storm. Peter begins to walk on water, until he began to doubt and become afraid, and starts to sink. Jesus then says “You of little faith, why did you doubt?” The disciples say “Truly you are the Son of God”
    - Matthew 14
- Jesus condemns the Pharisees for “breaking the commandments of God” for “the sake of their traditions”, made by men. He quotes Isaiah, saying “This people honors me with their lips, but their heart is far from me; in vain do they worship me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men”
- In Tyre, Jesus heals the Canaanite woman’s daughter who was demon possessed, because of her Faith and belief in his power.
    - Matthew 15

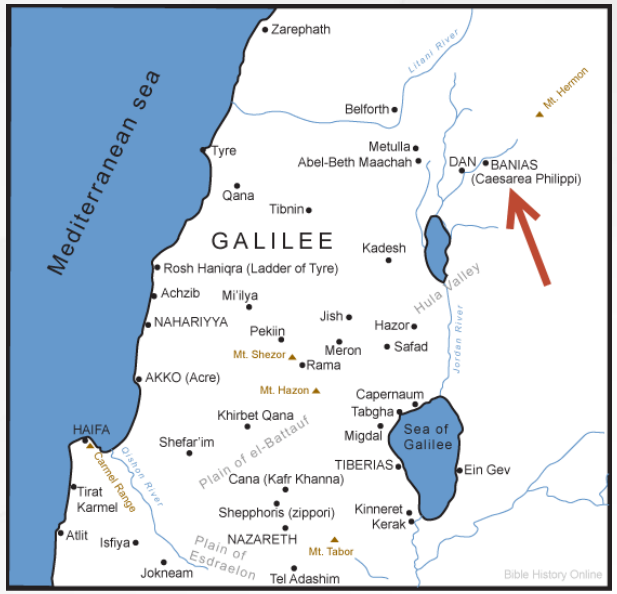


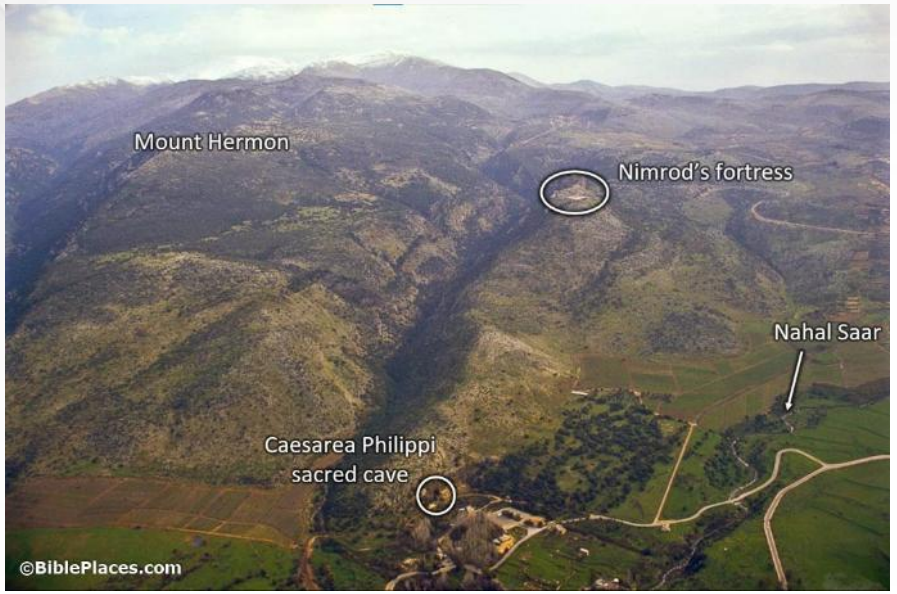


Matthew

- In Caesarea Philippi, Simon Peter told Jesus “You are the Christ, the Son of the living God.” Jesus said to him “You are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church… I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven”. (Jesus is stating that “The Rock” of his church is Peter’s confession of Faith, in the Messiah, who is the Son of God. “The Keys” to the kingdom is Faith in the Messiah)
- Jesus says “For the Son of Man is going to come with his angels in the glory of his Father, and then he will repay each person according to what he has done”
  - Matthew 16







Matthew

- **The Transfiguration** – Jesus led Peter & James & John up to a high mountain. Jesus transformed before them, and “his face shone like the sun, and his clothes became white as light. And behold, there appeared to them Moses and Elijah, talking with him.”
  - Matthew 17



Matthew

- Jesus tells the parable of “The Lost Sheep” – who leaves 99 sheep on the mountains to go search for the 1 sheep that went astray.
- Jesus says “If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector. Truly, I say to you, whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.”
- Jesus tells the parable of “The Unforgiving Servant” – who was shown great mercy and forgiveness by his own master, but did not show the same forgiveness to the servants under him. He says to have forgiveness for others like God has forgiveness for you.
    - Matthew 18
- Jesus says “everyone who has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or lands, for my name's sake, will receive a hundredfold and will inherit eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and the last first.”
    - Matthew 19

Matthew

- Jesus enters Jerusalem riding a donkey, with the crowd saying “Hosanna to the Son of David”, covering the road in tree branches. (The crowd is identifying Jesus with the Messiah, who is “The son of David”)
- Jesus tells the parable of “The Tenants”. There was a Master who planted a vineyard, and then left for another country. While away, he leased the vineyard to “tenants”. The Master sent his servants to reap the fruits of the vineyard. The Tenants beat one, killed another, and stoned another. The Master sent even more servants, to the same result. Finally, the Master sent “His Son”, saying they will surely “respect my son”. But, the Tenants again rejected him, saying “This is the heir. Come, let us kill him and have his inheritance”. The Religious leaders replied to Jesus, saying that the Tenants in the story should be put to death. Jesus said that “The Kingdom of God will be taken away from you and given to a people producing its fruits”. The chief priests and pharisees heard this parable, and desired to arrest Jesus. (Jesus is stating that the “tenants”, who were the Israelites and their leaders, would be disinherited from the Kingdom of God)
    - Matthew 21





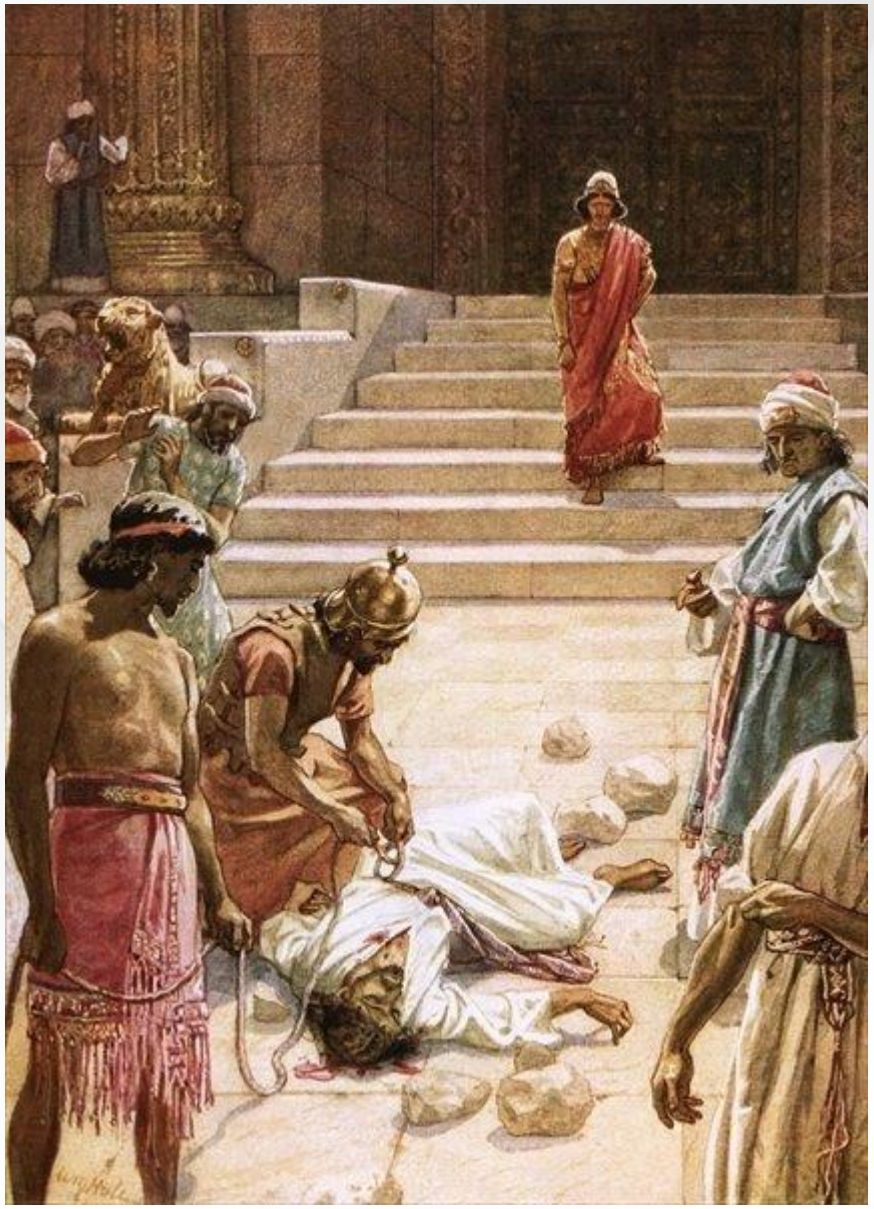
Matthew

- Jesus tells the parable of “The Wedding Feast”. The Wedding Feast is Gods Kingdom and its guests. The first invited people reject the invitation to the wedding feast. Later, the King invited anyone who was walking the streets. The King saw a guest who was wearing no wedding garment, and threw him out into the outer darkness. (The invited guests are the Israelites, and then the Gentiles. The Wedding Guest with no “wedding garment” is not wearing the garment provided by the King, which is Faith in Jesus.)
- Jesus explains the truth of the resurrection of the dead to the Sadducees.
- Jesus tells the Pharisees that even David said to the Christ (the Messiah) “The Lord said to my Lord, sit at my right hand”, meaning that David’s descendant would somehow be even greater than David himself, his ancestor. Jesus says “If then David calls him Lord, how is he his son?” – meaning the Messiah would be the son of David.
    - Matthew 22



Matthew

- Jesus condemns the Pharisees, who currently rule “on Moses’ seat” of power and authority.
- Jesus says that their one true instructor is the Christ.
- Jesus says that “Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted.”
- Jesus condemns the Nation of Israel, when he sent them “prophets and wise men” who they killed and persecuted, like Zecheriah.
- Jesus laments for Jerusalem, how he wishes he could have gathered them and protected them, but they were not willing to follow God and instead killed the prophets. He says the House of Jerusalem will be left desolate. He says “you will not see me again, until you say, ‘Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.’”
    - Matthew 23



Matthew

- Jesus predicts the destruction of the Temple, and the desecration of the Temple foretold in Daniel.
  - Matthew 24
- Jesus tells the parable of “The Talents” – describing servants entrusted with money by their master. There was a servant who took their money, and turned it into more money. The Master says “Well done… You have been faithful over a little; I will set you over much”. But, there was a servant who took their 1 talent, and did nothing with it. The Master rebukes them, saying “You wicked and slothful servant!”, and gave their 1 talent to those who had 10 talents – casting the worthless servant into “the outer darkness”.
- Jesus describes the Final Judgment, as separating “sheep” and “goats”. On his left, the goats, those who will be cast into “eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels”. And on his right, “the righteous” with “eternal life”.
- Jesus says that what you did to the “least of people”, you did to him, good or bad.
  - Matthew 25



Matthew



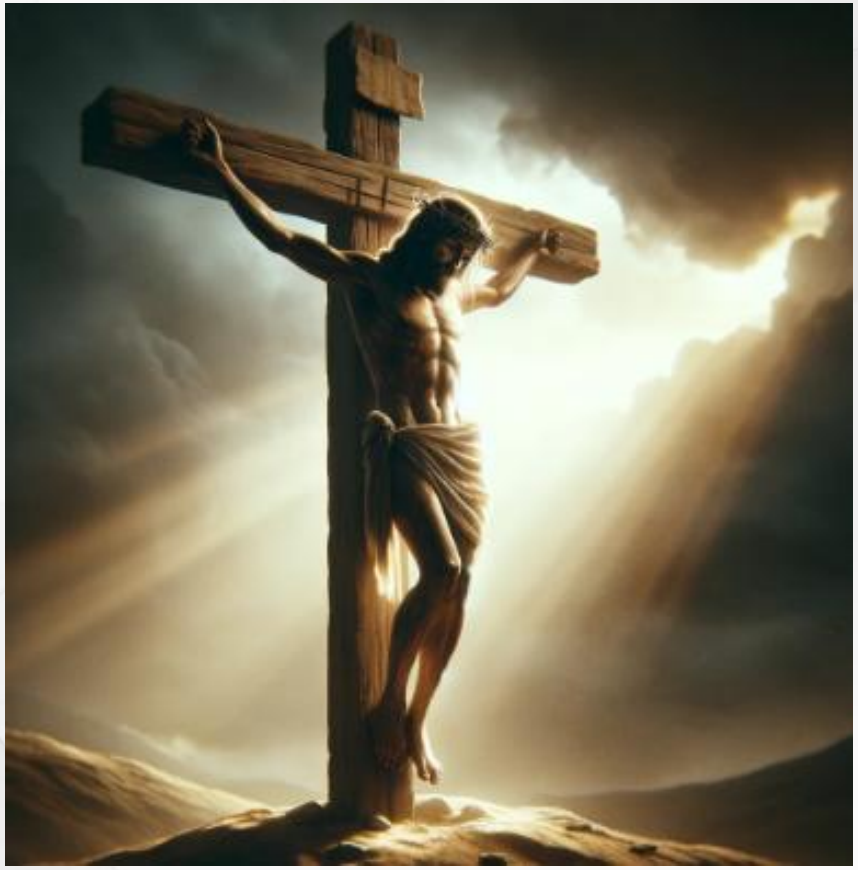
- Jesus institutes the “Lords Supper” – saying of Bread and Wine – “Eat, this is my body” and “Drink… this is my blood of the covenant… poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins”
- Jesus has faith in the plan of the Father – even though he desires not to be crucified, he still asks for the will of the Father to be done, if it must be done.
- Jesus is betrayed by Judas, and arrested.
- Jesus was silent before his accusers.
- **Son of Man coming with the Clouds of Heaven** - When asked if he was “The Christ, the Son of God” – Jesus replied “You have said so. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven.”
- For this, the High Priest condemned him to death because of his blasphemy – Because he had both claimed to be “The Son of God” (Equality with God) and also “The Son of Man Coming with the Clouds of Heaven” who was the Messiah, and also Equal with God.
    - Matthew 26

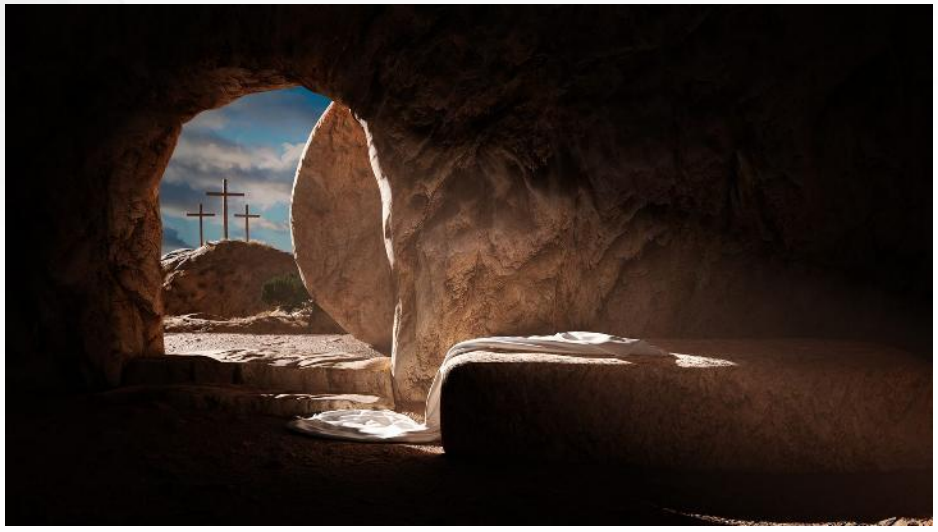




Matthew

- Jesus is crucified.
- Upon his death, the curtain in the temple was torn, and their was an earthquake.
- Jesus was buried in a rich man's tomb.
  - Matthew 27
- Mary Magdelene and the other Mary went to see the tomb. There was a great earthquake, and an angel of the Lord rolled back the Stone covering the tomb.
- Jesus appeared to them, fully resurrected.
- The 11 disciples went to Galilee, meeting with the Resurrected Jesus. He said "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit"
  - Matthew 28





Luke

Luke

- The angel Gabriel tells Mary that her child will be called “the Son of God”
  - Luke 1
- When Jesus was 12 years old, he was in the Temple, teaching others.
  - Luke 2
- John the Baptist says to the crowds, “I baptize you with water, but he who is mightier than I is coming, the strap of whose sandals I am not worthy to untie. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire.”
  - Luke 3
- Jesus went to the Synagogue on the Sabbath. He read from the Isaiah scroll, reading out loud – “The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to proclaim good news to the poor.” He said “Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing.”
  - Luke 4



Luke

- **Lord of the Sabbath** - Jesus tells the Pharisees “The Son of Man is lord of the Sabbath”
- Jesus says “Blessed are you when people hate you and when they exclude you and revile you and spurn your name as evil, on account of the Son of Man! Rejoice in that day, and leap for joy, for behold, your reward is great in heaven; for so their fathers did to the prophets.”
- Jesus says “Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, bless those who curse you, pray for those who abuse you. To one who strikes you on the cheek, offer the other also, and from one who takes away your cloak do not withhold your tunic either. Give to everyone who begs from you, and from one who takes away your goods do not demand them back. And as you wish that others would do to you, do so to them. If you love those who love you, what benefit is that to you? For even sinners love those who love them.”
    - Luke 6
- Jesus sent “the twelve [apostles] together and gave them power and authority over all demons and to cure diseases, and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal” and his command was that “[whoever does] not receive you, when you leave that town shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them.” They were commanded to preach the gospel and heal everywhere they go.
- Peter confesses that Jesus is “The Christ of God”
- Jesus, Peter, John, and James go up on “the mountain” to pray. Jesus appears before them, with Moses and Elijah, all appearing in glory.
    - Luke 9

Luke

- Jesus sends 72 people to go to every town, and preach the gospel and the coming of the Kingdom of God. He says if they reject him it “it will be more bearable on that day for Sodom than for that town”.
- The 72 return to Jesus, saying “Lord, even the demons are subject to us in your name!”. Jesus says to them: “I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven. Behold, I have given you authority to tread on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall hurt you. Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven.”
- Jesus says “All things have been handed over to me by my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, or who the Father is except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him.”
- Jesus tells the Parable of “The Good Samaritan”, in response to the question of someone who asked “Who is my neighbor?”
- Jesus says “If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!”
    - Luke 10

Luke

- Jesus tells a parable of a Wedding Feast: “When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not sit down in a place of honor, lest someone more distinguished than you be invited by him, and he who invited you both will come and say to you, ‘Give your place to this person,’ and then you will begin with shame to take the lowest place. But when you are invited, go and sit in the lowest place, so that when your host comes he may say to you, ‘Friend, move up higher.’ Then you will be honored in the presence of all who sit at table with you. For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted.”
  - Luke 14
- Jesus tells the Parable of the Prodigal Son.
  - Luke 15
- Jesus tells the story of “The Rich Man” and Lazarus, the poor man. Lazarus dies and is with Abraham, but the Rich Man dies and was in Hades, in torment. The Rich Man saw Abraham across “a great chasm” – that separated the righteous and unrighteous in the afterlife. The Rich Man asks Abraham to tell his brothers, so that they too do not end up in Hades. But Abraham says “They have Moses and the Prophets; let them hear them… If they do not hear Moses and the Prophets, neither will they be convinced if someone should rise from the dead.’”
  - Luke 16





Luke

- Jesus says “It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were cast into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to sin. Pay attention to yourselves! If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him”
- The Pharisees ask Jesus when the Kingdom of God would come. Jesus says “The kingdom of God is not coming in ways that can be observed”. (Jesus is emphasizing that God’s Kingdom on Earth is firstly a spiritual kingdom)
    - Luke 17
- Jesus told the Parable of “the Persistent Widow” – with a message of persistent petition of God, and Luke says to always “pray and not lose heart”.
- Jesus tells the parable of the Pharisee and the Tax Collector. The Pharisee says “God, I thank you that I am not like other men, extortioners, unjust, adulterers, or even like this tax collector.” The Tax Collector repents, saying “God, be merciful to me, a sinner!” Jesus says that only the Tax Collector was “justified” – and that “For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, but the one who humbles himself will be exalted.”
    - Luke 18

Luke

- Jesus foretells the Destruction of Jerusalem (which occurred in 70 AD) – “But when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then know that its desolation has come near” and describes this period as having “signs in sun and moon and stars… For the powers of the heavens will be shaken. And then they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.”
- Jesus says these things will take place soon, and “this generation will not pass away until all has taken place.”
  - Luke 21
- Jesus institutes “The Lords Supper” and says “This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me… This cup that is poured out for you is the new covenant in my blood”
  - Luke 22
- Jesus was crucified next to 2 criminals. One of the criminals said “we are receiving the due reward of our deeds; but this man has done nothing wrong… Remember me when you come into your kingdom.” Jesus replies to him, “Truly, I say to you, today you will be with me in paradise”
  - Luke 23







Luke

- After resurrection, Jesus appears to the Disciples and says that “the Christ should suffer and on the third day rise from the dead, and that repentance for the forgiveness of sins should be proclaimed in his name to all nations, beginning from Jerusalem”
  - Luke 24

John

John

- **The "Word" was God** - John says "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God."
- **The "Son" is God** - John says "No one has ever seen God; God the only Son, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known."
  - John 1
- Jesus says "unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God."
- **Jesus Descended from Heaven** - Jesus says "No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven, the Son of Man. And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in him may have eternal life."
  - John 3
- Jesus tells the woman at the well in Samaria "the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."
  - John 4



John

- Jesus says that the Father has granted the Son of Man to execute Final Judgment.
  - John 5
- Jesus says “unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day.”
  - John 6
- Jesus tells the Jews “Before Abraham was, I am”
  - John 8
- Jesus says “But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, he will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you.”
  - John 14
- **Jesus Existed Before Creation** - Jesus says “Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory that I had with you before the world existed.”
  - John 17



Acts of the Apostles

Acts of the Apostles

- The disciples cast lots, and Matthias was added to the 11 apostles, to replace Judas.
  - Acts 1
- On the day of Pentecost, “suddenly there came from heaven a sound like a mighty rushing wind, and it filled the entire house where they were sitting. And divided tongues as of fire appeared to them and rested on each one of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit gave them utterance.”
- Men of “every Nation” were in Jerusalem, and they heard the apostles speaking in their own native tongues, the message of the Gospel.
- Peter speaks to the crowds, and explains the gospel story.
- Peter says “Repent and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit”
  - Acts 2



Acts of the Apostles

- The Pharisees and Sadducees confronted the Apostles, who were preaching. They arrested them.
  - Acts 4
- The High Priest arrested the apostles and put them in the public prison. During the night, an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors.
  - Acts 5
- Stephen, after doing great signs among the people, was seized by the authorities. And Stephen's face "was like the face of an angel".
  - Acts 6
- Stephen explains the Gospel to the authorities.
- Stephen looked to heaven, and saw "the heavens opened, and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God"
- Stephen is stoned to death, by the authorities.
  - Acts 7

Acts of the Apostles

- Saul (later renamed to Paul), a devout Hebrew Pharisee, was pleased with Stephens execution, and was himself persecuting the early Christians.
    - Acts 8
- Saul was traveling to Damascus. Suddenly “a light from heaven shone around him” and a voice said “Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?”
- Saul then converts, saying in the Synagogues that Jesus “is the Son of God”.
    - Acts 9
- James, brother of John, is killed. And Peter was arrested.
- An angel of the Lord freed Peter from prison.
    - Acts 12
- The Crowds were following them, and thought they were the gods Zeus and Hermes. Paul said to them: “ In past generations he allowed all the nations to walk in their own ways. Yet he did not leave himself without witness, for he did good by giving you rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, satisfying your hearts with food and gladness.”
    - Acts 14



Acts of the Apostles

- Someone asks ““Sirs, what must I do to be saved?” And they said, “Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household.” And they spoke the word of the Lord to him and to all who were in his house. And he took them the same hour of the night and washed their wounds; and he was baptized at once, he and all his family”
  - Acts 16
- Paul explains to jews in the Synagogue of Thessalonica, “that it was necessary for the Christ to suffer and to rise from the dead”
- Paul preaches in an Athenian temple, full of Idols, that their altar to “The Unknown God” actually represents the true creator God, who does not live in temples made by man, and does not need anything, but created everything.
  - Acts 17

The Epistles

Romans

- Paul criticizes Idoltatry, saying that idolators "…worshiped and served [creatures] rather than the Creator"
- Paul criticizes those who not only do evil acts, but also encourage their evil acts to be taken by others: "Though they know God's righteous decree that those who practice such things deserve to die, they not only do them but give approval to those who practice them."
    - Romans 1
- Paul condemns hypocritical judgment: "For in passing judgment on another you condemn yourself, because you, the judge, practice the very same things."
- Paul says "For it is not the hearers of the law who are righteous before God, but the doers of the law who will be justified. For when Gentiles, who do not have the law, by nature do what the law requires, they are a law to themselves, even though they do not have the law. They show that the work of the law is written on their hearts, while their conscience also bears witness, and their conflicting thoughts accuse or even excuse them"
    - Romans 2
- Paul says "Then what becomes of our boasting? It is excluded. By what kind of law? By a law of works? No, but by the law of faith. For we hold that one is justified by faith apart from works of the law. "
    - Romans 3

Romans

- **Righteousness by Faith** - Paul says “For what does the Scripture say? “Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness.” Now to the one who works, his wages are not counted as a gift but as his due. And to the one who does not work but believes in him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is counted as righteousness”
- Paul says “For the law brings wrath, but where there is no law there is no transgression.”
- **Definition of Faith** - Paul gives a definition Faith: “[Abraham] did not weaken in faith when he considered his own body, which was as good as dead (since he was about a hundred years old), or when he considered the barrenness of Sarah's womb. No unbelief made him waver concerning the promise of God, but he grew strong in his faith as he gave glory to God, fully convinced that God was able to do what he had promised.”
    - Romans 4
- Paul says “Likewise, my brothers, you also have died to the law through the body of Christ… But now we are released from the law, having died to that which held us captive, so that we serve in the new way of the Spirit and not in the old way of the written code.”
    - Romans 7



Romans

- Paul says “For all who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God.”
- Paul says “For those whom he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, in order that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. And those whom he predestined he also called, and those whom he called he also justified, and those whom he justified he also glorified.”
    - Romans 8
- Paul says “if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.”
    - Romans 10

Romans

- Paul says of the Israelites who reject Jesus: “And even they, if they do not continue in their unbelief, will be grafted in, for God has the power to graft them in again”
  - Romans 11
- Paul says that members of the church “do not all have the same function” – through grace, some have gifts like prophecy, service, teaching, generosity, leadership, or acts of mercy.
  - Romans 12
- Paul describes the natural order of human government, saying - “Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been instituted by God. Therefore whoever resists the authorities resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment. For rulers are not a terror to good conduct, but to bad… For he is the servant of God, an avenger who carries out God's wrath on the wrongdoer… Pay to all what is owed to them: taxes to whom taxes are owed, revenue to whom revenue is owed, respect to whom respect is owed, honor to whom honor is owed.”
  - Romans 13
- Paul says to “decide never to put a stumbling block or hindrance in the way of a brother”
  - Romans 14

1 Corinthians

- Paul makes a point about the “rulers of this age, who are doomed to pass away” – He says: “None of the rulers of this age understood this, for if they had, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory” (The Spiritual Powers that worked against Jesus thought that his death was their victory – but were mistaken)
    - 1 Corinthians 2
- Paul says “Do you not know that we are to judge angels?”
- Paul says “Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God?... And such were some of you. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God.”
    - 1 Corinthians 6



1 Corinthians

- Paul gives various teachings about marriage.
  - 1 Corinthians 7
- Paul says “our fathers were all under the cloud, and all passed through the sea, and all were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea, and all ate the same spiritual food, and all drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank from the spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ.”
- Paul says of those who offer food to Idols: “I imply that what pagans sacrifice they offer to demons and not to God. I do not want you to be participants with demons.”
  - 1 Corinthians 10
- Paul says “Whoever, therefore, eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty concerning the body and blood of the Lord. Let a person examine himself, then, and so eat of the bread and drink of the cup. For anyone who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment on himself.”
  - 1 Corinthians 11



2 Corinthians

- Paul describes the new covenant as being written “not on tablets of stone but on tablets of human hearts.”
  - 2 Corinthians 3
- Paul says “ if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation”
  - 2 Corinthians 5
- Paul says “Do not be unequally yoked with unbelievers… What accord has Christ with Belial?”
  - 2 Corinthians 6
- Paul says “The point is this: whoever sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and whoever sows bountifully will also reap bountifully. Each one must give as he has decided in his heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver”
  - 2 Corinthians 9
- Paul says “For it is not the one who commends himself who is approved, but the one whom the Lord commends.”
  - 2 Corinthians 10

Galatians

- Paul says “But even if we or an angel from heaven should preach to you a gospel contrary to the one we preached to you, let him be accursed.”
  - Galatians 1
- Paul corrects the Apostle Peter (Cephas) when he was eating with Gentiles, saying “If you, though a Jew, live like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?”
- **Justified by Faith** - Paul says “we know that a person is not justified by works of the law but through faith in Jesus Christ, so we also have believed in Christ Jesus, in order to be justified by faith in Christ and not by works of the law, because by works of the law no one will be justified.”
  - Galatians 2
- Paul says “Know then that it is those of faith who are the sons of Abraham. And the Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, “In you shall all the nations be blessed.” So then, those who are of faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith.”
  - Galatians 3

Ephesians

- **Saved by Grace through Faith (not Works)** - Paul says “For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, not a result of works, so that no one may boast.”
  - Ephesians 2
- Paul says “Do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption.”
  - Ephesians 4
- Paul says “Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the Lord. For the husband is the head of the wife even as Christ is the head of the church, his body, and is himself its Savior. Now as the church submits to Christ, so also wives should submit in everything to their husbands…. Husbands, love your wives, as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her”
  - Ephesians 5
- **Spiritual Warfare** - Paul says “For we do not wrestle against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers over this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places”
  - Ephesians 6



Philippians

- Paul says “And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death, even death on a cross. Therefore God has highly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name”
    - Philippians 2

Colossians

- **Jesus created All Things** - Paul says “He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities—all things were created through him and for him.”
  - Colossians 1
- **Jesus is Divine** - Paul says “For in him the whole fullness of deity dwells bodily”
  - Colossians 2



1 Thessalonians

- Paul says of the future appearance of the Lord: “That we who are alive, who are left until the coming of the Lord, will not precede those who have fallen asleep. For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a cry of command, with the voice of an archangel, and with the sound of the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ will rise first. Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we will always be with the Lord”
    - 1 Thessalonians 4

2 Thessalonians

- Paul says: “when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels in flaming fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and on those who do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. They will suffer the punishment of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his might,”
    - 2 Thessalonians 1
- Paul says: “And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will kill with the breath of his mouth and bring to nothing by the appearance of his coming. The coming of the lawless one is by the activity of Satan with all power and false signs and wonders, and with all wicked deception for those who are perishing, because they refused to love the truth and so be saved. Therefore God sends them a strong delusion, so that they may believe what is false, in order that all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness.”
- Paul says: “So then, brothers, stand firm and hold to the traditions that you were taught by us, either by our spoken word or by our letter.”
    - 2 Thessalonians 2
- Paul says: “we were not idle when we were with you, nor did we eat anyone's bread without paying for it… If anyone is not willing to work, let him not eat.”
    - 2 Thessalonians 3

1 Timothy

- Paul says “First of all, then, I urge that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all people, for kings and all who are in high positions, that we may lead a peaceful and quiet life,”
- Paul says “For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus”
  - 1 Timothy 2
- **Overseers** - Paul describes the requirements for an “overseer” of the church: “Therefore an overseer must be above reproach, the husband of one wife, sober-minded, self-controlled, respectable, hospitable, able to teach, not a drunkard… He must manage his own household well… for if someone does not know how to manage his own household, how will he care for God's church? He must not be a recent convert…”
- **Deacons** - Paul describes the requirements of a “Deacon” of the church: “Deacons likewise must be dignified, not double-tongued, not addicted to much wine, not greedy for dishonest gain… Their wives likewise must be dignified, not slanderers, but sober-minded, faithful in all things. Let deacons each be the husband of one wife, managing their children and their own households well. ”
  - 1 Timothy 3
- Paul says: “But those who desire to be rich fall into temptation, into a snare, into many senseless and harmful desires that plunge people into ruin and destruction. For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evils”
- Paul says: “As for the rich in this present age, charge them not to be haughty, nor to set their hopes on the uncertainty of riches, but on God, who richly provides us with everything to enjoy.”
  - 1 Timothy 6

2 Timothy

- Paul says: “ All Scripture is breathed out by God”
  - 2 Timothy 3

James

- James says: “But let him ask in faith, with no doubting, for the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea that is driven and tossed by the wind. For that person must not suppose that he will receive anything from the Lord;”
- James says: “Let no one say when he is tempted, “I am being tempted by God,” for God cannot be tempted with evil, and he himself tempts no one. But each person is tempted when he is lured and enticed by his own desire. Then desire when it has conceived gives birth to sin”
    - James 1
- James says: “What good is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can that faith save him?... So also faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead… I will show you my faith by my works… Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up his son Isaac on the altar? You see that faith was active along with his works, and faith was completed by his works… You see that a person is justified by works and not by faith alone”
    - James 2

James

- James says of Prayer: “Is anyone among you suffering? Let him pray. Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise. Is anyone among you sick? Let him call for the elders of the church, and let them pray over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord. And the prayer of faith will save the one who is sick, and the Lord will raise him up. And if he has committed sins, he will be forgiven. Therefore, confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person has great power as it is working. Elijah was a man with a nature like ours, and he prayed fervently that it might not rain, and for three years and six months it did not rain on the earth. Then he prayed again, and heaven gave rain, and the earth bore its fruit.”
    - James 5

1 Peter

- Peter says “ But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for his own possession, that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light.”
  - 1 Peter 2
- Peter says that Jesus “…went and proclaimed to the spirits in prison, because they formerly did not obey, when God's patience waited in the days of Noah”
- Peter says “Baptism, which corresponds to this, now saves you, not as a removal of dirt from the body but as an appeal to God for a good conscience, through the resurrection of Jesus Christ”
  - 1 Peter 3
- Peter says “But rejoice insofar as you share Christ's sufferings, that you may also rejoice and be glad when his glory is revealed. If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests upon you.
  - 1 Peter 4

2 Peter

- Peter says “For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to chains of gloomy darkness to be kept until the judgment; if he did not spare the ancient world, but preserved Noah, a herald of righteousness, with seven others, when he brought a flood upon the world of the ungodly; if by turning the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes he condemned them to extinction, making them an example of what is going to happen to the ungodly; and if he rescued righteous Lot, greatly distressed by the sensual conduct of the wicked (for as that righteous man lived among them day after day, he was tormenting his righteous soul over their lawless deeds that he saw and heard); then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trials…”
  - 2 Peter 2
- Peter says “But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, and then the heavens will pass away with a roar, and the heavenly bodies will be burned up and dissolved, and the earth and the works that are done on it will be exposed… But according to his promise we are waiting for new heavens and a new earth in which righteousness dwells.”
  - 2 Peter 3



1 John

- John says “If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.”
  - 1 John 1
- John says “Who is the liar but he who denies that Jesus is the Christ? This is the antichrist, he who denies the Father and the Son. No one who denies the Son has the Father”
  - 1 John 2
- John says “We should not be like Cain, who was of the evil one and murdered his brother. And why did he murder him? Because his own deeds were evil and his brother's righteous”
- John says “Everyone who hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding in him.”
  - 1 John 3
- John says “every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God. ”
  - 1 John 4
- John says “I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, that you may know that you have eternal life. ”
  - 1 John 5

Jude

- Jude says “And the angels who did not stay within their own position of authority, but left their proper dwelling, he has kept in eternal chains under gloomy darkness until the judgment of the great day— just as Sodom and Gomorrah and the surrounding cities… serve as an example by undergoing a punishment of eternal fire.
- Jude says “ But when the archangel Michael, contending with the devil, was disputing about the body of Moses, he did not presume to pronounce a blasphemous judgment, but said, “The Lord rebuke you.””
    - Jude 1



Hebrews

- Hebrews says “He is the radiance of the glory of God and the exact imprint of his nature”
- Hebrews says “ For to which of the angels did God ever say, “You are my Son, today I have begotten you”?”
  - Hebrews 1
- Hebrews says “So also Christ did not exalt himself to be made a high priest, but was appointed by him who said to him, “You are my Son, today I have begotten you”; as he says also in another place, You are a priest forever, after the order of Melchizedek.”
  - Hebrews 5
- Hebrews says that Melchizedek “is without father or mother or genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but resembling the Son of God he continues a priest forever.”
- Hebrews says of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross: “He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices daily, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself.”
  - Hebrews 7

Hebrews

- Hebrews says “under the law almost everything is purified with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness of sins.”
- Hebrews says “Nor was it to offer himself repeatedly, as the high priest enters the holy places every year with blood not his own, for then he would have had to suffer repeatedly since the foundation of the world. But as it is, he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. ”
    - Hebrews 9
- Hebrews says “By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac, and he who had received the promises was in the act of offering up his only son, of whom it was said, “Through Isaac shall your offspring be named.” He considered that God was able even to raise him from the dead, from which, figuratively speaking, he did receive him back”
    - Hebrews 11

Why I'm a Protestant

Faith Alone

Faith Alone

- Protestant Interpretation
  - “Faith Alone” is the only requirement for Eternal Life (achieved by forgiveness of your sins)
  - “Good Works” are simply a natural result of having Faith
- Catholic Interpretation
  - Catholics generally define Faith as “Faith and also your ongoing works and sacraments” that determine Salvation
  - James 2 makes it clear that “Faith Alone” is not enough, because Faith without Works is Dead and you are not Justified

Faith Alone

- There are many verses apparently saying that "**Works**" are required for Eternal Life:
  - **The Eucharist** – eat my flesh, drink my blood (John 6)
  - Jesus says "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is **Born of Water** and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God." (John 3)
  - In Matthew 19 someone asks "Teacher, what good deed must I do to have eternal life?" And Jesus replies, "If you would enter life, **keep the commandments**" (Matthew 19)
- But this is not all the Bible has to say about Salvation…

Faith Alone

- **Firstly, The #1 Statement made in The Bible about Eternal Life is Salvation by Faith (with no added qualifiers)**
  - Jesus: “For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and believes in him should have eternal life…” (John 6)
  - “[God] gave his only Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish but have eternal life.” (John 3)
  - Jesus: “Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever believes has eternal life.” (John 6)
  - Jesus: “And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in him may have eternal life.” (John 3)
  - “And they said, “Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household.” (Acts 16)
  - Paul says “if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved.” (Romans 10)
    - “Believe in your Heart” = Faith is firstly an Intellectual Belief & Conviction
  - Peter says “…who by God's power are being guarded through faith for a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time” (1 Peter 1)
- This is the #1 statement the Bible makes about “Eternal Life” and Entering the Kingdom of Heaven
- If the New Testament authors truly intended to communicate “Faith for Eternal Life, but only initially, and more importantly also ongoing works like Baptism or the Eucharist for application of Saving Grace” they did not make it clear to the crowds they spoke to, at all. Salvation by Faith is repeated many times.

Faith Alone

- **The Definition of Eternal Life**
  - "Now this is eternal life: that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent." (John 17)
- **The Will of The Father (& Future-Tense Certainty of Salvation)**
  - "For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and believes in him should have eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day." (John 6)
    - "I will raise him up on the Last Day" = Future Certainty (no qualifiers)
- **The Definition of Forgiveness by Penal Substitution**
  - "Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life; whoever does not obey the Son shall not see life, but the wrath of God remains on him." (John 3)
    - "Obeying the Son" = Believing (atleast in an Eternal Life context)

Faith Alone

- **Salvation by Faith Alone (& Future-Tense Certainty of Salvation)**
  - "But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, even when we were dead in our trespasses, made us alive together with Christ—by grace you have been saved— and raised us up with him and seated us with him in the heavenly places in Christ Jesus, so that in the coming ages he might show the immeasurable riches of his grace in kindness toward us in Christ Jesus. For by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not your own doing; it is the gift of God, not a result of works, so that no one may boast. For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared beforehand, that we should walk in them." (Ephesians 2)
    - "You Have been Saved" = a perfect tense description of the future certainty of salvation
    - Paul excludes all "works" of "your own doing" from your application of Grace – Grace, by definition cannot include works. Anything by your own actions (Sacraments, Baptism, Obedience) cannot apply Grace.
    - Paul designates the **"Application of Grace"** exclusively **"through Faith".**
    - He finishes by saying "we are… created for… good works". This verse does not contradict his previous theological statements. Works are simply a result of Faith.
- **The Future-Tense Certainty of Eternal Life**
  - "I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, that you may know that you have eternal life." (1 John 5)

Faith Alone

- **Salvation by Faith**
  - Paul says “He saved us, not because of works done by us in righteousness, but according to his own mercy, by the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit, whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior, so that being justified by his grace we might become heirs according to the hope of eternal life” (Titus 3)
    - Eternal Life = By grace, independently of “works done in righteousness”
      - Paul is not even saying “works of the law”, just simply “works of righteousness”
    - Your “State of Grace” is independent of Good Works

Faith Alone

- **Salvation by Faith**
  - Paul says “Do you not know what the Scripture says of Elijah, how he appeals to God against Israel? “Lord, they have killed your prophets, they have demolished your altars, and I alone am left, and they seek my life.” But what is God's reply to him? “I have kept for myself seven thousand men who have not bowed the knee to Baal.” So too at the present time there is a remnant, chosen by grace. But if it is by grace, it is no longer on the basis of works; otherwise grace would no longer be grace.” (Romans 11)
    - “Bowed the Knee to Baal” = Faith in Baal, not God (Allegiance to Baal, not God)
    - “on the basis of works” = Paul defines grace as being independent of works
  - “For if Abraham was justified by works, he has something to boast about, but not before God” (Romans 4)
    - Paul excludes Abraham’s “good works” from your Justification before God
  - “For what does the Scripture say? “Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness.” (Romans 4)
    - Paul identifies Abraham’s Righteousness only by his Intellectual Belief

Faith Alone

- **Salvation by Faith (independently of Good Works)**
  - "Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but the one who does the will of my Father who is in heaven. On that day many will say to me, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, and cast out demons in your name, and do many mighty works in your name?' And then will I declare to them, 'I never knew you; depart from me, you workers of lawlessness.'" (Matthew 7)
    - Entering Heaven = Based on "The Will of the Father" (Defined as "Believing in The Son" in John 6)
    - "The Workers of Lawlessness" = Those who do not do the Will of the Father, despite "many mighty works"
    - Jesus is rejecting those who "have mighty works" but no "Faith" from entrance to Heaven.

Faith Alone

- **Sin that Leads to Death vs. Sin not Leading to Death**
  - "If anyone sees his brother committing a sin not leading to death, he shall ask, and God will give him life—to those who commit sins that do not lead to death. There is sin that leads to death; I do not say that one should pray for that. All wrongdoing is sin, but there is sin that does not lead to death." (1 John 5)
    - Catholics suggest that "mortal sin" (when John says "sin leading to death") removes your State of Grace (removes your Eternal Life).
    - "sin that leads to death" = serious sin leading to physical death (like Ananias, in Acts 5) or perhaps even an example like the Death Penalty for Murder
    - "all wrongdoing is sin" = John emphasizes that **all sin is equally damning** – meaning there is no distinction in terms of your "guilty" status at Final Judgment between different types of sin – John is not making a comment about your "State of Grace" being changed.
    - In context, John is addressing saved believers, and emphasizes their Faith Alone Salvation:
      - "I write these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, that you may know that you have eternal life." (1 John 5)
    - John is not making a statement about Eternal Life and Salvation (called the "2nd Death") – but a statement about physical temporal death (1st Death). Sin has physical consequences.

Faith Alone

- **The Parable of the Wedding Feast (Matthew 22)**
  - The Man "clothed with no Wedding Garment" who was thrown out (despite being in the Wedding Hall, among the other guests who came to the Wedding)
    - The man was not doing the Will of the Wedding Host, wearing his wedding garments. The Wedding Garment is likely to be "the will of the father" which is defined as "believing in the son" by John 6



Faith Alone

- **Jesus directly refutes "Worked-Based Salvation" by reframing the Jew's questions about the "works of God"**
  - Then [the jews] said to him, "What must we do, to be doing the works of God?" Jesus answered them, "This is the work of God, that you believe in him whom he has sent." (John 6)
    - Jesus then restated numerous times (in John 6) that "Believing" leads to "Eternal Life".



Faith Alone

- **The Judgment of the Sheep & The Goats (Matthew 25)**
  - This story is used to justify "works based salvation" requirements (because it is an eternal judgment based on good works).
    - On His Right = The Righteous Sheep, who did good works "to the least of me", and inherit the kingdom of God
    - On His Left = The Cursed Goats, who did not do good works "to the least of me"
    - Jesus begins this story by saying "When the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the angels with him, then he will sit on his glorious throne"
      - "Before him will be gathered all The Nations" = **The Gentiles** (gentiles are always called "the nations")
      - This is a direct allusion to Matthew 16 – " For the Son of Man is going to come with his angels in the glory of his Father, and then he will repay each person according to what he has done. Truly, I say to you, there are some standing here who will not taste death until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom."
      - And an allusion to Matthew 24, and the "End of the Age" and the "Abomination of Desolation" – Jesus says "and he will send out his angels"
    - Both the Goats & the Sheep are confused – "When did we do [good works] to you yourself, Jesus?" – Because they are Gentiles.
    - This judgment is clearly talking about the Judgment of the Gentiles after the **Destruction of the Temple (in 70 AD),** the end of the Nation of Israel.
    - "Matthew 25 is thus a judgment passage which deals with survivors of the tribulation"
      - https://faithalone.org/grace-in-focus-articles/matthew-25-31-46-works-salvation/



Faith Alone

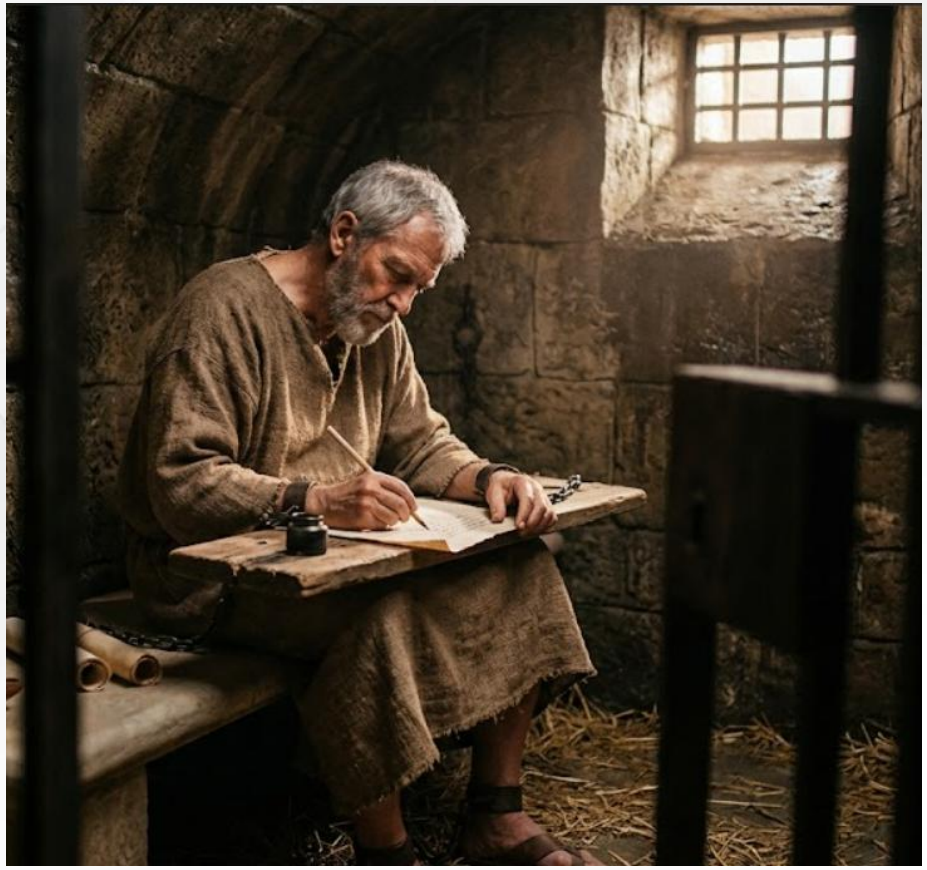
- **Jesus apparently states that being "Saved" requires "Enduring to the End" (meaning Obedience through works)**
  - Jesus says "… the one who endures to the end will be saved" (Matthew 10)
  - Jesus says "… Then they will deliver you up to tribulation and put you to death… But the one who endures to the end will be saved" (Matthew 24)
    - Catholics will view these verses as an endorsement of **"obedience based salvation"** – you will only be "saved" if you keep up your good works & sacraments & obedience.
    - The context of Matthew 10 is that Jesus is sending out 72 missionaries to preach to all of Israel, and spread the Gospel, before the Final Judgment of Israel – leading to the Destruction of the Temple in 70 AD.
      - Jesus says "… If anyone will not receive you or listen to your words, shake off the dust from your feet when you leave that house or town. Truly, I say to you, it will be more bearable on the day of judgment for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah than for that town." (Matthew 10)
      - Jesus says "… Brother will deliver brother over to death, and the father his child, and children will rise against parents and have them put to death, and you will be hated by all for my name's sake. But the one who endures to the end will be saved." (Matthew 10)
      - Jesus says "So everyone who acknowledges me before men, I also will acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven, but whoever denies me before men, I also will deny before my Father who is in heaven." (Matthew 10)
    - Matthew 10 and Matthew 24 are specifically about the **Tribulation and the Abomination of Desolation** before the coming of the Son of Man – and the end of the nation of Israel.
      - These verses have absolutely nothing to do with the topic of Eternal Life.
    - In regards to "physical death", Jesus is saying whoever remains Faithful during this difficult time will be physically saved. Otherwise, they apparently will die during this Tribulation.
      - Jesus says "And if those days had not been cut short, no human being would be saved." (Matthew 24)
    - In regards to "spiritual death", Jesus maintains his constant definition of salvation – "whoever denies me before men" (Faith/Allegiance) he will "deny before my Father who is in heaven".

Faith Alone

- **Jesus will apparently Judge us by "our words"**
  - Jesus says "I tell you, on the day of judgment people will give account for every careless word they speak, for by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned."" (Matthew 12)
    - We've already seen that those who have Faith are absent from the true "final judgment" – they are automatically saved
      - Paul says "If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart... you will be saved" (Romans 10)
      - Jesus says whoever "acknowledges [Jesus] before men" will be "acknowledged before the Father" and "whoever denies me before men, I also will deny before my Father who is in heaven" (Matthew 10) – Jesus is approves or denies you solely based on your Allegiance or Non-Allegiance (Faith).
    - With that definition of Faith in mind, and the reality of your avoidance of true judgment simply by the existence of your Faith – what Jesus says of "[giving] an account for every careless word" and "by your words you will be justified… [or] condemned" (Matthew 12) is accurate of those who are unbelievers. They have no covering for sin.

Faith Alone

- **Paul says to "Work out your Salvation"**
  - Paul says "work out your own salvation with fear and trembling, for it is God who works in you, both to will and to work for his good pleasure." (Philippians 2)
    - Paul begins Philippians 1 describing his physical imprisonment: "And most of the brothers, having become confident in the Lord by my **imprisonment**, are much more bold to speak the word without **fear**… The former proclaim Christ out of selfish ambition, not sincerely but thinking to afflict me in my imprisonment… for I know that through your prayers and the help of the Spirit of Jesus Christ this will turn out for my **deliverance**… but that with full courage now as always Christ will be honored in my **body**, whether by **life** or by **death**… I may hear of you that you are standing firm in one spirit, with one mind striving side by side for the faith of the gospel, and not frightened in anything by your opponents. This is a clear sign to them of their destruction, but of your **salvation**, and that from God" (Philippians 1)
    - Paul continues afterward in Philippians 2: "[hold] fast to the word of life, so that in the day of Christ I may be proud that I did not run in vain or labor in vain." (Philippians 2)
    - Paul is using "Salvation" in a physical sense – both for Paul and the People he is writing to – as they are actively being persecuted.



Faith Alone

- **James 2 – "Faith and Works" for Eternal Life?**
  - What good is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can that faith **save** him? If a brother or sister is poorly clothed and lacking in daily food, and one of you says to them, "Go in peace, be warmed and filled," without giving them the things needed for the body, what good is that? So also faith by itself, if it does not have works, is **dead**.
  - But someone will say, "You have faith and I have works." Show me your faith apart from your works, and I will show you my faith by my works. You believe that God is one; you do well. Even the demons believe—and shudder! Do you want to be shown, you foolish person, that faith apart from works is useless? Was not Abraham our father **justified by works** when he offered up his son Isaac on the altar? You see that faith was active along with his works, and faith was **completed** by his works; and the Scripture was fulfilled that says, "Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him as righteousness"—and he was called a friend of God. You see that a person is **justified** by works and not by faith alone. And in the same way was not also Rahab the prostitute **justified** by works when she received the messengers and sent them out by another way? For as the body apart from the spirit is dead, so also faith apart from works is **dead**.
- Firstly, We've already seen the New Testament defend the idea of "Faith Alone" leading to Permanent Salvation – so James cannot contradict it.
- Based on the Context, James is clearly not making a statement about Eternal Life, but rather your **Justification before Men**, not your proof of **Justification before God** (because only God can know your Faith) – the context is Christians who claim to have "Faith", yet they have zero good works – so how can Men have evidence they really have Faith? James describes their Faith as **"dead, useless, incomplete".**
  - Protestants explain this as "Saving Faith would never be without good works"
  - Meanwhile, Paul says Abraham is **Justified before God** because of Faith Alone, not works (Romans 4)
- Importantly, Abraham himself was declared "Righteous" by God (in Genesis 15), simply by "believing God" and in his words, before the Sacrifice of Isaac in Genesis 22 – and not even declared "Righteous" by his initial works in Genesis 12.





Faith Alone

- Why should someone (like a Protestant) who has achieved “Eternal Life” simply by Faith, care about “Works” at all?
- Jesus makes a clear distinction between “Entering Heaven” and “Rewards in Heaven”
  - Anyone can “**Enter Heaven”** – simply by “believing in” Jesus
    - As stated by all verses where Jesus says Eternal Life is gained by Believing
    - Shown by the Parable of the Wedding Feast, and the Thief on the cross who repents
  - But importantly, your **“Rewards in Heaven”** are unique to every persons works on earth
    - Parable of the Talents, and the Lesson of “Store up your treasures in heaven”
    - (And of course, your Life on Plant Earth would be significantly worse, if you do not follow “the commandments of God”)





Faith Alone

- **Eternal Life vs. Rewards in Heaven based on Good Works**
  - "And everyone who has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or lands, for my name's sake, will receive a hundredfold and will inherit eternal life. But many who are first will be last, and the last first." (Matthew 19)
    - Jesus contrasts "Eternal Life" and the idea of "receiving a hundred fold" (specifically for their suffering endured during their life on Earth, by leaving houses for his sake)
  - Paul says "He will render to each one according to his works: to those who by patience in well-doing seek for glory and honor and immortality, he will give eternal life; but for those who are self-seeking and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, there will be wrath and fury. (Romans 2)
    - "Do not obey the truth" = Faith (leading to eternal life)
    - "Render to each according to his works" = rewards or punishment on Planet Earth, and rewards in the Kingdom of Heaven
  - Paul says "If the work that anyone has built on the foundation survives, he will receive a reward. If anyone's work is burned up, he will suffer loss, though he himself will be saved, but only as through fire." (1 Corinthians 3)
    - "will be saved" = Entering the Kingdom of Heaven
    - "receive a reward" = Rewards in Heaven (an independent metric, of your entrance to heaven)

Faith Alone

- A few Biblical Examples of “Faith” (Intellectual Belief & Certainty) being the sole requirement of God
  - All of Jesus’ miracles & healings were based on the Faith of the receiver (Roman Centurion, Canaanite woman, etc.) – purely Intellectual Belief about his powers & identity.
  - God’s judgment of the Israelite Spies who had fear about Giants in Canaan – despite God’s promise of victory. Only Caleb and Aaron had believing faith.
  - Abraham declared righteous by Faith in the promises of God

Faith Alone

- Any **action** you must take to **apply Grace** to yourself is **functionally identical to "Works of the Law"** – your "righteousness" is achieved by your "merit"
  - Paul says "I testify again to every man who accepts circumcision that he is obligated to keep the whole law. **You are severed from Christ**, you who would be justified by the law; **you have fallen away from grace**" (Galatians 5)
  - And most of the "works of righteousness" are identical to Old Testament Mosaic Law (such as love your neighbor, give to the poor, or do not murder, etc.)

Faith Alone

- Catholic view of “Initial Salvation” (by Faith) vs. “Ongoing Salvation” (By works & sacraments)
  - Firstly, many key verses make the future certainty of Eternal Life a guarantee, simply by your “Initial” Faith – and many verses overtly state that “Works” can never be paired with the application of “Grace”.
  - This concept of required “ongoing obedience” (excluding your initial faith salvation) is no where clearly stated in the Bible. If it were the intended meaning of the authors, they would’ve more clearly stated it like this:
    - “Believe in the Lord Jesus Christ and you will be saved… But remember, within 5 minutes of being a Christian, you will sin, so quickly forget out previous commands about Faith and Eternal Life.”

The Eucharist – Literal or Metaphorical?

The Eucharist

- Catholic Interpretation: The Eucharist (communion) is the “Real Prescence” – not symbolic, but literal – the literal “body and blood” of Christ’s sacrifice, required for the Atonement of Sins (at Catholic Mass).

- John 6
  - For my flesh is **true** food, and my blood is **true** drink.”
  - “**Truly, truly**, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you.”
    - “**Truly**” – Is this enough to prove it is **Literal**?
    - The Jews themselves are confused by his apparently cannibalistic teaching: “How can this man give us his flesh to eat?”





The Eucharist



- John 6
  - "This is the work of God, that you **believe in him** whom he has sent."
  - "I am the bread of life; whoever comes to me shall not hunger, and whoever **believes in me** shall never thirst."
    - Jesus is directly **equating** "Thirst" and "Hunger" being achieved just by "believing in him"
  - "For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and **believes in him** should have eternal life…"
  - **"Truly, truly**, I say to you, whoever believes has eternal life. I am the bread of life."
    - Jesus is apparently contradicting himself
      - Previously, he said "Truly, you must eat the flesh of the Son of Man"
      - Now, he also is saying, "Truly, [you have Eternal Life, just by believing]"
  - "I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will **live forever."**
    - Jesus is apparently creating yet another required Sacrament – that you eat the literal Bread that will literally descend from Heaven (just like a literal Eucharist)
  - "It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh is no help at all… But there are some of you who do not believe."
    - Jesus **contrasts** a literal viewpoint by stating that the "**Spirit**" alone gives Eternal Life – and is achieved by "**believing**".
    - Jesus **rejects** "the flesh" – which would include a literal interpretation of the eucharist, to gain eternal life.
  - Jesus finishes his speech by saying "But there are some of you who **do not believe**"
    - He does not finish his speech by saying "some of you still will not eat & drink communion"
- Jesus is repeatedly **equating** "Believing in Him" with "Drinking my Blood & Eating my Flesh" and the "Bread from Heaven".
- Jesus uses 2 **distinct** metaphors – "eating the flesh of the son of man" and also "The Bread that came down from heaven" – showing that both are Metaphorical. The entire passage only references "The Manna in the Desert" – not even directly mentioning the ritual of "The Lords Supper" itself.

The Eucharist



- Jesus is purposefully **alternating** between the Key Lesson of **"Believe in Me for Eternal Life"** and **Metaphors** to highlight that key lesson (John 6).

- **Metaphor: Food -** Do not work for the food that perishes, but for the food that endures to eternal life, which the Son of Man will give to you. For on him God the Father has set his seal.
- **Belief -** … This is the work of God, that you believe in him whom he has sent.
- **Metaphor: Bread from Heaven** … Truly, truly, I say to you, it was not Moses who gave you the bread from heaven, but my Father gives you the true bread from heaven. For the bread of God is he who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world." … I am the bread of life; whoever comes to me shall not hunger, and whoever believes in me shall never thirst.
- **Belief -** But I said to you that you have seen me and yet do not believe.
- **Metaphor: Bread from Heaven** … For I have come down from heaven, not to do my own will but the will of him who sent me. And this is the will of him who sent me, that I should lose nothing of all that he has given me, but raise it up on the last day.
- **Belief -** For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who looks on the Son and believes in him should have eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day… Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever believes has eternal life.
- **Metaphor: Bread from Heaven & Eat my Flesh -** I am the bread of life. Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died. This is the bread that comes down from heaven, so that one may eat of it and not die. I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. And the bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh.
- **Metaphor: Eat my Flesh & Drink my Blood -** The Jews then disputed among themselves, saying, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?" So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up on the last day. For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink. Whoever feeds on my flesh and drinks my blood abides in me, and I in him. As the living Father sent me, and I live because of the Father, so whoever feeds on me, he also will live because of me.
- **Metaphor: Bread from Heaven -** This is the bread that came down from heaven, not like the bread the fathers ate, and died. Whoever feeds on this bread will live forever.
- **Belief -** … Do you take offense at this? Then what if you were to see the Son of Man ascending to where he was before? It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh is no help at all. The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and life. But there are some of you who do not believe."

The Eucharist

- **<u>"The Well of Water" of Eternal Life</u>**
  - John 4 - Jesus is talking to the Samaritan Women at the well, and says: "Everyone who drinks of this water will be thirsty again, but whoever drinks of the water that I will give him will never be thirsty again. The water that I will give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life."
    - Jesus is apparently **<u>creating yet another new method of Eternal Life</u>** – "[drinking] of the water" he gives people... Is this Literal?
- **<u>Being "Born Again" by Water for Eternal Life</u>**
  - John 3 - "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God." Nicodemus said to him, "How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born?" Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit... And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, that whoever believes in him may have eternal life... Whoever believes in him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe is condemned already…"
    - Jesus is apparently **<u>creating yet another new method of Eternal Life</u>** – Being "born again" by "water and the spirit"
    - But importantly, he equates being "born again" with "whoever believes [will] have eternal life"
- **<u>Bread "Descending from Heaven" for Eternal Life</u>**
  - John 6 - "I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever"
    - Jesus is apparently **<u>creating yet another new method of Eternal Life</u>** – Just like the manna in the desert of the Exodus, there must be "bread" descending from heaven, that you must eat to have Eternal Life.





The Eucharist

- Luke 22 - Jesus said “This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me… This cup that is poured out for you is the new covenant in my blood…”
  - **“Remembrance of me”** = Highlighting the symbolic nature of the Tradition of “the Lords Supper”
  - The **only** comment Jesus has on Communion, as he is doing it for the first time, is its **symbolic** nature. He does not directly state “Do this often, to have your sins forgiven and to have Eternal Life”
  - Importantly, Jesus is conducting this event Before The Crucifixion has even happened, and his “sacrifice” has occurred.
- Matthew 26 – Jesus says: “I tell you I will not drink again of this **fruit of the vine** until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.”
  - Jesus is not describing the Lords Supper as Literal – just simply “fruit of the vine” (Wine).



The Eucharist

- The Bronze Serpent – Moses mounts a bronze serpent on a pole. The Israelites, simply by looking at the pole, are healed from the “snake bites” - symbolizing Sin
  - God said: “Make a fiery serpent and set it on a pole, and everyone who is bitten, when he sees it, shall live” (Numbers 21)
  - This is a **direct 1-to-1 typological analogy** to the forgiveness of sins, by nothing more than faith in the crucifixion (belief in the sacrifice of the Messiah)



The Eucharist

- The Bible is full of Metaphorical Language - There can be reasonable disagreement in interpretation between what is Literal and Metaphorical.
  - The Messiah in the Old Testament is “The Branch”.
  - Jesus is “the vine”
  - Jesus is a “shepherd”
  - Jesus is “the door”
  - Jesus is “the bread from heaven”
- The Sacrifice for all Sins was completed at the moment of Crucifixion, permanently – never to be conducted again
  - Hebrews says “Nor was it to offer himself repeatedly, as the high priest enters the holy places every year with blood not his own, for then he would have had to suffer repeatedly since the foundation of the world. But as it is, he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. ”
    - Hebrews 9
  - Hebrews says of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross: “He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices daily, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself.”
    - Hebrews 7

The Eucharist

- Jesus is **constantly** talking in **Spiritual Language**, and the people around him are incorrectly interpreting his words **literally.**

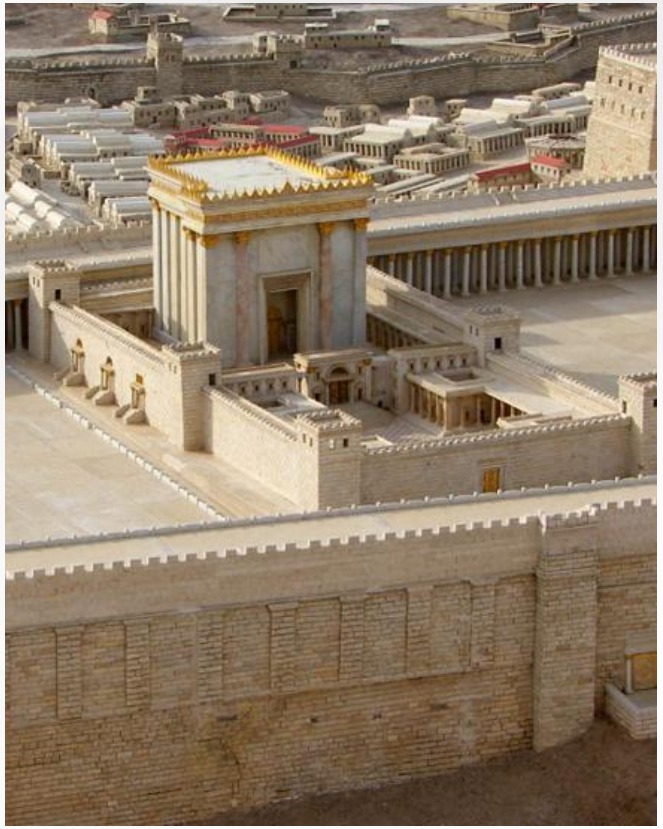
- **"The Eucharist" for Eternal Life** - "When many of his disciples heard it, they said, "This is a hard saying; who can listen to it?" But Jesus, knowing in himself that his disciples were grumbling about this, said to them, "Do you take offense at this? Then what if you were to see the Son of Man ascending to where he was before? It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh is no help at all. The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and life. But there are some of you who do not believe."… After this many of his disciples turned back and no longer walked with him… Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life, and we have believed," (John 6)
  - The "disciples who no longer walked him" wanted **literal physical bread** – as shown at the beginning of John 6, with the "feeding of the five thousand" with bread.
  - Those who remained understood the Spiritual interpretation of Jesus' words, and Peter correctly says: "You have the words of Eternal Life, and we have Believed". Peter understands Jesus' **spiritual** teaching.
  - Jesus finishes his speech by emphasizing the **Spirit** and the message of **Believing.** Believing is the Will of the Father.
- **The Son of Man came down from Heaven** – Jesus said "I am the bread that came down from heaven." They said, "Is not this Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'? (John 6)





The Eucharist

- **Building the Temple** – "Jesus answered them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." The Jews then said, "It has taken forty-six years to build this temple, and will you raise it up in three days?" But he was speaking about the temple of his body."
- **Being Born Again by Water** – Jesus said "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born again he cannot see the kingdom of God." Nicodemus said to him, "How can a man be born when he is old? Can he enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born?" Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I say to you, unless one is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter the kingdom of God. That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit." (John 3)
    - Jesus finishes his speech by saying "That which is born of the Spirit is Spirit"
- **The "Well of Water" for Eternal Life** – Jesus said "The water that I will give him will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life." The woman said to him, "Sir, give me this water, so that I will not be thirsty or have to come here to draw water." … Jesus continued "But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth." (John 4)
    - Jesus finishes his speech by saying "The true worshippers will worship … in spirit … [and] God is spirit"



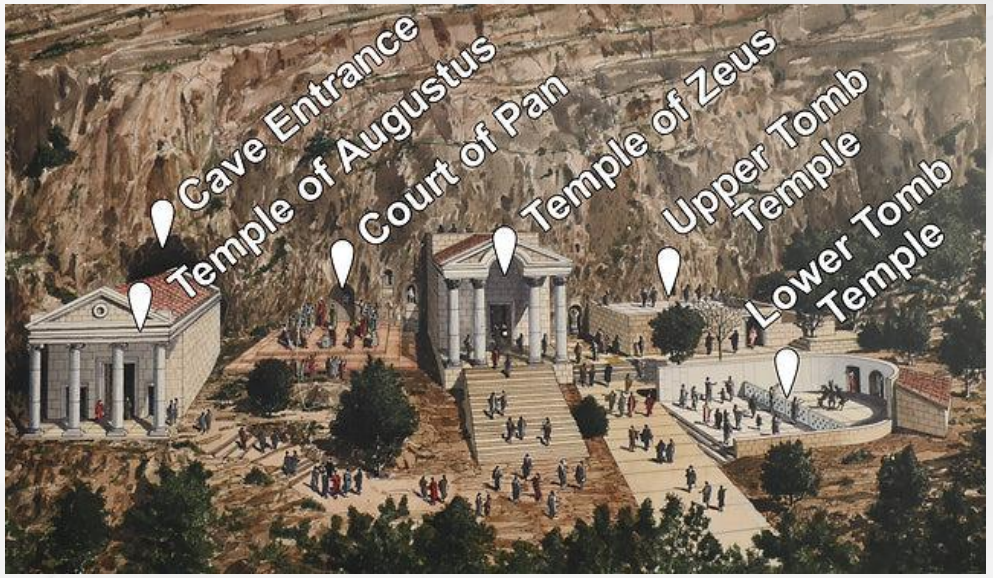
The Eucharist

- **Abraham knowing Jesus** – Jesus said "Your father Abraham rejoiced that he would see my day. He saw it and was glad." So the Jews said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and have you seen Abraham?" Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I am." (John 8)
    - The Jews thought Abraham literally had seen Jesus, a 30 year old man. But Jesus was emphasizing his eternal pre-existence.
- **Jesus Disappears** – Jesus said "I will be with you a little longer, and then I am going to him who sent me. You will seek me and you will not find me. Where I am you cannot come." The Jews said to one another, "Where does this man intend to go that we will not find him? Does he intend to go to the Dispersion among the Greeks and teach the Greeks?" (John 7)
- **Food to Eat** - Meanwhile the disciples were urging him, saying, "Rabbi, eat." But he said to them, "I have food to eat that you do not know about." So the disciples said to one another, "Has anyone brought him something to eat?" Jesus said to them, "My food is to do the will of him who sent me and to accomplish his work." (John 4)
    - Similar to "Eating my Flesh and Drinking my Blood", Jesus uses a metaphorical statement about "food to eat" being "my food is to do the will of him who sent me" – which is "believing in him" according to John 6.
- **Rivers of Living Water** – Jesus said "If anyone thirsts, let him come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, 'Out of his heart will flow rivers of living water.'" Now this he said about the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were to receive, for as yet the Spirit had not been given, because Jesus was not yet glorified. (John 7)

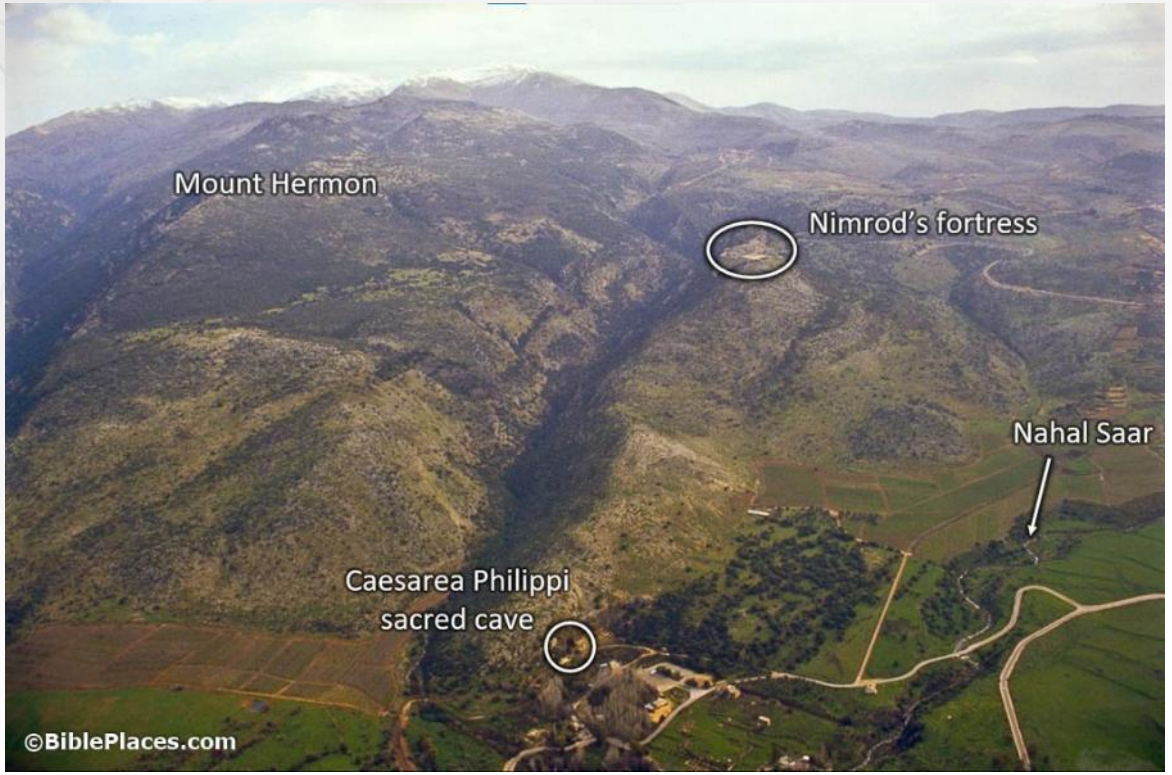
The Pope & “The Rock”

The Rock?



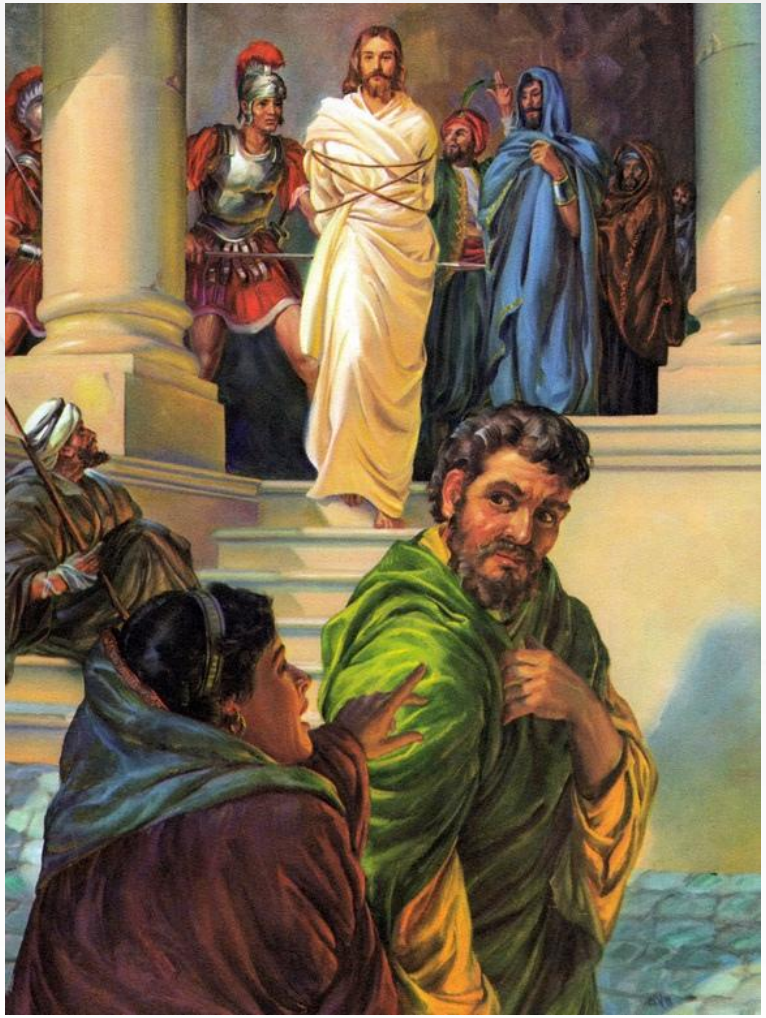


- Matthew 16 - In Caesarea Philippi, Jesus asks his disciples who they think "the Son of Man" is.
- Matthew 16 –
  - "Simon Peter replied, "**You are the Christ**, the Son of the living God."
  - And Jesus answered him, "Blessed are you, Simon Bar-Jonah! For flesh and blood has not revealed **this** to you, but my Father who is in heaven.
  - And I tell you, you are Peter, and **on this rock** I will build my church, and **the gates of hell** shall not prevail against it.
  - I will give you **the keys** of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven."
- **"On This Rock"** = Peter's confession of Faith in the Messiah
  - The phrase "revealed this" (Peter's confession of faith), is directly equivalent to "on this rock"
  - The statement of "and on this Rock" is distinct from Peter himself – and Peter's name meaning "The rock" is symbolic, or even a pun (similar to how every Christian is "The Church", peter is also apart of "the rock").
- **"The Keys to the Kingdom"** = Belief in the Messiah
- **"The Gates of Hell" (& also "The Rock")** = Caesarea Philippi, next to Mount Hermon, a historical site in the Northern Kingdom of Israel, next to the Tribe of Dan, heavily associated with Baal worship (and Pagan Temples).



The Rock?

- Jesus says that the “Gates of Hell” will never prevail against “The Rock” that he builds his church on (the Rock is perfect, infallible, and undefeatable)
- Just a few verses later, Peter is defeated by “the Gates of Hell”:
  - “From that time Jesus began to show his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and suffer many things from the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and on the third day be raised. And Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him, saying, “Far be it from you, Lord! This shall never happen to you.” But he turned and said to Peter, “**Get behind me, Satan**! You are a hindrance to me. For you are not setting your mind on the things of God, but on the things of man.” (Matthew 16)
- Peter also later denies Jesus three times.
- Peter’s imperfection (and thus, his inability to be the perfect foundation of the church) makes it unlikely he is “The Rock” of Matthew 16.



The Rock?

- The most direct method Jesus could've used to state Peter was the leader of the church, was to say "You are Peter, and on **you** I will build my church." Instead, he says "and on **this** rock", referring to the previous subject.
- Peter himself identifies Jesus as the person of "on this Rock" – and identifies himself as just a stone among many other stones (the church).
  - "As you come to him, a **living stone** rejected by men but in the sight of God chosen and precious, you yourselves like **living stones are being built up as a spiritual house, to be a holy priesthood**, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. For it stands in Scripture: "Behold, I am laying in Zion a stone, a **cornerstone** chosen and precious, and whoever believes in him will not be put to shame."" (1 Peter 2)
- And Peter identifies All Christians as a Universal Priesthood
  - "But you are a chosen race, a **royal priesthood**, a holy nation..." (1 Peter 2)
- Peter identifies himself as a "fellow elder" among other elders & apostles
  - "So I exhort the elders among you, as a fellow elder and a witness of the sufferings of Christ" (1 Peter 5)
- Peter's name of "Rock" is symbolic, and true of the church as a whole
  - Abram was renamed to Abraham (symbolizing his inclusion to the family of God)
- This apparent role of Peter as the Universal Leader of the Church (and his successors), is never once mentioned again in the New Testament, or by Peter himself in his epistles.
  - In Galatians 2, Paul identifies Peter equally alongside James & John, as "pillars" of the church.
  - In Galatians 2, Paul himself even corrects Peter's hypocritical actions.

The Rock?

- Matthew 16 – "… I will give you **the keys** of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you **bind** on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you **loose** on earth shall be loosed in heaven."
- Matthew 18 – "If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector. Truly, I say to you, whatever you **bind** on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you **loose** on earth shall be loosed in heaven…"
    - This verse applies the same "binding & loosing" language – and the effects of it on Heaven & Earth – but directly applies it to the church as a whole
- **The Keys of the Kingdom** = Entrance to Heaven (achieved by the power of Peter's Confession of Faith)
    - "Keys" is plural (not exclusive to Peter)
- **"As a Gentile & Tax Collector"** = An "Outsider"
- **"Binding and Loosing"** = The authority of your local church to ex-communicate you if they judge that you are such an extreme sinner that you cannot fellowship with their church (this authority is given to all churches & christians)



The Rock?

- Matthew 23 – Jesus said: “But you are not to be called rabbi, for you have one teacher, and you are all brothers. And call no man your father on earth, for you have one Father, who is in heaven. Neither be called instructors, for you have one instructor, the Christ.”
    - Jesus is making the point that the ultimate authority, and source of teaching, is from himself (recorded in the Words of the Bible Text).
- 1 Corinthians 10 – Paul says: “all were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea, and all ate the same spiritual food, and all drank the same spiritual drink. For they drank from the spiritual Rock that followed them, and the Rock was Christ”
- The Old Testament
    - The Messiah would be “the rejected cornerstone” of the builders
    - God’s 1st command to Moses is to “strike the rock” (**crucifixion**) to bring forth water in the desert
    - God’s 2nd command to Moses is to “speak to the rock” (**confession of faith**) to bring forth water in the desert



The Rock?

- Daniel 2 – "… **A stone** was cut out by no human hand, and it struck the image… [and] broke [it] in pieces."
  - God's Eternal Kingdom (the Stone) will replace all of the earthly kingdoms (of Nebuchadnezzars Vision).
- Daniel 7 – God's Eternal Kingdom will be led by "The Son of Man, coming with the clouds of heaven".

- Clearly, Jesus is all of these things. He is the Rock, The Son of Man, and the Eternal Kingdom.





The Rock?

- Isaiah 22 – is it a direct typological description of the office of Peter? Using similar language of “the rock”, “binding”, and “keys”?
    - Thus says the Lord GOD of hosts, “Come, go to this steward, to Shebna, who is over the household, and say to him: What have you to do here, and whom have you here, that you have cut out here a tomb for yourself, you who cut out a tomb on the height and carve a dwelling for yourself in the **rock**? Behold, the LORD will hurl you away violently, O you strong man. He will seize firm hold on you and whirl you around and around, and throw you like a ball into a wide land. There you shall die, and there shall be your glorious chariots, you shame of your master's house. I will thrust you from your office, and you will be pulled down from your station. In that day I will call my servant Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, and I will clothe him with your robe, and will **bind** your sash on him, and will commit your authority to his hand. And he shall be a father to the inhabitants of Jerusalem and to the house of Judah. And I will place on his shoulder the **key of the house of David**. He shall open, and none shall shut; and he shall shut, and none shall open. And I will fasten him like a **peg in a secure place**, and he will become a throne of honor to his father's house. And they will hang on him the whole honor of his father's house, the offspring and issue, every small vessel, from the cups to all the flagons. In that day, declares the LORD of hosts, the peg that was fastened in a secure place will give way, and it will be cut down and fall, and the load that was on it will be cut off, for the LORD has spoken.”
- An Argument of Typology, and Parallelism – is not automatically an instruction for New Testament doctrine.
- “The Key of the House of David” is a singular key, not the multiple “keys” given to all apostles/Christians in Matthew 16.

The Rock?

- Summary
  - **“The Rock”** likely has multiple meanings
    - At a foundational level, Jesus himself is “the Rock”, the “cornerstone”, and the “stone” of the eternal kingdom of God
      - An important feature of Jesus as “the rock” (or “the foundation”) is his infallibility – which does not apply to Peter.
    - Peter is renamed to “the rock” after his confession (Peter’s name in Greek means “Rock”)
      - (And likely anyone who is Christian is also apart of “the rock”)
    - Jesus saying “Upon this rock I will build My Church” is The Confession of Faith
    - Mount Hermon is “The Rock” and the Pagan Temples (that Jesus is at war with) are the “Gates of Hell”
  - **“The Keys to the Kingdom”** with the Power of **“Binding and Loosing in Heaven”**
    - Available to anyone with the power of the gospel in the church
  - The idea of the office of **“The Pope” (and its line of successors)** or **Rome’s supremacy over all churches** is never mentioned again (outside of Matthew 16).
    - For such a large doctrine, we would expect a much more thorough explanation – and the fact that Matthew 16 can very easily be interpreted as “the rock” being about Jesus.

Church Fathers & Traditions

Church Fathers & Traditions

- The Bible is 1200 pages long, and The New Testament itself is 300 pages
  - It is unreasonable to assume that God forgot to include any essential commands or essential doctrines or required traditions – in his verified teaching book (the Bible)
    - Looking for more doctrine (which itself cannot be verified as "infallible" or "inspired" like the Bible itself) is unnecessary and dangerous
- Early Church Fathers are simply **Commentary** (not infallible teachers of doctrine)
  - Even if there is 100% universal agreement by Church Fathers – that "2 + 2 = 5", but the Bible teaches that "2 + 2 = 4", the Church fathers aren't authoritative
  - Bible Interpretation will always be "battleground of ideas"
  - Jesus warns us repeatedly of the "Traditions of the Pharisees" being mistakenly taught as "The Commandments of God"
- There is no "1 true interpretation of the Bible"
  - The bible has dozens of doctrines & belief sets – just for the Gospels alone. There is never going to be universal agreement.
  - Jesus tells us he is our Prime Authority: "[your] one true instructor is the Christ"

Church Fathers & Traditions

- The Bible tells us a lot of information about the **“Early Church”**
  - Paul is constantly correcting the early churches – and warning of false teachers and false teaching
  - The Book of Revelation has 7 letters to early churches – and many of them were completely incorrect in their beliefs, and they condemned them.
  - Paul even says that “Spirits” can teach false doctrines – and to “test spirits”.
- The **“Bible Text”** would’ve been fairly widespread, even by 50 AD
  - The “words of Jesus” (which is later the written Gospel Text itself) would’ve been circulating immediately after the Apostles began the great commission
  - Both The Gospels and the Epistles (like Paul’s Epistles) began their written form as early as 50 AD
  - They would’ve also had full access to the Old Testament – as Jesus repeatedly cites as a prooftext – “Is it not written…” – Jesus only regards the written scriptures as the source of infallible revelation of the Words of God.

Church Fathers & Traditions

- 2 Thessalonians 2:15 – Paul says: “So then, brothers, stand firm and hold to **the traditions** that you were taught by us, **either by our spoken word or by our letter.”**
  - This is talking about verbal & written teachings from Paul, who is already regarded as a source of “inspired scripture”. We already know Paul’s teachings (and the teachings of the Gospels).
  - Fundamentally, any “False Tradition” (even if it happened to be a true saying, descended from Jesus himself) cannot be separated from “True Tradition” – even if there were “true extra teachings” being passed down. This is why we entirely rely on the verified New Testament text as being the only guaranteed source of the word of God.
- 1 Corinthians 2 – Paul says: “Now I commend you because you remember me in everything and maintain **the traditions** even as I delivered them to you… But in the following instructions I do not commend you, because when you come together it is not for the better but for the worse… For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus on the night when he was betrayed took bread, and when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said…”
  - Paul is yet again presenting the information he previously told them: traditions regarding the Lords Supper.
  - Paul is re-explaining the oral tradition of Jesus’ explanation of the Lords Supper – which was shortly after written down in both the Gospels and here in Paul’s Epistles – and is probably not blanket endorsing widespread Oral Traditions as the commandments of God.
- 2 Timothy 2:2 – “and what you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses entrust to faithful men, who will be able to teach others also.”
  - This is probably not a statement about future successive infallibility, authority to teach the doctrines of God, or anything related to those ideas.

Speaking to the Dead

Speaking to the Dead ("Praying to the Saints")

- The Bible is clear on its list of forbidden practices of Foreign Gods and Foreign Nations:
  - Deuteronomy 18: "There shall not be found among you anyone who burns his son or his daughter as an offering, anyone who practices divination or tells fortunes or interprets omens, or a sorcerer or a charmer or a medium or a necromancer or **one who inquires of the dead**"
- "Prayers to Saints are valid, because Saints are alive in Heaven"
  - From the perspective of a human being on earth, they are "Dead". If they were not "Dead", then Gods prohibition of it wouldn't exist.
- The Sin of King Saul was trying to (and successfully) communicating with the Dead Prophet Samuel (1 Samuel)
- Not once in the bible does a person pray to someone in Heaven (or Sheol), or ask "Saints in Heaven" for Prayers – only to God
- Revelation 5 – "…and golden bowls full of incense, which are the **prayers of the saints**." and also Revelation 8 – "…and the smoke of the incense, **with the prayers of the saints**, rose before God from the hand of the angel."
  - These verses do not suggest that these prayers originated from those "dead" in the heavenly realm
- 1 Timothy 2 – "I urge that supplications, **prayers**, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all people"
  - Again, this verse is likely referring to prayers of those "alive" on planet earth – and does not explicitly build a theological doctrine of praying to saints in heaven, who then pray for you in return.

Idolatry

Idolatry (Icons/Statues/Images)

- If you use an Icon/Image to represent an Idea, remember a person, or explain an Event – that is not Idolatry
- If you have an Icon (Statue, Image) – and have belief in that physical object having literal power – that is Old Testament Idolatry (images of wood & stone, etc)
  - Deuteronomy 4 - The LORD “spoke to you out of the midst of the fire. You heard the sound of [his] words, but saw no form”. He did this so they would “[not] act corruptly by making a carved image for yourselves, in the form of any figure, the likeness of male or female”
    - The Israelites were worshipping (having faith in) the statue itself (Golden Calf) not the invisible, and infinite, creator Yahweh.

Mary

Mary

- Mary is a **relatively minor character** in the Gospel Narrative (not to diminish her role) – whose theological significance is to fulfill Isaiah 7 which predicts a "virgin birth".
  - The extreme focus on Mary is the **theological equivalent** of putting a massive focus on Sarah, wife of Abraham (in Genesis).
- Mary is the "mother of god" – but more technically accurate to say "mother to the incarnate jesus in his life on earth".
- The Gospels do not overtly state that she was "**sinless**" or a "**virgin until death**".
  - The theological significance of Jesus is that only God himself could live a "sinless" life as a Human Being, and be our "sacrificial lamb" without blemish – allowing him to atone for the sins of all people.
  - The Bible makes it clear that "the sins of the father do not apply to their children" (Deuteronomy 24), so Mary does not need to be "sinless" to birth a sinless Jesus.

Bible “Life Lessons”

Key Terms

Key Biblical Terms



- **Key Terms - Love, Forgiveness, Compassion, Justice, etc.**
- These are extremely **loose & undefined terms** – “Love & Compassion”.
- Without clear definition, these Terms can be used for **any agenda/viewpoint.**

- "Jesus said LOVE your neighbor."
  - Is it **"Love"** to tolerate any/all behavior, from someone who is acting evil/wrongly?
  - Jesus said to **“Love Everyone”,** so why do you condemn “XYZ” S*xuality?.. Do you Hate them? That’s not very Loving like Jesus!”
- “Jesus said have COMPASSION for everyone.”
  - Is it **“Compassion”** to let a Murderer/Criminal out of jail, punishment free?
- "Jesus said LOVE/HELP the Poor".
  - Did Jesus mean to “**Help the Poor”** by instituting Worldwide Communism? Technically, Communism is hypothetically the most to direct way to "make sure no one is poor", right?
  - If a Homeless Man asks for Ownership of Your House – are you not **“Loving The Poor”** by refusing them?
  - If your Son/Daughter asks your Money – and you know they will use it for Bad purposes – are you not being “**Compassionate**”?

Key Biblical Terms

- **“Love Everyone! Jesus said so! Your not being very Christian!”**
  - Love everyone is a very dangerous term, because its lack of Definition means it can be used for any viewpoint, on any issue – most often used for “Modern” viewpoints.

- **“Love Everyone”**
  - … can be falsely used to endorse any viewpoint on Sin
  - … can be falsely used to endorse any viewpoint on Crime
  - … can be falsely used to endorse any viewpoint on Enemies & Bad Behavior
  - … can be falsely used to endorse any viewpoint on Economics

Key Biblical Terms
What does the "Modern Church" teach everyone?

- Common Teachings of the Modern Christian Church:
- "Forgive always and immediately"
  - "As long as I forgive XYZ criminal/evil act, then Justice has been served"
  - "Turn the other cheek" in the sense that you can let people do evil to you endlessly and unopposed, and that you will always forgive them instantly.
- "Be Humble/Meek" – and essentially be passive and weak in response to all conflicts and evil actions committed against you
- "Love means never offending someone or starting confrontations."
  - "Being a Good Christian means always being 'nice' to everyone."
  - "Love means accepting everyone as 'who they are'.
- … Often justified by saying "That's what a ***GOOD Christian*** would do!"



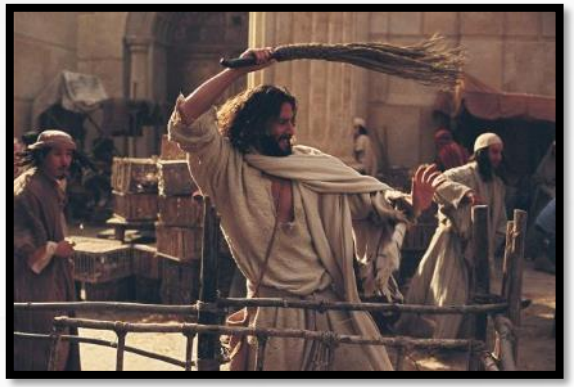


“Love”

What does “Love” mean in the Bible?

- There are few different words for “Love” in the Greek:
  - **Storge**: romantic
  - **Philia**: friendship
  - **Eros**: romantic
  - **Agape**: unconditional, divine, selfless
  - “Love” in English is an overly-generic term.
- “Love” means you **desire the BEST** for everyone.
  - Love requires you have “Judgments” about what is Right and Wrong.
  - Love means You desire the “best outcome” for someone.
  - Love means helping create the best outcomes, like a Father Figure.
- “Love” **does NOT mean** you approve of everyone’s actions, everyone’s beliefs, everyone’s “personal truths”.
  - It is not a “Hippie Pacifist” type of “Everyone is right in their own way, man!” philosophy.
  - Jesus was not a “passive hippie”, who dared not have Judgments or Opinions, and who dared not to be Confrontational when calling wrongdoers out.
  - Note: Jesus was confrontational when it came to Truth, but he does **NOT** endorse violence.
- “Love” **does NOT mean** you allow/tolerate someone to do anything they want, to you or





“Forgiveness”

What does “Forgiveness” mean in the Bible?

- **Forgiveness – generally an action for YOUR Benefit, by letting go of desire for revenge. It often settles a Dispute. It focuses on the future.**

- **What is God’s Forgiveness?**
  - You have repented (acknowledged wrong doing, and set a desire for improvement) therefore your Life can move towards a new positive direction.
  - God now forgets about the past, and focuses on the future.
  - God’s always willing to Forgive at any moment – but it is entirely conditional on the Person who committed the wrong doing to repent and become better.

- **Forgiveness releases you of negative emotions in a relationship – like bitterness, wrath, and anger.**
  - Ephesians 4

(2 Chronicles 7)

12 Then the LORD appeared to Solomon in the night and said to him: “I have heard your prayer and have chosen this place for myself as a house of sacrifice. 13 When I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain, or command the locust to devour the land, or send pestilence among my people, 14 if my people who are called by my name humble themselves, and pray and seek my face and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven and will forgive their sin and heal their land.

(Ephesians 4)

31 Let all bitterness and wrath and anger and clamor and slander be put away from you, along with all malice. 32 Be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, as God in Christ forgave you.

Forgiveness

- **Forgiveness is Conditional**
  - Repentance & Confession of Sin is required
  - Luke 23 – The thief who confesses his sin is forgiven by Jesus. The thief who did not confess his sin was apparently not forgiven.

- **Forgiveness requires Repentance, Desire for Change, and Acknowledgment of Wrong Doing**
  - Forgiveness is conditional - 2 Chronicles 7, Luke 17, etc.

(Luke 23)

39 One of the criminals who were hanged railed at him, saying,
"Are you not the Christ? Save yourself and us!" 40 But the other
rebuked him, saying, "Do you not fear God, since you are under
the same sentence of condemnation? 41 And we indeed justly,
for we are receiving the due reward of our deeds; but this man
has done nothing wrong." 42 And he said, "Jesus, remember
me when you come into your kingdom." 43 And he said to
him, "Truly, I say to you, today you will be with me
in paradise."

(Luke 17)

3 Pay attention to yourselves! If your brother sins, rebuke him,
and if he repents, forgive him, 4 and if he sins against you seven
times in the day, and turns to you seven times, saying, 'I
repent,' you must forgive him."

(1 John 9)

8 If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth
is not in us. 9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to
forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

Forgiveness

- **The Prodigal Son asked for Forgiveness & Admitted Wrong doing, and then was forgiven.**
  - After living poorly, the "Prodigal Son" finally returns home to his Father and repents. Then, the Father forgives him and accepts him back into the family once they are reconciled.
  - If the Prodigal Son had refused to repent, and kept living sinfully & unwisely – does he deserve Forgiveness?

- **Forgive always (when Repentance is done) just as God has forgiven you endlessly (Love = wanting the best for someone) in hopes of a continual positive relationship in the future**
  - Just as God forgives you many times, you must forgive others many times (Matthew 18)

(Luke 15)

18 I will arise and go to my father, and I will say to him, "Father, I
have sinned against heaven and before you. 19 I am no longer
worthy to be called your son. Treat me as one of your hired
servants."' 20 And he arose and came to his father. But while he
was still a long way off, his father saw him and felt compassion,
and ran and embraced him and kissed him. 21 And the son said
to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and before you. I
am no longer worthy to be called your son.'

(Matthew 18)

21 Then Peter came up and said to him, "Lord, how often will
my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? As many as seven
times?" 22 Jesus said to him, "I do not say to you seven times,
but seventy-seven times.

Forgiveness

- **In the same way God forgives you, forgive others.**
  - The "Unforgiving Servant" did not show the Mercy/Forgiveness his master showed to him, to other servants.
  - God will not forgive you if you do not forgive others

(Matthew 18)

The Parable of the Unforgiving Servant

21 Then Peter came up and said to him, "Lord, how often will my brother sin
against me, and I forgive him? As many as seven times?" 22 Jesus said to
him, "I do not say to you seven times, but seventy-seven times.

23 "Therefore the kingdom of heaven may be compared to a king who
wished to settle accounts with his servants. 24 When he began to settle, one
was brought to him who owed him ten thousand talents. 25 And since he
could not pay, his master ordered him to be sold, with his wife and children
and all that he had, and payment to be made. 26 So the servant fell on his
knees, imploring him, 'Have patience with me, and I will pay you
everything.' 27 And out of pity for him, the master of that servant released
him and forgave him the debt. 28 But when that same servant went out, he
found one of his fellow servants who owed him a hundred denarii, and
seizing him, he began to choke him, saying, 'Pay what you owe.' 29 So his
fellow servant fell down and pleaded with him, 'Have patience with me, and
I will pay you.' 30 He refused and went and put him in prison until he should
pay the debt. 31 When his fellow servants saw what had taken place, they
were greatly distressed, and they went and reported to their master all that
had taken place. 32 Then his master summoned him and said to him, 'You
wicked servant! I forgave you all that debt because you pleaded with
me. 33 And should not you have had mercy on your fellow servant, as I had
mercy on you?' 34 And in anger his master delivered him to the jailers, until
he should pay all his debt. 35 So also my heavenly Father will do to every one
of you, if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

Forgiveness

- **Keep Interpersonal Conflicts between You and the Person (at least, at first) and attempt to solve the conflict**
  - Matthew 18

- **You do not owe a relationship to someone who will not repent and acknowledge wrong doing**
  - Matthew 18
  - ("Treat them as a Gentile and Tax Collector"? – In the Old Testament, the Jews were commanded to be God's Separated people, not mixing with the Gentile World which did not know God, lest they become like the Godless Gentiles. For this reason, if someone is unrepentant and will not repair a relationship, you do not owe a relationship to them, you do not have to be associated with them – lest they corrupt you as well.)

- **Forgiveness vs. Reconciliation**
  - Forgiveness does not always require you to continue association with others. Forgiveness does not require permanent "reconciliation". The person who continues in treating others incorrectly is not entitled to have a relationship with the people they are unrepented towards. That is not a productive relationship.

(Matthew 18)

If Your Brother Sins Against You

15 "If your brother sins against you, go and tell him his fault, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have gained your brother. 16 But if he does not listen, take one or two others along with you, that every charge may be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses. 17 If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector.

How should Christians treat others?

- **Do not do return evil to those who do evil to you**
  - Romans 12:15-17
- **Living Peacefully/Amicably with other people is not always possible**
  - Romans 12:18
  - Forgiveness AND reconciliation is not always possible, nor required.
- **Showing no evil to those who hate you will enrage them. Overcome evil with good**
  - Romans 12:20-21

(Romans 12)

Marks of the True Christian

9 Let love be genuine. Abhor what is evil; hold fast to what is
good. 10 Love one another with brotherly affection. Outdo one
another in showing honor. 11 Do not be slothful in zeal, be
fervent in spirit, serve the Lord. 12 Rejoice in hope, be patient in
tribulation, be constant in prayer. 13 Contribute to the needs of
the saints and seek to show hospitality.

14 Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse
them. 15 Rejoice with those who rejoice, weep with those who
weep. 16 Live in harmony with one another. Do not be haughty,
but associate with the lowly. Never be wise in your own
sight. 17 Repay no one evil for evil, but give thought to do what
is honorable in the sight of all. 18 If possible, so far as it depends
on you, live peaceably with all. 19 Beloved, never avenge
yourselves, but leave it to the wrath of God, for it is
written, “Vengeance is mine, I will repay, says the Lord.” 20 To
the contrary, “if your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty,
give him something to drink; for by so doing you will heap
burning coals on his head.” 21 Do not be overcome by evil, but
overcome evil with good.

Strength vs. Weakness
(Are Christians supposed to be Passive & Non-Judgmental?)

How should Christians treat others? (Active vs. Passive? Compassion?)



- **Christian Compassion & Empathy does not require that you "Become A Doormat" and allow people do enact Evil against you – and endlessly allowing evil, under the guise of "being a good empathetic Christian".**
  - The term used to describe this in the modern era is "Enabling Behavior".
    - If your Son/Daughter/etc acts badly, does your forgiveness of them, and allowance of the behavior with no punishment or repercussion, help them & make you a good person?
  - "Loving" people does NOT mean you allow them to do Evil to you or others. Loving people means desiring the best for them. It is not an endorsement of being passive, or a "doormat" morally.

- **Christian Compassion does not require you to be Unintelligent & Unwise with how you deal with people. You must have Discretion and Wisdom.**
  - If you give Money/Help/Support to your Son/Daughter/etc to "help them", but you know they will use it to do bad things – Is that you being compassionate & wise?
  - Conversely, if you give Help and Support to your Son/Daughter who is "Wise", you ARE helping them.

Should Christians be Weak & Passive? (Was Jesus a "Hippie"?)

- **"Jesus is not suggesting that his followers should stand around and take abuse. First, turning the left cheek was a bold rejection of the insult ("slap on the cheek") itself."**
  - "In Jesus' day, hitting a person on the cheek was a forceful insult, but it was not considered a violent assault. Here, Jesus is specifying a strike on the right cheek, which implies a back-handed slap."
  - "He is not passive or unwilling; he's not a powerless victim. With tremendous power, he willfully accepts his opponents' malicious treatment because he knows they have no ability to ultimately take either his honor or his life."
  - https://bibleproject.com/articles/what-jesus-meant-turn-other-cheek-matthew-539/
- **"Rather than passively accepting the demeaning treatment, people following Jesus' instruction creatively resist oppression and assert their dignity by willfully choosing to go that second mile."**
  - https://bibleproject.com/articles/what-jesus-meant-turn-other-cheek-matthew-539/
- **"…Approach enemies with creativity, love, and generosity. By treating them as friends, we invite them to reflect on their behavior and consider a new way of relating with us."**
  - https://bibleproject.com/articles/what-jesus-meant-turn-other-cheek-matthew-539/

(Matthew 5)

Retaliation

38 "You have heard that it was said, 'An eye for an eye and a tooth for a
tooth.' 39 But I say to you, Do not resist the one who is evil. But if
anyone slaps you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. 40 And if
anyone would sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as
well. 41 And if anyone forces you to go one mile, go with him two
miles. 42 Give to the one who begs from you, and do not refuse the one who
would borrow from you.

(Matthew 10)

34 "Do not think that I have come to bring peace to the earth. I have not
come to bring peace, but a sword. 35 For I have come to set a man against
his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law
against her mother-in-law. 36 And a person's enemies will be those of his
own household. 37 Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not
worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not
worthy of me. 38 And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not
worthy of me. 39 Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life
for my sake will find it.

Should Christians be Weak & Passive? (Was Jesus a “Hippie”?)

- **On a personal level, do not seek retribution for personal slights (“Turn the Other Cheek” / "An eye for an eye"), but importantly allow the Government to enforce judicial policy (Leviticus/Romans)**
  - https://www.gotquestions.org/eye-for-an-eye.html
  - Jesus giving advice for personal interactions, in regards to disrespect or personal conflict ("turn the other cheek")
  - "Eye for an Eye" is for a Judge to decide (Deuteronomy 19)

(Matthew 5)

Retaliation

38 “You have heard that it was said, ‘An eye for an eye and a tooth for a
tooth.’ 39 But I say to you, Do not resist the one who is evil. But if
anyone slaps you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. 40 And if
anyone would sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as
well. 41 And if anyone forces you to go one mile, go with him two
miles. 42 Give to the one who begs from you, and do not refuse the one who
would borrow from you.

(Matthew 10)

34 “Do not think that I have come to bring peace to the earth. I have not
come to bring peace, but a sword. 35 For I have come to set a man against
his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law
against her mother-in-law. 36 And a person's enemies will be those of his
own household. 37 Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not
worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not
worthy of me. 38 And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not
worthy of me. 39 Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life
for my sake will find it.

Should Christians be Weak & Passive? (Was Jesus a "Hippie"?)

- **God commands you to seek "Justice" – which includes punishing evil (such as crime) – which will satisfy the "need for revenge" by the victim.**
  - Next Slides about Justice
- **Christians shouldn't "Avoid Disturbing the Peace" – rather, confrontation to correct evil/injustice/lies is normal. "The Truth" will cause conflict, and will divide people.**
  - Christians are not commanded to be "Passive" – they should freely correct evil when necessary, and settle disputes.
  - True Peace is a result of when everything is "set in order". Conversely, Chaos comes when evil, or lies, are allowed to spread unchecked.
  - Matthew 10
- **Jesus was very "masculine" (not Passive) – He was direct, bold, often unpopular, and non-passive.**
  - Jesus confronts people directly, leads his people with good leadership, talks about judgment against evil and accountability, and took bold actions against the cultural accepted norm even when unpopular.

(Matthew 5)

Retaliation

38 "You have heard that it was said, 'An eye for an eye and a tooth for a
tooth.' 39 But I say to you, Do not resist the one who is evil. But if
anyone slaps you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. 40 And if
anyone would sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as
well. 41 And if anyone forces you to go one mile, go with him two
miles. 42 Give to the one who begs from you, and do not refuse the one who
would borrow from you.

(Matthew 10)

34 "Do not think that I have come to bring peace to the earth. I have not
come to bring peace, but a sword. 35 For I have come to set a man against
his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law
against her mother-in-law. 36 And a person's enemies will be those of his
own household. 37 Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not
worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not
worthy of me. 38 And whoever does not take his cross and follow me is not
worthy of me. 39 Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life
for my sake will find it.

Judging

Should Christians "Judge"? Yes

- **"Judgment" is normal, whether positive judgments or negative judgments.**
  - John 7 and 1 Corinthians 2, etc.
  - Judgment is a fundamental way people think. You cant avoid making judgments.
  - God himself is a "Righteous Judge".

- **Judge righteously (not unwisely). "HOW" you Judge is the key context.**
  - John 7

- **Be careful of Judgment, when you are being Hypocritical, if you are guilty of the same sin**
  - Matthew 7, Romans 2

- **Judgment (of criminals, for example) is required by God.**
  - Any verse regarding God's requirement for the punishment of criminals (Leviticus).

(Matthew 7)

"Judge not, that you be not judged. 2 For with the judgment you pronounce
you will be judged, and with the measure you use it will be measured to
you. 3 Why do you see the speck that is in your brother's eye, but do not
notice the log that is in your own eye? 4 Or how can you say to your brother,
'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when there is the log in your own
eye? 5 You hypocrite, first take the log out of your own eye, and then you
will see clearly to take the speck out of your brother's eye.

(Romans 2)

Therefore you have no excuse, O man, every one of you who judges. For in
passing judgment on another you condemn yourself, because you, the
judge, practice the very same things.

(John 7)

24 Do not judge by appearances, but judge with right judgment."

(1 Corinthians 5)

9 I wrote to you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people—
10 not at all meaning the sexually immoral of this world, or the greedy and
swindlers, or idolaters, since then you would need to go out of the
world. 11 But now I am writing to you not to associate with anyone who
bears the name of brother if he is guilty of sexual immorality or greed, or is
an idolater, reviler, drunkard, or swindler—not even to eat with such a
one. 12 For what have I to do with judging outsiders? Is it not those inside
the church whom you are to judge? 13 God judges those outside. "Purge the
evil person from among you."

Should Christians “Judge”? Yes

- **Use Judgment so that you do not associate with evil people, even amongst Christians. You must correct Christians, and yourself. Do not associate with Immoral people - even if they are Christians. Do not even "eat with them". Do not tolerate "evil people among you“.**
  - 1 Corinthians 2 / 1 Corinthians 5
  - Christians are taught to associate with other Christians, and to purge evil, so that you too are not corrupted

(1 Corinthians 2)

14 The natural person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are folly to him, and he is not able to understand them because they are spiritually discerned. 15 The spiritual person judges all things, but is himself to be judged by no one. 16 “For who has understood the mind of the Lord so as to instruct him?” But we have the mind of Christ.

(1 Corinthians 5)

9 I wrote to you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people— 10 not at all meaning the sexually immoral of this world, or the greedy and swindlers, or idolaters, since then you would need to go out of the world. 11 But now I am writing to you not to associate with anyone who bears the name of brother if he is guilty of sexual immorality or greed, or is an idolater, reviler, drunkard, or swindler—not even to eat with such a one. 12 For what have I to do with judging outsiders? Is it not those inside the church whom you are to judge? 13 God judges those outside. “Purge the evil person from among you.”

Justice

God's Requirement for Justice

- **God's Natural Order is that Ruling Authorities would punish those who do evil.**
  - Romans 13

- **Justice is required when people do Evil to others in a society**
  - Not punishing evil doers (criminals) is not acceptable or moral. It is not compassion.
  - Deuteronomy 21 (and All Bible Verses regarding God's Justice and Justice generally)

(Romans 13)

Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been instituted by God. 2 Therefore whoever resists the authorities resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment.

3 For rulers are not a terror to good conduct, but to bad. Would you have no fear of the one who is in authority? Then do what is good, and you will receive his approval, 4 for he is God's servant for your good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not bear the sword in vain. For he is the servant of God, an avenger who carries out God's wrath on the wrongdoer.

(Deuteronomy 21)

15 "A single witness shall not suffice against a person for any crime or for any wrong in connection with any offense that he has committed. Only on the evidence of two witnesses or of three witnesses shall a charge be established. 16 If a malicious witness arises to accuse a person of wrongdoing, 17 then both parties to the dispute shall appear before the LORD, before the priests and the judges who are in office in those days. 18 The judges shall inquire diligently, and if the witness is a false witness and has accused his brother falsely, 19 then you shall do to him as he had meant to do to his brother. So you shall purge the evil from your midst. 20 And the rest shall hear and fear, and shall never again commit any such evil among you. 21 Your eye shall not pity. It shall be life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

God's Requirement for Justice

- **God's Natural Order is that Ruling Authorities would punish those who do evil.**
  - Leviticus 24
- **Justice must be proportional to the crime.**
  - Not punishing evil doers (criminals) is not acceptable or moral. It is not compassion.
  - Leviticus 24
- **Have the same "Standard of Justice" for both natives & foreigners (Impartial Justice System).**
  - Leviticus 24
- **Punish Crimes quickly, so that more Evil will not be committed**
  - Ecclesiastes 8

(Leviticus 24)

An Eye for an Eye

17 "Whoever takes a human life shall surely be put to
death. 18 Whoever takes an animal's life shall make it good, life
for life. 19 If anyone injures his neighbor, as he has done it shall
be done to him, 20 fracture for fracture, eye for eye, tooth for
tooth; whatever injury he has given a person shall be given to
him. 21 Whoever kills an animal shall make it good, and
whoever kills a person shall be put to death. 22 You shall have
the same rule for the sojourner and for the native, for I am
the LORD your God."

(Ecclesiastes 8)

11 Because the sentence against an evil deed is not executed
speedily, the heart of the children of man is fully set to do evil.

God's Requirement for Justice

- **God approves of the Death Penalty (Execution) for certain crimes**
  - Although, it is up to the discretion of the Judge/People if they want to exercise Mercy in any specific situation. A focus on Mercy can be shown by Jesus in the New Testament at certain times (but it is the job of the Government to punish criminals)
  - Genesis 9 / Deuteronomy 17 / Exodus 21

(Genesis 9)

5 And for your lifeblood I will require a reckoning: from every beast I will require it and from man. From his fellow man I will require a reckoning for the life of man.

6 "Whoever sheds the blood of man,

by man shall his blood be shed,

for God made man in his own image.

(Deuteronomy 17)

5 then you shall bring out to your gates that man or woman who has done this evil thing, and you shall stone that man or woman to death with stones. 6 On the evidence of two witnesses or of three witnesses the one who is to die shall be put to death; a person shall not be put to death on the evidence of one witness. 7 The hand of the witnesses shall be first against him to put him to death, and afterward the hand of all the people. So you shall purge the evil from your midst.

(Exodus 21)

12 "Whoever strikes a man so that he dies shall be put to death.

“Humble” vs. “Proud”

“Humble” and ”Meek” – What do they mean in the Bible?

- **Humble** – To have a realistic “grounded” view of yourself, and to admit wrong doing and need for improvement (often in context to repenting to God), and dependency on God.
  - **Prideful** – Often meaning to be overly sure of “your own greatness”, boasting about yourself, and often refusing to repent and admit wrong doing. Often linked with Arrogance and Self Righteousness.
  - Pride often focuses on How Great YOU are, rather than basing your focus on how Great God is
- **Meek** – Power under righteous/wise control by its user.
  - Jesus is “meek” because he has immense power, but acts with Humility and Grace with others.
  - Meek is NOT about being “beneath others” or “lowly” or “weak” or “non confrontational”, or any other means of being unconfident or being “weak”.

(James 4)

10 Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will exalt you.

(Proverbs 3)

34 Toward the scorners he is scornful,
but to the humble he gives favor.

(1 Peter 5)

5 Likewise, you who are younger, be subject to the elders. Clothe yourselves, all of you, with humility toward one another, for “God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.”

6 Humble yourselves, therefore, under the mighty hand of God so that at the proper time he may exalt you,

(Matthew 11)

29 Take my yoke upon you, and learn from me, for I am gentle and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls.

The Value of Human Beings

Biblical View of All Humans

- **All Human Beings are valuable as People to God, regardless of background or gender or status.**
  - Galatians 3

- **You must treat all people with "Love"**
  - As covered previous, "Love" simply means wanting the best for someone (and is often joined with action). It does not mean a blindness to people acting however they want, treating you poorly, being unrepented, or being entitled to your property and/or time.

(Galatians 3)

28 There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is no male and female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus. 29 And if you are Christ's, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to promise.

Gender Roles

Biblical Genders & Gender Roles

- **Man was made first, and Women were made as Helpers/Supporters/etc. to their Husbands**
  - Genesis 2
- **Spirituality and Relationship with God is "Gender Neutral" – but Gender Roles were created by God, and do truly exist.**
  - The realities of Gender & gender roles/norms were created by God (but this does not denigrate their value as human beings, in any way)
  - (Any Bible Verse regarding Men & Women)
- **Husbands are 100% in control of the Family Unit, and are in total control of its Leadership, and the Wife and Children. Wives must submit (defer) to the leadership & decisions of their husbands. Wives answer to their Husband, Husbands answer to God.**
  - "Servant Leadership like Christ" means Loving others, even those below you – which means treating them right and helping them. It does not mean that Christ is not the Leader, and not the authoritative Commander.
  - Ephesians 5 (and others)

(Genesis 2)

18 Then the LORD God said, "It is not good that the man should
be alone; I will make him a helper fit for him."

(Ephesians 5)

22 Wives, submit to your own husbands, as to the
Lord. 23 For the husband is the head of the wife even
as Christ is the head of the church, his body, and is himself
its Savior. 24 Now as the church submits to Christ, so also
wives should submit in everything to their husbands.

25 Husbands, love your wives, as Christ loved the church
and gave himself up for her, 26 that he might sanctify her, having
cleansed her by the washing of water with the word, 27 so that
he might present the church to himself in splendor, without
spot or wrinkle or any such thing, that she might be holy and
without blemish

Biblical Genders & Gender Roles

- **It is a Sin for a Husband to not be the Authoritative Leader of his Household (and to not follow the Leadership Decisions he knows are correct to do)**
  - Adams 1st Sin – Disobeying a direct command from God (“Do not eat from the Tree”)
  - Adams 2nd Sin – Disobeying a direct command from God, because his Wife (Eve) pressured him to do something he knew was wrong. He did not act as the Authoritative Leader. God condemns him for his lack of true leadership – “Because you have listened to the voice of your wife and have eaten of the tree…”
  - Adam is the Authoritative Leader. God holds **HIM accountable** for the family unit and their actions.
  - Genesis 3 (and all other verses regarding Family Structure)



(Genesis 3)

9 But the LORD God called to the man and said to him, “Where
are you?” 10 And he said, “I heard the sound of you in the
garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked, and I hid
myself.” 11 He said, “Who told you that you were naked? Have
you eaten of the tree of which I commanded you not to
eat?” 12 The man said, “The woman whom you gave to be with
me, she gave me fruit of the tree, and I ate.” 13 Then
the LORD God said to the woman, “What is this that you have
done?” The woman said, “The serpent deceived me, and I ate.”

…

17 And to Adam he said,

“Because you have listened to the voice of your wife
and have eaten of the tree
of which I commanded you,
‘You shall not eat of it,’
cursed is the ground because of you;
in pain you shall eat of it all the days of your life;

Biblical Genders & Gender Roles

- **Divorce is only permitted in God's Eyes if Sexuality Immortality (such as Adultery) has been committed**
  - Matthew 5 / Matthew 19

- **Divorce is also allowed if the spouse was an "unbeliever", in which case the Christian does not have an obligation to them if they leave**
  - 1 Corinthians 7

(Matthew 5)

Divorce

31 "It was also said, 'Whoever divorces his wife, let him give her
a certificate of divorce.' 32 But I say to you that everyone who
divorces his wife, except on the ground of sexual immorality,
makes her commit adultery, and whoever marries a divorced
woman commits adultery.

(1 Corinthians 7)

15 But if the unbelieving partner separates, let it be so. In such
cases the brother or sister is not enslaved. God has called
you to peace. 16 For how do you know, wife, whether you will
save your husband? Or how do you know, husband, whether
you will save your wife?

Biblical Genders & Gender Roles

- **Masculinity requires you to be Strong, to have Strong Positive Leadership, and "act like men".**
  - 1 Corinthians 16 (and many other verses)
  - What is **"Negative Masculinity"?**
    - Did Jesus ever act "confrontational"?
    - Did Jesus ever act as an "authoritative leader"?
    - Did Jesus ever act "judgmental"?
    - Did Jesus ever "act boldly"?
    - Did Jesus ever "correct others" even when unpleasant?

(1 Corinthians 16)

13 Be watchful, stand firm in the faith, act like men, be strong. 14 Let all that you do be done in love.

The Roles of Men/Women in the church?

- **Women are not allowed to be Teachers & Leaders (such as Church Pastors) over Men.**
  - Just like Adam & Eve, the role of Men is to lead Women. The Role of the Family Structure applies to the Church structure as well.
  - 1 Timothy 2 / 1 Corinthians 14
  - https://www.gotquestions.org/women-pastors.html
  - Mike Winger https://youtu.be/v9ZQC5g977k?si=ZUEwsqu9kupXT-jV

- **Women are allowed to be Teachers & Leaders over other Women & Children.**
  - Women are authorized to teach Women & Children (which is most of Plant Earth).
  - Titus 2

- **Women can share the Gospel, and in many ways be useful to the church, but they are not allowed to be Teachers & Leaders over Men.**
  - The followers of Jesus included Women, who did help him spread his message. But this does not change the designated roles of Men & Women in the church.

- **All people are equal & valuable before God, but designated Gender Roles (created by God) still exist.**
  - All verses regarding Christianity applying to all people.

(1 Timothy 2)

11 Let a woman learn quietly with all submissiveness. 12 I do not
permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man;
rather, she is to remain quiet. 13 For Adam was formed
first, then Eve; 14 and Adam was not deceived, but the woman
was deceived and became a transgressor. 15 Yet she will be
saved through childbearing—if they continue in faith and love
and holiness, with self-control.

(1 Corinthians 14)

As in all the churches of the saints, 34 the women should keep
silent in the churches. For they are not permitted to speak,
but should be in submission, as the Law also says. 35 If there is
anything they desire to learn, let them ask their husbands at
home. For it is shameful for a woman to speak in church.

(Titus 2)

3 Older women likewise are to be reverent in behavior, not
slanderers or slaves to much wine. They are to teach what is
good, 4 and so train the young women to love their husbands
and children,

“Love/Help the Poor”

What does “Love/Help the Poor” mean?

- “Helping The Poor” often means helping those who require the bare essentials – such as food or clothes.

- **Jesus feeds the 5,000 with bread and fish (Matthew 14)**
  - Jesus provides temporary provision for those who followed him that day to hear him speak, and were hungry
- **God commands you to “Feed and Clothe” those amongst you who do not have the bare essentials to survive – such as the Fatherless and the Widow.**
  - “He executes justice for the fatherless and the widow, and loves the sojourner, giving him food and clothing.” (Deuteronomy 10)
- **Show Love & Compassion (such as a Communal Feast) even to those who cannot “repay” you in any way**
  - “He said also to the man who had invited him, “When you give a dinner or a banquet, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or rich neighbors, lest they also invite you in return and you be repaid. But when you give a feast, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame, the blind, and you will be blessed, because they cannot repay you. For you will be repaid at the resurrection of the just.” (Luke 14)

Firstly, Who exactly are “The Poor”?

- We must have a clear definition of who the Bible is telling us to “Help”.

- **Anytime the Bible is talking about “The Poor/The Needy”, its almost always talking about people who literally can not help themselves – and truly do need the helping hand of a compassionate community.**
  - Widows (in ancient societies, they might not have any familial support left, therefore they need community help)
  - Orphans
  - The Blind
  - The Disabled
  - The Stranger/Foreigner who temporarily needs help and hospitality
  - “The Poor” (could likely be seen as good people who are simply “down on their luck” temporarily)
  - Christians in your community who temporarily need genuine assistance
- **The Bible condemns those who do not deserve sympathy.**
  - Those who refuse to work
  - “The Fool” who brings destruction upon himself continually (Would helping this person simply be “Enabling” their behavior and attitudes?)

Does God endorse Socialism? (Forced Wealth Redistribution to "Help the Poor"?)

- Does the Bible endorse Socialism – for example, **state forced redistribution of wealth/income** – in order to "help the poor"?
- Key Question: To what extent do you "owe" your money to others? Is it 5%? Is it 10%? Is it 50%?
- **You owe your time & energy & money to YOUR FAMILY firstly – before owing anything to anyone else.**
  - "But if anyone does not provide for his relatives, and especially for members of his household, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever." (1 Timothy 5)
- **"Love"/"Charity"/"Compassion" is VOLUNTARY – it is not enforced by the State. It is a moral duty commanded by God, not a forced political duty of the State.**
  - Acts of Charity, The Good Samaritan, Feeding the 5000, etc.
  - "The point is this: whoever sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and whoever sows bountifully will also reap bountifully. Each one must give as he has decided in his heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver." (2 Corinthians 9)
- **God endorses "Private Property" – which is the definition of Capitalism (and therefore the discretion you have to do whatever you want with your property & time)**
  - "Thou shalt not steal" implies private property
- **After all of your own needs are met (presumably), then out of YOUR ABUNDANCE should you should help the poor (in this case, the bare essentials, which are food).**
  - "And when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not reap your field right up to its edge, nor shall you gather the gleanings after your harvest. You shall leave them for the poor and for the sojourner: I am the Lord your God." (Leviticus 23)

What does the Bible say about Work & Poverty?

- **Anyone who refuses to Work does not Deserve to Eat (you do not owe them anything).**
  - “If anyone is not willing to work, let him not eat.” (2 Thessalonians 3)
- **Poverty will be a result for those who do not work**
  - “A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to rest, and poverty will come upon you like a robber, and want like an armed man.” (Proverbs 6)
- **Do not covet other peoples things who have more than you**
  - “You shall not covet your neighbor's house; you shall not covet your neighbor's wife, or his male servant, or his female servant, or his ox, or his donkey, or anything that is your neighbor’s.” (Exodus 20)

Capitalism vs. Socialism? (Success & Wealth – Is it Biblical?)

- **God endorses the idea of "Private Property"**
  - Ten Commandments: Thou shalt not Steal
  - This means God endorses Private Property.
  - Your property is not communally owned, and your property is not owed to others.
- **The Bible states that those who "Do not Work" do not Deserve to Eat.**
  - "If anyone is not willing to work, let him not eat." (2 Thessalonians 3)
- **Having Wealth/Success is not a Sin**
  - The manner in which you "get" the wealth or success determines its morality.
- **The "Prosperity Gospel" is not Biblical**
  - The Prosperity Gospel argues that all Christians will have material wealth, like Money.
  - This is not promised by God. Rather, a person who "acts godly" is more likely to have success, whereas someone who "acts with evil" is likely to fail and be destitute (it is a logical cause-and-effect).
  - Faith in God is #1. You may or may not have material wealth or success.

Other Topics

Heavenly Rewards, Value God Firstly, Sin in the Heart

- **God's Rewards in "The Kingdom of Heaven" (Afterlife) is compensated based on how you lived in the present life. Those who are pure of heart, and act correctly, even if they hold no earthly power, will be made the greatest in the Kingdom of God.**
  - Matthew 5 / Matthew 6 / Matthew 10 / Matthew 19 / all verses regarding the Kingdom of Heaven and rewards
  - “Whoever humbles himself like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven.” (Matthew 18:4)

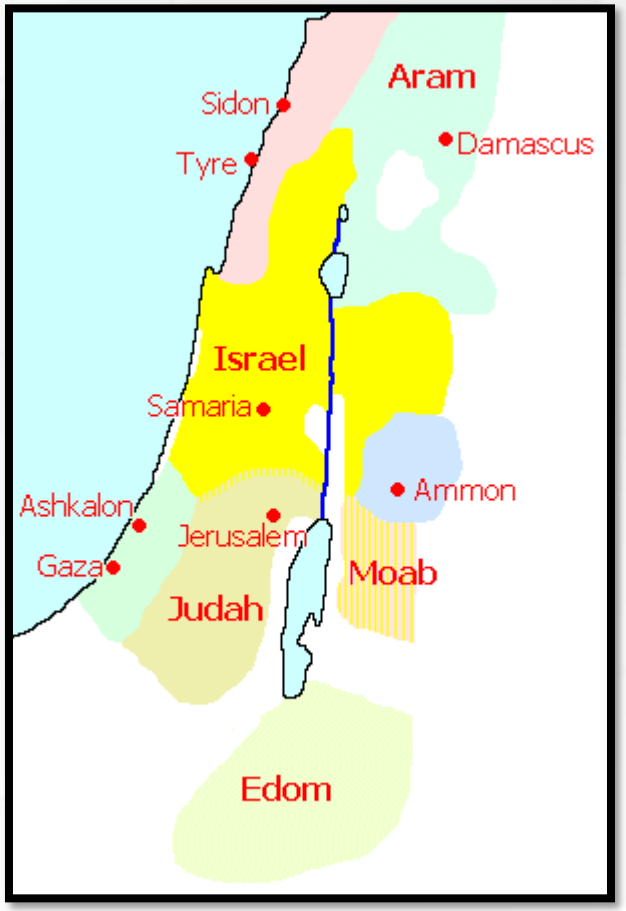
- **Do not value anything more than God - whether it be Love of Sins such as Murder, Theft, etc, or the Love of Money like the "Rich Young Ruler"**
  - Matthew 19

- **Sin originates in "The Heart" before action takes place - so that even someone who is "Angry with his brother" in his heart, or "Looks at a woman with lustful intent has already committed adultery with her in his heart", has already started to commit sin.**
  - Matthew 5

Immigration & Borders

Does the Bible endorse “Open Borders”?

- Often, the Bible is used as a source to prove that Nations should have “Open Borders” and “Open Immigration”
  - "Jesus said **Love your Neighbor.”**
  - "Leviticus said “**treat the sojourner well”**
- Without a clear definition, these ideas like “Love everyone” can be used to justify any viewpoint.



Foreigners among you

- **If a Foreigner is among you, treat them equally as you treat a native born – in all things, including the Law**
  - Leviticus 19 / Leviticus 24
  - The “foreigner residing among you” can simply be someone traveling through the land.

(Leviticus 19)

The foreigner residing among you must be treated as your native-born. Love them as yourself

(Leviticus 24)

You are to have the same law for the foreigner and the native-born.

Nations and Borders

- **Nations have appointed times & boundaries of lands (nations - including The People, the Culture, the Land)**
  - Acts 17, and all verses regarding Old Testament Israel

(Acts 17)

From one man he made all the nations, that they should inhabit the whole earth; and he marked out their appointed times in history and the boundaries of their lands.

Rule of Law

- **You must obey the Laws of the Nation you exist in – including Border & Immigration Law.**
  - Romans 13
  - “Pay to Cesar what is Cesars…” [on Taxation] said by Jesus

(Romans 13)

Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been instituted by God. **2** Therefore whoever resists the authorities resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment.

Full Assimilation & Respect for the Culture

- **The "Sojourners" in Israel were required to <u>Fully Assimilate</u> – including keeping the Sabbath, refrain from Blasphemy of God, the Passover, and Circumcision for all in his household. They were expected to Fully Assimilate to the Laws of Moses, and "become Israelites". No other Culture was tolerated.**
  - Exodus 12

- **Converts in Israel (from Edomites, for example) were only allowed to enter the Assembly of the Lord in their 3rd generation.**
  - Deuteronomy 23
  - True "Assimilation" seems to have been a long process.

(Exodus 12)

If a stranger shall sojourn with you and would keep the Passover to the Lord, let all his males be circumcised. Then he may come near and keep it; he shall be as a native of the land. But no uncircumcised person shall eat of it. 49 There shall be one law for the native and for the stranger who sojourns among you."

(Deuteronomy 23)

"No Ammonite or Moabite may enter the assembly of the Lord. Even to the tenth generation, none of them may enter the assembly of the Lord forever, 4 because they did not meet you with bread and with water on the way, when you came out of Egypt, and because they hired against you Balaam the son of Beor from Pethor of Mesopotamia, to curse you. 5 But the Lord your God would not listen to Balaam; instead the Lord your God turned the curse into a blessing for you, because the Lord your God loved you. 6 You shall not seek their peace or their prosperity all your days forever.

7 "You shall not abhor an Edomite, for he is your brother. You shall not abhor an Egyptian, because you were a sojourner in his land. 8 Children born to them in the third generation may enter the assembly of the Lord.

Foreigners

- **God used Foreign Peoples & Cultures – as invaders & rulers – as Punishment on the Israelites.**
  - Deuteronomy 28

- **God has harsh judgments & exclusions on Cultures he did not like (Ammonites & Moabites & Canaanites) and more pleasant judgments on Cultures he did approve of (Edomites)**
  - Deuteronomy 23 / All verses regarding God judging People groups and Cultures he judged as evil

(Deuteronomy 28)

36 “The Lord will bring you and your king whom you set over you to a nation that neither you nor your fathers have known. And there you shall serve other gods of wood and stone. 37 And you shall become a horror, a proverb, and a byword among all the peoples where the Lord will lead you away. 38 You shall carry much seed into the field and shall gather in little, for the locust shall consume it. 39 You shall plant vineyards and dress them, but you shall neither drink of the wine nor gather the grapes, for the worm shall eat them. 40 You shall have olive trees throughout all your territory, but you shall not anoint yourself with the oil, for your olives shall drop off. 41 You shall father sons and daughters, but they shall not be yours, for they shall go into captivity. 42 The cricket shall possess all your trees and the fruit of your ground. 43 The sojourner who is among you shall rise higher and higher above you, and you shall come down lower and lower. 44 He shall lend to you, and you shall not lend to him. He shall be the head, and you shall be the tail.

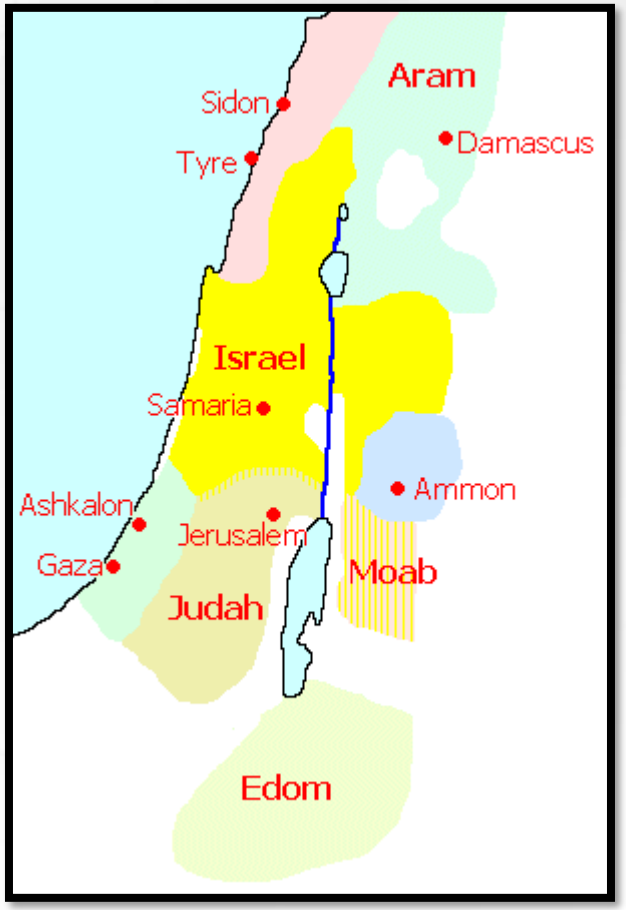
45 “All these curses shall come upon you and pursue you and overtake you till you are destroyed, because you did not obey the voice of the Lord your God, to keep his commandments and his statutes that he commanded you.

(Deuteronomy 23)

“No Ammonite or Moabite may enter the assembly of the Lord. Even to the tenth generation, none of them may enter the assembly of the Lord forever, 4 because they did not meet you with bread and with water on the way, when you came out of Egypt, and because they hired against you Balaam the son of Beor from Pethor of Mesopotamia, to curse you. 5 But the Lord your God would not listen to Balaam; instead the Lord your God turned the curse into a blessing for you, because the Lord your God loved you. 6 You shall not seek their peace or their prosperity all your days forever.

Summary

- Interpersonal Compassion vs. The Law
  - Treating a **“House Guest”** in your nation (like a Tourist) with Respect & Equality under Judicial Law – does not diminish the reality of The Law, like Borders and Immigration Law.
  - Border Law has the right to determine if your Nation allows any “foreigners” at all – whether Tourists or Legalized Permanent Residents.
- “The Nations” (People Groups and Cultures) are distinct
  - Israel purposefully **did not tolerate outside influence** – like the Canaanites. God did not endorse “Open Borders” with the Canaanites.
  - Any Immigrants allowed to move into Israel had to **Fully Assimilate.**
- God judges Cultures & has harsh punishments on evil cultures
  - God (in the Old Testament) **harshly punishes Cultures** he deems as evil – such as the Canaanites



The Divine Council

God & The Gods

https://www.logos.com/grow/who-are-elohim/

The Divine Council – what is it?

- God rules over Heavens in the midst of a large council of spiritual beings, who he has assigned to rule over "The Nations".
- Yahweh is the "God of Gods"
  - "Who is like you, O Lord, among the gods?" (Exodus 15:11)



- **Elohim** (אֱלֹהִים) – Translated as "The Lord"
  - Anyone who exists in the "spiritual realm" – often acting as a "ruler".
    - Most often, the generic term used to refer to the God of Israel ("The Lord")
    - The members of Yahweh's council (Psalm 82)
    - Gods of other nations (Judges 11:24, 1 Kings 11:33)
    - The Angels of Yahweh (Genesis 35:7) ("The Sons of God")
    - Describing dead spirits like the Prophet Samuel (1 Samuel 28:13)

- **Yahweh** (יהוה) – Translated as "The LORD"
  - The distinct name of the God of Israel ("The LORD")

The Council of the Sons of God

- **God exists among "the heavenly beings"**
  - Could also be translated "the sons of god"

- **God Judges amongst "the council of the holy ones"**

(Psalm 89)

5 Let the heavens praise your wonders, O LORD,
your faithfulness in the assembly of the holy ones!
6 For who in the skies can be compared to the LORD?
Who among the heavenly beings is like the LORD,
7 a God greatly to be feared in the council of the holy ones,
and awesome above all who are around him?

(Daniel 7)

9 "As I looked,

thrones were placed,
and the Ancient of Days took his seat;
his clothing was white as snow,
and the hair of his head like pure wool;
his throne was fiery flames;
its wheels were burning fire.
10 A stream of fire issued
and came out from before him;
a thousand thousands served him,
and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him;
the court sat in judgment,
and the books were opened.

God rules over The Gods

- **"The Gods" that Yahweh rules over in The Divine Council have been assigned to "The Nations"**
  - God assigned them at the Tower of Babel
- **God judges the "evil sons of god" who ruled incorrectly – they will now "die like men".**
  - God himself will inherit the nations

(Psalm 82)

God has taken his place in the divine council;
in the midst of the gods he holds judgment:
2 "How long will you judge unjustly
and show partiality to the wicked? *Selah*
3 Give justice to the weak and the fatherless;
maintain the right of the afflicted and the destitute.
4 Rescue the weak and the needy;
deliver them from the hand of the wicked."

5 They have neither knowledge nor understanding,
they walk about in darkness;
all the foundations of the earth are shaken.

6 I said, "You are gods,
sons of the Most High, all of you;
7 nevertheless, like men you shall die,
and fall like any prince."

8 Arise, O God, judge the earth;
for you shall inherit all the nations!

The Sons of God rule over The Nations

- **God assigned "The Sons of God" to "The Nations" after The Tower of Babel**
  - Deuteronomy 32
- **God assigns Israel (Jacob) to himself – no other "foreign God" was allowed.**
  - Deuteronomy 32
- **Foreigners lived under Foreign Gods**
  - Namaan in 2 Kings 5
- **Satan is the "God of this World"**
  - 2 Corinthians 4

(Deuteronomy 32)

8 When the Most High gave to the nations their inheritance,
when he divided mankind,
he fixed the borders of the peoples
according to the number of the sons of God.
9 But the LORD's portion is his people,
Jacob his allotted heritage.

...
12 the LORD alone guided him,
no foreign god was with him.

(2 Kings 5)

17 Then Naaman said, "If not, please let there be given to your servant two mule loads of earth, for from now on your servant will not offer burnt offering or sacrifice to any god but the LORD.

(2 Corinthians 4)

4 In their case the god of this world has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God.

“The Sons of God” go between Heaven & Earth

- **“The Sons of God” (angelic/spiritual beings) go between Heaven and Earth**
  - Job 1 and Job 2
  - “Jacobs Ladder”

- **“A Spirit” influences Ahab (King of Israel) and entices all of his false prophets with lying words**
  - This spirit is sent by God to destroy Ahab
  - 1 Kings 22

(Job 1)

6 Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them.

(Job 2)

Again there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and Satan also came among them to present himself before the LORD.

(1 Kings 22)

19 And Micaiah said, “Therefore hear the word of the LORD:

I saw the LORD sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven standing beside him on his right hand and on his left;

20 and the LORD said, ‘Who will entice Ahab, that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?’ And one said one thing, and another said another.

21 Then a spirit came forward and stood before the LORD, saying, ‘I will entice him.’ 22 And the LORD said to him, ‘By what means?’ And he said, ‘I will go out, and will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.’ And he said, ‘You are to entice him, and you shall succeed; go out and do so.’

“Demons” – The Nephilim (Giants) of The Flood

- **The Nephilim (who were Giants) were the product of The Sons of God reproducing with human women**
  - These giants exist all throughout the old testament
  - These dead giants now exist as Spirits

- **“The Angels” (Heavenly Beings) are judged for leaving their “proper dwelling”**
  - Jude 6
  - 2 Peter 2

- **Demons possess people in the New Testament**
  - Matthew 8

(Genesis 6)

4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of man and they bore children to them. These were the mighty men who were of old, the men of renown.

(Jude 6)

6 And the angels who did not stay within their own position of authority, but left their proper dwelling, he has kept in eternal chains under gloomy darkness until the judgment of the great day—

(2 Peter 2)

4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into hell and committed them to chains of gloomy darkness to be kept until the judgment;

(Matthew 8)

28 And when he came to the other side, to the country of the Gadarenes, two demon-possessed men met him, coming out of the tombs, so fierce that no one could pass that way.

Gifts of the Holy Spirit

& Does God speak to Us?

What does the “Holy Spirit” do?

- **“The Holy Spirit” is our spiritual guide, teacher, and helper.**
- **General Spiritual Gifts (likely Common)**
  - Wisdom, Faith, Joy, Peace, Self Control, and Distinguishing between Spirits
- **Unique Spiritual Gifts (likely Uncommon)**
  - Divine Healings, Miracles, Prophecies, Tongues.

(1 Corinthians 12)

Now concerning spiritual gifts, brothers, I do not want you to
be uninformed. [2] You know that when you were pagans you
were led astray to mute idols, however you were
led. [3] Therefore I want you to understand that no one speaking
in the Spirit of God ever says “Jesus is accursed!” and no one
can say “Jesus is Lord” except in the Holy Spirit.

[4] Now there are varieties of gifts, but the same
Spirit; [5] and there are varieties of service, but the same
Lord; [6] and there are varieties of activities, but it is the same
God who empowers them all in everyone. [7] To each is given the
manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. [8] For to one is
given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to
another the utterance of knowledge according to the same
Spirit, [9] to another faith by the same Spirit, to another gifts of
healing by the one Spirit, [10] to another the working of miracles,
to another prophecy, to another the ability to distinguish
between spirits, to another various kinds of tongues, to
another the interpretation of tongues.

(Galatians 5)

[22] But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace,
patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, [23] gentleness, self-
control; against such things there is no law.

Tongues

- **“Tongues” is the ability to speak YOUR Language – and the Listener can hear THEIR Language.**
  - Also, this removes the “Language Divide” caused by the Tower of Babel
  - 1 Corinthians 14

- **The Speaker of “the tongues” speaks to God alone (because no one understands him) – but then God reveals it back to the Listener for their benefit.**
  - The “Mysteries” (of verse 2) are the words of the foreign language, which are not understandable to the listener, unless God translates it

- **“Tongues” is for the benefit of unbelievers (“a sign for unbelievers”)**
  - Verse 22

(1 Corinthians 14)

Pursue love, and earnestly desire the spiritual gifts, especially
that you may prophesy. [2] For one who speaks in a tongue
speaks not to men but to God; for no one understands him, but
he utters mysteries in the Spirit.

…

[6] Now, brothers, if I come to you speaking in tongues, how will I
benefit you unless I bring you some revelation or knowledge or
prophecy or teaching? [7] If even lifeless instruments, such as the
flute or the harp, do not give distinct notes, how will anyone
know what is played? [8] And if the bugle gives an indistinct
sound, who will get ready for battle? [9] So with yourselves, if
with your tongue you utter speech that is not intelligible, how
will anyone know what is said? For you will be speaking into
the air. [10] There are doubtless many different languages in the
world, and none is without meaning, [11] but if I do not know the
meaning of the language, I will be a foreigner to the speaker
and the speaker a foreigner to me. [12] So with yourselves, since
you are eager for manifestations of the Spirit, strive to excel in
building up the church.

[13] Therefore, one who speaks in a tongue should pray that he
may interpret.

…

[22] Thus tongues are a sign not for believers but for unbelievers,
while prophecy is a sign not for unbelievers but for believers.

Pentecost

- **At Pentecost – all of the apostles were given the gift of tongues**
  - This is likely a special event – this is not a universal principle of miraculous gifts for all Christians
  - The Apostles had spiritual powers “on command” – but this does not necessarily mean that modern Christians also have this power. They can request God to do something, but these powers exist at the discretion of God himself.

(Acts 2)

When the day of Pentecost arrived, they were all together in one place. [2] And suddenly there came from heaven a sound like a mighty rushing wind, and it filled the entire house where they were sitting. [3] And divided tongues as of fire appeared to them and rested on each one of them. [4] And they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues as the Spirit gave them utterance.

[5] Now there were dwelling in Jerusalem Jews, devout men from every nation under heaven. [6] And at this sound the multitude came together, and they were bewildered, because each one was hearing them speak in his own language

Spiritual Gifts are at the discretion of God - they are not guaranteed

- **Spiritual Gifts are given at the discretion of the Holy Spirit – such as Prophecy, Teaching, Miracles, Healing, and Tongues.**
  - 1 Corinthians 12

(1 Corinthians 12)

27 Now you are the body of Christ and individually members of it. 28 And God has appointed in the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then miracles, then gifts of healing, helping, administrating, and various kinds of tongues.

29 Are all apostles? Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all work miracles?

30 Do all possess gifts of healing? Do all speak with tongues? Do all interpret?

31 But earnestly desire the higher gifts.

The End of Days

- **At the End of Days (“The Last Days”) many signs will begin appearing – prophecy, visions, dreams, and wonders in heaven.**
  - “Before the Day of the Lord comes” – end times
  - This is a gigantic appearance of spiritual gifts and divine signs

(Acts 2)

“‘And in the last days it shall be, God declares,
that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh,
and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy,
and your young men shall see visions,
and your old men shall dream dreams;
18 even on my male servants and female servants
in those days I will pour out my Spirit, and they shall prophesy.
19 And I will show wonders in the heavens above
and signs on the earth below,
blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke;
20 the sun shall be turned to darkness
and the moon to blood,
before the day of the Lord comes, the great and magnificent day.
21 And it shall come to pass that everyone who calls upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.’

The Bible is the ultimate source of God Speaking

- **God initially spoke through Prophets in Israel, but now he speaks to us through The Son (Jesus) – which is recorded in the Bible Text**
  - Hebrews 1

(Hebrews 1)

Long ago, at many times and in many ways, God spoke to our fathers by the prophets, ² but in these last days he has spoken to us by his Son, whom he appointed the heir of all things, through whom also he created the world.

The Holy Spirit helps you study the Bible

- **The Holy Spirit will "teach you all things" and aid in "remembering" the teaching of Jesus – which is found in the Bible Text**
  - John 14

- **The Holy Spirit convicts people of their sin – based on the Gospel revealed in the Bible Text, that was spread by the Apostles**
  - John 16

(John 14)

26 But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in
my name, he will teach you all things and bring to your
remembrance all that I have said to you.

(John 16)

7 Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I
go away, for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to
you. But if I go, I will send him to you. 8 And when he comes, he
will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and
judgment: 9 concerning sin, because they do not believe in
me; 10 concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father,
and you will see me no longer; 11 concerning judgment,
because the ruler of this world is judged.

12 "I still have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear
them now. 13 When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you
into all the truth, for he will not speak on his own authority,
but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you
the things that are to come. 14 He will glorify me, for he will
take what is mine and declare it to you.

Does Jesus speak to us?

- **Jesus said "My sheep hear my voice" – this is likely not literal audible speech, that you can hear through the Holy Spirit. This is metaphorical – and his voice is found in the Bible Text.**
  - This verse is often used to justify the idea that Jesus audibly speaks to Christians – if you just learn to "recognize the voice of God". This is not the intended theological meaning of this verse.
  - John 10

(John 10)

27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me.

Does God speak to Us?

- **The Prophet Samuel heard a physical, audible, clear voice from God – and he has an entire conversation with God in an audible voice.**
  - Other Old Testament examples – like Moses and the Burning Bush, Elijah, and Job – all encounter a physical audible voice they have a conversation with.
  - 1 Samuel 3

- **Paul sees a "Light from Heaven" with an audible voice that says "Saul, why are you persecuting me?". Paul's companions even hear this audible voice.**
  - With other New Testament examples – like the Baptism of Jesus – the Voice of God was physical and clearly audible to everyone.
  - Acts 9

- **All Examples of "God Speaking" to someone include a physical audible voice – that is so real that even the crowd could hear it as well.**
  - The idea that God "speaks to you in the spirit" is not biblically based.
  - God "speaks to you" through the Bible.

(1 Samuel 3)

2 At that time Eli, whose eyesight had begun to grow dim so
that he could not see, was lying down in his own place. 3 The
lamp of God had not yet gone out, and Samuel was lying
down in the temple of the LORD, where the ark of God was.

4 Then the LORD called Samuel, and he said, "Here I am!" 5 and
ran to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you called me." But he said,
"I did not call; lie down again." So he went and lay down.

(Matthew 3)

16 And when Jesus was baptized, immediately he went up from
the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him, and
he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to
rest on him; 17 and behold, a voice from heaven said, "This is
my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased."

(Acts 9)

3 Now as he went on his way, he approached Damascus, and
suddenly a light from heaven shone around him. 4 And falling to
the ground, he heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are
you persecuting me?" 5 And he said, "Who are you, Lord?" And
he said, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting. 6 But rise and
enter the city, and you will be told what you are to do." 7 The
men who were traveling with him stood speechless, hearing
the voice but seeing no one.

Dreams

- **Joseph (in the New Testament) receives a Dream from an Angel, telling him of God's plan for Mary – and when he awakes, he immediately understands the clear message from God.**
  - Matthew 1
- **Joseph (in the Old Testament) is inspired by God to interpret dreams – for both the Two Prisoners in Egypt, and the Pharaoh of Egypt.**
  - Genesis 40 and Genesis 41
- **Daniel had a Dream of "The Son of Man" and required interpretation.**
  - Daniel 7
- **Most often, the dream required Divine Interpretation by others.**
  - Or, the dream for Joseph (in the New Testament) was extremely clear.
- **The dreams were specifically related to "Divine Revelation" – not casual personal advice.**

(Matthew 1)

20 But as he considered these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not fear to take Mary as your wife, for that which is conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit.

…

24 When Joseph woke from sleep, he did as the angel of the Lord commanded him

(Genesis 40)

8 They said to him, "We have had dreams, and there is no one to interpret them." And Joseph said to them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Please tell them to me."

(Genesis 41)

15 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I have had a dream, and there is no one who can interpret it. I have heard it said of you that when you hear a dream you can interpret it." 16 Joseph answered Pharaoh, "It is not in me; God will give Pharaoh a favorable answer."

(Daniel 7)

In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, Daniel saw a dream and visions of his head as he lay in his bed.

…

16 I approached one of those who stood there and asked him the truth concerning all this. So he told me and made known to me the interpretation of the things.

God Speaking to Us?

- **The true degree of interaction that God has with us is unknowable.**
  - This is why claims of **"God told me XYZ"** or **"God made me feel XYZ emotion"** or **"God led me to XYZ path in life"** is a very dangerous mindset
    - It ascribes "Words & Actions" to God (without verification).
    - The degree of interaction God has with us is a **mystery**.

- **The belief that "Thoughts" are constantly coming from either God, or Satan, is not Biblical**
  - 1) God's primary undisputable method of Speaking to Us is the Text of the Bible
  - 2) In the Old Testament, when God did speak with people – it is very obvious that they are actually interacting with God, and are hearing a real audible voice
  - 3) In the New Testament, a primary role of the Holy Spirit is to convict us of sin, and to help understand & remember the Bible Text. Again, the Bible Text is used as the Spoken Word of God.
  - 4) While its biblically true that "Spirits" can interact with you – at most, their powers appear to be "planting thoughts" which you have ultimate free will control over to accept or reject.
  - A persistent focus on "Every bad thought is from Satan!" is not biblical – and ascribes meaning to phenomenon that is not spiritual, and likely just generic biological mechanisms, like regular thinking.
  - Persistent desire to "look for signs from God" or "hear the voice of God" is not required. "The Voice of God" already exists in the Text of the Bible.

Who goes to Heaven/Hell?

What Happens to people who have never Heard of Jesus?



Who goes to Heaven/Hell?
What is the Judgment Standard?

- It seems that God judges fairly, based on only what Truth people are aware of - and are purposefully guilty of.
- Old Testament Gentiles were not guilty of anything, because God's kingdom had not come to them yet
  - King Cyrus, a gentile, was used by God to rebuild the Temple
- Old Testament Judaism wasn't focused on "Salvation" and "Heaven or Hell"
  - The Old Testament has very little mention of "an afterlife". Its focus was on the actual Lives of the Israelites.
- Jesus says you are Judged based on your Awareness of Truth
  - The Unforgivable Sin – You can speak against The Son, but not the Holy Spirit (Luke 12)
    - Jesus says if you Blaspheme against Him (Jesus, the Son of Man), you can be Forgiven.
    - Jesus says if you Blaspheme against the The Holy Spirit, you won't be forgiven.
    - Is "blasphemy" against the Holy Spirit, rejecting the Truth you know, once you are aware of it?
  - Jesus said to the Pharisees: "If you were blind, you would have no guilt; but now that you say, 'We see,' your guilt remains." (John 9)
  - Jesus said about the World & The Pharisees: "If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have been guilty of sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin. Whoever hates me hates my Father also. If I had not done among them the works that no one else did, they would not be guilty of sin, but now they have seen and hated both me and my Father. But the word that is written in their Law must be fulfilled: 'They hated me without a cause.'(John 15)
  - The Pharisee's knew Jesus was the Messiah, yet denied him, to retain their power & status.
  - People who are not fully aware (the spirit of truth) of Jesus, are not guilty like the Pharisees.
- How do "non Christians" who are unaware of Jesus, go to Heaven?
  - Perhaps they have universal atonement, or some kind of atonement process. The Bible isn't directly clear about Salvation for those who don't directly know the Truth of Jesus, or the God Yahweh.
  - Is an Atheist, who truly does not believe a God exists, going to Hell? In my opinion, I do not see a reason to see why they are anymore guilty than Old Testament Gentiles.
- Only a person who is fully aware of God, and then purposefully "denies to be with God" will be rejected from Heaven.





Who goes to Heaven/Hell? What is the Judgment Standard?

- Paul teaches that God judges based on what People know
  - Paul says that God allowed People of the Past to be ignorant of him. (Acts 17)
  - Paul says that "… Now, he commands all people everywhere to repent, because he has fixed a day on which he will judge the world in righteousness by a man [Jesus] whom he has appointed" (Acts 17)
    - People of the World will be Judged solely based on Jesus (which would be the acceptance, or rejection, of Jesus)
    - Someone who has "never heard of Jesus", even today, would likely not be guilty of this Standard – the same way someone in the Past was not aware of the God of Israel, or Jesus.

(Acts 17)

22 So Paul, standing in the midst of the Areopagus, said: "Men of Athens, I perceive that in every way you are very religious.

…

26 And he made from one man every nation of mankind to live on all the face of the earth, having determined allotted periods and the boundaries of their dwelling place, 27 that they should seek God, and perhaps feel their way toward him and find him. Yet he is actually not far from each one of us, 28 for

"'In him we live and move and have our being';

as even some of your own poets have said,

"'For we are indeed his offspring.'

29 Being then God's offspring, we ought not to think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone, an image formed by the art and imagination of man. 30 The times of ignorance God overlooked, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent, 31 because he has fixed a day on which he will judge the world in righteousness by a man whom he has appointed; and of this he has given assurance to all by raising him from the dead."

https://reasons.org/explore/blogs/todays-new-reason-to-believe/what-about-those-who-have-never-heard

What Happens to those who have Never Heard of Jesus?

- First, my study of the Bible persuades me that "God condemning people to hell" is a mistaken emphasis. Rather, God grants to every human being the choice of with whom they wish to spend eternity. If they so desire, humans can spend eternity in a fully submitted relationship with God where they enjoy fellowship with God and all others fully submitted to him.
- Alternately, if they want nothing to do with God or with any of his followers, God grants them the desires of their hearts and allows them to spend eternity with like-minded beings.
- Before any Scripture existed, Job—just through his observation of the natural realm—deduced the following:
  - A Creator exists (Job 9:8, 10:8, 12:10).
  - The Creator possesses unlimited power and wisdom (Job 9:4, 10).
  - The Creator loves us (Job 10:12).
  - The Creator is perfectly good and moral perfection is his standard (Job 7:18, 10:14, 23:10).
  - We fall far short of the Creator's goodness and morality (Job 9:2, 14, 28–29, 14:4, 15:14).
  - The Creator's power, wisdom, and love imply that he formed a plan to redeem willing humans (Job 14:14–15, 16:19–21).
  - The Creator is our Advocate and Intercessor (Job 16:19–21).
  - If we entrust our lives to the Redeemer, we will be rescued by him (Job 9:15, 13:15, 14:17, 17:3).
  - If we receive the Creator's offer of redemption, our rescue will be guaranteed (Job 19:25–27, 23:10).
  - If we reject the Creator's redemptive offer, our condemnation will be assured (Job 19:28–29).
- Therefore, no one can blame God for the lack of sufficient revelation of his existence, his character attributes, or his offer of salvation from sin and eternal fellowship with him.
- The second part of 1 Chronicles 28:9 states a promise, "If you seek him [God], he will be found by you."
- Thus, we can be assured that salvation will be bestowed on anyone who seeks after God.
- Dr. Hugh Ross



Did God end People's Lives?



Did God end People's Lives?

- **Yes - God alone has the RIGHT to decide if People continue to live.**
- Disclaimer: This is my opinion only, based on the Textual Evidence. Verify it yourself & learn from others on this topic.
- God has removed many Cultures – such as the Canaanites, Amalekites, Amorites, Sodom & Gomorrah, and the Flood Event.
- Widespread Extreme Sin:
  - General Extreme Evil – such as Murder
  - S*xual Immorality & Forced S*xual Immorality
    - Sodom & Gomorrah forced S*xual Immorality onto their Visitors (Genesis 19)
  - Child Sacrifice & Human Sacrifice
    - Canaanites sacrificed their Children to the god Molech – on a Burning Metal Altar. (2 Kings 23)
  - Idolatry (Statue Worship), Occultism, Necromancy…
- These cultures were beyond saving. At that point, God ended their culture.
- Mercy:
  - God waited 400 years for the Amorites to repent – only after this very lenient time period for repentance did he finally destroy them.
- In other places – God commanded Israel to overtake a Region in Battle.
  - In these cases, they destroyed all the Military Males in Battle – and integrated the existing Women & Children into Israel.
- Is God allowed to be God?
  - When God does not destroy Evil – he is criticized for allowing Evil.
  - When God does destroy Evil – he is criticized for being Murderous.
- Ancient Canaanite Gods - Examples https://youtu.be/lNZEA0yn9oA?si=xsobElKv6PiTUbfS





Did the Bible steal from Ancient Myths?



https://youtu.be/5FR08QtvapM?si=mJ6nkl12tfQkNR9p

https://youtu.be/1SZZzuweVEs?si=07RsaNiHCjWNEqvV

Ancient Myths – Did the Bible steal them?



- #1 - Was Jesus a rip-off of the Ancient God "Mithra"?
- #2 - Was the Flood Story stolen from other Ancient Myths – like the Epic of Gilgamesh?
- The Stories of the Bible have many similarities to other Ancient Stories… Hmm…



- Wait a second…
- Do commonalities in Story – have any relevance to whether individual stories are True? (such as whether the Ancient God "Mithra" being born of a Virgin & Doing Miracles – and the same being True for Jesus)
- What is the Strength of Evidence for each individual myth/story?
- Does the Fact that there are "Ancient Flood Myths" in every Culture – all being unique – disqualify the Objective Truth or Falsehood of a possible Event?
- Similarly, just because one story is the earliest writing of an Event does not guarantee it is the accurate telling.
- The Fact there might be Multiple Similar Accounts, of similar persons or events, does not tell you which is accurate, or which you can automatically disqualify as inaccurate.

- It's very easy to understand why "a God" probably exists…
- **Which stories & religions have the most evidence of their Claims?**
- Is the Old Testament just a Copy of other Ancient Texts? (Michael Heiser)
  - https://youtu.be/TbqYn3R1jOA?si=LvbET5LMxFmL8dlI
- Jesus vs Horus
  - https://youtu.be/5FR08QtvapM?si=mJ6nkl12tfQkNR9p

Freewill vs. Predestined Events?

Freewill vs. Predestined Events

- Do Humans have Free Will?
- Or does God determine everything in advance?

- … Both!
- #1 – Humans have full free will over their own actions
- #2 – God has great power in determining certain courses of events – but he never can effect a person's decisions. People still shape their own outcomes, individually and collectively… God shapes History in Advance, or allows people to be Tempted in Faith and to choose freely.

What is the Unforgiveable Sin? (Blasphemy against the Holy Spirit)

https://www.biola.edu/blogs/good-book-blog/2021/what-is-the-unforgiveable-sin-what-is-blasphemy-against-the-spirit

The Unforgiveable Sin

- Jesus says if you **Blaspheme against Him (Jesus)**, you can be Forgiven.
  - "To speak against the Son of Man implies that a person does not know the full identity of Jesus" [1]
- Jesus says if you **Blaspheme against the The Holy Spirit**, you won't be forgiven.

- The Pharisees knew something to be true (Jesus is from God / Jesus was the Messiah) – yet refused to believe it – probably to maintain their own Status.
- Blaspheming against the Holy Spirit?
  - Refusing to Believe in the Truth
    - Whereas Repentance is submitting to the Truth
- "**Blaspheming the Holy Spirit** is not simply saying something bad about the Holy Spirit (or about anything else, for that matter), **but is a persistent rejection of the convicting work of the Spirit, whose job it is to expose our sin and lead us to accept Christ**. Jesus says about the Holy Spirit in John 16:8, "And he when he comes, will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment." [1]
- "Rather, as stated before, blasphemy against the Spirit is ongoing hardening of your heart against the Holy Spirit who is trying to lead you to repent of sin and believe in Christ." [1]

- **The Unforgiveable Sin is… Unrepentance, despite knowing the Truth!**

Matthew 12

Luke 12

(Matthew 12)

24 But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, "It is only by Beelzebul, the prince of
demons, that this man casts out demons." 25 Knowing their thoughts, he said to
them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is laid waste, and no city or house divided
against itself will stand. 26 And if Satan casts out Satan, he is divided against himself.
How then will his kingdom stand? 27 And if I cast out demons by Beelzebul, by whom
do your sons cast them out? Therefore they will be your judges. 28 But if it is by the
Spirit of God that I cast out demons, then the kingdom of God has come upon
you. 29 Or how can someone enter a strong man's house and plunder his goods, unless
he first binds the strong man? Then indeed he may plunder his house. 30 Whoever is
not with me is against me, and whoever does not gather with me
scatters. 31 Therefore I tell you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven people,
but the blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven. 32 And whoever speaks a
word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but whoever speaks against the Holy
Spirit will not be forgiven, either in this age or in the age to come.

A Tree Is Known by Its Fruit

33 "Either make the tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit
bad, for the tree is known by its fruit. 34 You brood of vipers! How can you speak
good, when you are evil? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth
speaks. 35 The good person out of his good treasure brings forth good, and the evil
person out of his evil treasure brings forth evil. 36 I tell you, on the day of
judgment people will give account for every careless word they speak, 37 for by your
words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned."

(Luke 12)

8 "And I tell you, everyone who acknowledges me before men, the Son of Man also
will acknowledge before the angels of God, 9 but the one who denies me before
men will be denied before the angels of God. 10 And everyone who speaks a
word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but the one who blasphemes against
the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven.

What is the Occult?

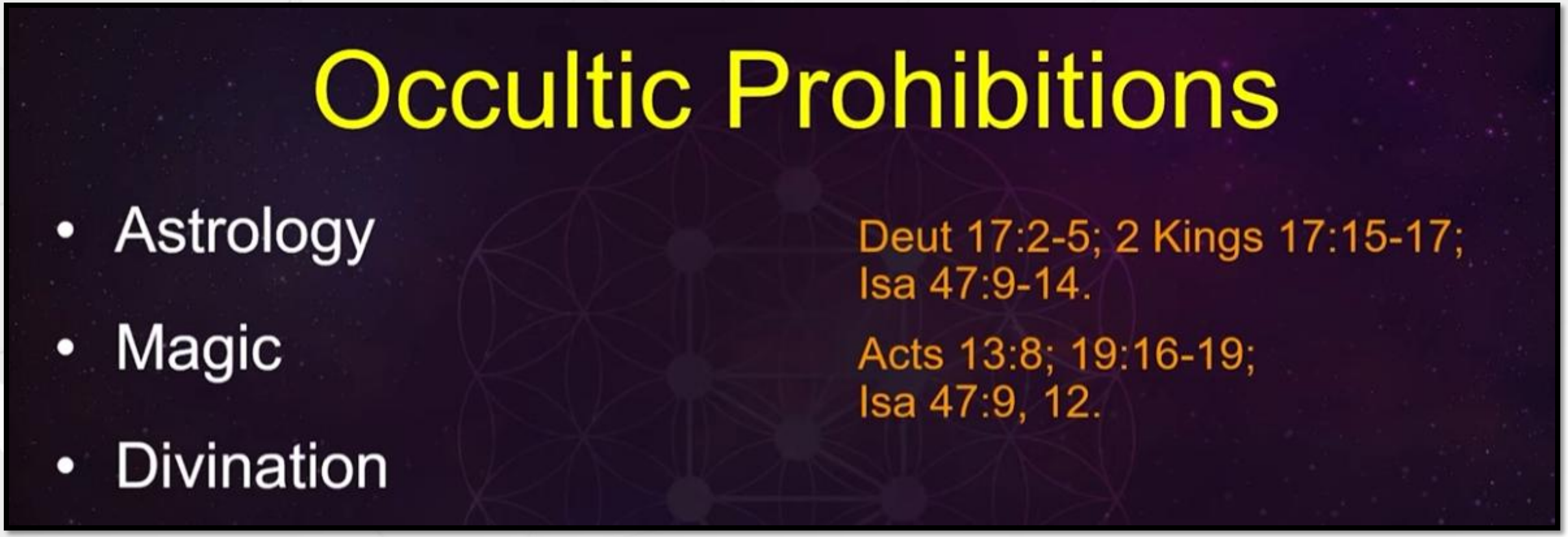
https://youtu.be/C03YO10GN-A?si=LjLJf0uBCf4ZzikL&t=1732

Prohibitions of the Occult by God



https://youtu.be/C03YO10GN-A?si=LjLJf0uBCf4ZzikL&t=1732

Prohibitions of the Occult by God



Scriptures vs Traditions

Scriptures vs Traditions: Follow Scripture Firstly

- Always be aware of the difference between the ordained commands & teaching of God in the Authentic Scriptures – and the traditions of those in the "religious establishment", and the traditions they have passed down.
- "The Spirit" is the True Abode of God's Kingdom
- Jesus tells us the Father firstly desires to be "worshipped in spirit" as he truly is… It is not a requirement to worship God at the Temple in Jerusalem like the Jews do, or on Mount Gerizim in the land of the Samaritans.
  - John 4
- Follow Scripture firstly – and be cautious of the Traditions of Men
- Jesus condemns the Pharisees because:
  - #1 – They follow "the law & traditions" yet are far in Heart from God – They are not "worshipping God in spirit" as is true of heart.
  - #2 – They follow the Traditions of Men (which are often "Oral Traditions" passed down amongst the Religious Institution) that twist, ignore, contradict, or try to circumvent the Commands of God in the authentic Scripture.
  - #3 – They break the Commands of God, found indisputably in the Authentic Scriptures, for the sake of their Traditions.
  - Mark 7 / Matthew 15

(John 4) The woman said to him, "Sir, I perceive that you are a prophet. 20 Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you say that in Jerusalem is the place where people ought to worship." 21 Jesus said to her, "Woman, believe me, the hour is coming when neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem will you worship the Father. 22 You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews. 23 But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. 24 God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

(Mark 7) 6 And he said to them, "Well did Isaiah prophesy of you hypocrites, as it is written,

"'This people honors me with their lips,
but their heart is far from me;
7 in vain do they worship me,
teaching as doctrines the commandments of men.'

8 You leave the commandment of God and hold to the tradition of men."

9 And he said to them, "You have a fine way of rejecting the commandment of God in order to establish your tradition! 10 For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother'; and, 'Whoever reviles father or mother must surely die.' 11 But you say, 'If a man tells his father or his mother, "Whatever you would have gained from me is Corban"' (that is, given to God)— 12 then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or mother, 13 thus making void the word of God by your tradition that you have handed down. And many such things you do."

(Matthew 15) Then Pharisees and scribes came to Jesus from Jerusalem and said, 2 "Why do your disciples break the tradition of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat." 3 He answered them, "And why do you break the commandment of God for the sake of your tradition?

Islam:
Key Claims

Islam – Basic Beliefs of Muslims

- Muslims believe in the one True God (Monotheism).
- Muslims do not believe God can be 3 Persons (Anti-Trinitarian)
- Mohammed is the last True Prophet.
- The Quran is a perfect book from God - and many believe it has been 100% perfectly been preserved.
- The Quran says that Jesus did not Die on the Cross – and he was not Resurrected
  - Allah only made it “appear as if” he died on the cross

Islam – Key Claims about God

- “The Infinite God cannot Manifest as a Man, and walk among us.”
  - This is just a claim/belief. It means nothing.
  - You cannot possibly say what God can or cannot do.
  - God appearing to us as a Man is not a logical contradiction, in any way.
- “The Trinity is Polytheism. You believe in 3 Gods.”
  - There is only 1 God, 1 Essence, 1 Nature.
  - Yet, God can appear to us as a Man.
  - => Read Section “Terminology: The Trinity”





Islam – Key Claims about Bible Teachings

- “Jesus did not claim to be God in the Bible.”
  - => Read Section “Jesus is God (His Words)”.
- “God does not appear as a Man in the Bible’s Old Testament.”
  - => Read Section “God Appears as a Man”.
- “Genesis has Contradictions – it says the Plants were made on Day #3, yet the Sun was made on Day #4.”
  - => Read Section “Genesis - Day Age Creationism”.
- “The Prophet is predicted in the Bible, in places such as Deuteronomy 18, Isaiah 42, Song of Solomon, The Helper, etc…”
  - => Read Section “Is Islam predicted in the Bible?”





Islam – Key Claims about Bible Preservation

- “The Bible Text is corrupted. All Scholars agree.”
  - This is 100% False - and just a Claim from Ignorance.
  - The Bible Text, according to Scholars, is strongly preserved. There are minor changes - and “Textual Criticism” experts are fully aware of them, and it is marked in Bibles on purpose.
  - => Read Section “Is the Bible Text Reliable?”





Islam – Key Claims about the Quran & Hadith

- “The Quran does not say the Bible Text is preserved & reliable.”
  - => Read Section “Quran – Bible is Trusted?”
- “The Quran is Perfectly Preserved, and the Hadiths are Perfectly Reliable”.
  - => Read Section on the Quran & Hadiths
- “The Quran & Hadiths go back to the Time of the Prophet, unlike Christianity.”
  - => Read Section on the Quran & Hadiths





Islam – Key Claims about Islam Evidence

- “Islam is Proven True because of the Prophecy Evidence.”
  - => Read Section “Islam - Prophecy?”

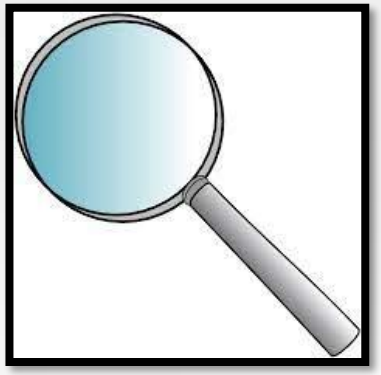




Islam:
Prophecy Evidence?

What is a Valid Prophecy from God? How can it be Objectively Verifiable?

- Invalid Prophecies
  - **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**
    - "There will be sin & wars in the future"
    - "There will be a battle at XYZ in the future."
  - **Prophecies that occur long before the Written Text of the Prophecy exists**
    - Event XYZ occurred in 1000 AD – but the Earliest Written Text of this Prophecy only existed in 1200 AD.
    - It is only valid if the Text predicts it before it happens, otherwise it is not verifiable.
- Making 1,000 different generic predictions then hitting 500 of those predictions (or even all of them) doesn't prove anything.
  - Anyone can predict generic occurrences.
- Who even knows if there are **False Prophecies**?



Islam's Top Prophecies most cited as evidence

https://www.provingislam.com/proofs/101-fulfilled-prophecies-1

Islam's Top Prophecies – Sinfulness, Division, Diseases, Prosperity

- **Key Claim: Mohammed predicted so many future events - how can anyone predict all these things?**
  - https://youtu.be/CJlZgFBIw5Y?si=qxXebfHaINn5qmMi
- Predicted there will be many STDs due to fornication.
- Predicted there will be in-fighting in Islam
- Predicted Mosques would become Grand like Palaces
- Predicted Enemies would conquer Muslim Lands
- Predicted that Drinking Wine would become more common
- Predicted that people would abandon Religion for Worldly Gain
- Predicted there would be a lack of Unity in Islam
- Predicted that People will become less trust-worthy
- Predicted a world with lots of "Interest Payments" in finance
- Predicted that the Bare-Footed Bedouins (Arabs) would one day make the Worlds Tallest Buildings









- All of these did come true, yes… Here's the thing…
- All of these are extremely generic future predictions.
  - Essentially, all of them had a 100% chance of occurring. A classic generic "Sin & Wars" prediction list.
  - Anyone can predict 100 generic predictions, and many/all will come true.
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**
- **See the Section "Evidence for God - Prophecy" to see examples of valid Christian Prophecy.**

https://youtu.be/SuXLoCB-X48?si=1ntu4QhnwPUNfOtN

https://youtu.be/Tzs3YzyTcWw?si=YS55B6e5-mSQ_oVn

Islam's Top Prophecies – The Romans/Byzantines defeat the Persians (628 AD)

- **Key Claim: Mohammed predicted the Roman/Byzantine defeat of the Persians (628 AD) - a big comeback win, against the Persians.**
- (Quran 30:2-4) - **"The Romans have been defeated. In a nearby territory. But following their defeat, they will be victorious. In a few years [meaning 3-9 years in the Arabic]."**
- Quran provides almost almost no details:
  - Who defeated the Romans? Where did they defeat them? Why 3 to 9 years, not a specific date? So what?
- **The Prophecy Text was written down** long after the Event Happened – the earliest Full Quran manuscript is ~700-750 and the Hadiths were written 800 AD – 1200 AD.
  - Hadith defenders must claim that the "Oral Transmission" over hundreds of years was accurate. This is not an objectively verifiable Prophecy claim.
- You have to go outside the Quran – to the "Hadiths" – to find an Actual Description with Details (Hadiths written 100/200/500 years later) :
  - **"On the day that these Ayat [verses 30:1-4] were revealed, the Persians had defeated the Romans ... The Quraish wanted the Persians to be victorious since they were not people of the Book ... Abu Bakr and the idolaters made a bet ... means something between 3 and 9 years ... Then six years passed without the Romans being victorious. The idolaters took what they won in the bet from Abu Bakr. When the seventh year came and the Romans were finally victorious over the Persians, the Muslims rebuked Abu Bakr for agreeing to six years." (Narrated Niyar bin Mukram Al-Aslami)**
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**
- **Prophecies that occur long before the Written Text of the Prophecy exists**
- **See the Section "Evidence for God - Prophecy" to see examples of valid Christian Prophecy.**





[1] https://www.reddit.com/r/exmuslim/comments/x5pzke/daily_debunking_the_prophecy_of_the_siege_of/

Islam's Top Prophecies – Baghdad invaded by The Mongols/Turks (1258 AD)

- **Key Claim: Mohammed predicted that the Mongols would invade Baghdad. He gave details about how the City would fall.**
- Predicted invasions of Baghdad by Mongols (1258 AD)
  - Allah's Messenger said, "The Hour will not be established until you fight with the Turks; people with small eyes, red faces, and flat noses. Their faces will look like shields coated with leather. The Hour will not be established **till you fight with people whose shoes are made of hair." Red Faces, Flat Noses, Small Eyes, Flat Eyes, Shoes of Hair** (Narrated Abu Huraira)
  - Some of my people will alight on low-lying ground, which they will call **al-Basrah**, **beside a river called the Tigris over which there is a bridge**. Its people will be numerous and it will be one of the capital cities of immigrants (or one of the capital cities of Muslims, according to the version of Ibn Yahya who reported from Abu Ma'mar). **At the end of time** the descendants of Qantura' will come with broad faces and small eyes and alight on the bank of the river. The town's inhabitants will then separate into three sections, one of which will follow cattle and (live in) the desert and perish, another of which will seek security for themselves and perish, but a third will put their children behind their backs and fight the invaders, and they will be the martyrs.
- The Texts existed approx. 700-1200, which is good – Meanwhile, the Invasion of Baghdad by the Mongols happened 1258.
- The prediction is that the Turks (people from the East) will one day Invade Baghdad… Anyone living next to another Nation is almost guaranteed to fight them one day. This is a 100% guaranteed occurrence for Baghdad.
- [1] "The hadith doesn't mention Baghdad, but it mentions Basrah which is a different city in Iraq, founded in 636 by Muslims and it is also on Tigris river."
- [1] "The hadith also doesn't mention "siege". And doesn't mention when it will happen. So how does it predict "Siege of Baghdad in 1258"?"
- [1] "Sunan Abu Dawud was written in the 9th century. Muslims conquered Iraq in the 7th century and wars with Turks were already happening in the 7th and 8th century, so Muslims knew how they look and what they'd like to do."
- [1] The prophecy "At the end of time" was unfulfilled.
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**
- **See the Section "Evidence for God - Prophecy" to see examples of valid Christian Prophecy.**





Many other Prophecies of Islam

https://sunnah.com/ibnmajah:63

https://medium.com/@hassanradwan51/tall-buildings-prophecy-5d1624c04c94

https://www.provingislam.com/proofs/101-fulfilled-prophecies-1

Islam Prophecy – Tall Buildings

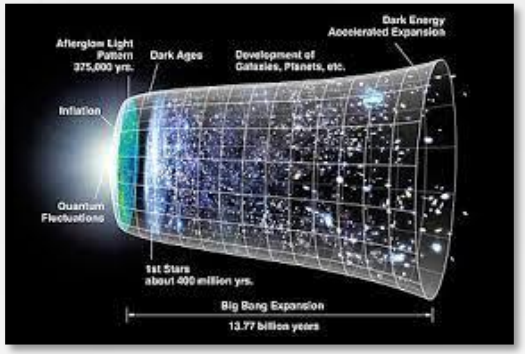
- Predicted Arabs would complete in making Tall Buildings.
    - He asked: "When will the Hour be?' He said: 'The one who is being asked about it does not know more than the one who is asking.' He asked: 'Then what are its signs?' he said: 'When the slave woman gives birth to her mistress' (Waki' said: This means when non-Arabs will give birth to Arabs") 'and when you see barefoot, naked, destitute shepherds competing in constructing tall buildings.'



- => Arabs do have Tall Buildings today.
- => How Tall? How many buildings?
- => This happens during the End Times ("The Hour"). Was it even Fulfilled yet by that standard?
- => If the Arabs had tall buildings anytime from 600 AD – 2020 AD, did it fulfill?
- => At the Time of Writing, there was Arabs already building Tall Buildings (3 stories tall).
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**

Islam Prophecy – Scientific Miracles #1

- Predicted the Expansion of the Universe.
  - (51:47) We constructed the universe with power, and We are expanding it.
- => This idea was already Existing in the Christian Bible.
  - (Isaiah 51:13) “And you forget the Lord your Maker, Who stretched out the heavens, And laid the foundations of the earth”.
- Predicted the entire Universe was made in 6 Days.
  - (50:38) We created the heavens and the earth and what is between them in six days, and no fatigue touched Us.
- => The Universe & Earth were not made in 6 days.
- Predicted that the Sky is Protective
  - (21:32). And We made the sky a protected ceiling; yet they turn away from its wonders.
- => Anyone could’ve predicted the Sky protects Human Beings.





Islam Prophecy – Scientific Miracles #2

- Predicted that the Mountains were “Tent Pegs” and “Stabilizers”, keeping the Earth Stable.
  - (78:6-7) Did We not make the earth a cradle? And the mountains pegs?
  - (21:31) And We have set on the earth mountains standing firm, lest it should shake with them
  - (16:15) And He has set up on the earth mountains standing firm, lest it should shake with you; and rivers and roads; that ye may guide yourselves;
- => The Quran asserts the Earth is kept Stable by “Mountains like Tent Pegs”.
- => Many Mountain Regions on Planet Earth are extremely Earthquake prone.
- Predicted that Meteorites were “missiles to kill evil spirits”
  - (67:5) We have adorned the lower heaven with lanterns, and made them missiles against the devils; and We have prepared for them the punishment of the Blaze.
- => Meteorites are not evil spirit killing missiles.
- Predicted that the Sun & Moon move in an Orbit.
  - (21:33) It is He who created the night and the day, and the sun and the moon; each floating in an orbit.
- => Anyone can see the Sun moves in a preset “Orbit”, or in other terms a “Predictable Path”.
- => Anyone in 600 AD could’ve noticed the Sun “floats” in the Sky, and has a “set course” (orbit).
- Predicted that the Sun sets in a “muddy spring”.
  - (18:86) Until, when he reached the setting of the sun, he found it setting in a murky spring, and found a people in its vicinity
- => The Sun does not exist in a “murky spring”.







Islam Prophecy – Scientific Miracles #3

- Predicted that Fresh & Saltwater oceans have an impassable barrier between them.
  - (25:53) And it is He who merged the two seas; this one fresh and sweet, and that one salty and bitter; and He placed between them a barrier, and an impassable boundary.
- => Sea Currents mix between all waters. There is no magical “fresh and saltwater” barrier.
- => Other interpretations say there is a “Landmass” between 2 seas… So?
- Predicted that “Life creating Liquid” exists in the Backbone and the Chest.
  - (86:5-7) Let man consider what he was created from. He was created from gushing liquid. Issuing from between the backbone and the breastbones.
- => “Life creating Liquid” does not exist in the Backbone, nor the Chestplate.
- Predicted that Deep in the Ocean, it becomes Completely Dark.
  - (24:40) Or like utter darkness in a vast ocean, covered by waves, above which are waves, above which is fog. Darkness upon darkness. If he brings out his hand, he will hardly see it.
- => Anyone can dive 10-feet-down into Water and see it gets extremely Dark.
- Predicted that Life was made from Water.
  - (21:30) We made from water every living thing. Will they not believe?
- => Every Human Being to ever exist knows that Life requires Water – anyone can predict this.

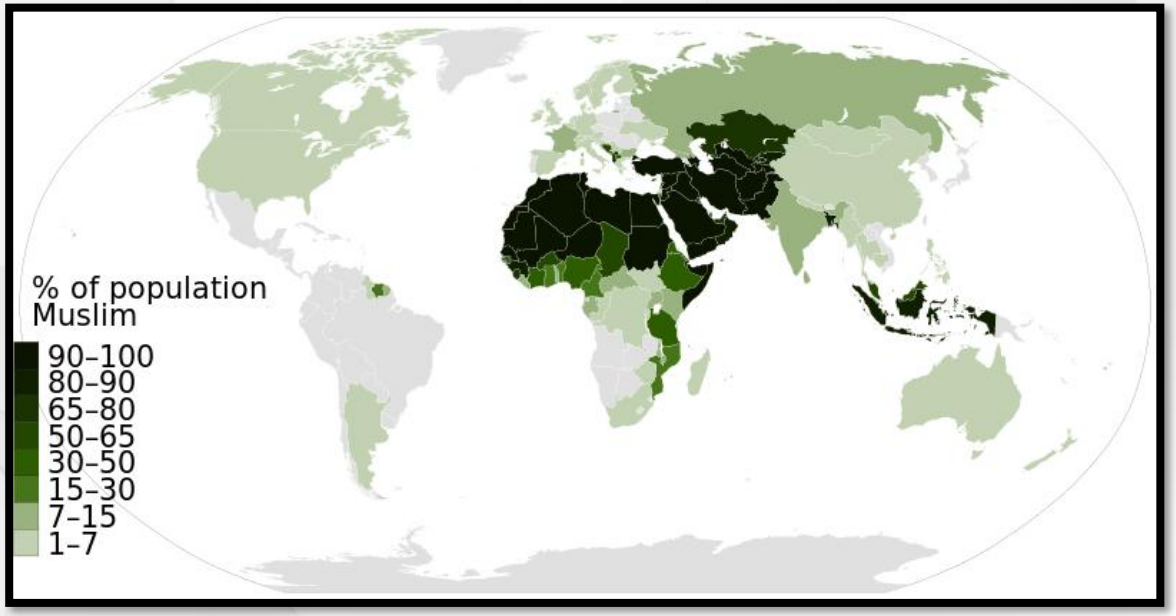




Islam Prophecy – Islam would Spread Globally

- Predicted Islam would become Globalized
- Predicted Islam would Primarily spread East & West.

- => Islam did spread.
- => Islam did not just primarily “Spread East & West”, it spread extremely far North & South.
- => Any Leader would make a general prediction that their Influence would Spread.
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**





https://www.ask-a-muslim.com/en/prophecies-made-by-the-prophet-muhammad-pbuh/

Islam Prophecy – Conquest of Cities & Nations

- Predicted great Muslim conquests – Egypt, Persia, Yemen, etc.
- Predicted that the Muslims would conquer many cities.
  - (Quran 48:27-28) Allah has fulfilled His Messenger's vision in truth: "You will enter the Sacred Mosque, Allah willing, in security, heads shaven, or hair cut short, not fearing. He knew what you did not know, and has granted besides that an imminent victory." It is He who sent His Messenger with the guidance and the religion of truth, to make it prevail over all religions. Allah suffices as Witness
  - According to authentic narrations, the Prophet, upon him be peace and blessings, gave his community the glad tidings that they would conquer Damascus, Jerusalem, Iraq, Persia, Istanbul (Constantinople) and Cyprus, and that the religion of Islam would reach as far as the remotest corners of the world in the east and west.



- => Many Conquests can't be verified outside of the Quran. Post-Fact verification.
- => Almost any Country that has ever existed has had "Great Conquests" of its surrounding Nations.
- => Many Conquests happened in 650-700. Many Hadiths "predicting it" written generally 800-900. The Quran does not have full manuscripts as far back as 650, for starters.
- **Generic Predictions that are Guaranteed to come True – and Have No Specific Details**
- **Prophecies that occur long before the Written Text of the Prophecy exists**

https://www.alislam.org/articles/fulfilled-prophecies-of-holy-quran/

Islam Prophecy – Technology, Books, Israel

- Predicted that Israel would be regathered
  - (17:104) After him, We said to the Children of Israel, “Inhabit the land, and when the promise of the Hereafter arrives, We will bring you all together.”
- => This idea was already existing the Bible, and was stated very often in the Bible.
- Predicted Fingerprinting technology
  - (41:20) …Their skins will testify against them regarding what they used to do.
- => This is actually an OK prediction.
- => But this prediction alone definitely doesn’t prove Allah was the inspiration.
- Predicted “Books spreading”
  - (81:11) “And when books are spread abroad.”
- => Books spread long before the Printing Press in 1500.
- Predicted “Air Traffic Systems”
  - (51:8) “And by the heaven full of tracks”
- => Anyone can predict that the Sky could/would be Navigated – because of Birds.
- Predicted “Zoo’s”
  - (81:6) “And when the wild beasts are gathered together.”
- => Ancient Kings already had possession of Dangerous Animals. Zoos were not invented in 2000.

https://www.ask-a-muslim.com/en/prophecies-made-by-the-prophet-muhammad-pbuh/

Islam Prophecy – Death of a Person

- Predicted that a certain person he knew would Die.
  - Before his death, the Messenger called his daughter Fatima to his bedside and informed her that she would be the first among his family to join him after his death. Fatima joined her father, the pride of mankind, six months later.

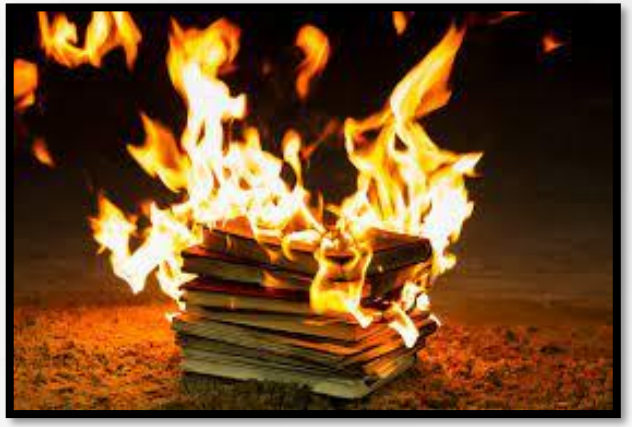
- => This can't be verified outside of the Quran. Post-Fact prophecy.
- => Prophecy Rule #1: Prophecy cannot be given AT THE TIME PERIOD OF THE EVENT or especially AFTER THE EVENT - If the Written Evidence of the Prophecy overlaps with the actual Event, you can't prove the Writer did not Edit the Prophecy. The Text must be verified to have existed reasonably before of the Event.
- => Prophecy Rule #2: Details must be Specific & Identifiable – When, How, Who… General Statements like "There will be more sin & wars in the future" are not Prophecy. Prediction must be undeniable evidence of something only God could predict.

Islam:
Historical Evidence for the Quran & The Prophet & Hadiths?

The Quran:
The most “Perfectly Preserved” book ever?

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_the_Quran
https://www.oldest.org/religion/qurans/

Key Facts about the Quran



- Many Muslims will claim that the New Testament is corrupted because:
  - #1 - Many texts of the New Testament come 50-200 years after the initial events
  - #2 - No one has the Original Copies of the New Testament
  - #3 - There are minor errors in the New Testament (copyist errors, verses sometimes missing, etc)
- 610 AD - 632 AD - Mohammed spoke the words of the Quran until he died in 632 AD
- 633 AD - Abu Bakr compiled the Entire Quran into Written Text
- 650 AD
  - **ALL QURANS were Burned - Uthman destroys all the "Unauthentic Qurans"**
  - **Uthman creates/compiles the Full "Authentic Quran" and distributes it**
- => How do you verify Uthman (650 AD), after he burned all Qurans, didn't edit the Quran?
- => How did Uthman decide which Quran was "Authentic"?
- Quran is not "Perfectly Preserved" https://youtu.be/VuP8NisiZdw?si=5eT7vyf2I1n432EZ

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_the_Quran

https://www.oldest.org/religion/qurans/

https://youtu.be/Drop_rzgdxo?si=djEDLBf2wQkBJujj

https://www.islamic-awareness.org/quran/text/mss/medina1a.html

Earliest Full/Partial Quran Texts
No Full Original Documents?



- Many Muslims will claim that the New Testament is corrupted because:
  - #1 - Many texts of the New Testament come 50-200 years after the initial events
  - #2 - No one has the Original Copies of the New Testament
  - #3 - There are minor errors in the New Testament (copyist errors, verses sometimes missing, etc)
- The Quran has 114 chapters. Mohammed's primary time period was 610 – 632.
- **(568 AD – 645 AD)** Birmingham Manuscript
  - **Only Chapters 18-20**
  - Missing 112 chapters
- **(649 AD – 675 AD)** Tübingen Fragment
  - **Only Chapters 17-36**
  - Missing 95 chapters
- **(671 AD)** Sana'a Manuscript
  - **Only 3 Chapters**
  - Missing 111 chapters
- **(700 – 750 AD)** Sarayı Medina 1a
  - **All Chapters (Full Quran)**
- Where are the Original Documents of the Quran? With all 114 chapters? By 652 AD?
- How do you verify Uthman (650 AD), after he burned all Qurans, didn't edit the Quran? How did Uthman choose the "authentic" quran?
- Many Prophecies given by the Prophet happened in his Lifetime. Since the Text only exists afterward, How do you objectively verify that all Prophecies during the Lifetime of the Prophet (approx. 610-630) actually were Predicted beforehand?

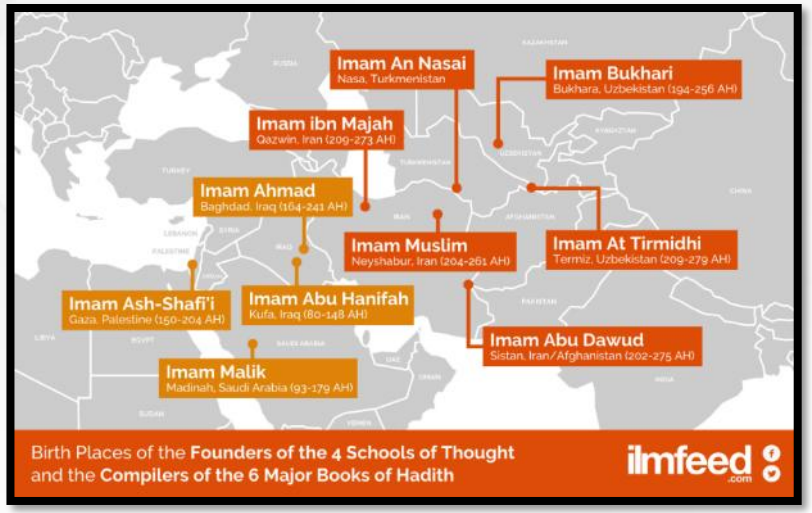
The Hadiths:
The Sayings & Life of the Prophet

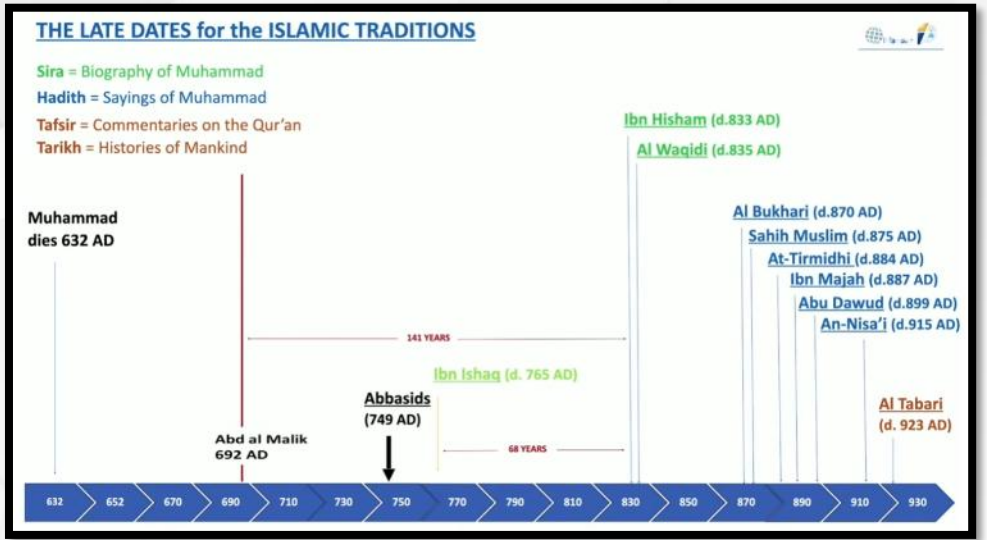
https://youtu.be/zTJ2QR9ayyw?si=koqC7koWiKpaGS9e

The Hadiths: Documents that tell you about the Prophet Where/When were the Hadiths written?

- The Quran itself does not tell you much about The Prophet – not his Life, or his Words.
  - The Quran only has 4 verses that mention “MHMD”.
  - The earliest Quran manuscripts appear between 650 AD – 750 AD.
- You must use the Hadiths, written later, to learn anything about His Life or His Words.
- The Hadiths, according to Tradition, were “verbally transmitted” in a “reliable chain”, originating from The Prophet & His Companions, to the written text years compiled later.
- All Traditional Writers wrote about their Prophet nearly 100/200/500 Years Later, and 100+ Miles away from Mecca.
- Hadiths (sayings of the prophet) were passed down by “Oral Transmission” chains for 100-300 years before becoming Written Texts. There is a “Grading Science” for rating the reliability of a transmitter.



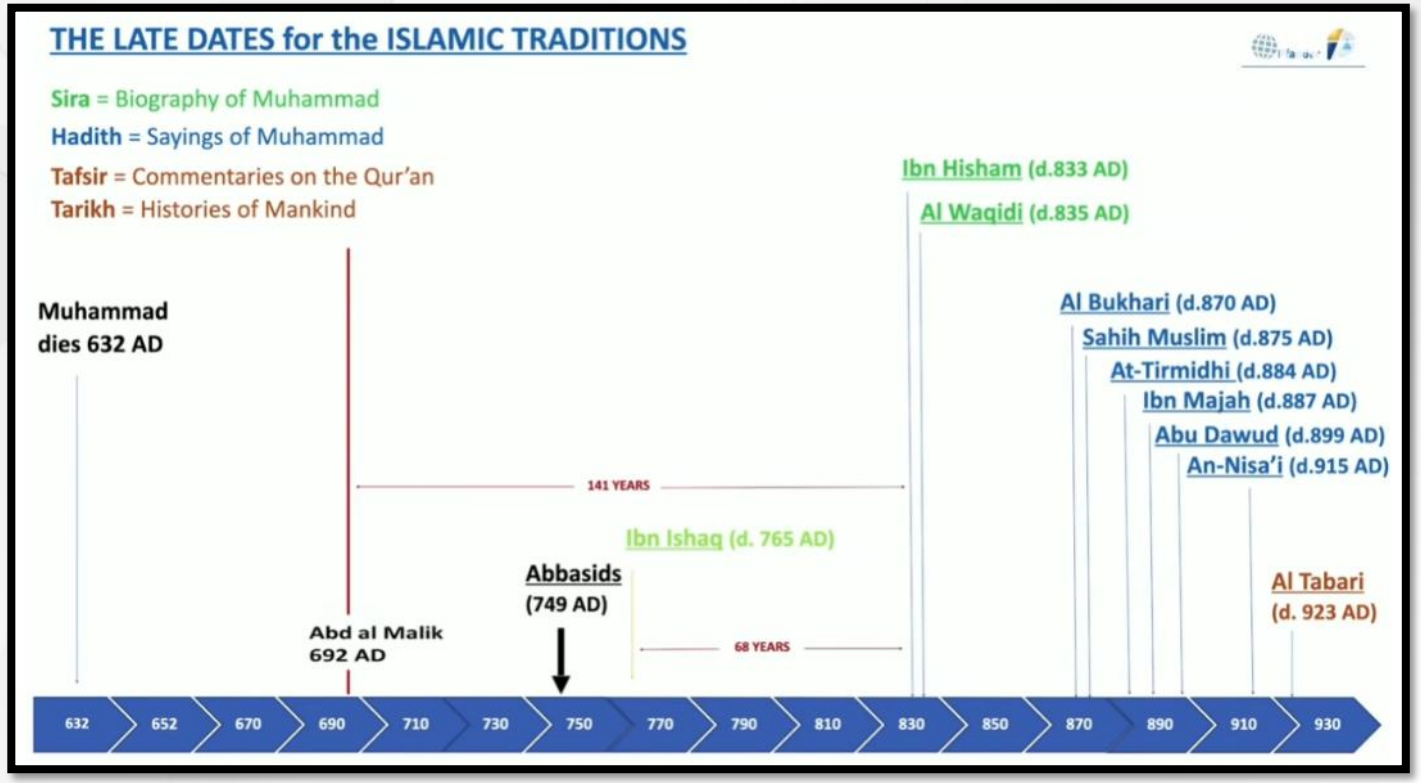




https://youtu.be/zTJ2QR9ayyw?si=koqC7koWiKpaGS9e

The Hadiths:
Oral Transmission by a Chain-of-Narration

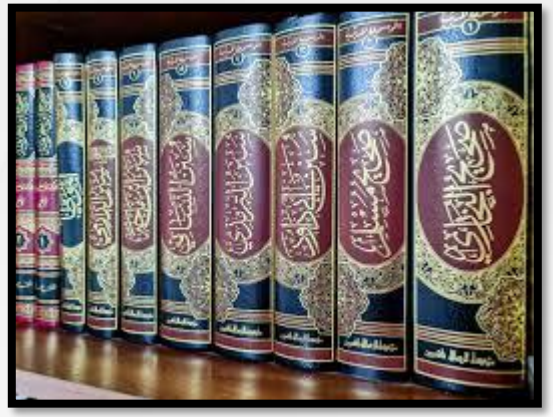
- The Hadiths claim that they were written by XYZ person, at XYZ date – usually originating from the Life of the Prophet himself.
- #1: We can only objectively know the Earliest Manuscript of a Hadith Document, not whether its claims of its Authorship or Original Date are true.
- #2: A Hadith is only as reliable as the "Grading Science of the Hadith" says it is. But the idea of being able to objectively grade the "Reliability of Narrator" from a person who lived 1,400 years ago begs the question – How can you verify the "Grader" was anymore reliable than the Hadith Narrator themselves? Any reliability argument is likely a circular argument. Ultimately relies on "Because People 1,400 years ago said so" as it's final verification.
- #3: The beauty of having a "Written Text", especially one that originates from the Time Period of a historical figure, is that it cannot be debated whether it actually says what it meant to say & whether it is time period accurate.
- These documents came hundreds of years after the person they alleged they are a Biography of – and relied solely on "oral transmission". How Historically Strong is a claim such as that bound to be?



https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hadith_manuscripts

[2] https://submission.org/Corruption_of_Religion.html

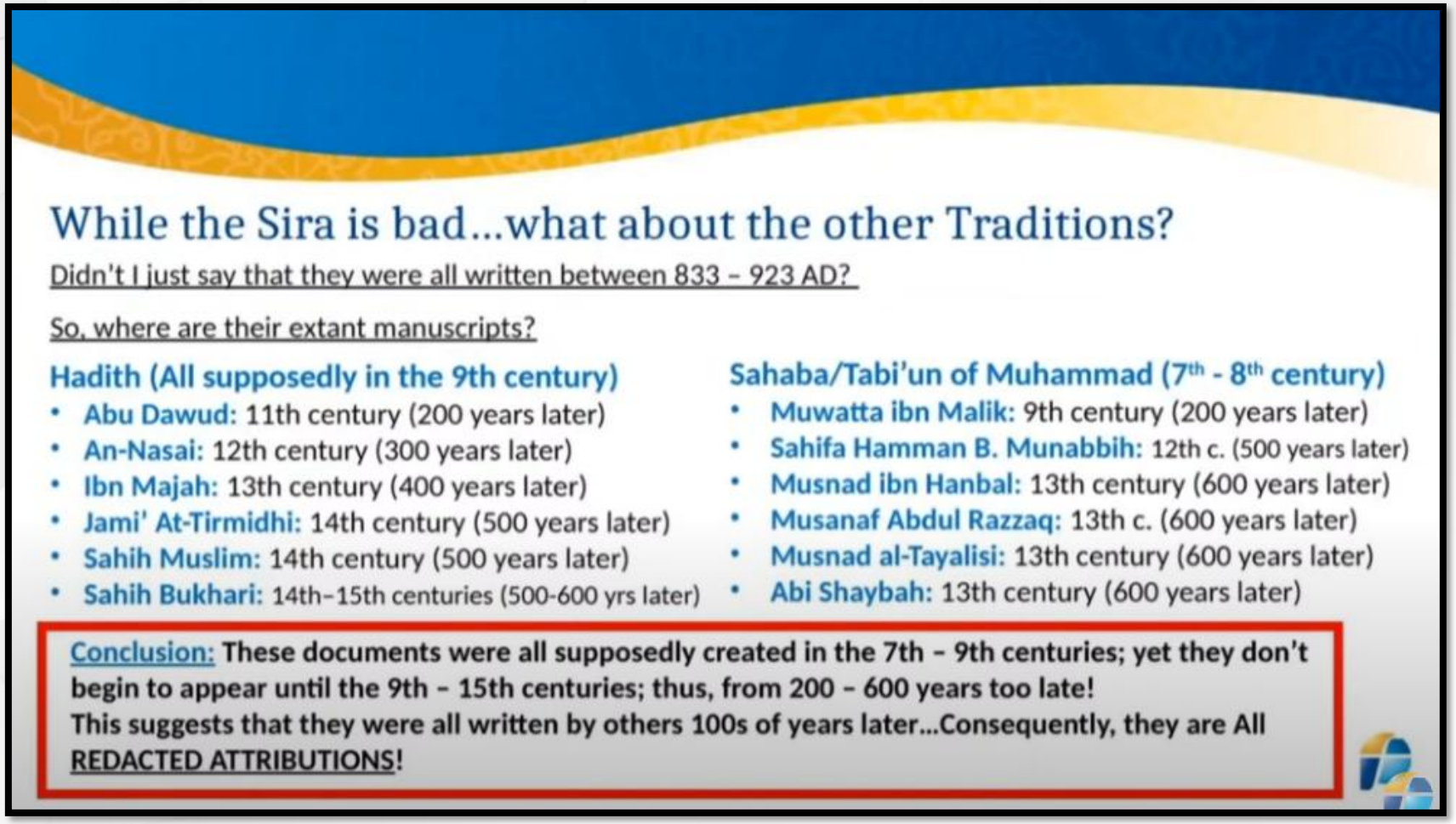
The Hadiths: Earliest Manuscript Dates



- The Texts themselves may claim to be "Written by XYZ Person" at "XYZ Date" – but that is not necessarily objective evidence.
- We must focus on the Earliest Manuscripts found.
- The Prophet
- 570 to 632 – The Prophet Mohammed
- "Earliest Hadith Manuscript Texts" – Just a few examples
- 866 - MS. Leiden Or. 298
- 883 - Ar-Risalah
- 974 - Jami' of Ma'mar ibn Rashid
- 1017 - Abridged Sahih Bukhari
- 1093 - Sahih Muslim (Khuda Baksh Library No. 191)
- 1174 - Manuscript of Sahih al-Bukhari
- 1250 - Manuscript of Sunan Abi Dawood
- => The Hadiths are the singular source of information about the Life & Sayings of the Prophet (not the Quran).
- => How do you objectively verify that the Hadiths, appearing 200-600 years after The Prophet, are not fraudulent retroactive biographies of the Prophet?
- => 99% of Hadiths were "thrown out" and rated "fabrications/unreliable". Bukhari collected 600,000 (?) Hadiths and only accepted ~7,000. [2]
    - Of the small number of "reliable hadith", after nearly 200+ years of Oral Transmission, allegedly containing words of a Historical Figure, how reliable can that testimony be? Historically speaking, only a Written Text is reliable potentially.

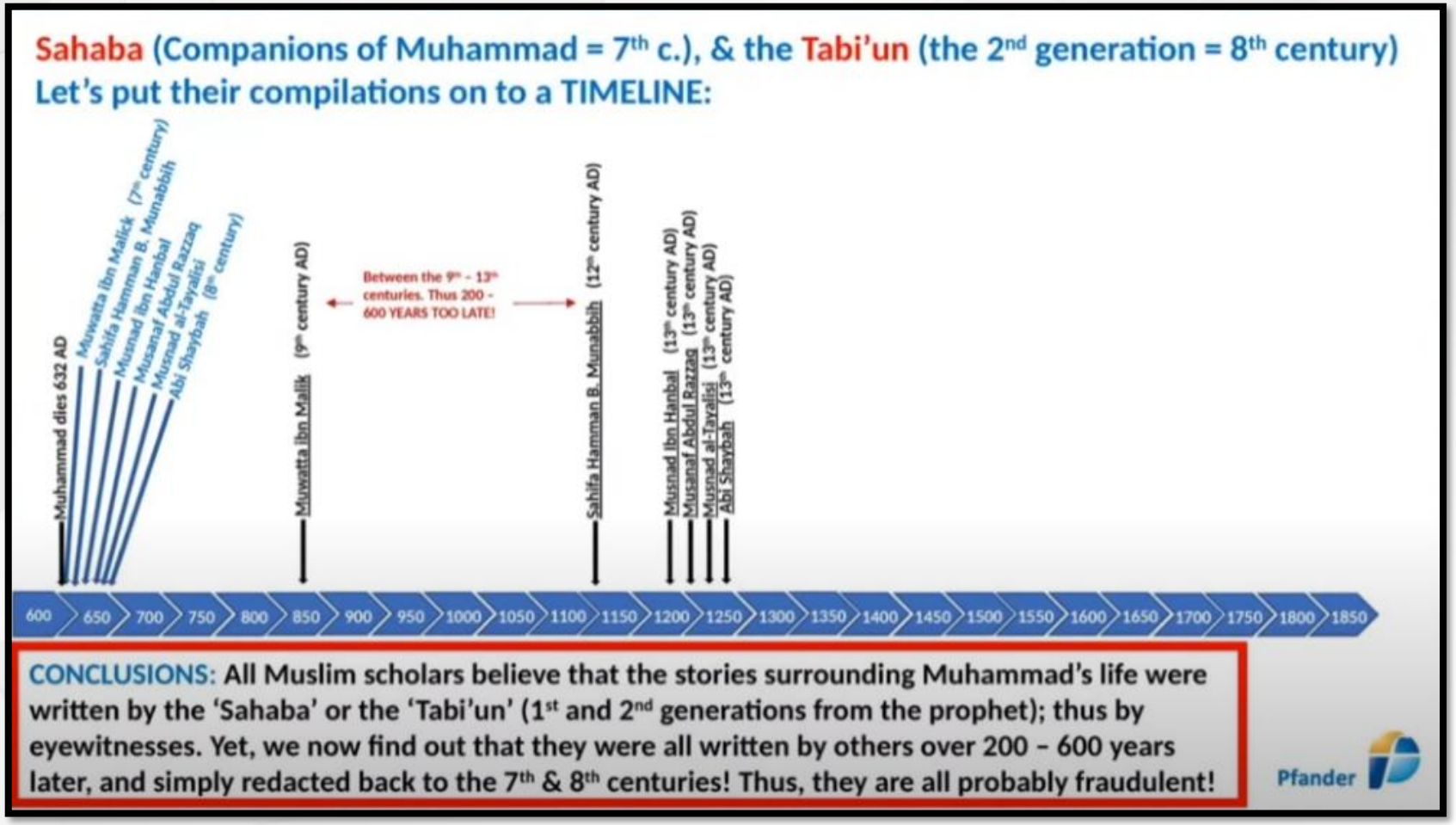
The Hadiths: Earliest Manuscript Texts Dates

- All Hadith texts were written 200-600 years later.
- The Hadiths simply claim that the information is from "from the time period of The Prophet".
- https://youtu.be/iaUJ8Y1NNas?si=tB3LqMRrZ53k22bW&t=2048



The Hadiths: Written Years Later

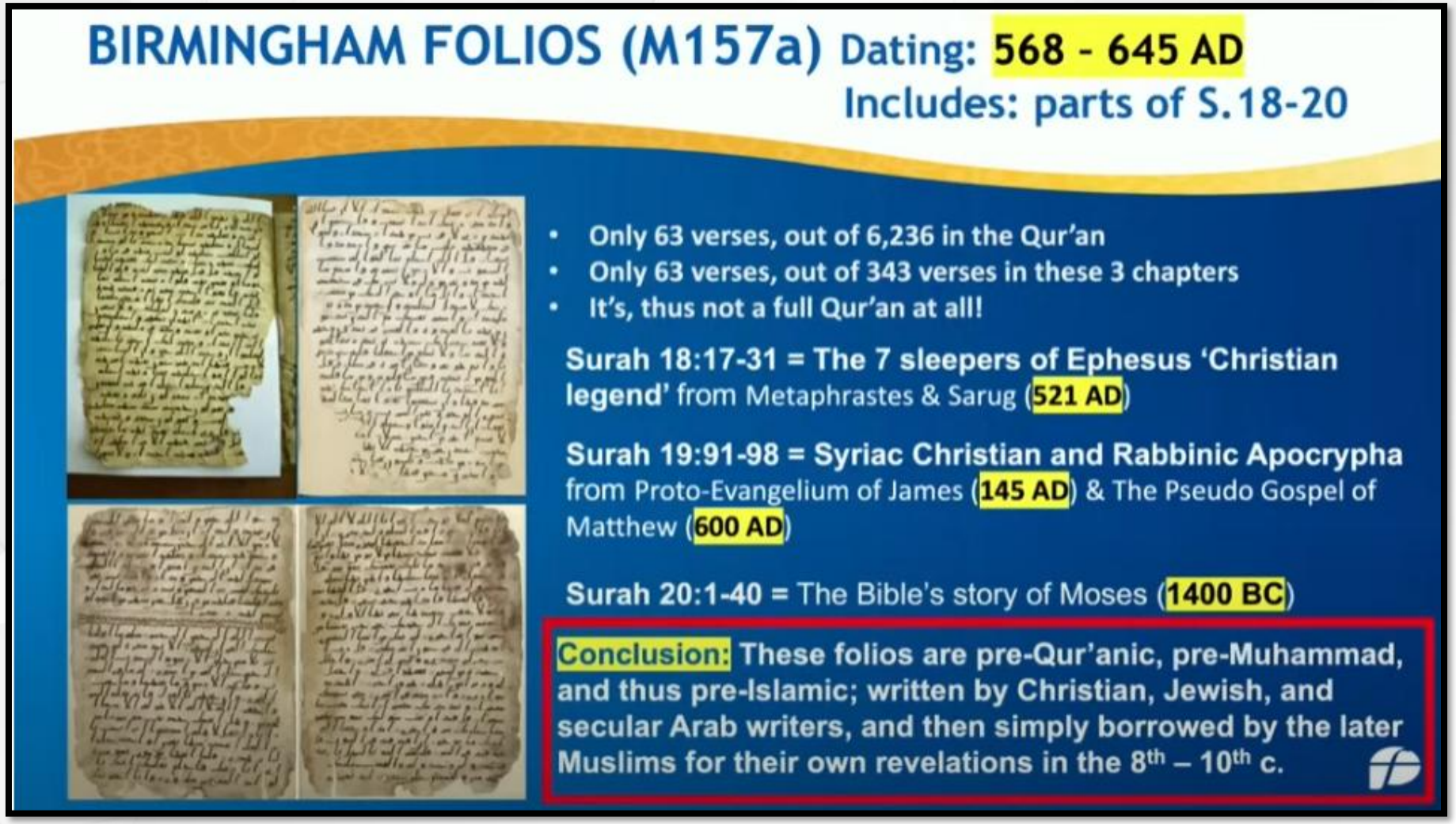
- https://youtu.be/iaUJ8Y1NNas?si=verdjzVLf4SpwITr&t=3455



The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the Region

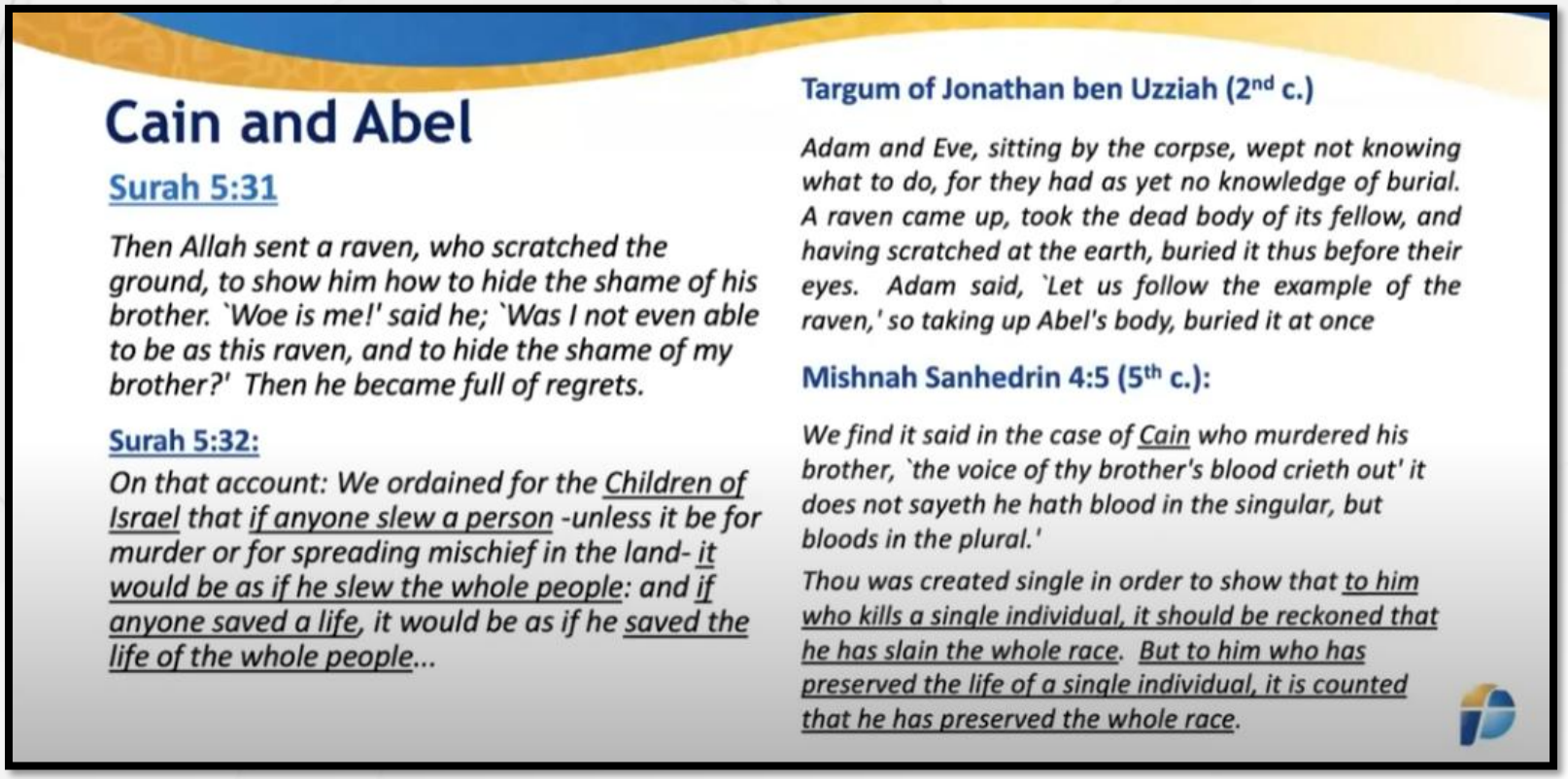
The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- Slide by Jay Smith
- https://www.youtube.com/live/WVYzBjyVXW8?si=fVlRXp6sYFMyY41m



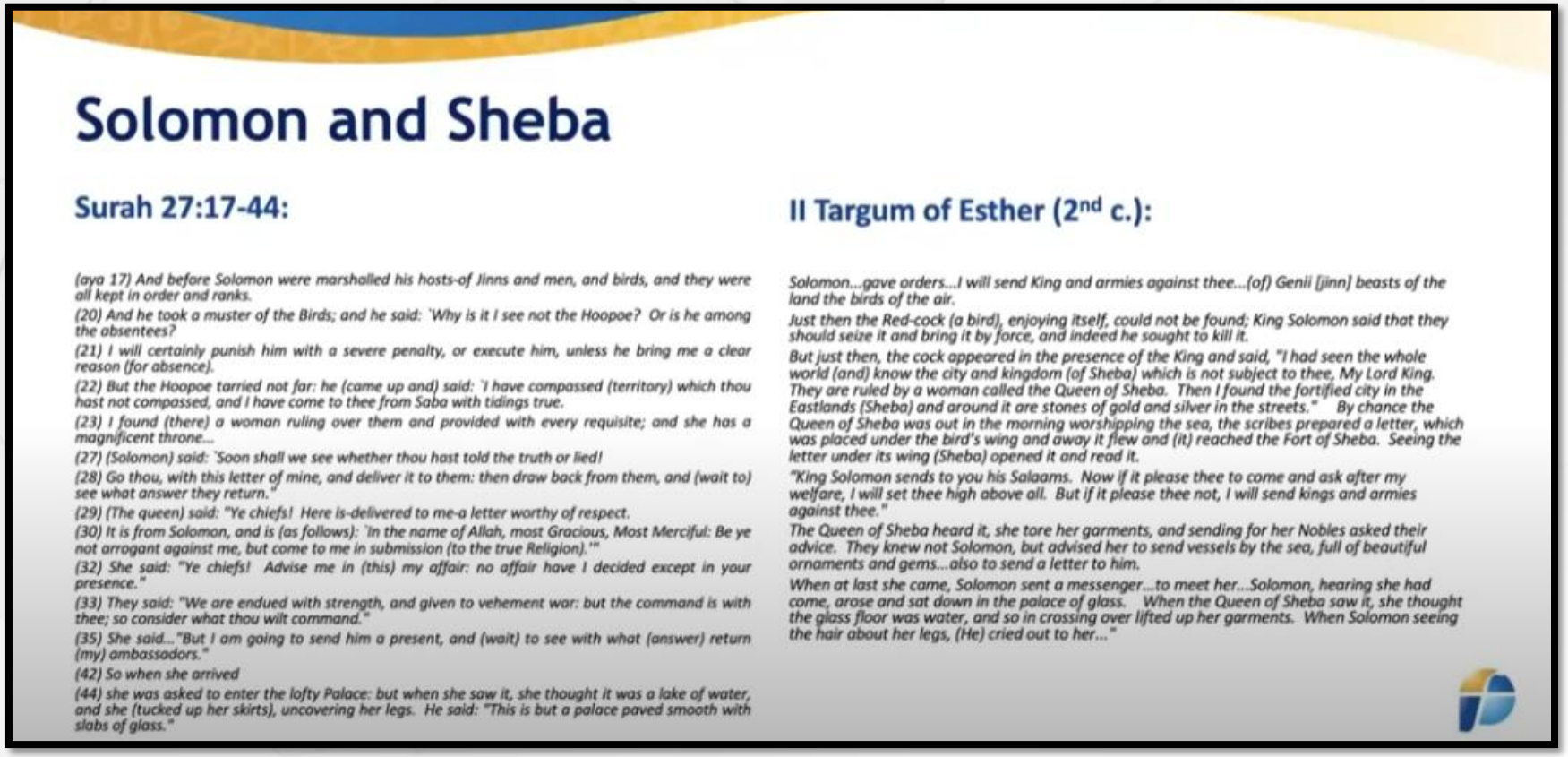
The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://youtu.be/1KDitx0oIzY?si=6ZUnkFQV3DZbBKM9&t=1070



The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://youtu.be/1KDitx0oIzY?si=6ZUnkFQV3DZbBKM9&t=1070



Solomon and Sheba

Surah 27:17-44:

(aya 17) And before Solomon were marshalled his hosts-of Jinns and men, and birds, and they were all kept in order and ranks.

(20) And he took a muster of the Birds; and he said: `Why is it I see not the Hoopoe? Or is he among the absentees?

(21) I will certainly punish him with a severe penalty, or execute him, unless he bring me a clear reason (for absence).

(22) But the Hoopoe tarried not far: he (came up and) said: `I have compassed (territory) which thou hast not compassed, and I have come to thee from Saba with tidings true.

(23) I found (there) a woman ruling over them and provided with every requisite; and she has a magnificent throne...

(27) (Solomon) said: `Soon shall we see whether thou hast told the truth or lied!

(28) Go thou, with this letter of mine, and deliver it to them: then draw back from them, and (wait to) see what answer they return."

(29) (The queen) said: "Ye chiefs! Here is-delivered to me-a letter worthy of respect.

(30) It is from Solomon, and is (as follows): `In the name of Allah, most Gracious, Most Merciful: Be ye not arrogant against me, but come to me in submission (to the true Religion).'"

(32) She said: "Ye chiefs! Advise me in (this) my affair: no affair have I decided except in your presence."

(33) They said: "We are endued with strength, and given to vehement war: but the command is with thee; so consider what thou wilt command."

(35) She said..."But I am going to send him a present, and (wait) to see with what (answer) return (my) ambassadors."

(42) So when she arrived

(44) she was asked to enter the lofty Palace: but when she saw it, she thought it was a lake of water, and she (tucked up her skirts), uncovering her legs. He said: "This is but a palace paved smooth with slabs of glass."

II Targum of Esther (2nd c.):

Solomon...gave orders....I will send King and armies against thee...(of) Genii [jinn] beasts of the land the birds of the air.

Just then the Red-cock (a bird), enjoying itself, could not be found; King Solomon said that they should seize it and bring it by force, and indeed he sought to kill it.

But just then, the cock appeared in the presence of the King and said, "I had seen the whole world (and) know the city and kingdom (of Sheba) which is not subject to thee, My Lord King. They are ruled by a woman called the Queen of Sheba. Then I found the fortified city in the Eastlands (Sheba) and around it are stones of gold and silver in the streets." By chance the Queen of Sheba was out in the morning worshipping the sea, the scribes prepared a letter, which was placed under the bird's wing and away it flew and (it) reached the Fort of Sheba. Seeing the letter under its wing (Sheba) opened it and read it.

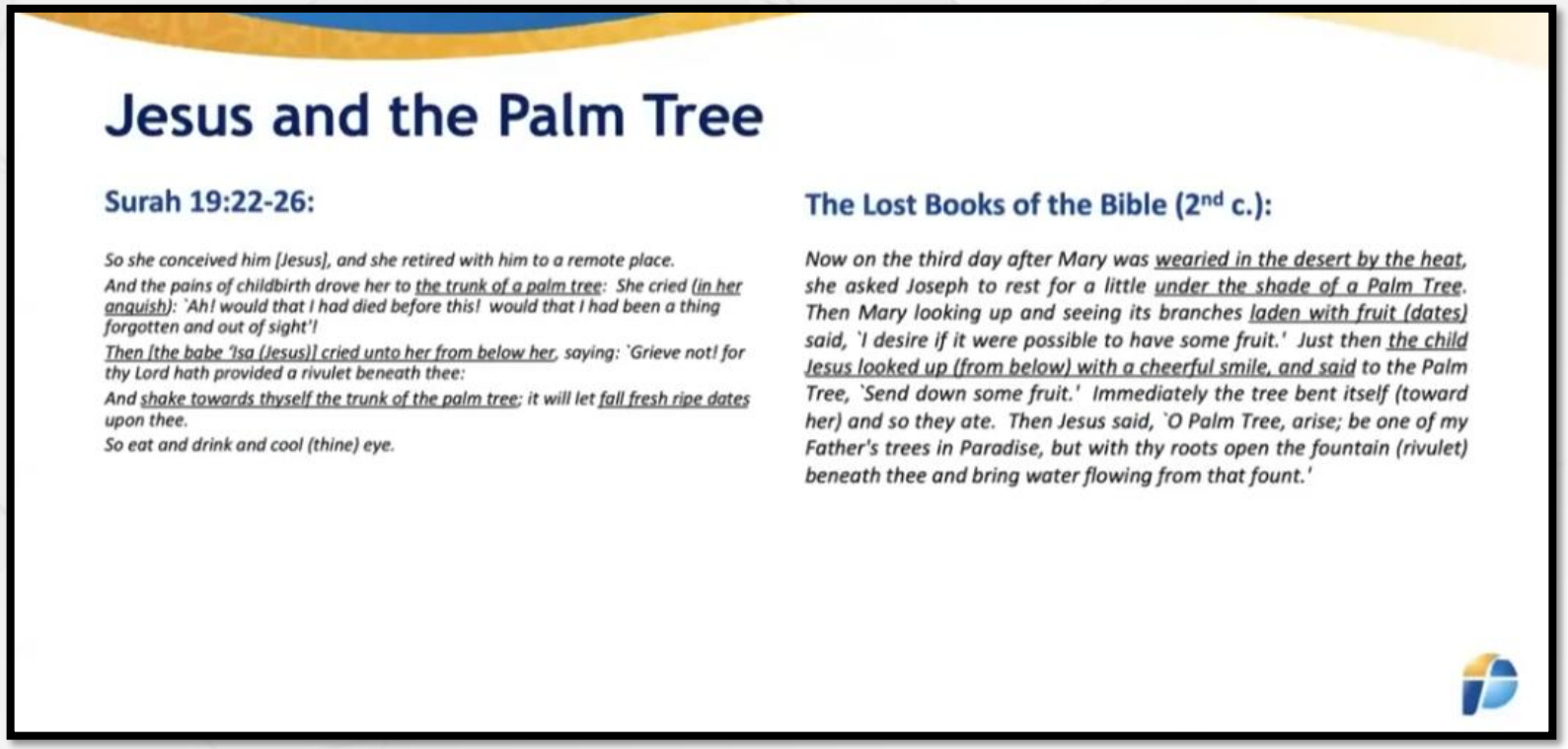
"King Solomon sends to you his Salaams. Now if it please thee to come and ask after my welfare, I will set thee high above all. But if it please thee not, I will send kings and armies against thee."

The Queen of Sheba heard it, she tore her garments, and sending for her Nobles asked their advice. They knew not Solomon, but advised her to send vessels by the sea, full of beautiful ornaments and gems...also to send a letter to him.

When at last she came, Solomon sent a messenger...to meet her...Solomon, hearing she had come, arose and sat down in the palace of glass. When the Queen of Sheba saw it, she thought the glass floor was water, and so in crossing over lifted up her garments. When Solomon seeing the hair about her legs, (He) cried out to her..."

The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://youtu.be/1KDitx0oIzY?si=6ZUnkFQV3DZbBKM9&t=1070



The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://youtu.be/1KDitx0oIzY?si=6ZUnkFQV3DZbBKM9&t=1070

Further Borrowed Jewish/Christian Sources

- **S.3:35-37** Mary, Imran, Zechariah = Proto-Evangelion's James Lesser (2nd c.)
- **S.3:49** Creating birds from clay = Thomas gospel of the infancy of Jesus Christ (2nd c.)
- **S.7:171** Raising Mountains= The Abodah Sarah (2nd c.)
- **S.19:29-33** Baby Jesus talking = the First gospel of the infancy of Jesus Christ (2nd c.)
- **S.21:51-71** Abraham destroying idols in the Ka'aba, Mecca = The Mishnah of Rabbah (2nd c.)

Note: these 'borrowings' were written between the 2nd – 5th centuries, thus long after the Bible was canonized, suggesting that **the creators of the Qur'an borrowed the wrong material**!

The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://www.reddit.com/r/DebateReligion/comments/he316k/the_sources_for_the_christian_stories_in_the/

Jesus and the Clay Birds

Qur'an	Infancy Gospel of Thomas
49and [he will be] an apostle to the Children of Israel, [and he will declare,] "I have certainly brought you a sign from your Lord: I will create for you the form of a bird out of clay, then I will breathe into it, and it will become a bird by God's leave. I heal the blind and the leper and I revive the dead by God's leave. I will tell you what you have eaten and what you have stored in your houses. There is indeed a sign in that for you, should you be faithful.Qur'an 3:49	2 Then, taking soft clay from the mud, he formed twelve sparrows. It was the Sabbath when he did these things, and many children were with him.3 And a certain Jew, seeing the boy Jesus with the other children doing these things, went to his father Joseph and falsely accused the boy Jesus, saying that, on the Sabbath he made clay, which is not lawful, and fashioned twelve sparrows.4 And Joseph came and rebuked him, saying, "Why are you doing these things on the Sabbath?" But Jesus, clapping his hands, commanded the birds with a shout in front of everyone and said, "Go, take flight, and remember me, living ones." And the sparrows, taking flight, went away squawking.Infancy Gospel of Thomas 1

The Quran (600-650 AD) uses Pre-Existing Stories from the region

- https://www.reddit.com/r/DebateReligion/comments/he316k/the_sources_for_the_christian_stories_in_the/

Date: Composition: 2nd Century. Syriac Copies: 5th and 6th century

Jesus speaking as an infant and the miracle of the palm tree.

Qur'an	Protevangelium of James	Gospel of Pseudo-Matthew
22 Thus she conceived him, then withdrew with him to a distant place. 23The birth pangs brought her to the trunk of a date palm. She said, 'I wish I had died before this and become a forgotten thing, beyond recall.' 24Thereupon he called her from below her, [saying,] 'Do not grieve! Your Lord has made a spring to flow at your feet. 25Shake the trunk of the palm tree, freshly picked dates will drop upon you. 26Eat, drink and be comforted. Then if you see any human, say, "I have indeed vowed a fast to the All-beneficent, so I will not speak to any human today." **Qur'an 19**	And they came half the way, and Mary said to him: "Joseph, take me down from the ass, for the child within me presses me, to come forth." And he took her down there and said to her: "Where shall I take you and hide your shame? For the place is desert." And he found a cave there and brought her into it, and left her in the care of his sons and went out to seek for a Hebrew midwife in the region of Bethlehem. **Protoevangelium of James, 17:2–18:1**	1Then, after these things, on the third day after they had started out, Mary was weary from too much sun in the wilderness, and seeing a palm tree she wanted to rest awhile in its shade. Joseph hastened to lead her to the palm and he had her descend from the donkey. When Mary sat down, she looked to the foliage on the palm and saw that it was full of fruit, and she said, "If only I could get some of that fruit from the palm!" Joseph said to her, "I am surprised that you're saying this, when you can see how high the palm is. You are thinking of the fruit of the palm; but I am thinking about the water that we no longer have in our water skins; we have nowhere to replenish them to quench our thirst." 2 Then the young child Jesus, sitting in the lap of his mother, the virgin, cried out to the palm tree and said, "Bend down, O tree, and refresh my mother from your fruit." Immediately when he spoke, the palm tree bent its top down to Mary's feet. Everyone gathered the fruit in it and was refreshed. After all its fruit had been gathered, the tree remained bent, expecting that it would rise up at the command of the one who had ordered it to bend over. Then Jesus said to it, "Stand erect, O palm, and be strong, and become a companion of my trees that are in the paradise of my Father. And open up from your roots the hidden springs, that water may flow from them to quench our thirst." Immediately the palm stood erect, and from its roots springs of water began to come forth, clear, cold, and very sweet. When they saw the springs of water flowing, they all rejoiced with a great joy and drank, together with their beasts and companions, giving thanks to God. **Gospel of Pseudo-Matthew 20:2**

Evidence & Historicity of The Quran, The Prophet, and Mecca

Videos on Islam
Historicity of the Quran, the Prophet, Mecca?

- Jay Smith – Historicity of Islam #1
  - https://www.youtube.com/live/WVYzBjyVXW8?si=Myc6QzTwWSuS341i
- Jay Smith – Historicity of Islam #2
  - https://youtu.be/wy_iD6Lf6MY?si=qNlXgK14qOR1z9DT

Islam:
The Prophet is Predicted in the Bible?

Mohammed in the Bible?

- Muslims **must believe** that Mohammed **can be found** to be Prophesized in the Bible.

- Key Problem:
- #1 - Muslim's believe that wherever Jesus says He is God – the Bible is Corrupted.
- #2 - Muslim's **simultaneously** believe that wherever Mohammed allegedly appears – the Bible is perfectly Reliable.

- Where is Mohammed?
- Examples where Muslims think Mohammed is predicted:
  - The Servant in Isaiah 42
  - The Prophet in Deuteronomy 18
  - Jesus sending "The Helper" in John 14
  - Mohammed in "Song of Solomon" as Machmed

Who is "The Helper/Comforter"? => The Holy Spirit (Not Mohammed)

- Who is the "Helper" that God will send?
  - Is it Mohammed?

- Jesus – "But the Helper, the Holy Spirit…" (John 14:26)
- The Helper abides within you forever (John 14:16-17)
- The Helper is sent from both Jesus & The Father – therefore equality of Jesus with God (John 14:23)
- The Helper is a "Spirit of Truth" (John 17:13)
- The Helper will not "Speak of Himself" (John 17:13)
- The Helper joins the Disciples when Jesus went away (John 16:7)
- Anyone who Repents will receive "The Holy Spirit" (Acts 2:38)

- Jesus confirms explicitly that "The Helper" is the Holy Spirit
  - https://youtu.be/g3d9Iozskk4?si=e7K9QFw3OYuAYfyy

- The Holy Spirit ("Helper") comes after Jesus leaves, but was present before Jesus also?
  - Clearly, while Jesus was with the Disciples, he was a substitute for the Holy Spirit, for that time.
  - Christians can simultaneously be with Jesus, while also being filled with the Holy Spirit.

(John 14) 15 "If you love me, you will keep my commandments. 16 And I will
ask the Father, and he will give you another Helper, to be with you
forever, 17 even the Spirit of truth, whom the world cannot receive, because
it neither sees him nor knows him. You know him, for he dwells with you
and will be in you.

18 "I will not leave you as orphans; I will come to you. 19 Yet a little while and
the world will see me no more, but you will see me. Because I live, you also
will live. 20 In that day you will know that I am in my Father, and you in me,
and I in you. 21 Whoever has my commandments and keeps them, he it is
who loves me. And he who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will
love him and manifest myself to him." 22 Judas (not Iscariot) said to him,
"Lord, how is it that you will manifest yourself to us, and not to the
world?" 23 Jesus answered him, "If anyone loves me, he will keep my word,
and my Father will love him, and we will come to him and make our home
with him.

(John 14) 25 "These things I have spoken to you while I am still with
you. 26 But the Helper, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my
name, he will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I
have said to you. 27 Peace I leave with you; my peace I give to you. Not as
the world gives do I give to you. Let not your hearts be troubled, neither let
them be afraid.

(John 16) 7 Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go
away, for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you. But if I go, I
will send him to you. 8 And when he comes, he will convict the world
concerning sin and righteousness and judgment: 9 concerning sin, because
they do not believe in me; 10 concerning righteousness, because I go to the
Father, and you will see me no longer; 11 concerning judgment, because the
ruler of this world is judged.

12 "I still have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them
now. 13 When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you into all the truth,
for he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will
speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come. 14 He
will glorify me, for he will take what is mine and declare it to you. 15 All that
the Father has is mine; therefore I said that he will take what is mine and
declare it to you.

https://youtu.be/chMKEBDVTUw?si=v9EvKDcFpd3lK2ii&t=464

Who is "The Helper/Comforter"?

- Who is the "Helper" that God will send?
  - Is it Mohammed?

- The Helper is sent by Jesus ("For if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you; but if I depart, I will send Him to you." - John 16:7)
- Mohammed is sent by Allah

- => The Helper was sent by Jesus…
- => If Muhammed is the Helper…
- => therefore Allah is Jesus?

(John 16) [7] Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go away, for if I do not go away, the Helper will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you. [8] And when he comes, he will convict the world concerning sin and righteousness and judgment: [9] concerning sin, because they do not believe in me; [10] concerning righteousness, because I go to the Father, and you will see me no longer; [11] concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world is judged.

[12] "I still have many things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now. [13] When the Spirit of truth comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come. [14] He will glorify me, for he will take what is mine and declare it to you. [15] All that the Father has is mine; therefore I said that he will take what is mine and declare it to you.



Moses in Deuteronomy – Predicts a Prophet?

- Who is the Prophet that Moses predicted?
  - This Prophecy doesn't have specific details – besides it being a Great Prophet –it cannot be used as a Prophecy of Mohammed.

- This prophet is going to be an Israelite Jew
  - "I will raise up for them a Prophet like you from among their brethren." Deuteronomy 18
- Deuteronomy – "In your midst / Brethren / Brothers" always means Israelites (Michael Brown)
  - https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=kcU7Jseqa6UEdpNF&t=1839

- Peter confirms this Prophet was Jesus (Acts 3:20-22)
- John confirms that the Prophet is Jesus (John 1:43-45)
- Jesus confirms he is the Prophet of Moses (Luke 24:26-27)

(Deuteronomy 18)

A New Prophet like Moses

15 "The LORD your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from
among you, from your brothers—it is to him you shall listen— 16 just
as you desired of the LORD your God at Horeb on the day of the
assembly, when you said, 'Let me not hear again the voice of
the LORD my God or see this great fire any more, lest I die.' 17 And
the LORD said to me, 'They are right in what they have spoken. 18 I will
raise up for them a prophet like you from among their brothers. And I
will put my words in his mouth, and he shall speak to them all that I
command him. 19 And whoever will not listen to my words that he
shall speak in my name, I myself will require it of him.

Isaiah 40-53
=> Israel & The Messiah of Israel (Jesus)
=> He is NOT Mohammed

- The "Servant" of Isaiah 40-53 is both "The Nation of Israel" and "the Messiah of Israel".
- **Isaiah 42 is NOT about the Prophet of Islam.**
- **See section "The Messiah" to see an in-depth explanation of Isaiah 40-53.**
- Isaiah 42 (v. 1-9)
- **Righteous Messiah of Israel – He is an Israelite** (Isaiah 42, Isaiah 49-53)
- Isaiah 42 (v. 10-13)
- **God commands All the Earth to praise Him – not just the Arabs** (v. 10-13)
- Isaiah 49-53 (same Servant as Isaiah 42)
- **The Servant is an Israelite**
- **His Back was Beaten & his Beard Pulled**
- **He was Publicly disgraced & spit upon**
- **He is the Messiah of Israel**
- **Gathers Israel Nation of Jacob** - The Servant will gather the Preserved of the Nation of Israel
- **Death – to atone for sins**
  - He was Killed for the Sins of all
- **Resurrection**
  - His Days will be Extended after Death (Resurrection) and he will see his offspring
- **Isaiah 42 cannot be Mohammed**
  - https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=7I21qD_sML5qI3gd&t=2006
- **Isaiah 42 & Deuteronomy 18 – "In your midst / Brethren / Brothers" always means Israelites**
  - https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=kcU7Jseqa6UEdpNF&t=1839

(Isaiah 42)

The Lord's Chosen Servant

Behold my servant, whom I uphold,
my chosen, in whom my soul delights;
I have put my Spirit upon him;
he will bring forth justice to the nations.
2 He will not cry aloud or lift up his voice,
or make it heard in the street;
3 a bruised reed he will not break,
and a faintly burning wick he will not quench;
he will faithfully bring forth justice.
4 He will not grow faint or be discouraged
till he has established justice in the earth;
and the coastlands wait for his law.

5 Thus says God, the LORD,
who created the heavens and stretched them out,
who spread out the earth and what comes from it,
who gives breath to the people on it
and spirit to those who walk in it:
6 "I am the LORD; I have called you in righteousness;
I will take you by the hand and keep you;
I will give you as a covenant for the people,
a light for the nations,
7 to open the eyes that are blind,
to bring out the prisoners from the dungeon,
from the prison those who sit in darkness.
8 I am the LORD; that is my name;
my glory I give to no other,
nor my praise to carved idols.
9 Behold, the former things have come to pass,
and new things I now declare;
before they spring forth
I tell you of them."

Mohammed in The Bible?

- The Arabic name “Mohammed” is not in the Biblical Hebrew
  - https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=2ZQtvrOPYzVBzRT-&t=2228
- Deuteronomy 18, Isaiah 42
  - Michael Brown https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=wVw8vZmhIZZn49MG
- Isaiah 42
  - Michael Brown https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=7I21qD_sML5qI3gd&t=2006
- “In your midst / Brethren” always means Israel - Isaiah & Deuteronomy (Michael Brown)
  - https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=kcU7Jseqa6UEdpNF&t=1839
- Song of Solomon?
  - Michael Brown https://youtu.be/c6yY6MNdxEQ?si=QfvA_iOt6s3aw-Ds
  - https://youtu.be/kLTMppmgS9Y?si=F7TzX_Hjb_KE1AUQ

Islam:
Does the Quran say the Bible is Trusted, or Corrupted?



Objection:
Does the Quran actually say the Bible is Reliable?

- This Article attempts to “Debunk” the idea that the Quran says the Bible is Reliable:
  - https://www.call-to-monotheism.com/refuting_the_argument_regarding_the_qur_an_being_a_confirmation_of_the_bible
  - "Finally, for the Jews and the Christians of the time of the Prophet (pbuh) **the Qur'an has evidenced the prophethood and the Divine origin of the Qur'an on the basis of the fact that the Prophet (pbuh) is a clear manifestation of the prophecies and predictions of the Bible** regarding the final prophet."
  - "Thus we can see that the Qu'ran confirming the previous scriptures most reasonably indicates that the Qur'an is testifying to the truth of the previous revelations **that spoke about the coming of Prophet Muhammad** peace be upon him. "
  - "by which this Qur'an testifies to the true parts that remain in them and denies and refutes the forged parts that were added, changed and falsified by people. "
  - "The Qur'an is trustworthy over the Books that preceded it. Therefore, **whatever in these previous Books conforms to the Qur'an is true, and whatever disagrees with the Qur'an is false.**"
  - "Imam al-Tabari relates from the eminent Jurist Ibn Juraij (80-150 AH/699-767 CE) that if the people of the book quote something from their Bible that disagrees with the Qur'an then we reject it but if it agrees with the Qur'an then we accept it."
- #1 - The later Texts that Deny the Quran affirming the Bible are **just a contradictory reinterpretation of the text of the Quran**.
  - Whereas the Quran clearly affirms the Bible as reliable, in plain reading. Any Hadiths or Commentary that disagrees is contradictory.
- #2 – They claim that if the Bible agrees with Quran, its valid - If the Quran disagrees with the Bible, its corrupted.
  - This is a contradictory and absurd circular argument
- #3 – They claim The Prophet is Predicted by Prophecy in the Bible.
  - Not even 1 time is The Prophet ever predicted in the bible.
  - **See the Section “Is Islam predicted in the Bible?”**
- #4 - There is no actual Textual Criticism physical evidence the Bible is corrupted.

Quran affirms Preserved Torah & Gospels 600 AD

- (7:157) "**Those who follow the Messenger, the Unlettered Prophet, whom they find mentioned in the Torah and the Gospel in their possession**. He directs them to righteousness, and deters them from evil, and allows for them all good things, and prohibits for them wickedness, and unloads the burdens and the shackles that are upon them. Those who believe in him, and respect him, and support him, and follow the light that came down with him—these are the successful.
- Those who "follow the Messenger… [found] in the Torah and Gospel" in 600 AD
- They had the Torah and Gospel "in their possession" in 600 AD
- During the Time Period of "The Messenger" they had the true Torah & Gospel (600 AD).
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**



- **We have Manuscripts of the Torah & Gospel, as far back 100 BCE and 200 AD.**
- **(P66) Earliest Gospel of John (from 200 AD) is equal with our Modern Bible.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree with our Modern Bibles 99% of the time.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree on Jesus being God.**



(John 1)

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. [2] He was in the beginning with God. [3] All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made.

[14] And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

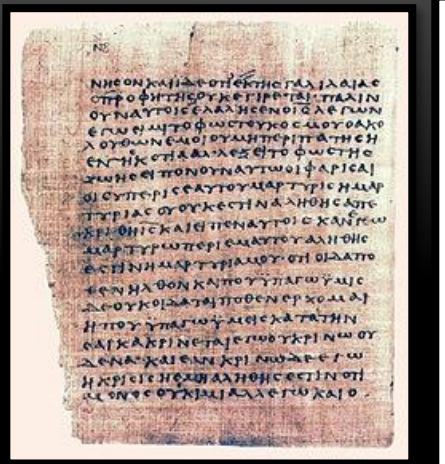
[18] No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

Quran affirms Preserved Torah & Gospels 600 AD

- (5:41-44) **O Messenger! … But why do they come to you for judgment, when they have the Torah, in which is Allah's Law**? Yet they turn away after that. These are not believers. We have revealed the Torah, wherein is guidance and light...
- (5:47) **So let the people of the Gospel rule according to what Allah revealed in it**. Those who do not rule according to what Allah revealed are the sinners.
- Why are the Jews coming to Mohammed for instruction – they presently have the Torah? (Mohammed says this in 600 AD)
- The People of the Gospel have the Gospel in the Time of Mohammed (said in 600 AD)
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**



- **We have Manuscripts of the Torah & Gospel, as far back 100 BCE and 200 AD.**
- **(P66) Earliest Gospel of John (from 200 AD) is equal with our Modern Bible.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree with our Modern Bibles 99% of the time.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree on Jesus being God.**



(John 1)

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. [2] He was in the beginning with God. [3] All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made.

[14] And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

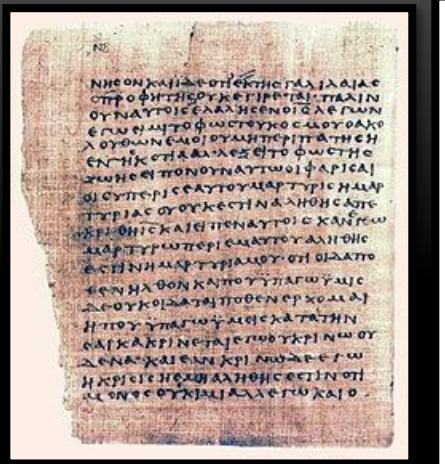
[18] No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

Quran affirms Preserved Torah & Gospels 600 AD

- (3:199) **Among the People of the Scripture are those who believe in Allah, and in what was revealed to you, and in what was revealed to them**. They are humble before Allah, and they do not sell Allah's revelations for a cheap price. These will have their reward with their Lord. Allah is swift in reckoning.
- The People of the Scriptures have the true Torah & Gospels, and believe in them. (Mohammed says this in 600 AD)
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**



- **We have Manuscripts of the Torah & Gospel, as far back 100 BCE and 200 AD.**
- **(P66) Earliest Gospel of John (from 200 AD) is equal with our Modern Bible.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree with our Modern Bibles 99% of the time.**
- **All Ancient Manuscripts agree on Jesus being God.**



(John 1)

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. [2] He was in the beginning with God. [3] All things were made through him, and without him was not any thing made that was made.

[14] And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory, glory as of the only Son from the Father, full of grace and truth.

[18] No one has ever seen God; the only God, who is at the Father's side, he has made him known.

Quran affirms Preserved Torah & Gospels 600 AD



- (2:101-103) **And when there came to them a messenger from Allah, confirming what they had, a faction of those who were given the Book threw the Book of Allah behind their backs,** as if they do not know… Had they believed and been righteous, the reward from Allah would have been better
- (2:120-121) **The Jews and the Christians** will not approve of you, unless you follow their creed. Say, "Allah's guidance is the guidance." Should you follow their desires, after the knowledge that has come to you, you will have in Allah neither guardian nor helper. **Those to whom We have given the Scripture follow it, as it ought to be followed**—these believe in it. But as for those who reject it—these are the losers.
- Jews & Christians currently have the Scriptures (600 AD)
- Most had the true scriptures, yet a "small faction" denied it.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Torah as far back as 300 BCE.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Gospels as far back at 200 AD.
- => The Ancient Manuscripts match our Modern Bibles.
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**

Quran affirms Preserved Torah 30 AD



- (3:45-50) The Angels said, “O Mary, Allah gives you good news of a Word from Him. **His name is the Messiah, Jesus**, son of Mary, well-esteemed in this world and the next, and one of the nearest. He will speak to the people from the crib, and in adulthood, and will be one of the righteous.” She said, “My Lord, how can I have a child, when no man has touched me?” He said, “It will be so. **Allah creates** whatever He wills. To have anything done, He only says to it, ‘Be,’ and it is.” And **He will teach him the Scripture and wisdom, and the Torah and the Gospel.** A messenger to the Children of Israel: “I have come to you with a sign from your Lord. I make for you out of clay the figure of a bird; then I breathe into it, and it becomes a bird by Allah’s leave. And I heal the blind and the leprous, and I revive the dead, by Allah’s leave. And I inform you concerning what you eat, and what you store in your homes. In that is a sign for you, if you are believers.” “**And verifying what lies before me of the Torah,** and to make lawful for you some of what was forbidden to you. I have come to you with a sign from your Lord; so fear Allah, and obey me.
- Jesus was taught the correct Torah (30 AD)
- “[Allah] will teach [Jesus] the Scripture and Wisdom, and the Torah and the Gospel.”
- “And verifying what lies before Me [Jesus] of the Torah”
- => We have Manuscripts of the Torah as far back as 300 BCE.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Gospels as far back at 200 AD.
- => The Ancient Manuscripts match our Modern Bibles.
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the “Tafsirs” or “Hadiths” to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is “The Perfect Eternal Book”, it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**

Quran affirms Preserved Torah 600 AD



- (2:40-41) O Children of Israel! Remember My blessings which I bestowed upon you, and fulfill your pledge to Me, and I will fulfill My pledge to you, and fear Me. **And believe in what I revealed, confirming what is with you**; and do not be the first to deny it; and do not exchange My revelations for a small price; and be conscious of Me.
- Jews had the true Scriptures at time of writing (600 AD)
- => We have Manuscripts of the Torah as far back as 300 BCE.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Gospels as far back at 200 AD.
- => The Ancient Manuscripts match our Modern Bibles.
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**

Quran affirms Preserved Torah 30 AD



- (2:87) **We gave Moses the Scripture**, and sent a succession of messengers after him. And **We gave Jesus son of Mary the clear proofs**, and We supported him with the Holy Spirit. Is it that whenever a messenger comes to you with anything your souls do not desire, you grew arrogant, calling some impostors, and killing others?
- (2:89) **And when a scripture came to them from Allah, confirming what they have**—although previously they were seeking victory against those who disbelieved—but when there came to them what they recognized, they disbelieved in it.
- (2:90) Miserable is what they sold their souls for—**rejecting what Allah has revealed...**
- (2:91) And when it is said to them, **"Believe in what Allah has revealed,**" they say, "**We believe in what was revealed to us,"** and they reject anything beyond that...
- Jesus was taught the True Scriptures (30 AD) just like Moses
- => We have Manuscripts of the Torah as far back as 300 BCE.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Gospels as far back at 200 AD.
- => The Ancient Manuscripts match our Modern Bibles.
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the "Tafsirs" or "Hadiths" to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is "The Perfect Eternal Book", it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**

Quran affirms Preserved Torah 600 AD



- (4:46-47) **Among the Jews are some who take words out of context**, and say, “We hear and we disobey”, and “Hear without listening”, and “Observe us,” twisting with their tongues and slandering the religion. Had they said, “We hear and we obey”, and “Listen”, and “Give us your attention,” it would have been better for them, and more upright. But Allah has cursed them for their disbelief; they do not believe except a little. **O you who were given the Book**! Believe in what We sent down, confirming what you have, before We obliterate faces and turn them inside out, or curse them as We cursed the Sabbath-breakers. The command of Allah is always done.
- Quran says the Jews had the Scriptures at time of Quran – yet some Jews disobey the Torah (600 AD)
- => We have Manuscripts of the Torah as far back as 300 BCE.
- => We have Manuscripts of the Gospels as far back at 200 AD.
- => The Ancient Manuscripts match our Modern Bibles.
- **Note: Anyone who claims you need to consult the “Tafsirs” or “Hadiths” to correctly interpret the Quran – which themselves were texts written 100/200/500 years later – this is an attempt to discredit what the Quran clearly states. The Quran is “The Perfect Eternal Book”, it should not need contradictory reinterpretation.**

Islam:
Teachings of Islam?

What does Islam (Quran, Hadiths) Teach?

- (47:4-6) So, when you meet (in fight Jihad in Allah's Cause), those who disbelieve smite at their necks till when you have killed and wounded many of them, then bind a bond firmly (on them, i.e. take them as captives). Thereafter (is the time) either for generosity (i.e. free them without ransom), or ransom (according to what benefits Islam), until the war lays down its burden. Thus [you are ordered by Allah to continue in carrying out Jihad against the disbelievers till they embrace Islam (i.e. are saved from the punishment in the Hell-fire) or at least come under your protection], but if it had been Allah's Will, He Himself could certainly have punished them (without you). But (He lets you fight), in order to test you, some with others. But those who are killed in the Way of Allah, He will never let their deeds be lost, He will guide them and set right their state. And admit them to Paradise which He has made known to them (i.e. they will know their places in Paradise more than they used to know their houses in the world).
- (9:5) Then when the Sacred Months (the Ist, 7th, 11th, and 12th months of the Islamic calendar) have passed, then kill the Mushrikun (see V.2:105) wherever you find them, and capture them and besiege them, and prepare for them each and every ambush. But if they repent and perform As-Salat (Iqamat-as-Salat), and give Zakat, then leave their way free. Verily, Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.
- (4:89) They wish that you reject Faith, as they have rejected (Faith), and thus that you all become equal (like one another). So take not Auliya' (protectors or friends) from them, till they emigrate in the Way of Allah (to Muhammad). But if they turn back (from Islam), take (hold) of them and kill them wherever you find them, and take neither Auliya' (protectors or friends) nor helpers from them.

What does Islam (Quran, Hadiths) Teach?

- (5:33) The recompense of those who wage war against Allah and His Messenger and do mischief in the land is only that they shall be killed or crucified or their hands and their feet be cut off on the opposite sides, or be exiled from the land. That is their disgrace in this world, and a great torment is theirs in the Hereafter.
- (8:12) (Remember) when your Lord inspired the angels, “Verily, I am with you, so keep firm those who have believed. I will cast terror into the hearts of those who have disbelieved, so strike them over the necks, and smite over all their fingers and toes.”
- (8:39) And fight them until there is no more Fitnah (disbelief and polytheism: i.e. worshipping others besides Allah) and the religion (worship) will all be for Allah Alone [in the whole of the world]. But if they cease (worshipping others besides Allah), then certainly, Allah is All-Seer of what they do.
- (9:29) Fight against those who (1) believe not in Allah, (2) nor in the Last Day, (3) nor forbid that which has been forbidden by Allah and His Messenger (4) and those who acknowledge not the religion of truth (i.e. Islam) among the people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians), until they pay the Jizyah with willing submission, and feel themselves subdued.

What does Islam (Quran, Hadiths) Teach?

- (9:111) Verily, Allah has purchased of the believers their lives and their properties; for the price that theirs shall be the Paradise. They fight in Allah's Cause, so they kill (others) and are killed. It is a promise in truth which is binding on Him in the Taurat (Torah) and the Injeel (Gospel) and the Qur'an. And who is truer to his covenant than Allah? Then rejoice in the bargain which you have concluded. That is the supreme success.
- (2:216) Jihad (holy fighting in Allah's Cause) is ordained for you (Muslims) though you dislike it, and it may be that you dislike a thing which is good for you and that you like a thing which is bad for you. Allah knows but you do not know.
- (4:74) Let those (believers) who sell the life of this world for the Hereafter fight in the Cause of Allah, and whoso fights in the Cause of Allah, and is killed or gets victory, We shall bestow on him a great reward.

Contact Me / About Me

Contact Me

- Do you have any Feedback?
- Do you have useful information I should add?
- Is there an error in my powerpoint?

- You can contact me on Email
  - godoftheuniverseppt@gmail.com

About Me

- I am a Protestant.

Bible Version Used

Bible Version used for all Quotations

- Scripture quotations are from The ESV® Bible (The Holy Bible, English Standard Version®), © 2001 by Crossway, a publishing ministry of Good News Publishers. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Rights to Use

Who can use this Powerpoint?

- Anyone can share/use this powerpoint!
- Do not edit the information in the slides, and present it as though its from this powerpoint. Make your own slide set.